User Manual

Tektronix

AWG410/AWG420/AWG430
200 MS/s Arbitrary Waveform Generator

070-A809-52

This document applies to firmware version 3.0
and above.

www.tektronix.com

Tektronix, Inc., P.O. Box 500, Beaverton, OR 97077

WARRANTY

Tektronix warrants that the products that it manufactures and sells will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment. If a product proves defective during this warranty period, Tektronix, at its option, either will repair the defective product without charge for parts and labor, or will provide a replacement in exchange for the defective product.

In order to obtain service under this warranty, Customer must notify Tektronix of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period and make suitable arrangements for the performance of service. Customer shall be responsible for packaging and shipping the defective product to the service center designated by Tektronix, with shipping charges prepaid. Tektronix shall pay for the return of the product to Customer if the shipment is to a location within the country in which the Tektronix service center is located. Customer shall be responsible for paying all shipping charges, duties, taxes, and any other charges for products returned to any other locations.

This warranty shall not apply to any defect, failure or damage caused by improper use or improper or inadequate maintenance and care. Tektronix shall not be obligated to furnish service under this warranty a) to repair damage resulting from attempts by personnel other than Tektronix representatives to install, repair or service the product; b) to repair damage resulting from improper use or connection to incompatible equipment; c) to repair any damage or malfunction caused by the use of non-Tektronix supplies; or d) to service a product that has been modified or integrated with other products when the effect of such modification or integration increases the time or difficulty of servicing the product.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN BY TEKTRONIX IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TEKTRONIX' RESPONSIBILITY TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE PRODUCTS IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY PROVIDED TO THE CUSTOMER FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER TEKTRONIX OR THE VENDOR HAS ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Table of Contents

Getting Started

Operating Basics

Reference

Appendices

Index

List of Figures

List of Tables

General Safety Summary

Review the following safety precautions to avoid injury and prevent damage to this product or any products connected to it. To avoid potential hazards, use this product only as specified.

Only qualified personnel should perform service procedures.

To Avoid Fire or Personal Injury

Use Proper Power Cord. Use only the power cord specified for this product and certified for the country of use.

Connect and Disconnect Properly. Do not connect or disconnect probes or test leads while they are connected to a voltage source.

Ground the Product. This product is grounded through the grounding conductor of the power cord. To avoid electric shock, the grounding conductor must be connected to earth ground. Before making connections to the input or output terminals of the product, ensure that the product is properly grounded.

Observe All Terminal Ratings. To avoid fire or shock hazard, observe all ratings and markings on the product. Consult the product manual for further ratings information before making connections to the product.

The common terminal is at ground potential. Do not connect the common terminal to elevated voltages.

Do not apply a potential to any terminal, including the common terminal, that exceeds the maximum rating of that terminal.

Do Not Operate Without Covers. Do not operate this product with covers or panels removed.

Use Proper Fuse. Use only the fuse type and rating specified for this product.

Avoid Exposed Circuitry. Do not touch exposed connections and components when power is present.

Do Not Operate With Suspected Failures. If you suspect there is damage to this product, have it inspected by qualified service personnel.

Do Not Operate in Wet/Damp Conditions.

Do Not Operate in an Explosive Atmosphere.

Keep Product Surfaces Clean and Dry.

Provide Proper Ventilation. Refer to the manual’s installation instructions for details on installing the product so it has proper ventilation.

Symbols and Terms

Terms in this Manual. These terms may appear in this manual:

WARNING. *Warning statements identify conditions or practices that could result in injury or loss of life.*

CAUTION. *Caution statements identify conditions or practices that could result in damage to this product or other property.*

Terms on the Product. These terms may appear on the product:

DANGER indicates an injury hazard immediately accessible as you read the marking.

WARNING indicates an injury hazard not immediately accessible as you read the marking.

CAUTION indicates a hazard to property including the product.

Symbols on the Product. The following symbols may appear on the product:

WARNING
High Voltage

Protective Ground
(Earth) Terminal

CAUTION
Refer to Manual

Double
Insulated

Preface

This is the User Manual for the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generators. This manual provides user information for the AWG410, AWG420 and AWG430 Arbitrary Waveform Generators.

Manual Structure

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generators User Manual contains the following sections:

The *Getting Started* section covers initial instrument inspection, available options and accessories, instrument installation procedures, and power on and off procedures. In particular, the installation section covers the procedures required prior to turning on the unit and areas of the instrument that require special care or caution.

The *Operating Basics* section describes instrument controls and menus, introduces instrument-specific terminology, provides an overview of the instrument internal structure, operating principles, basic operating procedures, and numeric input methods. This section also provides basic signal editing examples.

The *Reference* section describes the functions and menu operations.

The *Appendices* provide product specifications, performance verification procedures, sample waveforms, file transfer, outline sequence file text format, inspection and cleaning instructions.

Conventions

This manual uses the following conventions:

- Front-panel button and control labels are printed in the manual in upper case text. For example, SETUP, SHIFT, APPL. If it is part of a procedure, the button or control label is printed in boldface. For example, Select **SETUP**.
- Menu and on-screen form titles are printed in the manual in the same case (initial capitals or all uppercase) as they appear on the instrument screen (for example, Offset Vertical). If it is part of a procedure, the menu title is shown in boldface (for example, 'Select the **Vertical** menu').
- A list of buttons, controls, and/or menu items separated by an arrow symbol (→) indicates the order in which to perform the listed tasks. For example:

  Select **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Offset** (side)→**0.5 V** (knob).

  The text in parenthesis indicates the type of button, knob, menu, or form item to select or modify, as described in the following table.

Type	Description
front	Push the indicated front-panel button
bottom	Push the indicated bottom-menu button
side	Push the indicated side-menu button
knob	Turn the indicated front-panel control knob (usually the general purpose knob)
pop-up	Make selections or change values in the indicated pop-up menu
dialog	Make selections or change values in the indicated dialog box
screen	Make selections or change values on the indicated instrument screen

NOTE*. This manual does not distinguish between the use of CH1, CH2, or CH3 unless an operation requires that a specific channel be used.*

Related Manuals

Following are additional manuals that are available for the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator:

- The *AWG400-Series Programmer Manual* provides complete information on programming and remote control of the instrument through the GPIB/Ethernet interface. This manual is a standard accessory.
- The *AWG400-Series Service Manual* describes how to maintain and service the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator and provides a complete module-level description of the instrument operation. This manual is an optional accessory.

Contacting Tektronix

Phone	1-800-833-9200*
Address	Tektronix, Inc. Department or name (if known) 14200 SW Karl Braun Drive P.O. Box 500 Beaverton, OR 97077-0001 USA
Web site	www.tektronix.com
Sales support	1-800-833-9200, select option 1*
Service support	1-800-833-9200, select option 2*
Technical support	Email: support@tektronix.com 1-800-833-9200, select option 3* 1-503-627-2400 6:00 a.m. – 5:00 p.m. Pacific time
*	**This phone number is toll free in North America. After office hours, please leave a voice mail message.** **Outside North America, contact a Tektronix sales office or distributor; see the Tektronix web site for a list of offices.**

Getting Started

This section provides the following information:

- Description and features of the AWG400-Series (AWG410, AWG420 and AWG430) Arbitrary Waveform Generator
- Initial inspection procedure
- Standard and optional accessories listings
- Installation procedures
- Power on and off procedures
- Repackaging procedure for shipment

Product Description

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator is a programmable Arbitrary Waveform Generator which have maximum 200 MS/s, 4 M word/ch waveform memory and 16-bits DAC.

Amplitude is programmable up to 2.0 V (Complementary output) or {5 V (Single Ended output) optional} peak-to-peak into 50 Ω with independent offset control.

The exterior of the AWG400-Series is similar to the AWG500/AWG600 series product, except that the parameters and operating menus are displayed on LCD color monitor instead of B/W CRT on the front panel.

The instrument can be manually controlled from the front panel, remotely programmed via GPIB or Network.

The AWG400-Series GPIB is compatible with other devices that meet IEEE standard 488.2.

Main Features

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator contains the following main features:

- 200 MS/s sampling rate
- 16-bit DA converter
- 4 M-word waveform memory
- Two arbitrary marker outputs per channel

- Five waveform editors (see Table 1–1)

Table 1–1: AWG400-Series waveform editors

Editor	Description
Waveform	Creates analog waveform data in graphic or tabular form.
Pattern	Creates analog waveform data in timing and table form.
Sequence	Creates sequences of waveforms by combining the waveform files created with the Waveform and/or Pattern Editors.
Text	Edits plain ASCII-format waveform files. For example, you can use the Text editor to edit ASCII-format waveform files that are read from an external device.
Equation	Creates files with equations and compiles them into waveform files.

- FG mode to generate a standard functional waveform easyly

Additional Features

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator provides the following additional features:

- An Ethernet port (100/10 BASE-T Interface) for using the NFS (Network File System) and FTP link for remotely controlling the AWG400-Series. Refer to *Ethernet Networking* on page 3–184 for information.
- A GPIB interface that can be used for remotely controlling the AWG400-Series and for transferring the waveform data from the external oscilloscopes.

  Refer to *Connecting to a GPIB Network* on page 3–182 for information on setting the GPIB parameters.

  Refer to the *AWG400-Series* Arbitrary Waveform Programmer Manual for information on the remote control commands.

  Refer to *Capturing Waveforms* on page 3–203 for information about transferring waveforms from the external oscilloscopes to the AWG400-Series.
- A port on the rear panel for connecting a 101- or 106- type keyboard to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator. You can input values or text with the keyboard instead of using the numeric keypad on the front-panel. Refer to *External Keyboards* on page 3–177 for information.
- 4 applications (Disk application, Network application, Jitter composer, and Digital Modulation). Refer to *The APPL Menu* on page 3–129 for information.

Incoming Inspection

Inspect the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator carton for external damage. If the carton is damaged, notify the carrier.

Remove the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator from its carton and check that the instrument has not been damaged in transit. Verify that the carton contains the basic instruments and its standard accessories. Refer to *Standard Accessories* on page 1–4.

This instrument was thoroughly inspected for mechanical and electrical defects before shipment. It should be free of dents or scratches. To confirm this, inspect the instrument for physical damage that occurred in transit, and test the instrument functionality by following the *Tutorials* beginning on page 2–53. You can also verify the performance of the instrument by following the procedures in *Appendix B:Performance Verification* beginning on page B–1. If a discrepancy is found, contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative.

***NOTE**. Save the shipping carton and packaging materials for repackaging in case shipment becomes necessary.*

Power Cord Options

Table 1–2 lists the power cords available with the AWG400-Series.

Table 1–2: Power cord options

Option	Description	Tektronix part number
Standard	U S Power Cord, 120V	161-0230-01
A1	Europe, 220 V	161-0104-06
A2	United Kingdom, 240 V	161-0104-07
A3	Australia, 240 V	161-0104-05
A5	Switzerland, 220 V	161-0167-00
AC	China, 220 V	161-0306-00
A99	No Power Cord	–––––––––––

Accessories

Standard Accessories

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator includes the standard accessories listed in Table 1–3:

Table 1–3: Standard accessories

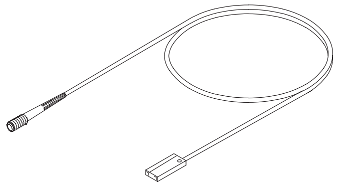
Accessory	Part number
User Manual	070-A809-52
Programmer Manual	070-A810-50
Sample waveform floppy disk, 3.5 inch	062-A257-XX
Sample program floppy disk, 3.5 inch	062-A258-XX
Performance check/adjustment floppy disk, 3.5 inch	062-A259-XX
Arb-Express Software Package, CD-R	063-3763-XX
Arb-Express Software Package, Instructions	061-4288-XX
Power Cord (except A99)	(see Table 1–2)
Certificate of Traceable Calibration	Not Orderable

Optional Accessories

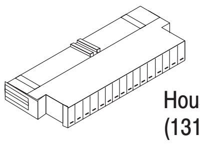
The following optional accessories, listed in Table 1–4, are recommended for use with the instrument:

Table 1–4: Optional accessories

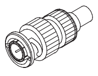
Accessory	Part number
Service Manual	070-A811-51
Front cover	200-3696-01
SMB – Pin Header Cable Set (seventeen (17) 012-1503–00 and a Housing Shell)	012-A217-00
Pin Header – Pin Header Cable Set (seventeen (17) 012-1505–00 and two Housing Shell)	012-A218-00
SMB – Pin Header Cable (20 in)	012-1503-00
Pin Header – Pin Header Cable	012-1505-00
SMB to BNC adapter	015-0671-00
GPIB cable	012-0991-00
BNC cable, 50 Ω, 0.61 m (24 in)	012-1342-00
BNC cable, 50 Ω, 1.07 m (42 in)	012-0057-01
BNC cable, 50 Ω, 0.98 m (38.6 in) double-shield	012-1256-00
SMB–SMB cable, 50 Ω, 1 m (3.3 ft) double-shield	012-1458-00
SMB–BNC cable, 50 Ω, 1 m (3.3 ft) double-shield	012-1459-00
BNC terminator, 50 Ω	011-0049-02
BNC power divider, 50 Ω, DC to 300 MHz, VSWR: 1.2 max.	015-0660-00
BNC low pass filter, 100 MHz	015-0657-00
Cart	K475
Rack Mount Kit (for field conversion)	020-A045-00
P4116 Digital Data Output Pod	116-A015-00
16 MB Memory upgrade kit	020-A046-00 (AWG410) 020-A047-00 (AWG420) 020-A048-00 (AWG430)



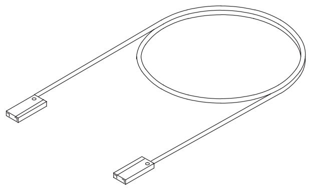
SMB – Pin Header 50Ω Cable (20 in)
(012–1503–00)



Housing Shell
(131–A800–00)



SMB – BNC Adaptor
(015–0671–00)



Pin Header – Pin Header 50Ω Cable (20 in)
(012–1505–00)

Options

This subsection describes the following options available with the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator:

- Option D1 (Test result report)
- Option 1R (Rack mounting)
- Option 01 (16 Mbyte Memory)
- Option 03 (P4116 Digital Data Output Pod)
- Option 05 (Single Ended Analog Out)
- Option 10 (Flash disk, alternate HDD & Standby Switch)

Each of these options is discussed in detail in the following paragraphs.

Option D1 (Test Result Report)

A calibration data test result report will be provided with the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator when this option is specified.

Option 1R (Rack Mounting)

AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator comes configured for installation in a 19-inch wide instrument rack. For later field conversions, order Tektronix part number 016-A326-XX.

Option 01 (16 Mbyte Memory)

Each channel waveform memory serves as 16 M word/ch. For later field upgrades, order Tektronix part number 040-A039-XX (1 kit per channel).

Option 03 (Digital Data Out)

The function of digital data out outputs digital data from waveform memory bypassing the D/A and output circuitry.

Option 05 (Single Ended Analog Out)

The complementary analog output of each channel turns into a single ended output.

Option 10 (Flash disk, alternate HDD & Standby Switch)

A 128 Mbyte flash disk addition. The hard disk is deleted when this option is ordered.

The AWG400-Series retains the state of the front panel ON/STBY switch. The ON/STBY switch must be left in the on position to be able to power on and power off the instrument using the principal power switch.

NOTE. *If the ON/STBY switch is left in the off position, you will not be able to power on/off the instrument using the principal power switch or an external power switch unit.3*

Installation

Before installation, refer to the *Safety Summary* section at the front of this manual for power source, grounding, and other safety information.

Environment

Verify that you have the correct operating environment.

CAUTION. *To prevent damage to the instrument can occur if this instrument is powered on at temperatures outside the specified temperature range.*

The AWG400-Series operates correctly in ambient temperatures from +10° C to +40° C and relative humidity from 20% to 80% with no condensation. If the instrument is stored at temperatures outside this range, do not switch on the power until the chassis has come within the operating temperature range. For more operating environment information, refer to *Appendix A: Specifications* on page A–1.

NOTE. *If you are installing the instrument in a rack, refer to the instruction sheet that comes with the rack-mounting kit for proper installation procedures.*

Verify that there is nothing blocking the flow of air at the fan and air intake holes. The instrument exhausts air with the fan on its left side. Leave space at the sides of the instrument so that the instrument does not overheat. The following are the minimum space requirements for air flow around the instrument:

Rear	7.5 cm (3 in)
Left and right	15.0 cm (6 in)
Top and Bottom	2 cm (0.8 in)

(The feet on the bottom of the instrument provide the required clearance when set on a flat surface.)

***NOTE**. If the air flow is restricted and the internal temperature of the AWG400-Series exceeds the proper operating temperature range, the instrument temporarily shuts down to protect the internal modules from overheating. To prevent temporary shutdown of the AWG400-Series, do not restrict air flow through the chassis.*

If the AWG400-Series shuts down unexpectedly, improve ventilation around the AWG400-Series, and wait a few minutes to allow it to cool down; then switch the power on again.

***NOTE**. You cannot power on the instrument when the ambient temperature exceeds the instrument temperature operation range. Wait until the instrument cools down, or the ambient temperature decreases to valid operating temperatures, before turning on the instrument again.*

Check Fuse

Check the fuse to be sure that it is the proper type and rating.

Remove the fuse from the fuse holder on the rear panel and check the fuse. To remove the fuse, turn it counter clock wise with a screwdriver while pushing it in. There are two types of fuses provided. Table 1–5 lists the fuse types and ratings.

⚠ ***WARNING.** To avoid electrical shock, be sure that the power cord is disconnected from the socket before checking the line fuse.*

Table 1–5: Fuse and fuse cap part numbers

Fuse	Fuse part number	Fuse cap part number
6.35 mm × 31.8 mm (UL 198G,3AG) : 10A FAST, 250 V	159-0407-XX	200-2264-XX
5 mm × 20 mm (IEC 127) : 5A (T), 250 V	159-0210-XX	200-2265-XX

***NOTE**. The second fuse listed in the table above is approved under the IEC standards. This fuse is used in equipment sold in the European market.*

Check Voltage Settings

Check that you have the proper electrical connections. The AWG400-Series generator operates within the following power supply voltage and frequency ranges:

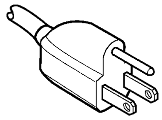
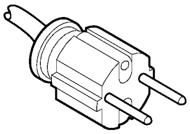
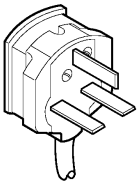
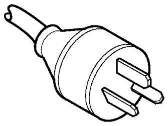
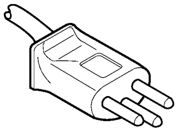
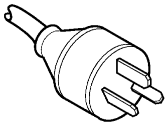
Line voltage range	100 – 240 V
Line frequency	48 – 63 Hz (100 – 240 V)
Maximum power	340 VA

Connect Power Cord

Connect the proper power cord from the rear panel power connector to the power system.

NOTE. *The AWG400-Series is shipped with a 115 V power cord. If the AWG400-Series is to be used with 230 V power, the power cord must be replaced with one appropriate for the power source used. See Table 1–6 for the available power cord types.*

Table 1–6: Power cord identification

Plug configuration	Normal usage	Option number
	North America	Standard
	Europe	A1
	United Kingdom	A2
	Australia	A3
	Switzerland	A5
	China	AC

Standby Power Push the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** (shown in Figure 1–1) on the rear panel of the instrument. Power is now applied to the instrument standby circuitry. Once the instrument is installed, leave the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** on and use the **ON/STBY** switch, located on the front-panel, to turn the instrument on and off.

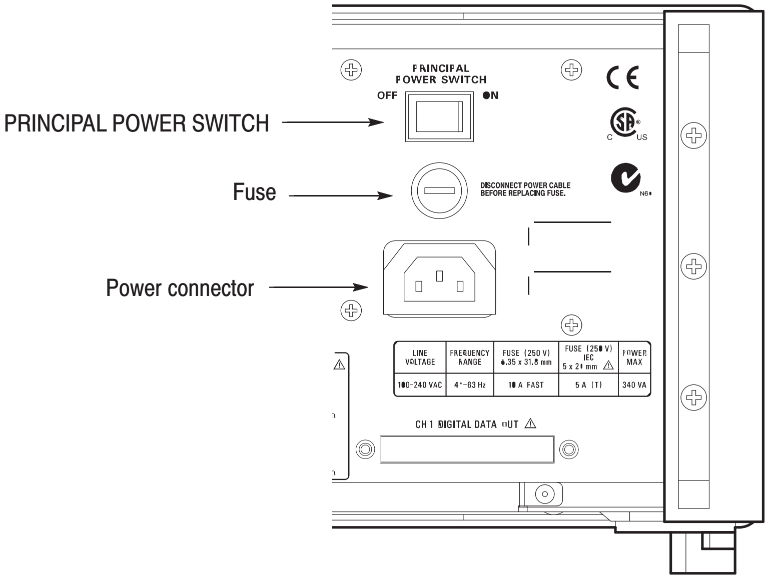


Figure 1–1: Rear panel power switch, fuse holder, and power connector

Power On

Push the **ON/STBY** switch (shown in Figure 1–2) on the lower left side of the front panel to power on the instrument. Check that the fan is blowing air out of the instrument.

NOTE*. The instrument needs to be warmed up for at least 20 minutes and the clock calibrated to operate at its optimum accuracy.*

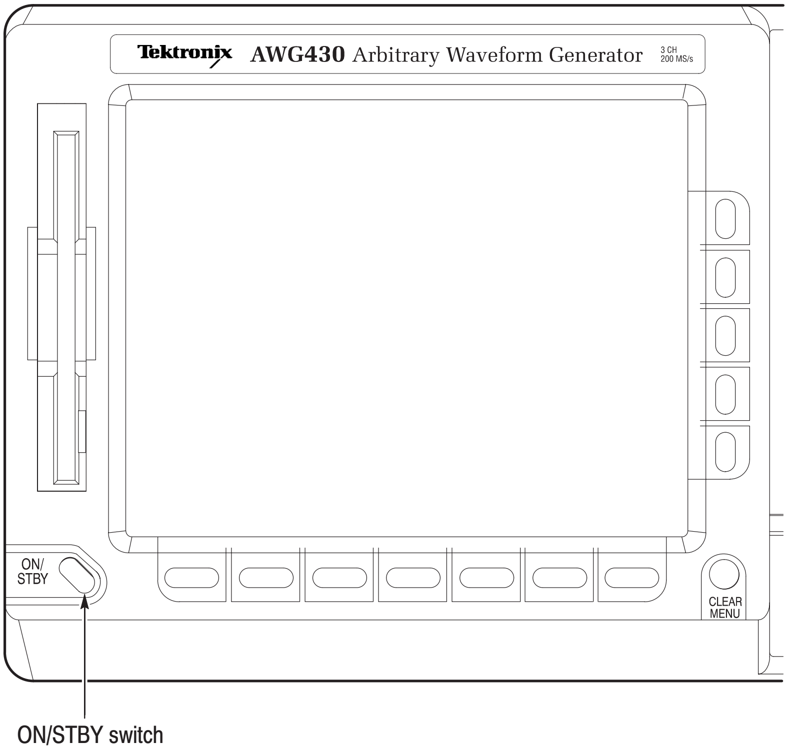


Figure 1–2: Location of the ON/STBY switch

Power-On Diagnostics

The instrument automatically runs power-on self tests to check that the instrument is operating normally.

Check the results of the power-on self tests. If all the diagnostic tests are completed without error, the instrument displays *Pass* and then displays the SETUP menu screen.

If the system detects an error, the instrument displays *Fail* and the error code number on the screen. You can still operate the instrument if you exit this state, but the wave output accuracy is not guaranteed until the error is corrected. To exit the diagnosis mode, push any button. The system goes to the SETUP menu screen.

***NOTE**. Contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative if the instrument displays an error message. Make sure to record the error code number.*

Power Off

To power off the AWG400-Series, push the **ON/STBY** switch on the front panel.

⚠ ***WARNING.** To prevent electrical shock, remove all power from the instrument, turn the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** on the back panel to OFF, and disconnect the power cord from the instrument. Some components in the AWG400-Series are still connected to line voltage after turning off the instrument from the front-panel **ON/STBY** button.*

⚠ ***CAUTION.** To prevent loss of data and/or damage the hard disk, before the power off, be sure to confirm the LED of hard disk at the lower right of the front panel dose not light or blinking.*

Repackaging for Shipment

If this instrument is shipped by commercial transportation, use the original packaging material. If the original packaging is unfit for use or is not available, repackage the instrument as follows:

1. Obtain a corrugated cardboard shipping carton having inside dimensions at least 3 inches greater than the instrument dimensions and having a carton test strength of at least 125 kg (275 lbs).
2. If the instrument is being shipped to a Tektronix Service Center for repair or calibration, attach a tag to the instrument showing the following information:
   - The owner of the instrument (with address).
   - The name of a person at your firm who may be contacted if additional information is needed.
   - The complete instrument type and serial number.
   - A description of the service required.
3. Wrap the instrument with polyethylene sheeting or equivalent to protect the outside finish and prevent entry of packing materials into the instrument.
4. Cushion the instrument on all sides by tightly packing dunnage or urethane foam between the carton and the instrument, allowing for 7.62 cm (3 in) of padding on each side (including top and bottom).
5. Seal the carton with shipping tape or with an industrial stapler.
6. Mark the address of the Tektronix Service Center and your return address on the carton in one or more prominent locations.

***NOTE**. Do not ship the instrument with a diskette inside the floppy disk drive. When a diskette is inside the drive, the disk release button sticks out. This makes the button susceptible to damage.*

Operating Basics

This section provides the following information:

- The *Controls and Connectors Overview* subsection describes the instrument buttons, controls, connectors, and typical screen displays.
- The *Basic Operations* subsection describes how to operate menus and enter numeric and text values.
- The *Editor Overview* subsection introduces the waveform editor functions and operations.
- The *Setup Overview* subsection describes the SETUP screen, and simple operations.
- The *Theory of Operation* subsection describes the electrical operation of the AWG400-Series (AWG410, AWG420 and AWG430) Arbitrary Waveform Generator.
- The *Tutorials* subsection contains examples that show the fundamental operating procedures required to use the AWG400-Series (AWG410, AWG420 and AWG430) Arbitrary Waveform Generator to create and output waveforms. These examples quickly introduce you to the basic instrument operation and functions.

Controls and Connectors

Front Panel

Figures 2–1, 2–3, and 2–4 show the locations of the front-panel controls and connectors.

CAUTION. *To prevent loss of data, data corruption,and damage to the hard disk do not push the eject button while the floppy disk or hard disk LED is on or blinking. Doing so can cause data corruption and cause the instrument to hang up. If this happens, turn power off and then back on again.*

To prevent damage to the instrument, do not apply any external voltage to the output connector or marker connector.

SETUP menu button

Displays the SETUP Main Menu for setting the waveform output parameters.

Displays the APPL Main Menu for running a specific application program to create waveforms.

EDIT menu button

Displays the EDIT Main Menu for creating or editing waveforms, as well as performing directory and file tasks.

UTILITY menu button

Displays the UTILITY Main Menu for setting the instrument parameters.

Floppy disk LED

The LED indicator is on when the disk drive is in operation.

Floppy disk drive

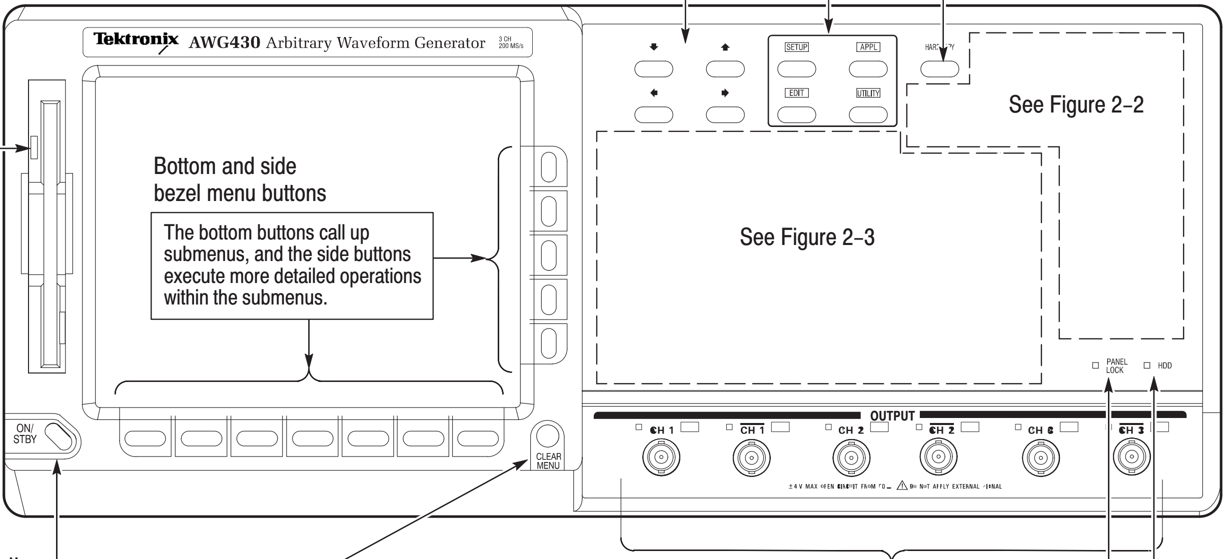
Save or load the various types of data created or used in the instrument to/from the 3.5 inch 2HD floppy disk with Windows 9x compatible format. You can also format a floppy disk with this instrument.

Arrow buttons

Controls up, down, right, and left movements of the cursor or a selected item; for example, movements of a selected item in a dialog box or pop-up menu.

HARDCOPY button

Produces a hardcopy of the screen display, which can be transferred, as a file, to the hard disk, a floppy disk, and/or a networked device.



Bottom and side bezel menu buttons

The bottom buttons call up submenus, and the side buttons execute more detailed operations within the submenus.

ON/STBY button

This button is the power switch in normal operation. The PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH on the rear panel must be on.

CLEAR MENU button

Cancels the current operation and closes side and submenus. The display can be returned to the top level by pushing this button repeatedly.

Output connectors

Provides normal (CH1, CH2, CH3) and inverted ($\overline{\text{CH1}}$, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$) waveforms. The maximum output level is 2 V_{p-p} into a 50 Ω load in Normal mode, and 5 V_{p-p} into a 50 Ω load in Direct mode.

⚠ **CAUTION**

To prevent loss of data and/or damage the hard disk, before the power off, be sure to confirm the floppy disk or hard disk LED is not on or blinking.

PANEL LOCK LED indicator

The LED indicator is on when the front panel control is locked. You can lock the front panel controls only through GPIB interface.

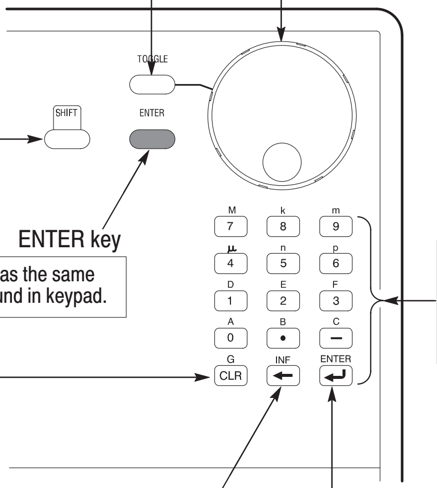
⚠ **NOTE**

When nothing is displayed on the screen by the LCD Back Light is selected to disabled, push the CLEAR MENU button twice to turn on the LCD Back Light.

HDD LED indicator

The LED indicator is on when the disk drive is in operation.

Figure 2–1: Front panel controls



TOGGLE button

Switches the active cursor on the waveform and pattern editor. In the sequence editor, this button can be used to cancel the numeric input mode and make the left and right arrows available to move the highlight cursor.

General Purpose knob

Selects a menu item or adjusts a numeric value on the instrument. When the knob icon is displayed on the screen next to an item, it indicates that that item can be controlled with the general purpose knob.

SHIFT button

When you push a numeric or unit button while the SHIFT LED is on, the function shown in blue above a key is executed. The SHIFT button toggles on and off. When the instrument displays the File Name Input dialog box, you can input upper case characters when the SHIFT LED is on. When you exit the dialog box, the SHIFT LED also goes off.

ENTER key

This ENTER key has the same function as that found in keypad.

Keypad

Enters numeric values. The keys G, M, k, m, µ, n and p are unit keys. The keys A, B, C, D, E and F are used to enter a hexadecimal value. These keys are accessed with the SHIFT button. The unit keys also work like the ENTER key.

CLR button

Clears text in an active text field.

Delete button

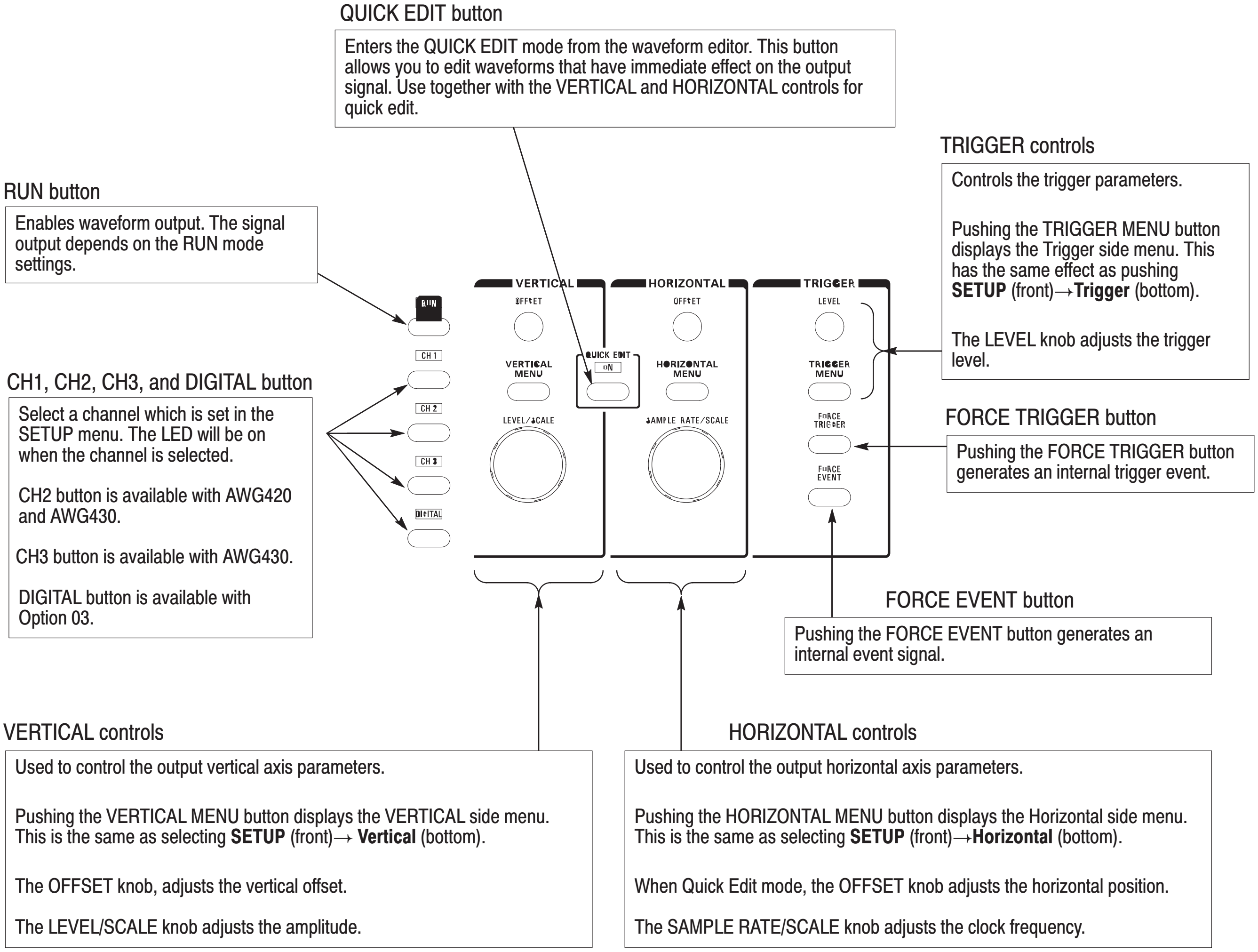
Deletes a character positioned just left of the text cursor and moves the cursor to the left by one character. This button does not function when the text cursor is at the left-most position.

Confirms the numeric or character string you typed and enters it in the instrument. When using the general purpose knob, push ENTER to confirm the settings.

INF button

Sets the Repeat Count to Inf. in the sequence editor. This button can be used only for this purpose.

Figure 2–2: Front panel keypad area



QUICK EDIT button

Enters the QUICK EDIT mode from the waveform editor. This button allows you to edit waveforms that have immediate effect on the output signal. Use together with the VERTICAL and HORIZONTAL controls for quick edit.

RUN button

Enables waveform output. The signal output depends on the RUN mode settings.

TRIGGER controls

Controls the trigger parameters.

Pushing the TRIGGER MENU button displays the Trigger side menu. This has the same effect as pushing **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom).

The LEVEL knob adjusts the trigger level.

CH1, CH2, CH3, and DIGITAL button

Select a channel which is set in the SETUP menu. The LED will be on when the channel is selected.

CH2 button is available with AWG420 and AWG430.

CH3 button is available with AWG430.

DIGITAL button is available with Option 03.

FORCE TRIGGER button

Pushing the FORCE TRIGGER button generates an internal trigger event.

FORCE EVENT button

Pushing the FORCE EVENT button generates an internal event signal.

VERTICAL controls

Used to control the output vertical axis parameters.

Pushing the VERTICAL MENU button displays the VERTICAL side menu. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→ **Vertical** (bottom).

The OFFSET knob, adjusts the vertical offset.

The LEVEL/SCALE knob adjusts the amplitude.

HORIZONTAL controls

Used to control the output horizontal axis parameters.

Pushing the HORIZONTAL MENU button displays the Horizontal side menu. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom).

When Quick Edit mode, the OFFSET knob adjusts the horizontal position.

The SAMPLE RATE/SCALE knob adjusts the clock frequency.

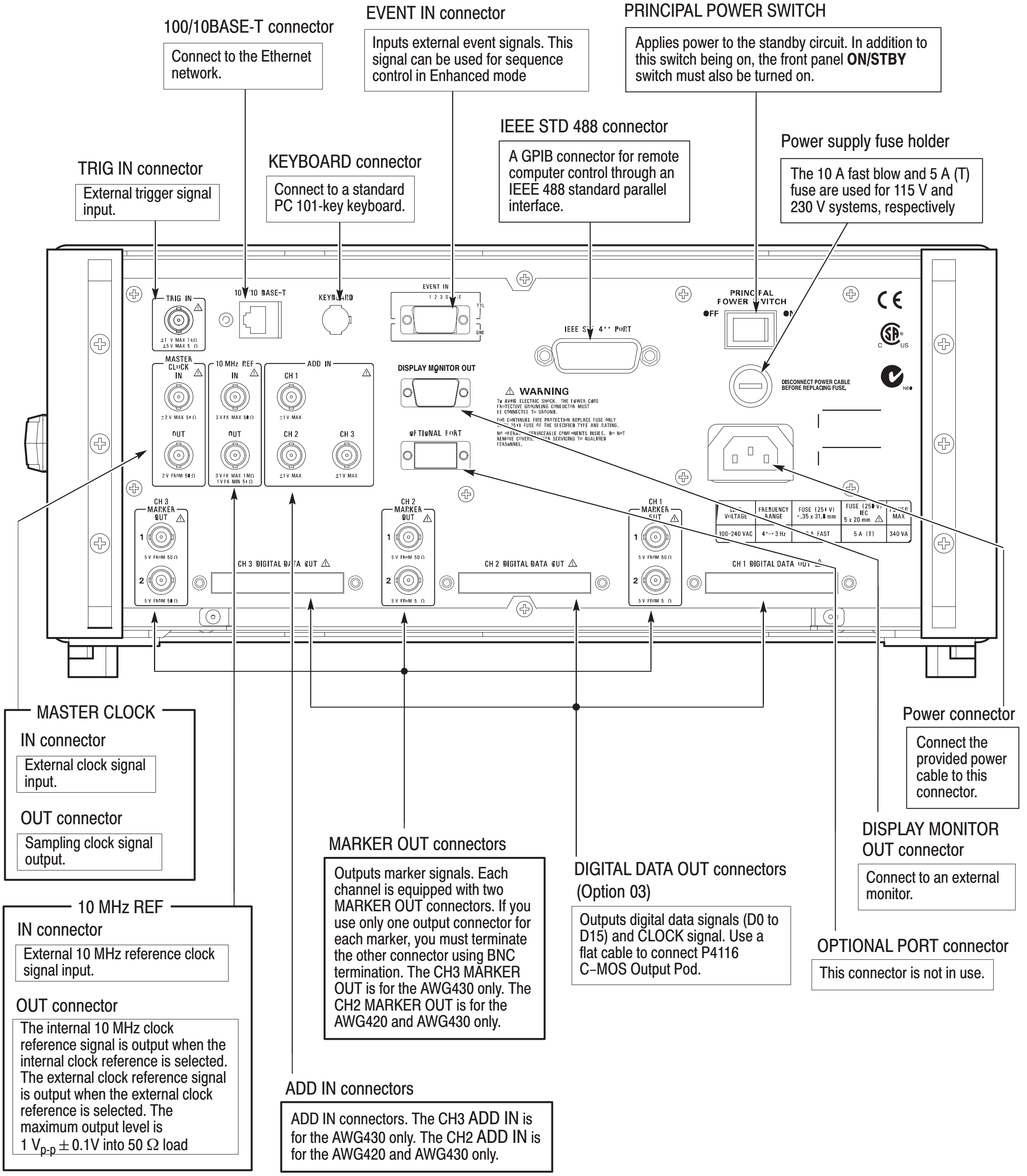
Figure 2–3: Front panel keypad area

Rear Panel

Figure 2–4 shows the rear panel signal and power connectors.

⚠ ***CAUTION.*** *To prevent damage to the instrument, only apply signals within the stipulated range to the* ***INPUT*** *connector.*

Do not apply any external voltage to the ***OUTPUT*** *connector.*



100/10BASE-T connector

Connect to the Ethernet network.

EVENT IN connector

Inputs external event signals. This signal can be used for sequence control in Enhanced mode

PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH

Applies power to the standby circuit. In addition to this switch being on, the front panel **ON/STBY** switch must also be turned on.

IEEE STD 488 connector

A GPIB connector for remote computer control through an IEEE 488 standard parallel interface.

Power supply fuse holder

The 10 A fast blow and 5 A (T) fuse are used for 115 V and 230 V systems, respectively

TRIG IN connector

External trigger signal input.

KEYBOARD connector

Connect to a standard PC 101-key keyboard.

MASTER CLOCK

IN connector

External clock signal input.

OUT connector

Sampling clock signal output.

10 MHz REF

IN connector

External 10 MHz reference clock signal input.

OUT connector

The internal 10 MHz clock reference signal is output when the internal clock reference is selected. The external clock reference signal is output when the external clock reference is selected. The maximum output level is 1 $V_{p-p} \pm 0.1V$ into 50 Ω load

MARKER OUT connectors

Outputs marker signals. Each channel is equipped with two MARKER OUT connectors. If you use only one output connector for each marker, you must terminate the other connector using BNC termination. The CH3 MARKER OUT is for the AWG430 only. The CH2 MARKER OUT is for the AWG420 and AWG430 only.

ADD IN connectors

ADD IN connectors. The CH3 ADD IN is for the AWG430 only. The CH2 ADD IN is for the AWG420 and AWG430 only.

DIGITAL DATA OUT connectors (Option 03)

Outputs digital data signals (D0 to D15) and CLOCK signal. Use a flat cable to connect P4116 C–MOS Output Pod.

Power connector

Connect the provided power cable to this connector.

DISPLAY MONITOR OUT connector

Connect to an external monitor.

OPTIONAL PORT connector

This connector is not in use.

Figure 2–4: Rear panel signal and power connectors

Menu Operations

This section describes the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator menu system and numeric and text input methods.

Menu System

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator uses menus to make selections. There are four menu buttons, labeled EDIT, SETUP, APPL, and UTILITY, as shown in Figure 2–5. Pushing a menu button displays the corresponding screen and menu buttons. These menus let you edit waveforms, initialize instrument settings, define instrument operation, and specify waveform output parameters.

You select items within the displayed menu by pushing the bottom or side bezel button nearest to the menu item. These buttons consist of seven bottom buttons and five side buttons, as shown in Figure 2–5. These menu bezel buttons are referred to as bottom menu buttons (or bottom buttons) and side menu buttons (or side buttons).

The **CLEAR MENU** button cancels the current menu operation, clears the current menus from the screen, and exits to the previous instrument state.

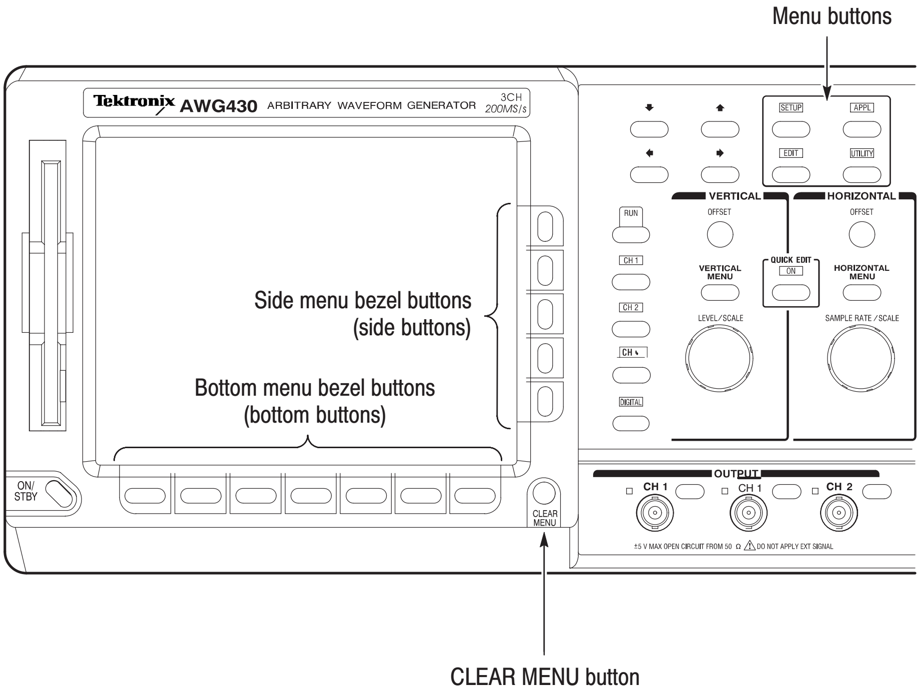


Figure 2–5: Menu buttons, bezel menu buttons, and the CLEAR MENU button

Menu Elements

Pushing a front-panel menu button displays the screen and bottom menu items associated with the button. You select a bottom menu item by pushing the button directly below that menu item.

Pushing a bottom button displays a side menu, pop-up menu, list, or dialog box. Figures 2–6 through 2–9 show examples of the side menu, pop-up menu and dialog box, respectively.

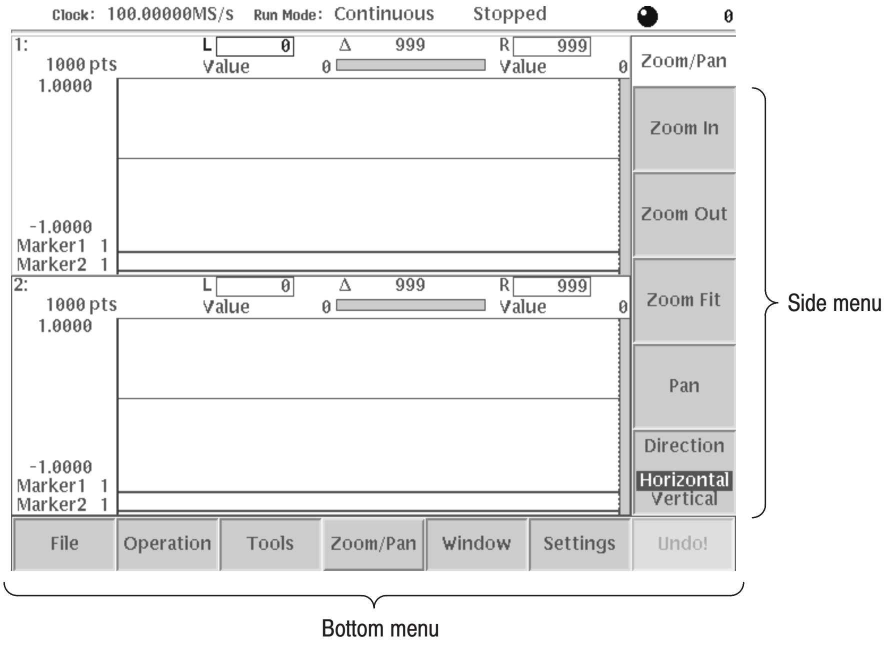
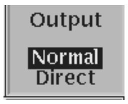


Figure 2–6: Bottom and side menus

You use a side menu button to display a side submenu, set a parameter, perform a task, or cancel an operation. Table 2–1 describes the side menu button types.

Table 2–1: Side menu elements

Menu items	Description	Menu items	Description
	Executes the displayed function immediately.		Cannot be used in the current instrument state (menu item is grayed out).
	Switches between two parameters each time the side button is pushed.		Allows making selections by using the general purpose knob.
	Allows entering numeric values using the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.		Displays submenus. Note that the label on the item is followed by an ellipsis (...).

The pop-up menu example, shown in Figure 2–7, displays a list of choices from which you make a selection. Use the general purpose knob or the front-panel arrow buttons to move up or down in the list. Push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button to confirm the selected item.

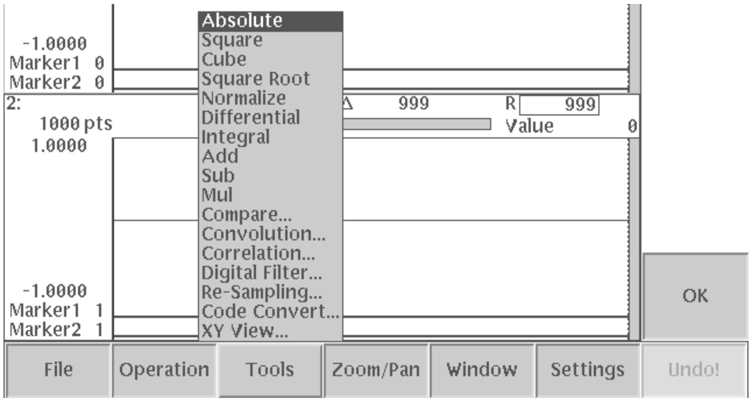
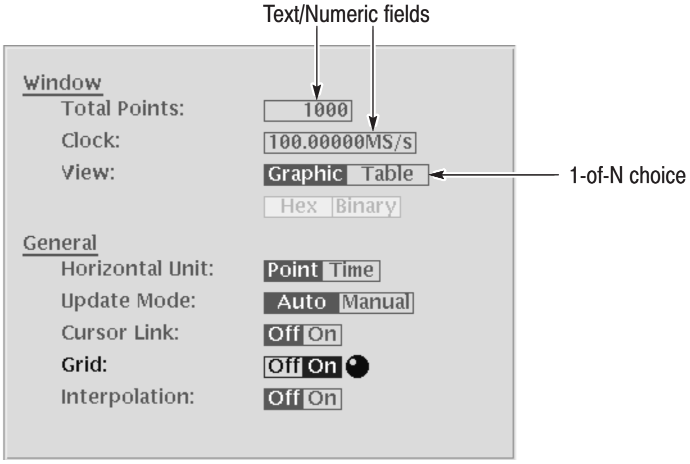


Figure 2–7: Pop-up menu example

The dialog box example, shown in Figure 2–8, and the screen menu example shown in Figure 2–9 displays a form in which you make selections or enter values. Use the front-panel arrow buttons to select items or fields. A selected field or item is highlighted. Use the keypad buttons or the general purpose knob to change values in selected text/numeric fields or change 1-of-N fields. A 1-of-N field contains two or more choices of which only one can be selected at a time.

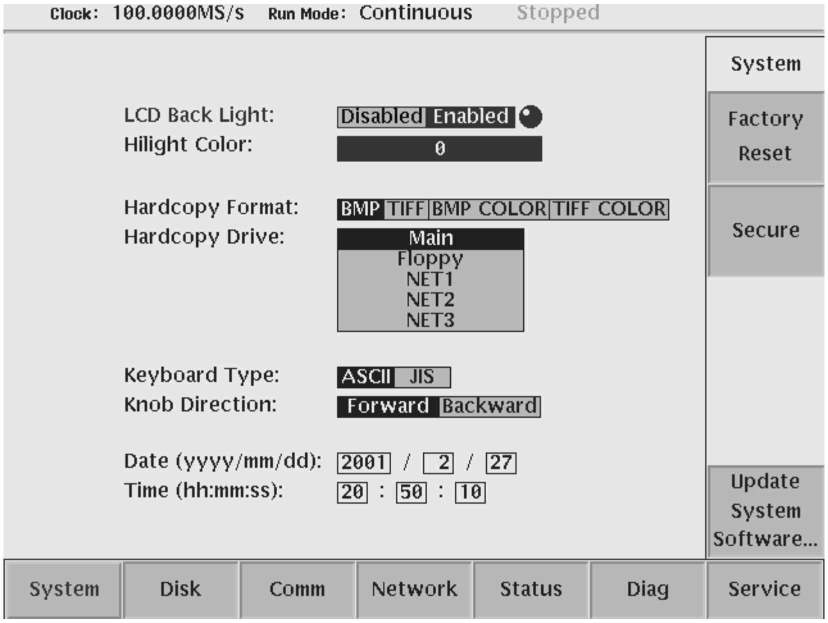
Push the **OK** side button to confirm the dialog box. Push the **Cancel** side button or the **CLEAR MENU** button to exit the dialog box without making any changes.



Window
Total Points: 1000
Clock: 100.00000MS/s
View: Graphic Table
Hex Binary

General
Horizontal Unit: Point Time
Update Mode: Auto Manual
Cursor Link: Off On
Grid: Off On ●
Interpolation: Off On

Figure 2–8: Dialog box example



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LCD Back Light: Disabled Enabled ●
Hilight Color: 0

Hardcopy Format: BMP TIFF BMP COLOR TIFF COLOR
Hardcopy Drive: Main Floppy NET1 NET2 NET3

Keyboard Type: ASCII JIS
Knob Direction: Forward Backward

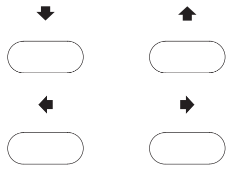
Date (yyyy/mm/dd): 2001 / 2 / 27
Time (hh:mm:ss): 20 : 50 : 10

Figure 2–9: Screen menu example

Refer to *Numeric Input* on page 2–10 and *Text Input* on page 2–12 for more information on selecting and entering values in menus and dialog boxes.

Refer to *Menu Structures* on page 3–3 for information on the menu system.

Arrow Buttons



You can use arrow buttons when making selection, moving the field to change selection.

Use ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to move up or down a cursor in a pop-up menu, to make selection in a dialog box, or to move a cursor in the editor menu.

Use ◀ and ▶ arrow buttons to make selection in a dialog box, to move the input caret when you enter numerics with the general purpose knob, or to move a cursor in the editor menu.

CLEAR MENU button

You can use **CLEAR MENU** button on the front panel to cancel the bottom menu selection or side menu selection just before you selected it.

Numeric Input

You can enter numeric values by using either the numeric keypad or the general purpose knob. If the side menu item displays a value, you can alter this value using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons.

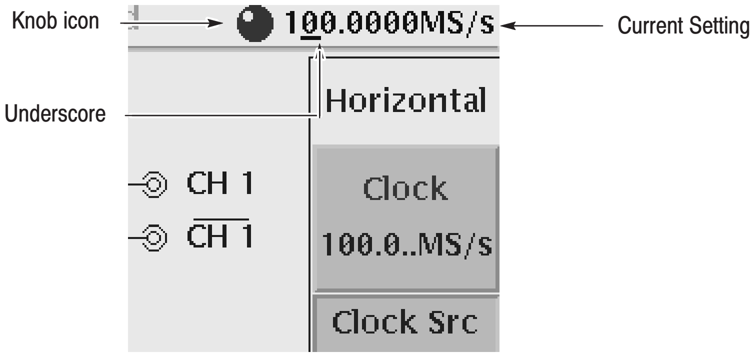


Figure 2–10: Knob icon displayed in Status Display area

The General Purpose Knob

A knob icon with a numeric value that includes an underscore character indicates that you can change the value at the underscore location by using the general purpose knob or keypad buttons. By default, the underscore character is positioned under the digit specified depending on the parameters. You can only change the value represented by the digits at and to the left of the underscore. Use the ◀ and ▶ arrow buttons to move the underscore to the desired position, and then turn the general purpose knob to change the value. If the numeric value has the knob icon, but does not have the underscore, then turning the general purpose knob cycles through a predefined set of values.

When using the general purpose knob, values you change in side menus and menu screens take effect immediately. Values in pop-up menus are not effective until you push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button.

The Numeric Keypad

Figure 2–11 shows the numeric keypad, with descriptions of the button operations.

The **G**, **M**, **k**, **m**, μ, **n**, and **p** are unit buttons. The **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**, **E**, and **F** buttons are used for entering hexadecimal values.

To use the numeric keypad to enter a value, position the caret to where you want to change a value, and then push a keypad button. If you want to enter a unit value labeled in blue just above each numeric button, push or hold down the **SHIFT** button, and then push the corresponding numeric button.

- The current unit is always kept if you do not change the unit. For example, if you want to change from 100 MHz to 200 MHz, you can push **2**, **0**, **0**, and **ENTER** button.
- Push numeric buttons and unit button to enter the specific unit. For example, if you want to change from 100 MS/s to 200 kS/s, you can push **2**, **0**, **0**, and **k** (**SHIFT** + **8**).
- The default time unit, **s** or the default voltage unit, **v** is selected if you enter numeric value, **SHIFT** button and then **ENTER** button. For example, if you want to change from 100 ms to 1 s, you can push **1**, **SHIFT** button and then **ENTER** button.

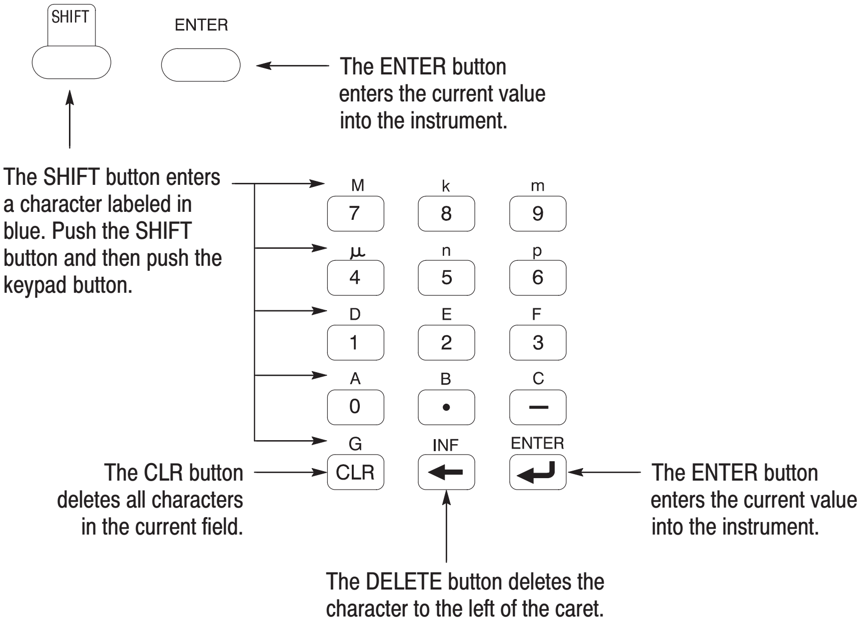


Figure 2–11: Keypad buttons

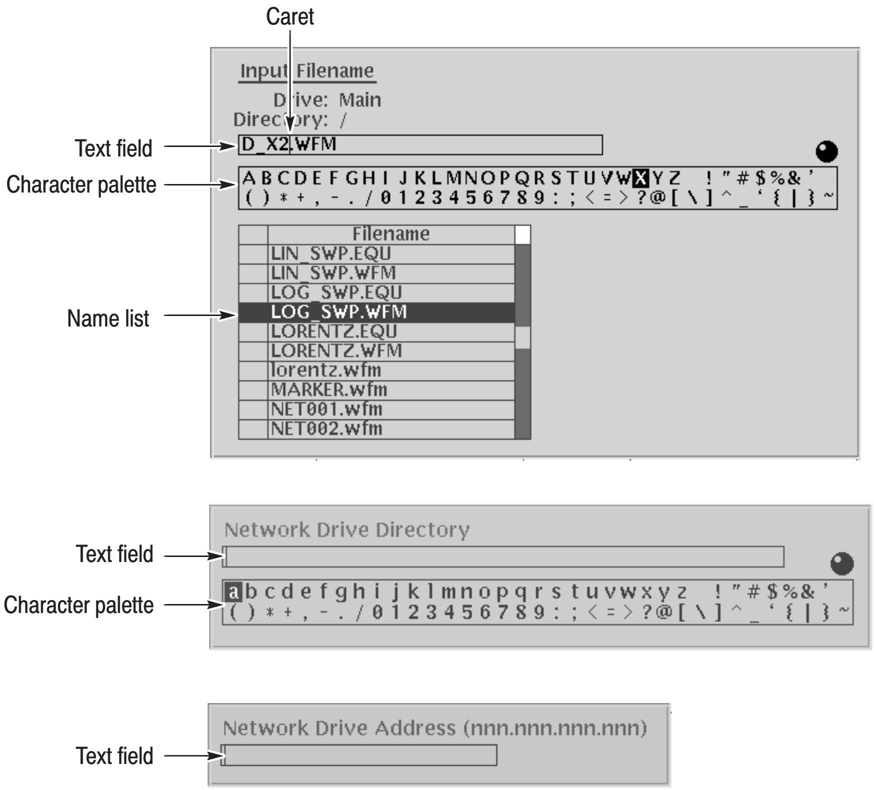
To enter or change more than one character, move the caret to the next position to change. When you are done entering values, push the **ENTER** button to confirm the changes and enter them into the instrument. For example, to enter 200.5 µs, push **2**, **0**, **0**, **.**, **5**, **µ** (**SHIFT** + **4**),and **ENTER**.

When you enter a value larger than the maximum value in the range for the parameter, the parameter will be set to the maximum value. When you enter a value smaller than the minimum value, the minimum value will be set in the parameter. To set to the maximum or minimum value, enter a larger value or smaller value. This is useful when you do not know the range that can be set.

Note that the current unit is always kept when you just use the **ENTER** after entering digits. For example, suppose that the Clock is currently set to100.0 MS/s. When you press the **5**, **0** and **ENTER** buttons in this order, the Clock will be set to 50.0 MS/s. To set the Clock to 500 kS/s, press **0**, **.**, **5** and **ENTER** buttons, or **5**, **0**, **0**, **SHIFT**, and **8** buttons in this order.

Text Input

When you need to assign a name to a waveform file or equation, or a IP address to the instrument, the instrument displays a text dialog box. See Figure 2–12. The text field is where you enter or change an existing character string. The character palette is where you select alphanumeric characters to insert into the text field. You can also select equation or file names from the name list to insert into the text field.



Input Filename

Drive: Main
Directory: /

D_X2.WFM

Filename
LIN_SWP.EQU
LIN_SWP.WFM
LOG_SWP.EQU
LOG_SWP.WFM
LORENTZ.EQU
LORENTZ.WFM
lorentz.wfm
MARKER.wfm
NET001.wfm
NET002.wfm

Network Drive Directory

Network Drive Address (nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn)

Figure 2–12: Three type of Input text dialog boxes

To select a character from the character palette, use the general purpose knob to highlight a character, and then push the **ENTER** to insert the character into the text field. Repeat this step until you have entered all characters in the text field. By default, the character palette is selected. To select text from a file name list, use the ⬆ and ⬇ arrow buttons to move the knob icon to the file name list. Table 2–2 describes all the controls you can use for entering and editing text.

File Name Input

You need to check that the character palette is highlighted and also that the general purpose knob is displayed. You cannot select characters if the character palette is not highlighted. If the character palette is not highlighted, use the ⬆ and ⬇ arrow buttons to make the character palette highlighted.

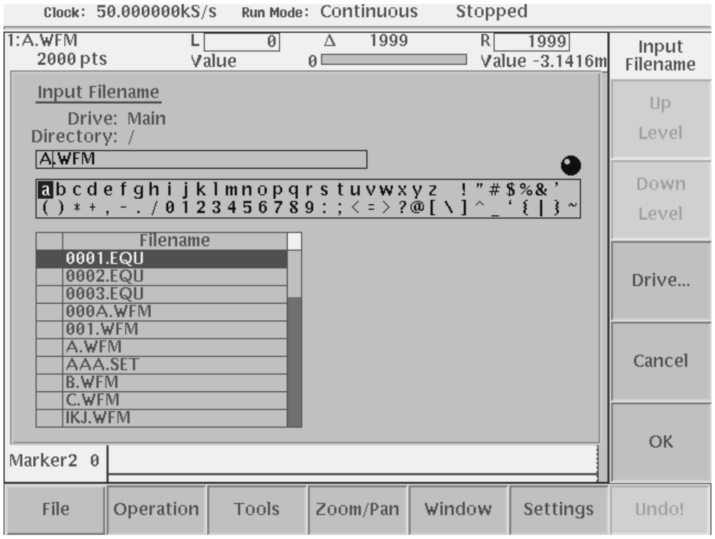
Do the following steps to input the file name.

1. Push the ⬆ and ⬇ arrow buttons to move the caret in the text field.
2. Use the general purpose knob to select the character.
3. Push the **ENTER** button or ↵ button to insert the selected character at the caret position.

Repeat the step 1 to step 3 to input the file name.

The file list of the current directory is displayed under the character palette. In default, the file is stored in the current directory. If you want to store the file in another directory, use the general purpose knob to move the directory. If you want to store the file in another drive, push **DRIVE...** (side) to change the drive. You can select the **Up Level**, **Down Level** (side) if you can move to another directory.

4. Push **DRIVE...** (side) if you want to change the drive. Use the general purpose knob or ⬆ and ⬇ arrow buttons to select the drive in the select drive dialog box and push **OK** (side).
5. Push **Up Level** (side) to move up the directory. You cannot move up the directory if there is no directory up there.
6. Press ⬆ and ⬇ arrow button to activate the file list if you want to move down the directory.
7. Use the general purpose knob to select the directory and push **Down Level** (side).
8. Press ⬆ and ⬇ arrow button to activate the text field and input the file name.



Clock: 50.000000kS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

1:A.WFM 2000 pts L 0 Value Δ 1999 0 R 1999 Value -3.1416m

Input Filename

Drive: Main
Directory: /

A.WFM

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z ! " # $ % & '
( ) * + , - . / 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 : ; < = > ? @ [\ ] ^ _ ' { | } ~

Filename
0001.EQU
0002.EQU
0003.EQU
000A.WFM
001.WFM
A.WFM
AAA.SET
B.WFM
C.WFM
IKJ.WFM

Marker2 0

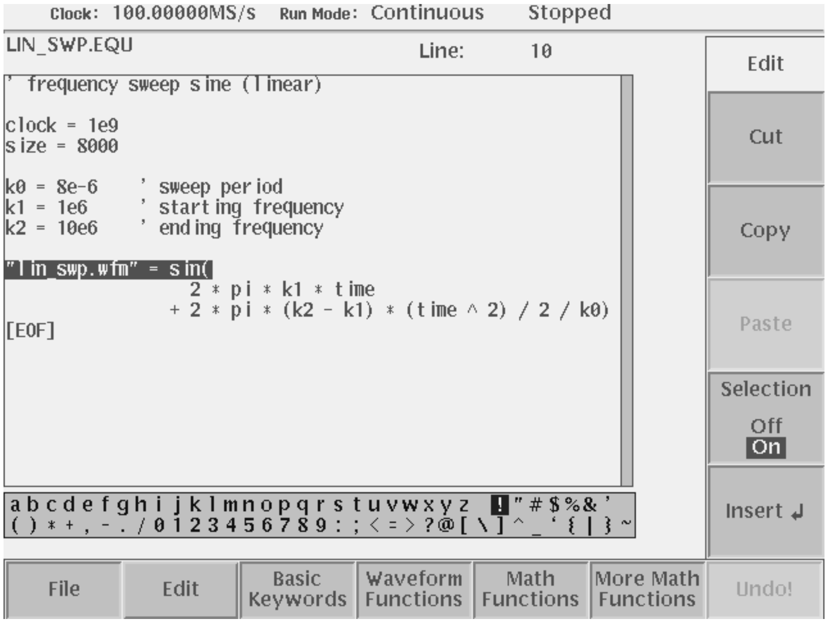
Figure 2-13: Input Filename dialog box

Table 2-2: Text input button functions

Control	Description
General purpose knob	Selects the character to insert into the text field.
◀ and ▶ arrow buttons	Moves the character insertion caret left or right in the text field.
▼ and ▲ arrow buttons	Changes the knob selection area the character palette and the filename list.
ENTER button	Inserts the selected character or character string into the text field.
← button	Deletes one character to the left of the caret.
CLR button	Clears the entire text field.
Numeric buttons	Enters numeric characters into the text field.
SHIFT button	Enters a selected character in upper case. When you push the SHIFT button, the SHIFT LED lights. When the dialog box disappears, the SHIFT LED also goes off.

Text Input in Text Editor and Equation Editor

You can enter and edit text also in Text Editor and in Equation Editor. You can enter text into several lines in Text Editor and Equation Editor.



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LIN_SWP.EQU Line: 10

```
' frequency sweep sine (linear)

clock = 1e9
size = 8000

k0 = 8e-6     ' sweep period
k1 = 1e6      ' starting frequency
k2 = 10e6     ' ending frequency

"lin_swp.wfm" = sin(
                  2 * pi * k1 * time
                + 2 * pi * (k2 - k1) * (time ^ 2) / 2 / k0)
[EOF]
```

Figure 2–14: Text/Equation Editor example

Table 2–3: Text input button functions in Text/Equation Editor

Control	Description
General purpose knob	Selects the character to insert into the text field.
◀ and ▶ arrow buttons	Moves the character insertion caret left or right in the text field.
▼ and ▲ arrow buttons	Moves the character insertion caret up or down in the text field.
ENTER button	Inserts the selected character or character string into the text field.
← button	Deletes one character to the left of the caret.
CLR button	Not Available
Numeric buttons	Enters numeric characters into the text field.
SHIFT button	Toggle upper case and lower case in the text field. LED is on when upper case is selected.

Carriage return input. There is no carriage return key on the front panel. Push **EDIT** (main) → **Insert ↵** (side) to enter carriage return.

Selecting several words. You will want to select several words at a time for copying and pasting. Do the following steps to select several words.

1. Push **EDIT** (bottom) → **Selection** (side) to select **On**.
2. Use ◀ and ▶ arrow buttons to select the words for copying.

Shortcut Controls

Figure 2–15 shows the shortcut buttons and knobs that control specific instrument setup parameters. Using the shortcut controls lets you adjust the output setup parameters even while you are displaying another menu. Table 2–4 describes the shortcut controls.

Shortcut Controls

Figure 2–15 shows the shortcut buttons and knobs that control specific instrument setup parameters. Using the shortcut controls lets you adjust the output setup parameters even while you are displaying another menu. Table 2–4 describes the shortcut controls.

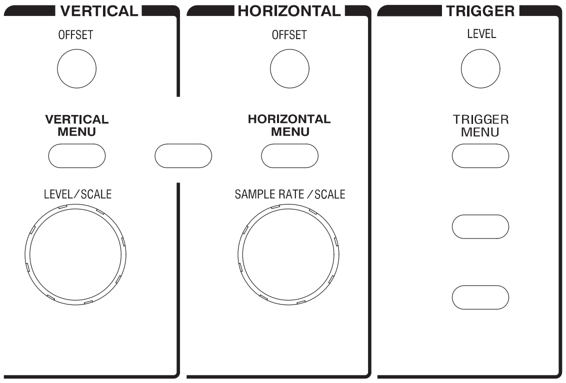
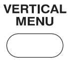
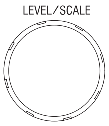
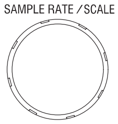
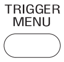


Figure 2–15: Shortcut controls

Table 2–4: Shortcut controls

Controls	Description
VERTICAL	
	Displays the Vertical side menu. This is the same operation as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom).
	Adjusts the vertical offset parameters. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Offset** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.
	Adjusts the amplitude parameters. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.
HORIZONTAL	
	Displays the Horizontal side menu. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom).
	Adjusts the clock setting. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.
TRIGGER	
	Displays the Trigger side menu. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom).
	Adjusts the trigger level setting. This is the same as selecting **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Level** (side), and then turning the general purpose knob.

File Management

This section is an overview of the instrument commands and operations for doing file management tasks. Refer to *File Management* on page 3–245 for more information.

File Type Suffix. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator uses numerous file formats to hold different types of data. These file types are listed in Table 2–5. Note that the instrument checks the file format and processes the file based on its content, regardless of the file extension. For this reason, an extension is unnecessary to a file name, we recommend you to use an extension as a part of file name so that it is easy to distinguish for those who use.

Table 2–5: AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator file types

Waveform file	.wfm or .WFM file extension is used. Contains waveform data. All signal data must be in waveform format before it can be output. Created with the waveform editor, by compiling an equation file, or when importing waveforms from external equipment, and created waveform data by application.
Pattern file	.pat or .PAT file extension is used. Contains pattern data. Created with the pattern editor.
Sequence file	.seq or .SEQ file extension is used. Contains waveform sequence and trigger data. Created with the sequence editor.
Equation file	.equ or .EQU file extension is used. Contains equations that describe a waveform. Created with the equation/text editor.
Text file	.txt or .TXT file extension is used. Contains ASCII text. Created with the equation/text editor. And setting parameter file of APPL Digital Modulation.
Setup file	.set or .SET file extension is used. Contains instrument setup and configuration data of both AWG and FG mode. Created from the SETUP menu.

Locating Files. There are three locations for storing waveform data on the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator. Data can be stored on the instrument hard disk drive, the instrument floppy disk drive, or a remote storage device accessible through the Ethernet interface. If the file you want to load is not on the current drive, use the EDIT menu main screen **Drive** and **Directory** bottom menu buttons to open side menus that let you change the current drive location. Table 2–6 describes the Drive and Directory bottom buttons.

Table 2–6: Drive and Directory menus

Bottom menu	Side menu	Description
Drive	Main Floppy Net1 Net2 Net3	Changes the instrument current drive. To select a drive, push the appropriate side menu button. Note that there must be a floppy disk inserted in the instrument floppy disk drive to select the floppy drive. Note that the label Net1, Net2 and Net3 vary depending on the net name settings in the UTILITY menu.
Directory	Up Level	Moves up a directory level.
	Down Level	Moves down a directory level. To move down a directory level, select a directory name in the pop-up list, and then push the Down Level side button. The filename list changes to show the contents of the directory.
	Make Directory	Creates a directory at the current level. To create a directory, push the Make Directory side button to display the Input New Directory Name dialog box. Enter the directory name in the name field, then push the OK side button. The instrument creates the new directory.
	Archive	Creates a new file (.tar format) for archive from selected directory. The archived file keeps hierarchic structure.
	Extract	Restore the archived file (.tar) to the current directory.

***NOTE**. In the following procedures, you may have to push the EDIT button twice to quit the editor. When the instrument does not display the file list, try to push the EDIT button again. If you are prompted, refer to* Saving Files *on page 2–22.*

Copying Files

You can copy the files in double window or in single window. In double window, the selected file in the active window will be copied into the other window using Copy button.

Copying files in double windows. Do the following steps to copy the files selected in the active window:

1. Push **EDIT** (front) button and select the file to copy.
2. Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window** (side) to select **Double**.

   Two file windows are displayed.
3. Push **Select** (side) to select the active window.
4. Push **Directory** (bottom)→**Up Level**, **Down Level**, or **Make Directory** (side) to select the destination.

5. Push **Select** (side) to activate the window in which the file is in to be copied and then select the file.
6. Push **File** (bottom)→**Copy** (side) to copy the file to the destination as the same file name.

   If the directory name is the same as the destination directory name, you will be asked to confirm to overwrite the file.

Copying files in single window. Do the following steps to copy the files selected in single window.

1. Push **EDIT** (front) button and select the file to copy.
2. Push **File** (bottom)→**Copy** (side) and select the file name and also destination.
3. Push **OK** (side) to copy the file.

   The file is copied and renamed.

***NOTE**. You can copy a file or all files in another way. Refer to Double Windows on page 2–26, for those methods.*

Moving Files

You can move the file in double window. Do the following steps to move the file:

1. Push **EDIT** (front) button and select the file to copy.
2. Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window** (side) to select **Double**.

   Two file windows are displayed.
3. Push **Select** (side) to select the active window.
4. Push **Directory** (bottom)→**Up Level**, **Down Level**, or **Make Directory** (side) to select the destination.
5. Push **Select** (side) to activate the window in which the file is in to be moved and then select the file.
6. Push **File** (bottom)→**Move** (side) to move the file to the destination.

   If the directory name is the same as the destination directory name, you will be asked to confirm to overwrite the file.

Renaming Files

Renaming files is done from the EDIT menu screen. Do the following steps to rename a file:

1. Push **EDIT** (front).

   The instrument displays the file list.

2. Select the file to rename.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Rename** (side).
4. Enter the new name for the file in the file name field.
5. Push **OK** (side).

   The file is renamed.

Deleting Files

You can delete a file or directory at the location of the cursor. Do the following steps to delete a file:

***NOTE**. You cannot delete a file or directory if the file or directory is set to 'read only'. Also, you cannot delete a directory if the directory is not empty.*

---

1. Push **EDIT** (front).

   The instrument displays the file list.

2. Select the file to delete.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Delete** (side). The instrument displays a message box asking you to confirm deleting the file.
4. Push **OK** (side) to delete the file, or **Cancel** to cancel the operation and keep the file.

You can also delete all files on the current drive and directory by doing the following steps:

1. Push **EDIT** (front)→**File** (bottom)→**Delete All** (side).

   The instrument displays a message box asking you to confirm deleting all files.

2. Push **OK** (side) to delete all files, or **Cancel** to cancel the operation and keep all files.

Read Only Attribute

You can change the read only or read/write attributes on a file. Do the following steps to change the file attribute:

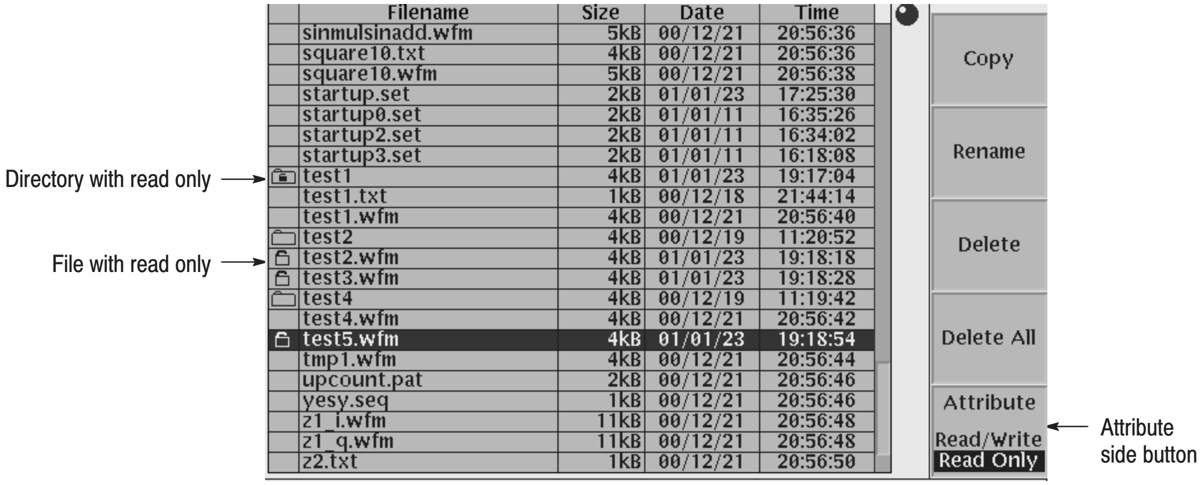
1. Push **EDIT** (front).

   The instrument displays the file list.

2. Select the file to change the attribute.
3. Push **File** (bottom)→**Attribute *xxxx*** (side).

The ***xxxx*** is the **Read/Write** or **Read Only** attribute of the selected file. Pushing this side button immediately changes the file attribute.

The file with a read only attribute is marked by 🔒 , and the directory by 🗂 . See Figure 2–16.



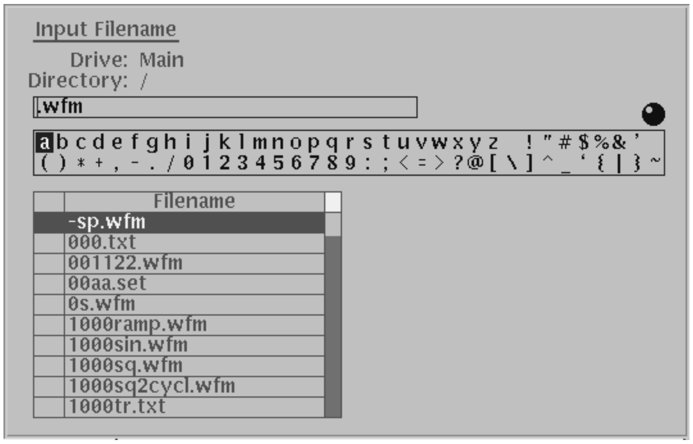
	Filename	Size	Date	Time
	sinmulsinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
	square10.txt	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
	square10.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:38
	startup.set	2kB	01/01/23	17:25:30
	startup0.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:35:26
	startup2.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:34:02
	startup3.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:18:08
🗂	test1	4kB	01/01/23	19:17:04
	test1.txt	1kB	00/12/18	21:44:14
	test1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:40
📁	test2	4kB	00/12/19	11:20:52
🔒	test2.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:18:18
🔒	test3.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:18:28
📁	test4	4kB	00/12/19	11:19:42
	test4.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:42
🔒	test5.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:18:54
	tmp1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:44
	upcount.pat	2kB	00/12/21	20:56:46
	yesy.seq	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:46
	z1_i.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:48
	z1_q.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:48
	z2.txt	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:50

Figure 2–16: Files and directories with read only attribute

Saving Files

File saving is done from within each editor screen. You have the choice of saving your waveform data to the current file name or to a new file name. To save a waveform to its current file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save** (pop-up)→ **OK** (side).

If you are saving a waveform for the first time, the instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–17. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a different storage media or directory by pushing the **Drive...** side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.



Drive: Main
Directory: /
.wfm

-sp.wfm
000.txt
001122.wfm
00aa.set
0s.wfm
1000ramp.wfm
1000sin.wfm
1000sq.wfm
1000sq2cycl.wfm
1000tr.txt

Figure 2–17: Input Filename dialog box

***NOTE**. When you exit an editor without saving edited data, the instrument displays the message **Save the changes you made?** Push the **Yes** side button to save the waveform data.*

To save waveform data to a new file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save As** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–17. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a storage media or directory by pushing the **Drive...** side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

If you are saving a file with a record length larger than 64 data points, the instrument needs to adjust the record length to meet internal memory record length requirements. The instrument displays one of the messages shown in Table 2–7. Select one of the messages and push the **OK** side button to accept the recommended change, or cancel the save and then edit the file to satisfy the data record length requirements.

Table 2–7: Waveform record length adjustment messages

Message	Description
Leave as it is	The data is saved, as it is, without making changes. The instrument will display an error message if you try to load a file that does not meet the instrument waveform constraints.
Append 0	With Level-0 data added after the data, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created.
Expand	With the waveform data expanded, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created.

Table 2-7: Waveform record length adjustment messages (cont.)

Message	Description
Expand with Clock	With the waveform data expanded, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created. In addition, the clock frequency increases without change in scaling factor. The settings are saved in the file.
Repeat	With repetitions of the original data linked, a file with a data length meeting the requirements is created.

Archive and Extract Files

To archive or extract files, do the following steps.

Archive. When you select Directory in the file list, you can make archives for all the files in the directory and subdirectory.

1. Push **EDIT** (front).

   The instrument displays the file list.

2. Select the file to make archive files.
3. Push **Directory** (bottom)→**Archive** (side).

   The instrument displays the Input archive name dialog box. By default, the name of <directory name>.tar is automatically assigned. If necessary, you can change the name.

4. Push **OK** button, and the archive file will be created in the current directory.

Extract. The archived file is extracted (restored) to the current directory. If the directory already exists, the existing file will be overwritten.

1. Push **EDIT** (front).

   The instrument displays the file list.

2. Select the file to extract.
3. Push **Directory** (bottom)→**Extract** (side).

   The instrument extracts the archived files and directories to current directory.

Remote computer archive operation. AWG400-Series uses .tar format files. Use the **tar** command when you archive with a remote computer environment. If you are PC user, use **tar** format archive tool.

The following list describes some restrictions on archive and extract operation.

- Blocking factor is 20.
- The file name including the file path in the directory is up to 100.
- The depth of directory hierarchy is up to 16.

Use the following command to make archive file:

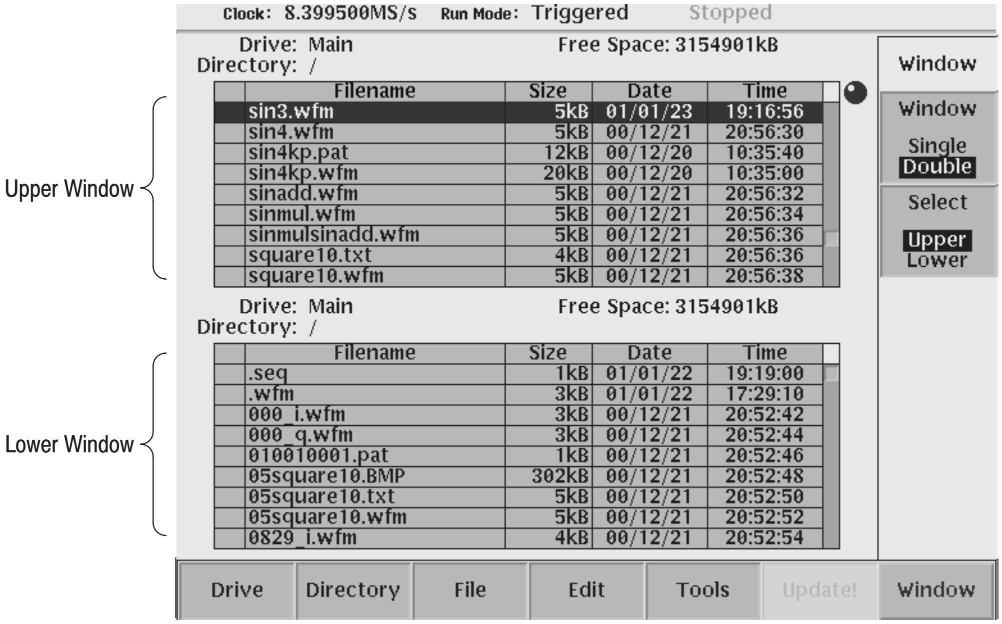
```
tar [–] cvf <tar file name> <file name or directory name>
```

Use the following command to extract archive file:

```
tar [–] xvf <tar file name>
```

Double Windows

When the **Window** bottom button is displayed, you can divide the file list in the Edit Screen into two lists as shown in Figure 2–18. This function is called Double Windows.



Clock: 8.399500MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154901kB
Directory: /

Filename	Size	Date	Time
sin3.wfm	5kB	01/01/23	19:16:56
sin4.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:30
sin4kp.pat	12kB	00/12/20	10:35:40
sin4kp.wfm	20kB	00/12/20	10:35:00
sinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:32
sinmul.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:34
sinmulsinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
square10.txt	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
square10.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:38

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154901kB
Directory: /

Filename	Size	Date	Time
.seq	1kB	01/01/22	19:19:00
.wfm	3kB	01/01/22	17:29:10
000_i.wfm	3kB	00/12/21	20:52:42
000_q.wfm	3kB	00/12/21	20:52:44
010010001.pat	1kB	00/12/21	20:52:46
05square10.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:52:48
05square10.txt	5kB	00/12/21	20:52:50
05square10.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:52:52
0829_i.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:52:54

Figure 2–18: Double Windows

In Double Windows, for example, you can display the file list of the hard disk and then the list of the floppy disk , or the file list of a directory and then one on an another directory. All the functions invoked from the bottom buttons operate the same in single window except for the **File** function.

The most important functions to be used in two file lists displayed at the same time are Copy and Move file operations. These operations are discussed in *Window Operation* below.

Window Operation

The windows are named Upper and Lower windows as indicated in Figure 2–18. You should select a window for operation.

When you push **EDIT** (front) → **Window** (bottom), the Window side button appears. Push the **Window** side button to select **Double**. Double windows are displayed. Push the **Window** side button once more to select **Single**. The display returns to the single file list.

When you display the double windows, the **Select** side button will be available. Push the **Select** side button to select **Upper** for file operation in the upper file list window. Push the **Select** side button once more to select **Lower** for file operation in the lower file list window.

Operation in Double Windows

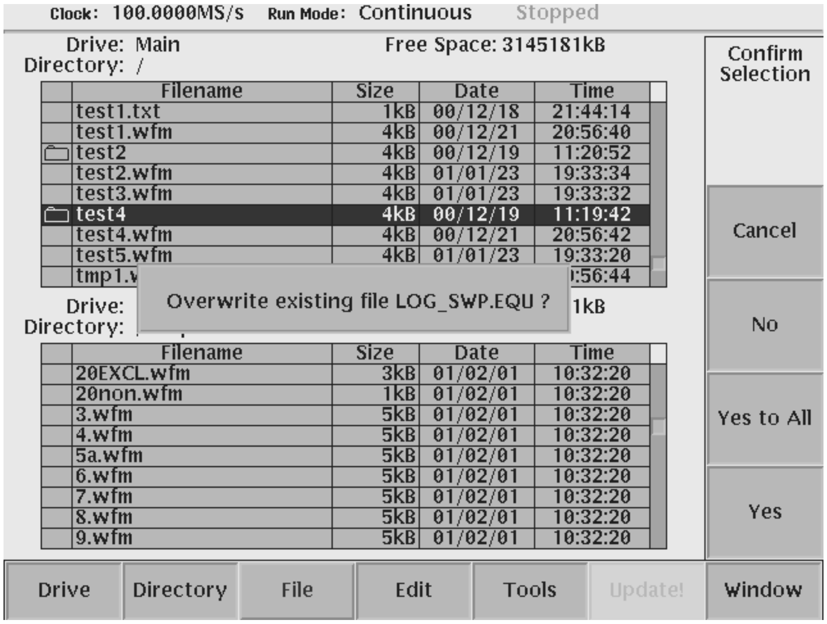
The most useful functions to be used in the double windows may be those invoked from the **File** bottom button. The functions available in the **File** bottom button are described in Table 2–8.

Table 2–8: File operation in double windows

Operation	Description
Copy	Copies a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Copy All	Copies all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot copy the directory or directory structure.
Move	Moves a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Move All	Moves all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot move the directory or directory structure.

***NOTE**. You cannot use the **Rename**, **Delete**, **Delete All**, and **Attribute** side buttons unless you display the single file list window.*

In copy or move operation, when the files with the same file name exist in the destination, the message *Overwrite existing file <filename>* appears. At the same time, the **Cancel, No, Yes to All** and **Yes** side buttons appears. Press any of those side buttons to proceed the operation. See Table 2–9.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main
Directory: /
Free Space: 3145181kB

	Filename	Size	Date	Time
	test1.txt	1kB	00/12/18	21:44:14
	test1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:40
🗀	test2	4kB	00/12/19	11:20:52
	test2.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:34
	test3.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:32
🗀	test4	4kB	00/12/19	11:19:42
	test4.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:42
	test5.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:20
	tmp1.v			:56:44

Overwrite existing file LOG_SWP.EQU ?

Drive:
Directory:
1kB

	Filename	Size	Date	Time
	20EXCL.wfm	3kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	20non.wfm	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	3.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	4.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	5a.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	6.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	7.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	8.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20
	9.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:20

Figure 2–19: Overwrite confirmation

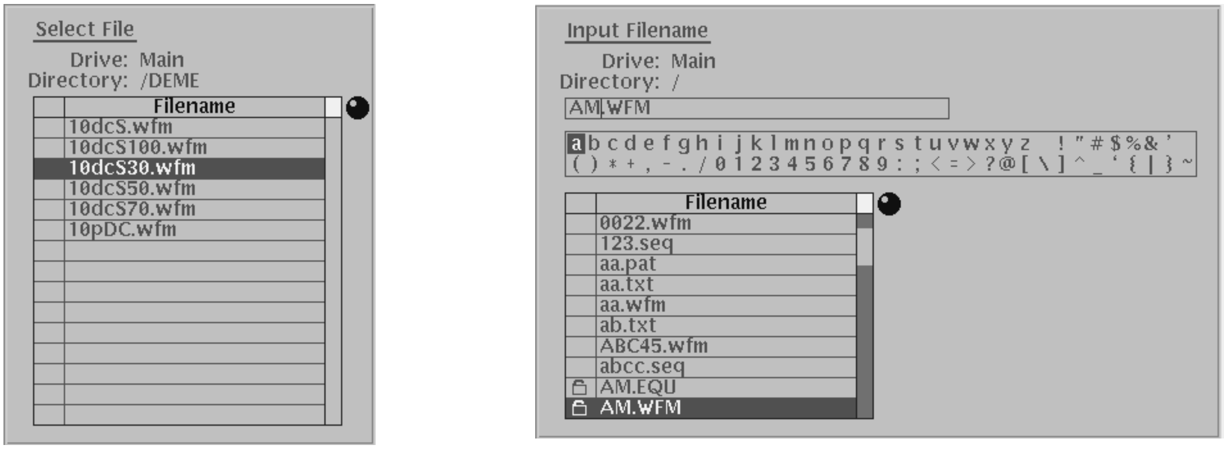
Table 2–9: Confirmation selection for copy-all and move-all operations

Side menu	Description
Cancel	Cancels and stops copy or move operation.
No	Skips the copy or move operation for the file indicated in the message.
Yes to All	Overwrites all the files without displaying any messages until the operation is finished.
Yes	Overwrites the file indicated in the message and proceeds with the operation.

You cannot copy or move the directory. In copy-all or move-all operation, the message *Directory cannot be copied* appears if you try to move or copy a directory. Press the **OK** side button to confirm and proceed with the operation.

Quick View

Before loading or handling a file, you sometimes want to look at the content of a file to confirm the operation. The quick view function displays the view window and allows you to view a waveform or pattern file selected in a file list. This function is always available when a file list is displayed on the screen. See Figure 2–20.



Select File

Drive: Main
Directory: /DEME

Filename
10dcS.wfm
10dcS100.wfm
10dcS30.wfm
10dcS50.wfm
10dcS70.wfm
10pDC.wfm

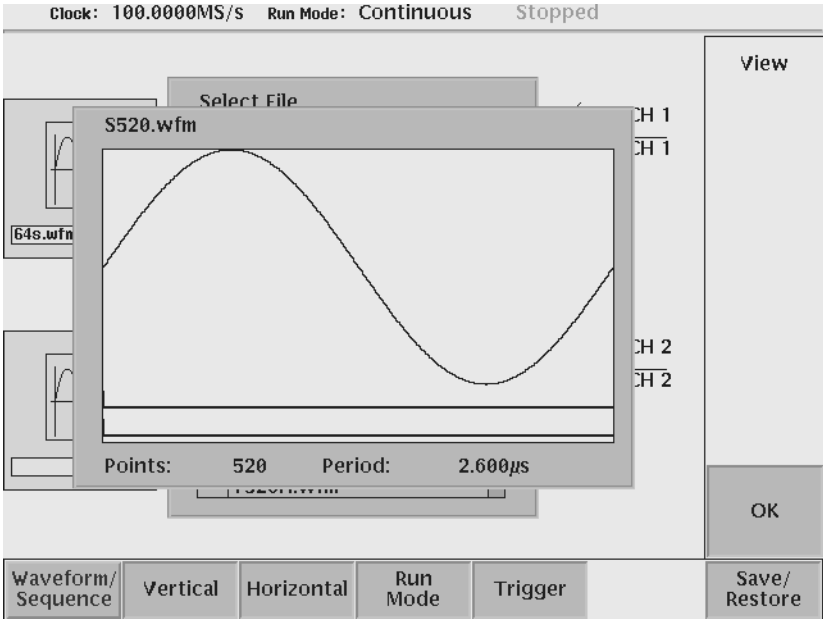
Input Filename

Drive: Main
Directory: /
AM.WFM

Filename
0022.wfm
123.seq
aa.pat
aa.txt
aa.wfm
ab.txt
ABC45.wfm
abcc.seq
AM.EQU
AM.WFM

Figure 2–20: File list window examples in which Quick View is available

Select a file from the file list window using the general purpose knob. Press the **SHIFT** and **ENTER** front-panel buttons simultaneously. The view window displaying the waveform or pattern appears as shown in Figure 2–21.


Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

S520.wfm

Points: 520 Period: 2.600µs

Figure 2–21: Viewing a file by Quick View function

Push the **OK** side menu button to close the view window. You cannot view files other than waveform or pattern in this function.

This function is always available when a file list window or file list dialog box is displayed on the screen.

Editor Overview

This section introduces the editor screen, describes the screen elements, and discusses concepts common to most of the editors. Refer to the *Reference* section for more detailed information about each waveform editor.

This section also provides an overview of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform editors. There are five editors that provide the tools for creating simple or complicated waveforms. Having more than one editor allows you to create waveforms using your preferred method or the one best suited to the waveform type.

The Edit menu, displayed by pushing the EDIT front-panel button, is the main way to open editors. Most of the editor screens have common elements except for the Sequence and Equation editors.

Editor Modes

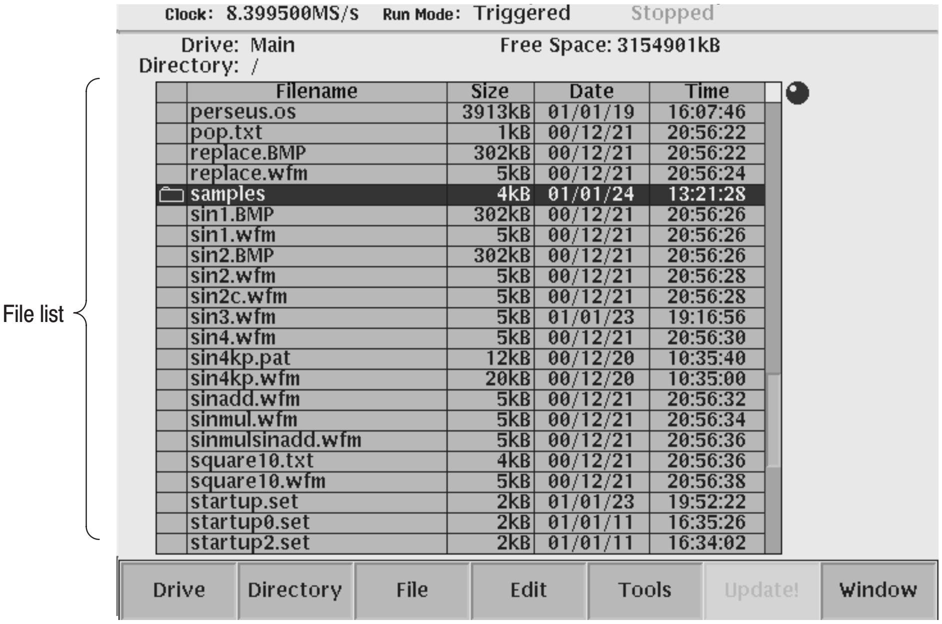
The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator provides five editor modes, as listed in Table 2–10. These editors let you create, edit, and sequence waveforms using the technique best suited to your waveform. You can access these editors through the main Edit screen, which is described on page 2–31.

Table 2–10: Editors

Editors	Description
Waveform Editor	Creates and edits analog waveforms.
Quick Editor	Lets you modify and/or output, in real time, any part of a waveform you are currently editing with the Waveform Editor.
Pattern Editor	Creates and edits digital waveform patterns.
Sequence Editor	Creates and edits tables that define the sequence and control conditions for outputting one or more waveforms.
Text/Equation Editor	Creates, edits, and compiles equation waveform definitions into a waveform file. You can also use this editor to edit ASCII-format waveform data files created by other equipment (such as Tektronix Digital Sampling oscilloscopes).

Main Edit Screen

To display the main Edit screen, push the **EDIT** front-panel button. If there is no waveform file currently loaded into the edit buffer, the instrument displays the main Edit screen and a list of files in the current drive, as shown in Figure 2–22. Table 2–11 lists the bottom menu button functions. If there is a waveform loaded for editing, the screen will show the loaded waveform in the appropriate editor.



Clock: 8.399500MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154901kB

Directory: /

	Filename	Size	Date	Time
	perseus.os	3913kB	01/01/19	16:07:46
	pop.txt	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:22
	replace.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:56:22
	replace.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:24
🗀	samples	4kB	01/01/24	13:21:28
	sin1.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:56:26
	sin1.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:26
	sin2.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:56:26
	sin2.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:28
	sin2c.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:28
	sin3.wfm	5kB	01/01/23	19:16:56
	sin4.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:30
	sin4kp.pat	12kB	00/12/20	10:35:40
	sin4kp.wfm	20kB	00/12/20	10:35:00
	sinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:32
	sinmul.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:34
	sinmulsinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
	square10.txt	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
	square10.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:38
	startup.set	2kB	01/01/23	19:52:22
	startup0.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:35:26
	startup2.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:34:02

Figure 2–22: Main Edit screen

Table 2–11: Edit screen bottom menu buttons

Button	Description
Drive	Specifies the current drive to use for loading or storing waveform files.
Directory	Lets you navigate and create directories on the current drive.
File	Lets you copy, rename, delete, and assign attributes to files on the current drive.
Edit	Displays the Edit side menu for editing existing or new waveform files.
Tools	Displays the Tools side menu for importing and converting file data.
Update!	Updates the waveform file name list of the network drive.
Window	Lets you open a single window or double window that displays a file list of a specified directory or drive. Refer to page 2–26 for information about double windows.

Loading a Waveform File to Edit

The default Edit screen displays a list of files in the current drive. To load a file and open an editor window, use the general purpose knob or the front-panel arrow buttons to highlight a file name. Then push the **ENTER** front-panel button. The instrument loads the selected file and opens the editor appropriate for that file type. You can also edit an existing file by selecting the file in the list, pushing the **Edit** bottom button, then pushing the **Edit** side button. This process takes two more steps than that described previously. If the file you want to edit is located in a different directory of the hard disk drive, on a floppy disk, or on a network drive, use the bottom menu **Drive**, **Directory**, and **File** buttons to change the current drive and load a file from another location. Refer to *File Management* on page 2–18 for information on locating and saving files.

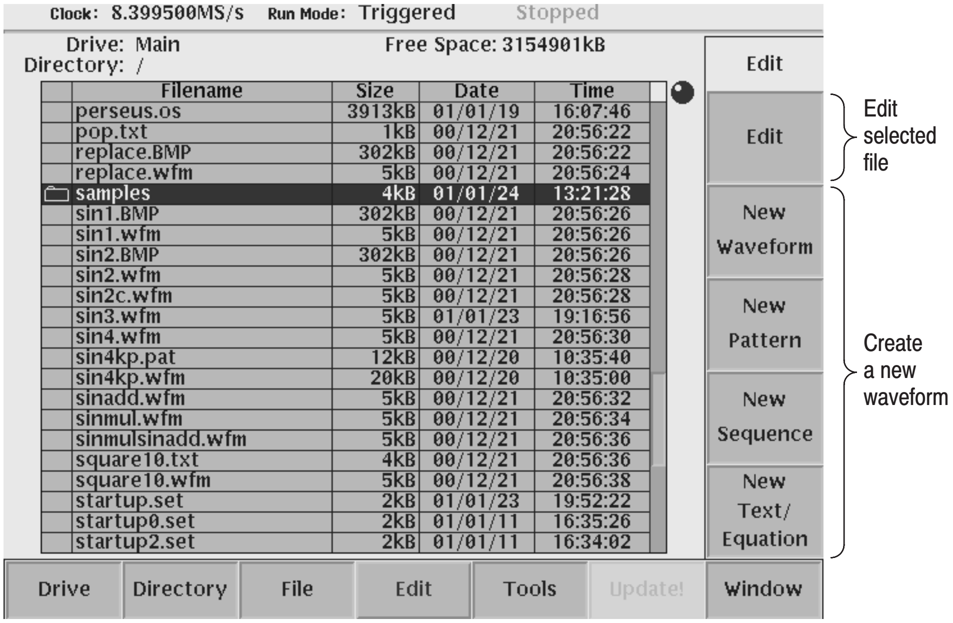
***NOTE**. There are waveform data restrictions derived from the instrument waveform memory block size. The waveform memory is internally divided into blocks, each of which contains 64 data points. For example, a 512-point waveform uses 8 memory blocks (512 / 64 = 8 blocks with no remainder) for a total of 512 points. However, a 520-point waveform uses 9 memory blocks (512 points in blocks 1 through 8 plus 8 points in block 9) for a total of 576 points.*

Therefore, the required waveform memory size can be as much as 56 data points larger than the actual file data point size.

As a result, you may be unable to output a waveform even if the total number of points of the output waveform is less than 4,050,000. Or when Option 01 is used, even if the total of an output waveform is less than 16,200,000, you may be unable to output a waveform. This is especially true for sequence tables containing multiple waveform files.

Creating a New Waveform

To create a new waveform file, push the Edit bottom menu button. This displays the Edit side menu items as shown in Figure 2–23. Table 2–12 provides an overview of the Edit side menu button functions.



Clock: 8.399500MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154901kB
Directory: /

Filename	Size	Date	Time
perseus.os	3913kB	01/01/19	16:07:46
pop.txt	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:22
replace.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:56:22
replace.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:24
samples	4kB	01/01/24	13:21:28
sin1.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:56:26
sin1.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:26
sin2.BMP	302kB	00/12/21	20:56:26
sin2.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:28
sin2c.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:28
sin3.wfm	5kB	01/01/23	19:16:56
sin4.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:30
sin4kp.pat	12kB	00/12/20	10:35:40
sin4kp.wfm	20kB	00/12/20	10:35:00
sinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:32
sinmul.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:34
sinmulsinadd.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
square10.txt	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:36
square10.wfm	5kB	00/12/21	20:56:38
startup.set	2kB	01/01/23	19:52:22
startup0.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:35:26
startup2.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:34:02

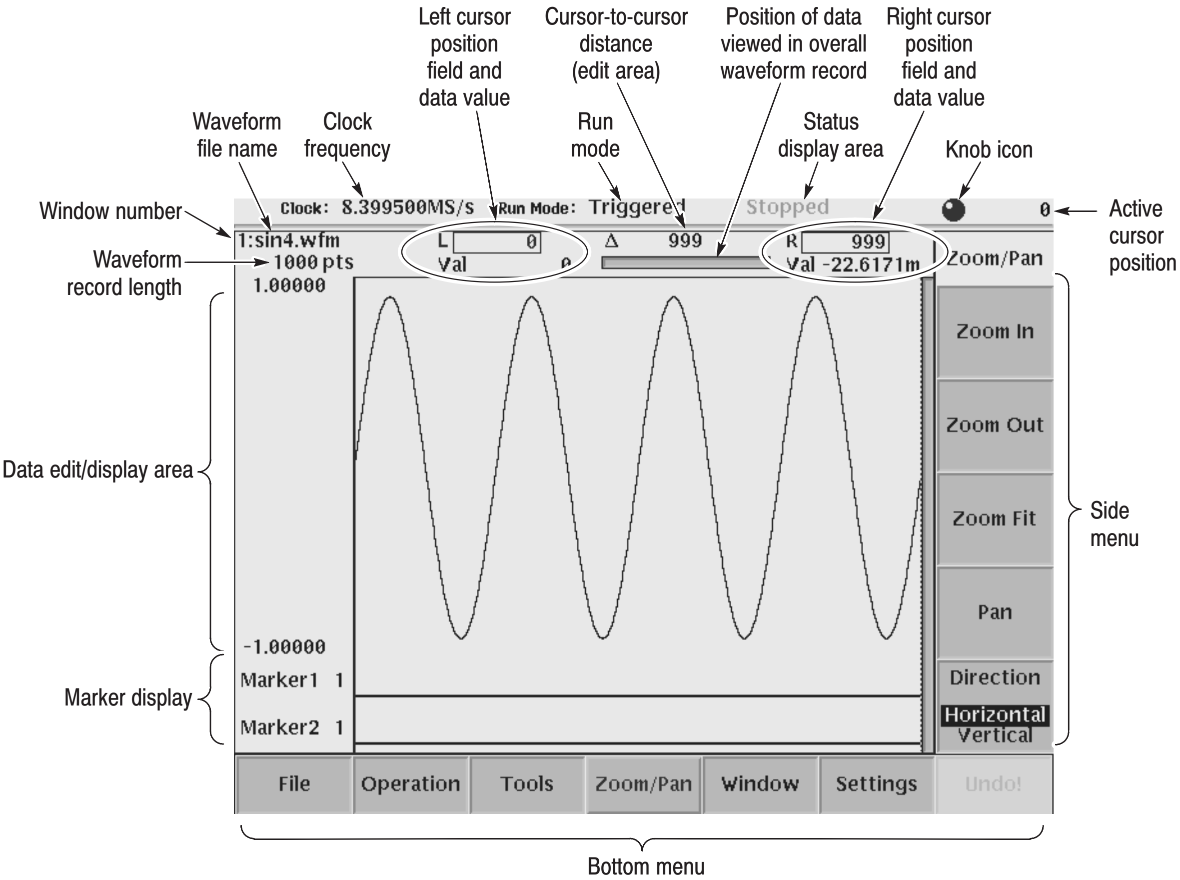
Figure 2–23: Edit top level menu screen with Edit side menu

Table 2–12: Edit side menu buttons

Button	Description
Edit	Loads the selected waveform file and opens the appropriate editor screen.
New Waveform	Opens a new Waveform Editor screen.
New Pattern	Opens a new Pattern Editor screen.
New Sequence	Opens a new Sequence Editor screen.
New Text/Equation	Opens a new Equation Editor screen.

Editor Screen Elements

Figure 2–24 shows elements that are common to many of the editor screens. What elements are in an editor depends on which editor is open. The *Reference* section describes each editor in detail. Refer to Figure 2–24 to familiarize yourself with the common screen elements of most of the editors.



Clock: 8.399500MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped 0

1:sin4.wfm

1000 pts

L 0

Val 0

Δ 999

R 999

Val -22.6171m

Figure 2–24: Editor screen elements

Cursors and Editing

The edit window cursors define the data affected by all edit operations except the Tools menu commands. Most of the edit commands affect the data located between the left and right cursor positions. This region is called the edit area or scope. Figure 2–25 shows an example of an edit area. In this example, all data is located from left cursor position 290 to right cursor position 782.

Other edit operations use the active (selected) cursor position for inserting waveform data. The active cursor is shown as a solid vertical line. The inactive cursor is shown as a dashed vertical line.

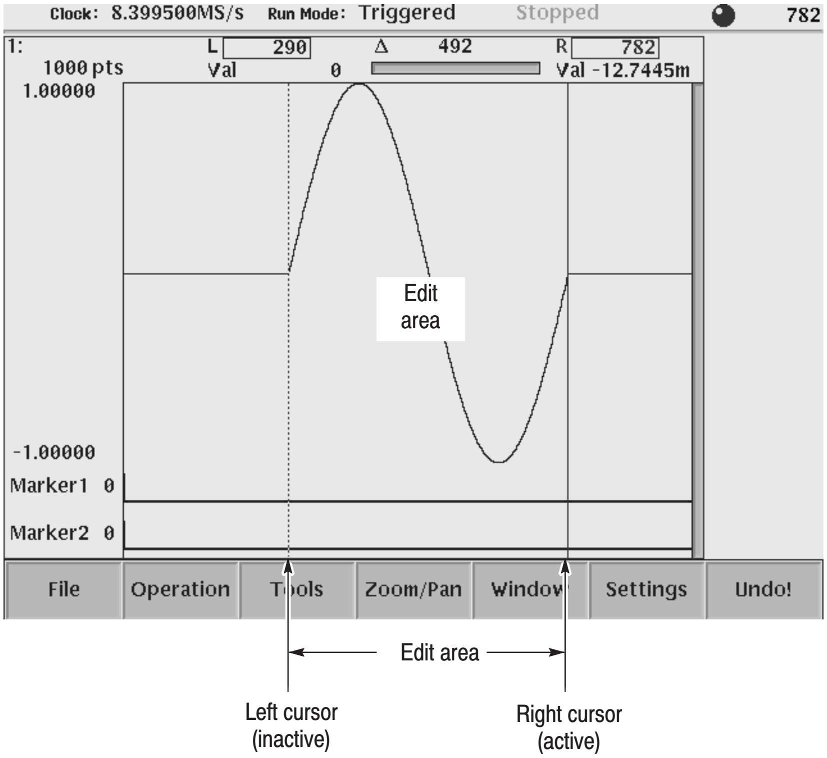


Figure 2–25: Cursors and edit area

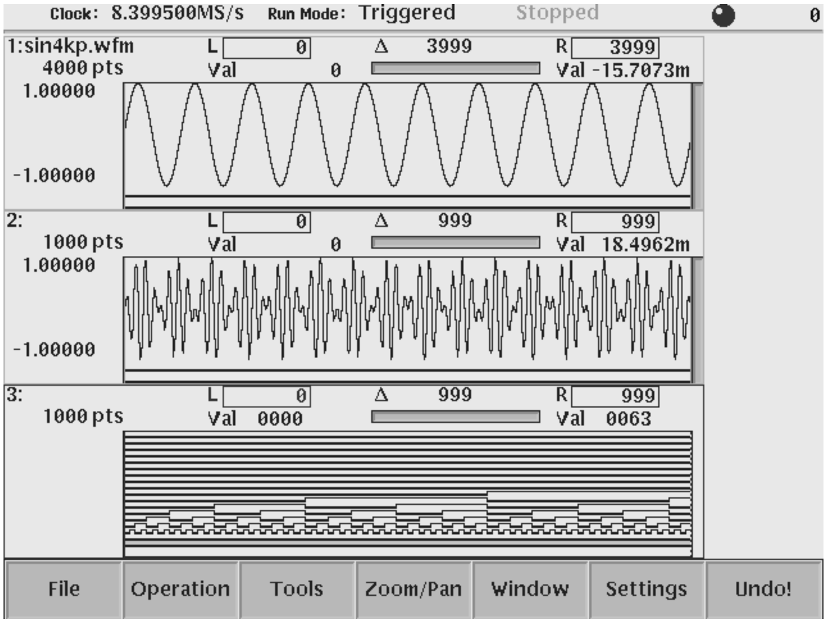
When you edit a waveform, you must first specify the edit area or a single cursor position, depending on the operation you want to do. To select the active cursor, push the **TOGGLE** front-panel button to switch between the left and right cursor. To move a cursor, turn the general purpose knob, use the left or right arrow keys, or use the keypad or keyboard to enter a position in the cursor position field. The cursor position field is active when the corresponding cursor is active.

Following are more cursor operations that are available by using the **SHIFT** button on the front-panel:

- Push the **SHIFT** front-panel button then turn the general purpose knob to accelerate the cursor transfer speed.
- Push the **SHIFT** front-panel button then push the **TOGGLE** front-panel button to move the inactive cursor to the active cursor position (the two cursors overlap).
- Push the **SHIFT** front-panel button then push the **ENTER** front-panel button to move left cursor to 0 point and to move the right cursor to the maximum point.

Multiple Editor Windows

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can open and edit up to three waveform and/or pattern files, in any combination. The wave data is displayed in separate windows, with each window stacked vertically on the screen. Multiple editor windows are very useful for creating a new waveform by cutting and pasting waveform data from other files. Figure 2–26 shows an example of three opened editor windows (one pattern and two waveform files).



Clock: 8.399500MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped 0

1:sin4kp.wfm 4000 pts L 0 Δ 3999 R 3999 Val 0 Val -15.7073m

2: 1000 pts L 0 Δ 999 R 999 Val 0 Val 18.4962m

3: 1000 pts L 0 Δ 999 R 999 Val 0000 Val 0063

Figure 2–26: Multiple editor windows

***NOTE**. You cannot open a sequence, text, or equation file from within the Waveform or Pattern Editor. If you are in the Waveform or Pattern Editor, you must exit to the EDIT main screen and then load the sequence, text, or equation file.*

Some editor information is not displayed when three Waveform editor windows are open.

Opening Multiple Editor Windows. Do the following steps to load waveform data file into an editor window:

1. From the editor screen, push **File** (bottom)→**Open...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Select File dialog box appears. If you cannot select the Open... menu item, you already have three windows opened.

2. Select a waveform or pattern file from the Select File list.

   If necessary, use the **Drive...** side menu to select the storage drive where the file to load is located.

3. Push the **OK** side button.

   The instrument opens a new window for the waveform or pattern data, stacking the windows vertically to fit on the screen. If you attempt to load a sequence, text, or equation file, you will receive an error message.

Creating a New Waveform or Pattern in a Multiple Editor Window. To create a new empty Waveform or Pattern Editor window, push **File** (bottom)→ **New Waveform** or **New Pattern** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument opens a new window for the waveform or pattern editor, stacking the windows vertically to fit on the screen. If you cannot select the New Waveform or New Pattern pop-up menu item, you already have three editor windows opened.

Selecting the Active Edit Window. Although you can have up to three open editor windows, you can only do editing tasks in one window at a time. To select the active window, push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side). All editing operations will affect the waveform data in that window until you change to another editor window.

Closing the Selected and Unselected Windows. You can close the selected or unselected windows by using the Window menus. Push **Window** (bottom) **Close Selected Window** or **Close Unselected Window** (side).

A message will be displayed if you attempt to close a window that when the file has not been saved.

Quitting Editors

You can quit an editor by using either the File bottom button or the EDIT front-panel button.

Using the File Bottom Menu.

1. Push **File** (bottom)→**Close** (pop-up) to quit the waveform and pattern editors

   or

   push **File** (bottom)→**Close** (side) to quit the sequence and text/equation editors.

2. If you have made no modifications to the data, the editor is immediately exited. If you have made modifications, the message box *Save the changes you made?* appears. Push the **Yes**, **No**, or **Cancel** side button.

Using the EDIT Button.

1. Push **EDIT** button on the front-panel.

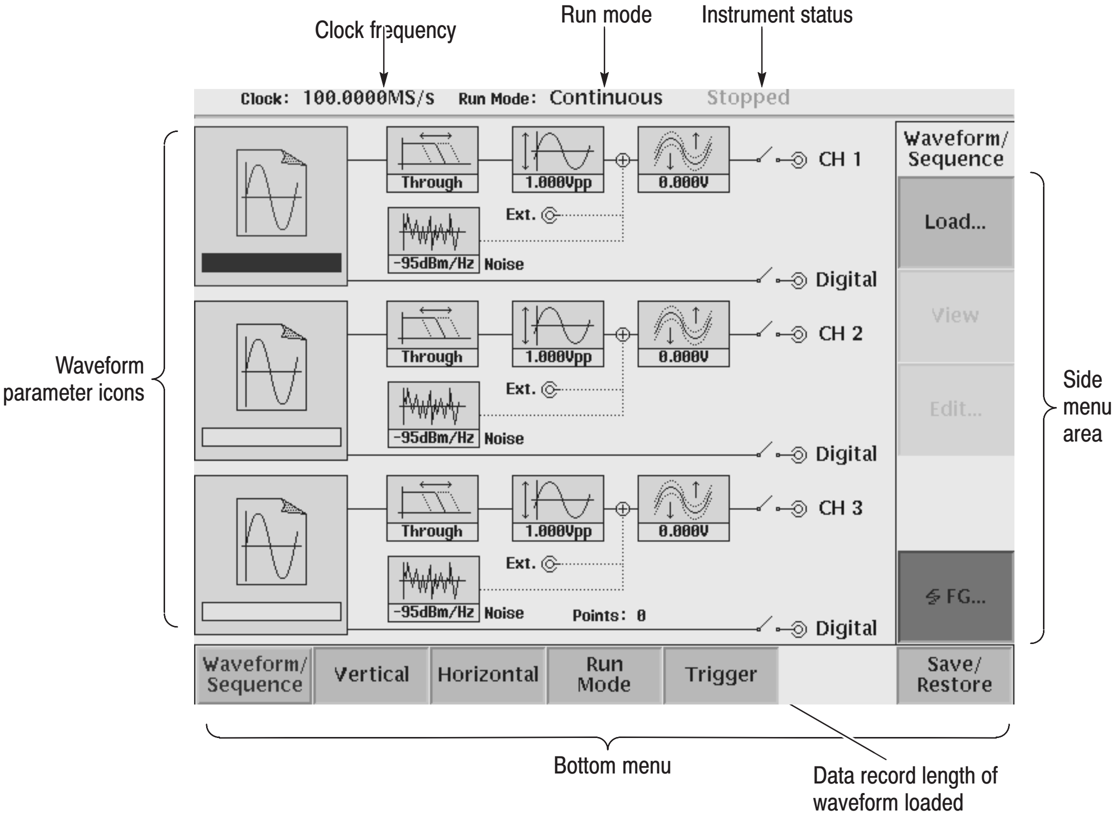
2. If you have made no modifications to the data, the editor is immediately exited. If you have not saved the data after modifications, the message box *Save the changes you made?* appears. Push **Yes**, **No**, or **Cancel** side button.

Setup Overview

The Setup screen is where you load and set up the waveform for output. This section gives you an overview of the Setup screen, how to load a file, how to set the signal output parameters, and how to enable signal output. Refer to *The Setup Menu Screen* on page 3–33 in the *Reference* section for more information.

Main Setup Screen

Push the **SETUP** front-panel button to display the main Setup screen. See Figure 2–27. Table 2–13 describes the screen waveform parameter icons. Table 2–14 lists the bottom menu functions.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Points: 0

Figure 2–27: Main Setup screen (AWG430)

Table 2–13: Setup screen parameter icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
WFM File: cos1mhz.wfm	Displays the file name of the waveform, pattern, or sequence file loaded for output. Note: use the View button to display the loaded waveform.	-95dBm/Hz	Displays the noise signal level added.
10 MHz	Displays the lowpass filter setting through which the waveform is passed.	CH 1	Indicates that the channel output is enabled or disabled. If the switch is shown open, that channel output is disabled.
1.000Vpp	Displays the peak-to-peak signal amplitude setting.	Digital	Indicates that the digital output is enabled or disabled. If the switch is shown open, that digital output is disabled.
0.000V	Displays the signal offset setting.	Ext.	Displays the external input added.

Table 2–14: Setup bottom menu buttons

Bottom menu button	Description
Waveform/Sequence	Displays the side menu for loading, viewing, editing waveform files, and for entering the FG mode main screen.
Vertical	Displays the Vertical side menu for setting waveform peak-to-peak amplitude, offset, lowpass filter, and other output parameters.
Horizontal	Displays the Horizontal side menu for setting the clock source, clock frequency, clock reference and channel skew parameters.
Run Mode	Displays the Run Mode side menu for setting the instrument run mode. Refer to *The Run Modes Menu* in the *Reference* section on page 3–44 for an explanation of the different run modes.
Trigger	Displays the Trigger side menu for setting trigger source, slope, level, external trigger impedance, and interval parameters.
Save/Restore	Displays the Save/Restore side menu to save and restore setup output parameters.

Composition and Setup of Output Channel

Use the Setup menu to set up parameters for each channel as well as the instrument.

Setup the file to load, amplitude, and the run mode for each channel. Setup the Horizontal, Run Mode, and Trigger for the instrument.

See *The Waveform/Sequence Menu* subsection, on page 3–35 for information about selecting a channel. See the Multiple Editor Windows subsection on page 2–36 for information about editing multiple waveforms.

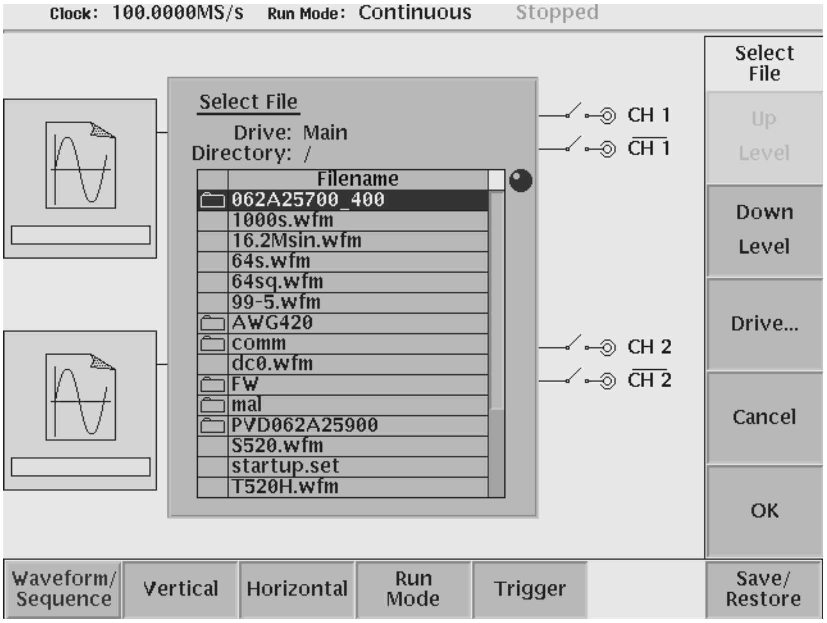
Loading a Waveform File to Output

Do the following steps to load a waveform file into the Setup screen:

1. Push the Waveform/Sequence bottom menu button.

   This opens the Waveform/Sequence side menu.

2. Push the **Load...** side button. The instrument opens the Select File list as shown in Figure 2–28.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Select File

Drive: Main

Directory: /

Figure 2–28: Setup Waveform/Sequence menu

3. Use the general purpose knob or arrow buttons to select the file name to load. If the file you want to load is located in a different drive or directory, use the side menu buttons to change the current drive.

4. Push the **ENTER** front-panel button or **OK** side button. The instrument loads the file and displays the file name in the selected channel file icon. Push the **Cancel** side button to exit the file load process.

The procedures above explains how to load a waveform or pattern into the waveform memory, and/or sequence file into the sequence memory, which will be scanned to output. The waveform memory, sequence memory and the edit buffer are completely independent. So, you can edit a waveform, pattern, sequence or equation/text while outputting an another waveform or sequence.

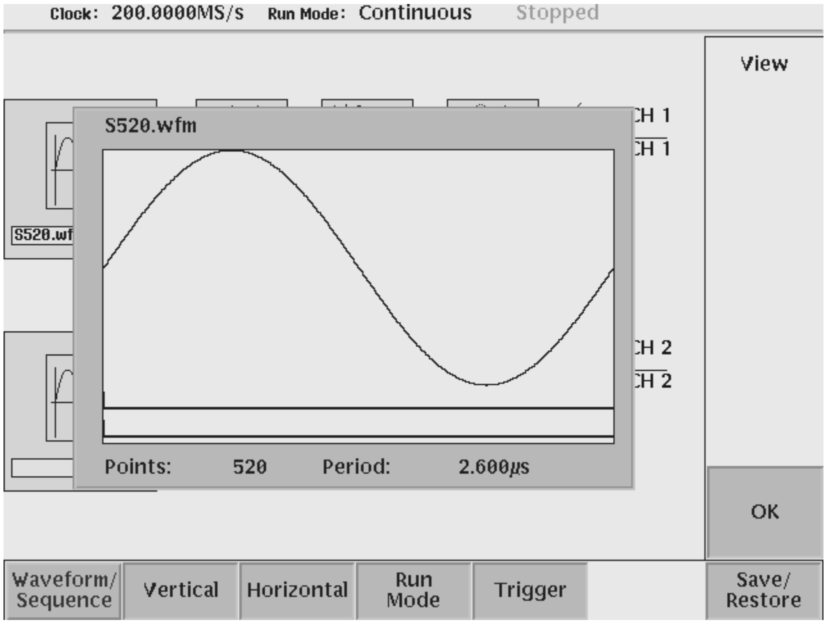
However, when you push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Edit** (side) to copy the waveform in the waveform memory to the edit buffer, you must save the currently edited waveform, pattern, sequence or equation/text into a file.

You can enter into the QUICK EDIT mode only from the waveform editor. When you enter into the quick edit mode, the instrument copies the data in the edit buffer into the undo buffer. All the changes you make immediately reflect to the data in the edit buffer, and also to the data in the waveform memory if that data is being loaded to output.

Before loading, you can view a waveform or pattern. Refer to *Quick View* on page 2–28 for more detail.

Viewing a Waveform

To view the loaded waveform file, push the **View** side menu button. The instrument opens a window on the screen that displays the waveform, as shown in Figure 2–29. Push the **OK** side menu button or **ENTER** front-panel button to close the view window.



Clock: 200.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

S520.wfm

Points: 520 Period: 2.600μs

Figure 2–29: Viewing a file in the Setup screen

Note that the view function always display the waveform in the file that you specified, but not the waveform in the waveform memory. Even when you change the waveform with the editor and update the waveform memory, the view function still displays the waveform before the update unless you do not save the file.

Editing a Waveform

To edit the loaded waveform file, push the **Edit...** side menu button. The instrument opens the appropriate edit window for the previously loaded file type.

If you have not loaded a file in the Setup screen, the instrument displays the message *No output data*, and you cannot enter into the editor.

The editors are described in more detail in the *Reference* section beginning on page 3–53.

Setting Waveform Output Parameters

The Setup side menus provide commands for setting and adjusting waveform output parameters. The steps for setting output parameters are discussed in detail in the *Reference* section beginning on page 3–35. Table 2–15 provides an overview of the Setup side menu operations.

Table 2–15: Setup output parameter operations

Bottom button	Side button	Description
Waveform/ Sequence	Load...	Displays the Select File dialog box that lists files in the current drive and directory. Select a file to load or use the side menu buttons to change drives and/or directories.
	View	Displays the loaded file in a window. Push the OK side menu button to close the view window.
	Edit...	Opens the appropriate editor for the loaded file.
	Ez FG...	Enters the FG mode for easy generate of standard functional waveform.
Vertical	Filter	Selects lowpass filter to insert into signal path. Filter values are through (no filter), 1 MHz, 5 MHz, 20 MHz, and 50 MHz. Use the general purpose knob to enter new values.
	Amplitude	Sets the signal peak-to-peak amplitude in increments of 0.001 V. The maximum value is 2 V_{p-p} (5 V_{p-p} with Option 05) in normal mode and 0.5 V_{p-p} in direct mode. Use the general purpose knob or the keypad to enter new values.
	Offset	Sets the signal offset value in increments of 0.001 V. The offset voltage range is ±1 V. Use the general purpose knob or the keypad to enter new values.
	Add...	Adds the internal noise signal and/or external input signal to a waveform. You can set the range of the internal noise generator level within the limits of –140 to –95 dBm/Hz (–130 to –95 dBm/Hz with Option 05).
	Output	Selects to connect the DAC output directly to the channel connector.

Table 2–15: Setup output parameter operations (cont.)

Bottom button	Side button	Description
Horizontal	Clock	Sets the clock sample rate from 10 kS/s to 200 MS/s.
	Clock Src	Sets the clock source to either Internal or External. When set to Internal, 10 MHz internal reference clock is come into force. When set to External, a valid external clock signal is DC to 200 MHz with a voltage level of 0.4 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ and up to ±2 V.
	Clock Ref	Sets the reference clock source to either Internal or External. A valid external clock signal is 10 MHz ±0.1 MHz with a voltage level of 0.2 V to 3.0 $V_{p\text{-}p}$.
	Skew...	Sets the skew between Ch1, Ch2 and CH3 within –2.52 ns to 2.52 ns with 70 ps steps.
Run Mode	Continuous Triggered Gated Enhanced	Displays the Run Mode side menu for setting the instrument run mode. Refer to The *Run Mode Menu* section on page 3–44 for an explanation of the different run modes.
Trigger	Source	Sets trigger source to Internal or External. If External selected, all other side menu items are not selectable except Interval.
	Slope	Sets the trigger slope or gate polarity to Positive or Negative.
	Level	Sets the trigger signal level. The trigger level range is ±5.0 V in 0.1 V increments.
	Impedance	Sets the external trigger input line impedance to either 50 Ω or 1 kΩ.
	Interval	Sets trigger interval from 1.0 μs to 10.0 s.
Save/Re-store	Save Setup	Save the setup parameters set by SETUP window and FG mode window as a setup file.
	Restore Setup	Restore a setup file.

Outputting a Waveform

To output a loaded waveform, push the **CH (1, 2, or 3) OUT** and/or **CH (1 , 2, or 3)_OUT** front-panel button(s), then the **RUN** front-panel button. The LEDs near each button light up to indicate they are enabled. The instrument outputs the waveform(s) depending on the Run mode. You can turn either or both channel outputs on or off while the instrument is running by pushing the **CH (1, 2, or 3) OUT** or **CH (1, 2, or 3) OUT** buttons. To stop the waveform output, push the **RUN** button so that the LED turns off.

Saving and Restoring Setup Parameters

The waveform or pattern file contains only the waveform and clock information. When you load a waveform or pattern file, the output signal will use the current instrument setup parameters.

To save you from doing a manual setup procedure each time you load a waveform, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator lets you save setup parameters into a setup file. You can then restore the saved settings for use with waveforms.

The setup parameters when saving is included in a setup file. When a setup file is restored, settings in both AWG mode and FG mode will replace the contents of a setup file.

Do the following steps to save the current setup parameters:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→**Save Setup** (side).

   The Select Setup Filename dialog box appears.

2. Enter a setup file name.

   The setup file name has .set suffix as part of the file name.

3. Push the **OK** side button.

   The setup information is saved to the designated file.

Do the following steps to restore the setup parameters from a file:

1. Select **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→**Restore Setup** (side).
2. Enter or select the setup file name to load.
3. Push the **OK** side button to load the file and restore the setup parameters, or push the **Cancel** side button to exit the restore process without loading the setup file.

Theory of Operation

This section presents an overview of the AWG400-Series hardware, data structures, and operating modes to allow you to take full advantage of the AWG400-Series.

Block Diagrams

Figure 2–30 show the main hardware blocks that make up the AWG400-Series, respectively. This section describes these hardware blocks to provide the background knowledge necessary to use the instrument effectively.

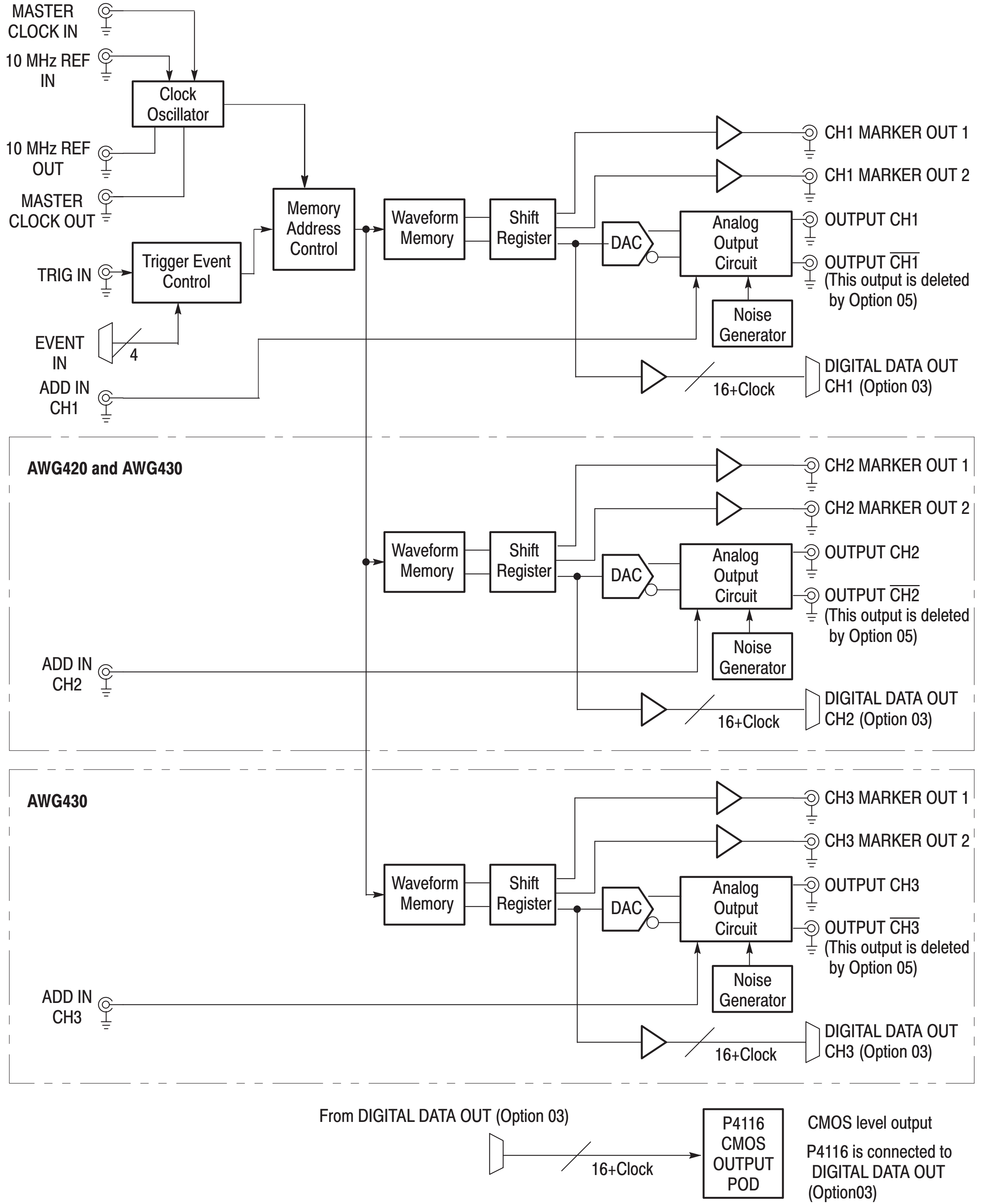


Figure 2–30: AWG400-Series block diagram

CPU

The CPU Unit block controls the whole instrument, that contains the Solid Disk, RAM, HDD, and external interfaces blocks.

The external interface addresses remote control via the GPIB, floppy disk connection, 100/10BASE-T Ethernet connection, user interface through the display screen and the front–panel, etc.

Clock Oscillator

The internal clock is derived from the reference clock oscillator or from the external reference clock connected 10MHz REF IN connector, which uses VCO, DDS (direct digital synthesis), and PLL circuit. A high-quality clock with a frequency of 10 kHz to 200 MHz, a resolution of 7 digits, and a low-jitter are being provided using the divider. Figure 2–31 shows the clock oscillator configuration.

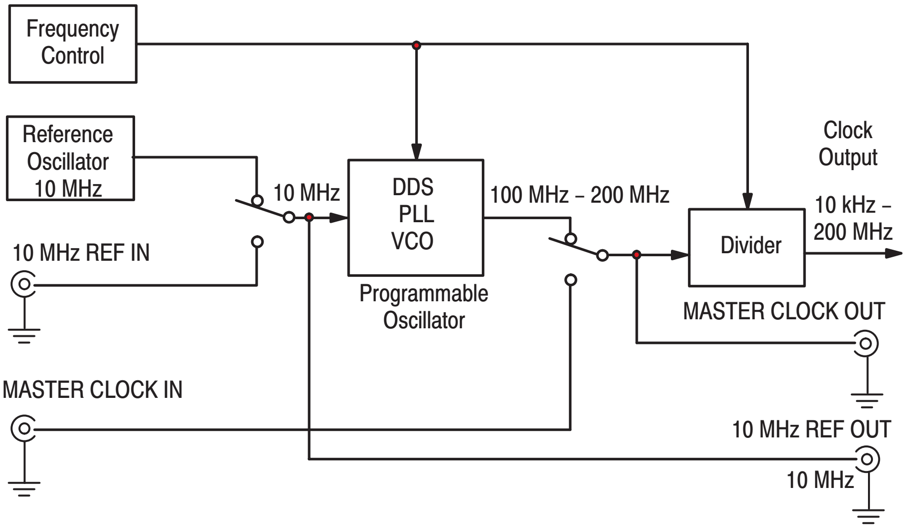


Figure 2–31: Clock oscillator configuration.

10MHz Reference clock

You can select either the internal or external 10MHz reference clock source by using the SETUP horizontal menu. If you select the external source, the reference signal connected to the 10 MHz REF IN connector on the rear panel will be used.

Master clock

The clock signal of desired frequency is acquired with a programmable oscillator and dividers using a 10MHz reference clock. You can select either the internal or external master clock by using the SETUP horizontal menu.

When you select the external master clock source, the external clock signal connected to the MASTER CLOCK IN connector on the rear panel will be used. In this case, dividers are passed through and connected external master clock signal is output to an AWG main part and MASTER CLOCK OUT connector on the rear panel as it is.

When you select the internal clock source, the internal clock signal generated by programmable oscillator is used and output to an AWG main part through dividers. In this case, since the master clock out signal is not passing through dividers, the frequency of master clock out signal from the MASTER CLOCK OUT connector is different from the clock frequency set up with the Horizontal Clock menu.

The relation of the clock frequency set up with the Horizontal menu and the frequency of the master clock output from the MASTER CLOCK OUT is as follows:

$100\ \text{MS/s} \leqq \text{MCLout} = \text{CL} \times 2^{n}$ (; n is one value of 0 to 14) $\leqq 200\ \text{MS/s}$

MCLout : the frequency of signal output from the MASTER CLOCK OUT
CL : the frequency set up with the Horizontal clock menu

Memory Address Control

This Memory Address Control controls the addresses used to read waveform memory data.

This block loads into the Address Counter the first address of the waveform loaded into the waveform memory. It loads the waveform data length to the Length Counter. The Address Counter specifies the point from which the waveform was generated, and the Length Counter the waveform ending position.

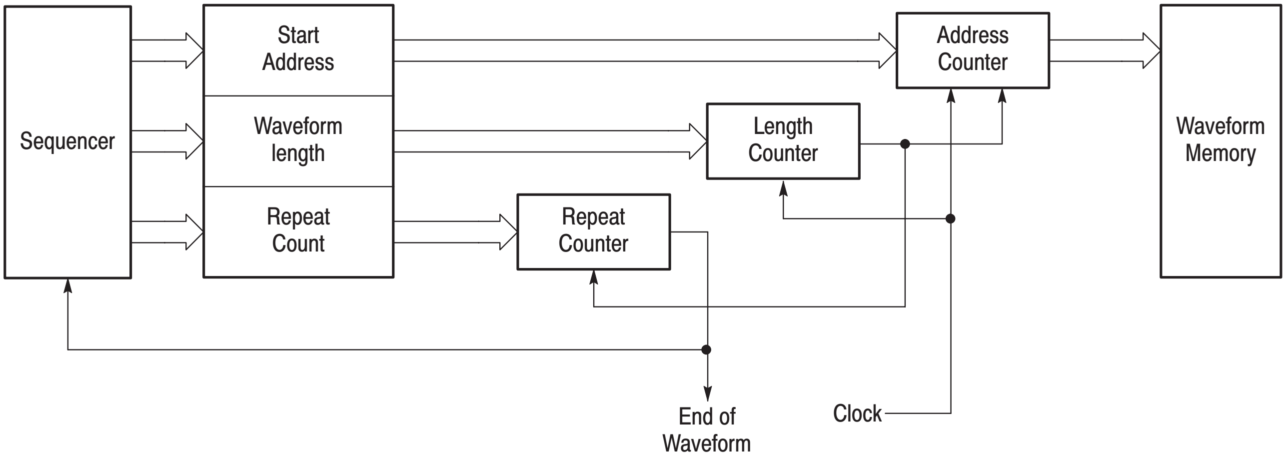


Figure 2–32: Relationship between memory address control and waveform memory

The Address and Length Counters operate with clocks produced by quarter frequency-division for the clocks from the clock oscillator.

If the repeat count value has been loaded in the Repeat Counter, the waveform is generated the specified number of times.

This block also controls the sequence to the event signals generated in Enhanced Mode.

Trigger Control The Trigger Control block controls Memory Address Control in the operation mode you specified from the RUN MODE menu.

RUN modes Selecting a RUN mode from the SETUP menu causes one of the following to operate the Waveform Generator:

Table 2–16: Run modes

Modes	Descriptions
Continuous	Consecutively output regardless of existence of a trigger signal.
Triggered	The output signal is obtained only once when one of the following is input: ■ An external trigger signal from the rear panel's TRIG IN connector. ■ A trigger signal generated with the front–panel's FORCE TRIGGER button. ■ A trigger command from the remote control. ■ If the SEQUENCE has been defined, the TRIGGERED output is obtained only once according to the definition.
Gated	The waveform is output only while: ■ An external trigger signal from the rear panel's TRIG IN connector or ■ A gate signal through the front–panel's FORCE TRIGGER button is TRUE. ■ A trigger command or an event control command from the remote control.
Enhanced	The waveform is obtained, in the order defined with the sequence, based on: ■ A trigger signal (for example, an external trigger signal from the rear panel's TRIG IN connector) ■ An event signal from the rear panel's EVENT IN connector. ■ An trigger signal from the front panel's FORCE TRIGGER button. ■ An event signal from the front panel's FORCE EVENT button. ■ A trigger command or event/jump control command from the remote control.

Waveform Memory and Shift Register

The Waveform Memory block has 16 bits for waveform data and 2 bits per channel for markers, thus a total length of of 4,050,000 points. You can set any value from 64 points to 16,200,000 points (for Option 01) for the length of waveform data.

The Shift Register block is used to read waveform data from waveform memory at a rate up to 200 MS/s.

Analog Circuit and Noise Generator

The Analog Circuit block contains the Filter, Attenuator, Output Amplifier, and Offset Circuits, used to process signals generated from the DA Converter. It also contains the Adder Circuit, used to add the ADD IN signal coming from the rear panel ADD IN connector and the noise signals generated from the internal noise oscillator.

The noise signals from the internal noise generator are added to the DAC signal.

Digital Data Output (Option 03)

For the option 03, the 16-bit data is sent to the DAC and Clock. The 16-bit data and clock are output on CMOS level via a buffer and P4116 CMOS OUTPUT POD.

Signal Output Process

This section describes operation of the instrument and the user operations flow up to the waveform output from the Waveform Generator.

First, the user should load the desired waveform data to be output into the waveform memory. New waveform data can be created using waveform editors incorporated in the Waveform Generator. It can also be created by combining:

- A sample waveform data distributed with floppy disks,
- Previously created waveform data on the built-in hard disk, and
- Waveform data measured or created by another equipment, which has been read via the network

According to the event control, the waveform data loaded into the waveform memory is fetched at the specified clock rate. This is done in the order in which the memory address controls were specified. After subjected to DA conversion, this data is sent to the Analog Circuit.

The waveform is output based on the amplitude, offset, and filter specified in the Analog Circuit. Signals from the built-in noise generator or externally from the ADD IN connector can be added to the waveform before being output.

Markers and optional digital data are output without passing through the DA Converter, resulting in change in amplitude and/or delay (for markers).

Waveform Data Structure

Each Waveform Generator file may be for either an analog (suffix .WFM) or digital pattern (suffix .PAT). For analog waveform, the DAC’s full scale is represented as –1.0 to 1.0. This range is held with a resolution of 16 bits. The two pieces of marker information, as well as waveform data, are included. Any digital waveform is held as a total of 3 bytes data (2 bytes of 16-bit data and 1 byte of 2-bit marker).

About waveform and pattern files

You can load both the waveform and pattern file to output a waveform to the analog and digital output terminals. When you load a waveform file, the instrument converts to 16-bit digital pattern and stores into the waveform memory, while the instrument stores data in the pattern file into the waveform memory without any conversion.

The difference between these two files is just an internal format and editor to be edited. The waveform file format composes of 4-byte little endian and 1–byte for each point data and markers. The 4-bytes point data is expressed as IEEE floating point number. In the other hand, the pattern file format composes of 3-bytes including data and markers.

When you use waveform data to generate another waveform by mathematical operation such as multiplying, dividing, adding, etc., you must keep the waveform data as waveform file. The waveform file format exists for keeping the data precision in mathematical operations.

For more details about file format, refer to Data Transfer section in AWG400-Series Programmer Manual (Tektronix part number 070-A810-XX).

Waveform Edit

To enable editing, the Waveform Generator provides you with Waveform, Pattern, Sequence, Equation, and Text Editors. See Table 2–17 for the explanations of those editors.

Table 2–17: Editors

Editors	Descriptions
Waveform Editor	The Waveform Editor lets you create or edit a waveform that is being displayed on the screen. It enables you to create any waveform by operation such as cut and paste, partial inversion about the horizontal or vertical axis, shift, or scaling. This operation can be based on a standard waveform, such as a sine or rectangular wave, or the pre–created waveform. The Waveform Editor also has a unique feature that is capable of editing a waveform with waveform calculation functions (absolute value of waveform, differentiation/integration, convolution, correlation, addition/subtraction/multiplication between waveforms, etc.).
Pattern Editor	The Pattern Editor displays a digital signal pattern with a pattern data placed in 16-bit creation waveform memory; it creates a digital signal pattern according to the High/Low settings you made for the individual bits. In addition to the functions supported by the Waveform Editor, the Pattern Editor is capable of generating frequently used digital signals unique to digital signals and pseudo random patterns.
Sequence Editor	The Sequence Editor lets you create a more complex waveforms by combining a few types of waveform data you have created using Waveform and/or Pattern Editors. This editor also enables a Waveform listing jump and output stop to take place. They follow the external event information from the EVENT IN connector as well as the number of repetitions and the order for the individual pieces of waveform data.
Text Editor	The Text Editor creates a equation, more exactly, a waveform by a method of equations. When a equation has been created using this editor, you need to perform compiling. The Text Editor also enables you to edit a plain ASCII file. It should be used to edit ASCII-format waveform data created with another equipment as well as this instrument itself.

Quick Edit

The Quick Editor lets you modify and/or output any part of a waveform you are currently editing with the Waveform Editor. This is done in real time. The data between cursors can be scaled or shifted vertically and/or horizontally (Expand/Shift).

Tutorials

This section contains tutorials to help you learn how to operate the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator. These tutorials provide a good introduction to the following basic features of the instrument:

- Setting up the instrument
- Loading and outputting a sample waveform
- Creating and editing standard function waveforms
- Editing a waveform using quick editor
- Using the equation editor
- Creating and executing sequences

***NOTE**. These tutorials do not cover all the features and functions of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator. They are intended only to introduce the basic instrument functions.*

By connecting an oscilloscope to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator and observing the waveforms output, you will understand how the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator works. The following equipment and accessories are needed:

- A digital storage oscilloscope
  (A Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscope or equivalent)
- One 50 Ω BNC cable

Connect the digital storage oscilloscope to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator as shown in Figure 2–33.

***NOTE**. The CH1 LED is off when a signal is being output from CH1. If the CH1 LED is on, turn off the output by pushing the CH1 OUT button.*

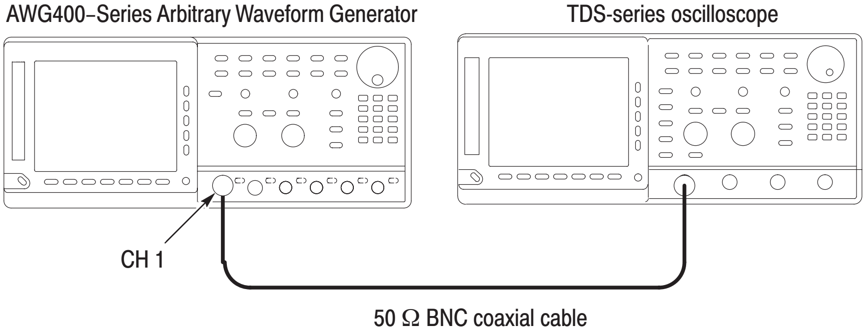
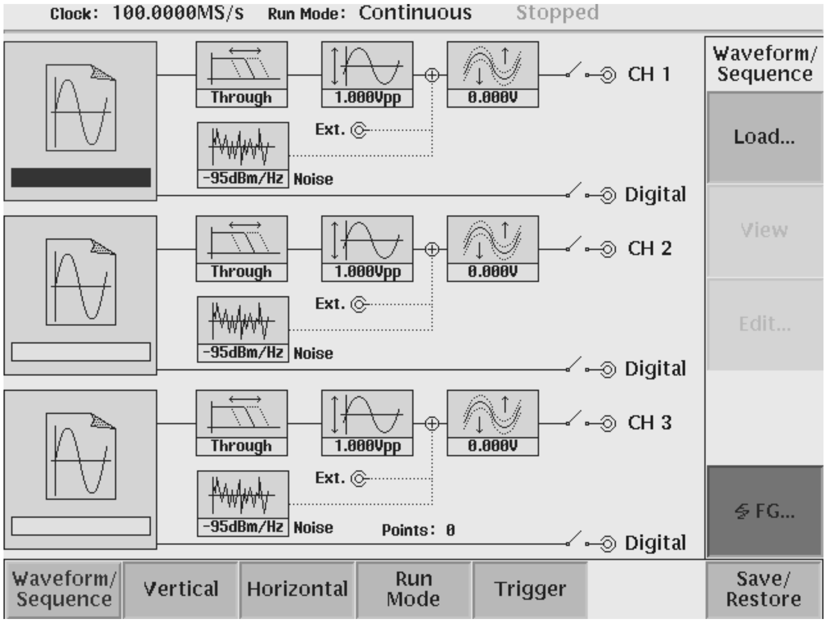


Figure 2–33: Cable connection between AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator and digital storage oscilloscope

Before beginning the tutorials, confirm that the instrument is installed correctly. Refer to *Installation* on page 1–7.

Push the **ON/STBY** button to power on the instrument. Refer to *Power On* on page 1–12. The startup diagnostic routines will run and the instrument displays an initial screen similar to that shown in Figure 2–34. You are now ready to perform the tutorials.

***NOTE**. Figure 2–34 represents an example of the AWG430 Option 03. This figure does not represent other instruments or options.*



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Points: 0

Figure 2–34: Initial screen

If the instrument does not power on correctly or does not pass the power-on diagnostics, contact the nearest Tektronix service center for help.

Tutorial 1: Instrument Setup

This tutorial shows you how to do some instrument setups.

In this tutorial you will learn the following:

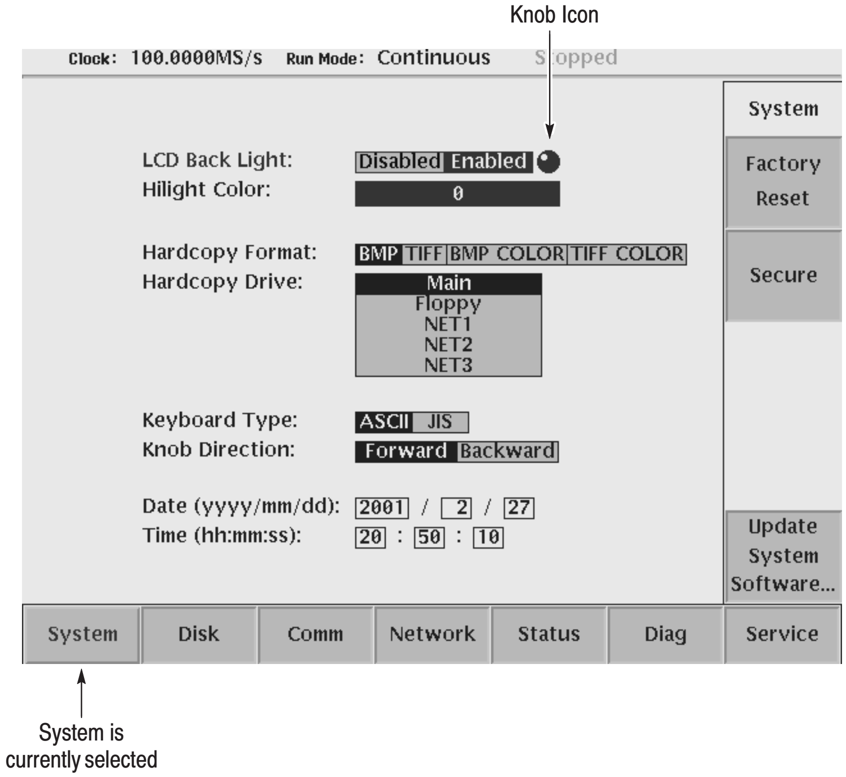
- How to use the arrow button and general purpose knob
- How to set the date and time
- How to adjust the highlighted color
- How to set the LCD back light

Display the UTILITY Menu

Do the following steps to display the system utility screen:

1. Press the **UTILITY** button on the front-panel to display the UTILITY menu.
2. Press the **System** bottom button (lower most-left button) on the bezel.

   The instrument displays the system utility screen as shown in Figure 2–35.



Knob Icon

Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LCD Back Light: Disabled Enabled

Hilight Color: 0

Hardcopy Format: BMP TIFF BMP COLOR TIFF COLOR

Hardcopy Drive: Main Floppy NET1 NET2 NET3

Keyboard Type: ASCII JIS

Knob Direction: Forward Backward

Date (yyyy/mm/dd): 2001 / 2 / 27

Time (hh:mm:ss): 20 : 50 : 10

System is currently selected

Figure 2–35: System utility screen

Set the Date and Time

Do the following steps to set the year:

1. Repeatedly press the ⬇ button in the upper middle part of the front panel until the Year: box is highlighted on the screen.
2. Turn the general purpose knob in the right upper corner of the front panel, clockwise or counterclockwise until the correct *year* is displayed.

   When using the general purpose knob, note that the current displayed year in the Year: box, is displayed in the upper right corner of the screen, together with the icon knob. This means that you can adjust the value using the general purpose knob.

Do the following steps to set the month and day:

1. Press the ⬇ button once to highlight the Month:.
2. Use the general purpose knob to set the month.
3. Set the date in the Day: as was done in step 1 and 2 above.
4. Using the ⬇ button and the general purpose knob, set the *hour*, *minute* and *second* in the Hour:, Min: and Sec:, respectively, as were done in step 1 above.

Set the Highlighted Color

Do the following steps to set the focused color:

1. Repeatedly press the ⬇ button until the Focused Color is highlighted.
2. Turn the general purpose knob clockwise or counterclockwise while looking at the screen until you get the color what you want.

The changes made during this tutorial take effect immediately. You can display the system utility screen and set the highlight color at any time without exiting current tasks.

LCD Back Light

The default for the LCD back light is the on state.

Do the following steps to disable the LCD back light:

1. Repeatedly press the ⬇ button until the LCD Back Light is highlighted.
2. Press the ◀ button or turn the general purpose knob to the left.

***NOTE**. The LED display state is saved when you turn the instrument off by pressing the ON / STBY button.*

Do the following to turn on the instrument display:

1. Press the ON/STBY button to power on.
2. Press the **CLEAR MENU** button on the front-panel twice.

You have completed the Instrument Setup tutorial.

Tutorial 2: Loading and Outputting a Sample Waveform

This tutorial shows you how to load and output a waveform from the sample waveform floppy disk provided with the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

In this tutorial you will learn the following:

- How to select a drive
- How to select and load a file
- How to view a loaded file
- How to output the loaded waveform file

Display the SETUP Menu

Do the following to display the SETUP menu:

Push the **SETUP** front-panel button to display the SETUP menu screen.

The SETUP menu screen is the initial power-on screen shown in Figure 2–34 on page 2–55.

Do the following to select a drive:

1. Insert the sample waveform floppy disk into the drive unit to the left of the screen.
2. Push the **CH1** button on the front panel and the **Waveform/Sequence** bottom button to display the waveform/sequence side menu.

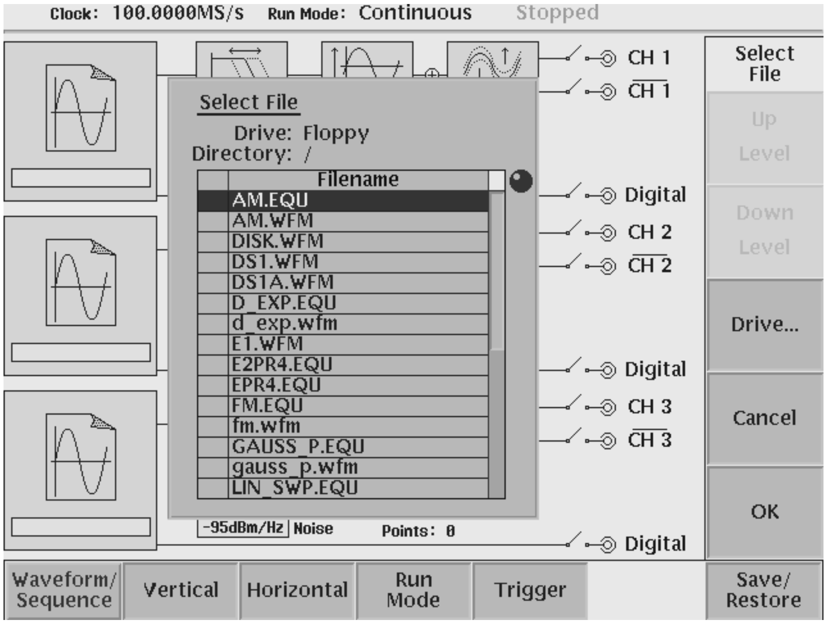
   This side menu contains three items: Load..., View, and Edit....

***NOTE**. The ellipsis (...) means that this menu item will display a submenu (side or pop-up) when selected.*

---

3. Push the **Load...** side button to display the Select File list, shown in Figure 2–36.

   Make sure that the subside menu displays Drive..., Cancel and OK items.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Select File

Drive: Floppy
Directory: /

Figure 2–36: The Select File list

4. Push the **Drive...** side menu button.

   The Select Drive dialog box appears at the center of the screen and the Drive... side menu also appears. Note that the knob icon appears in the dialog box. This means that you can use the general purpose knob to select a drive from the list.

5. Turn the general purpose knob or use the ▲ or ▼ buttons to highlight the word Floppy and then push the **OK** side button.

   The dialog box now lists the files on the sample waveform floppy disk.

Load a Sample Waveform

Do the following steps to load a sample waveform:

1. Turn the general purpose knob to select lin_swp.wfm from the file listing in the dialog box.

2. Push the **OK** side menu button, and wait until the LED of the floppy disk drive goes off.

This operation loads the selected waveform file into the instrument waveform memory. Confirm that 8000 is displayed in the Points: display field at the lower left of the screen and that lin_swp.wfm is displayed in the WFM File: display field.

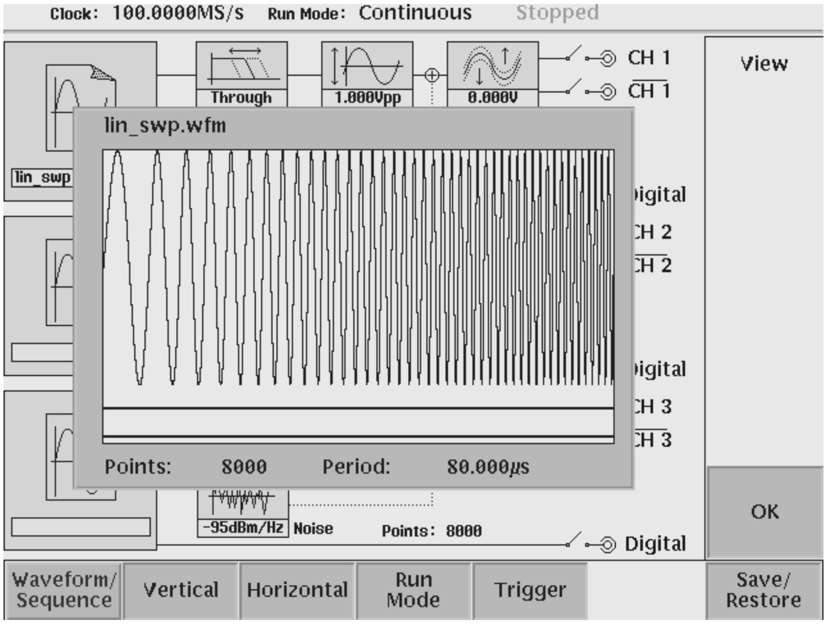
View the Sample Waveform

Do the following steps to view the waveform you just loaded:

1. Push the **View** side menu button to display the waveform.

   The waveform is displayed on the screen as shown in Figure 2–37.

2. When you are done viewing the waveform, push the **OK** side menu button to exit the viewer.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

lin_swp.wfm

Points: 8000 Period: 80.000µs

Figure 2–37: Viewing a waveform loaded into memory

Output the Waveform

Do the following steps to output the waveform from the channel 1 output connector:

1. Push the **RUN** button on the front-panel.

   Pushing the RUN button causes the instrument to output the analog waveform. Push the **RUN** button again to stop the waveform output.

***NOTE**. You must push the RUN button to output a waveform. The instrument does not automatically output a signal after loading a data file unless the instrument was in the Run state when you loaded the new data file.*

2. Push the **CH 1 OUT** button near the CH1 output connector.

Pushing the CH 1 OUT button connects the channel 1 output to the CH 1 connector. Push the **CH1 OUT** button again to turn off the CH1 output.

3. If you connected an oscilloscope to the Waveform Generator, observe that the waveform on the oscilloscope is the same as that shown in Figure 2–37.

You have completed the Loading and Outputting a Sample Waveform tutorial.

Tutorial 3: Creating and Editing Standard Function Waveforms

This tutorial shows you how to create a new waveform by combining two standard function waveforms in the waveform editor. You will create a sine wave and then multiply the sine waveform by another sine waveform.

In this tutorial you will learn the following:

- How to reset the instrument to factory defaults
- How to open the waveform editor
- How to create a standard function waveform
- How to do a waveform mathematical operation
- How to save and output the new waveform

Reset the Instrument

Do the following steps to reset the instrument to factory default settings:

1. Push the **UTILITY** button on the front-panel to display the UTILITY menu screen.
2. Push the **Factory Reset** side menu button.

   The SETUP menu screen appears.

***NOTE**. If the Factory Reset side menu item is not shown, push the **System** bottom menu button, and then push the **Factory Reset** side menu button.*

---

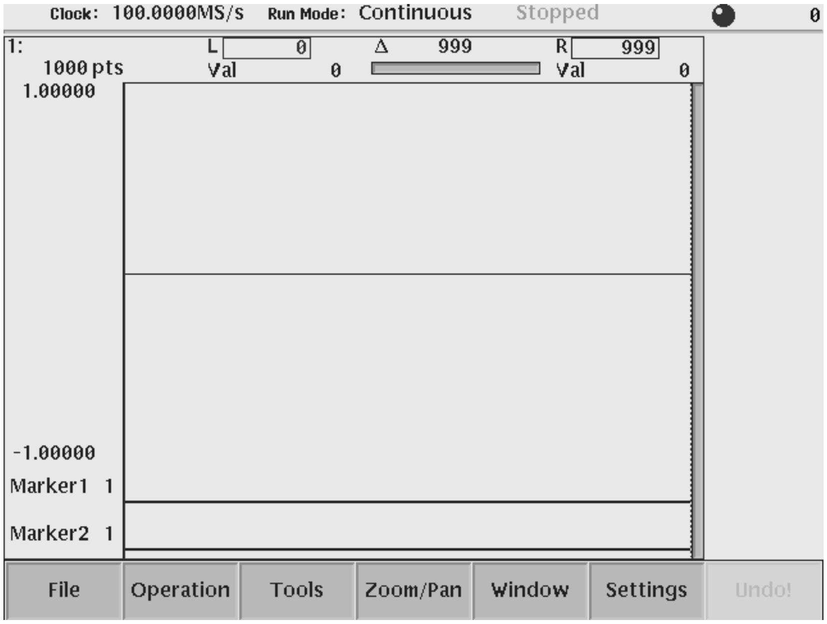
3. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument is reset to the factory default setting.

Open the Waveform Editor

Do the following steps to open the waveform editor screen:

1. Push the **EDIT** button on the front-panel.
2. Push the **Edit** bottom menu button.
3. Push the **New Waveform** side menu button.

The instrument displays the waveform editors initial screen as shown in Figure 2–38.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0

1: 1000 pts L 0 Δ 999 R 999

Val 0 Val 0

Figure 2–38: Waveform editor initial screen

Create a Sine Wave

Do the following steps to create a standard sine function waveform:

1. Push the **Operation** bottom button.

The instrument displays the Operation pop-up menu.

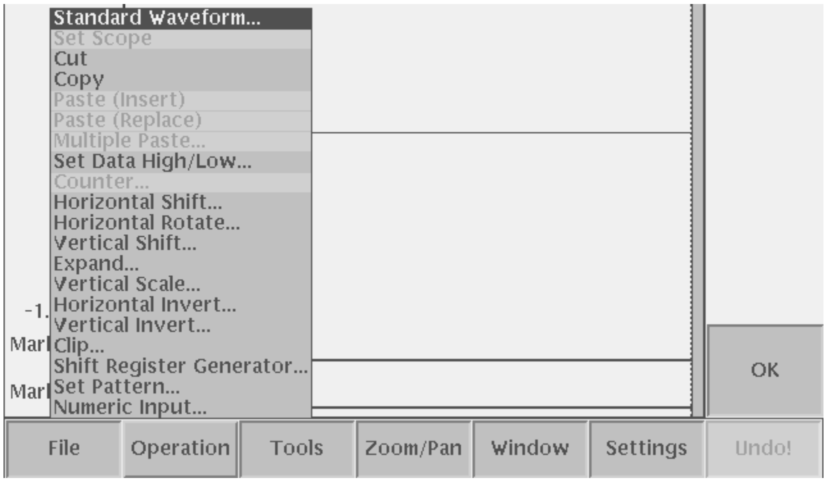


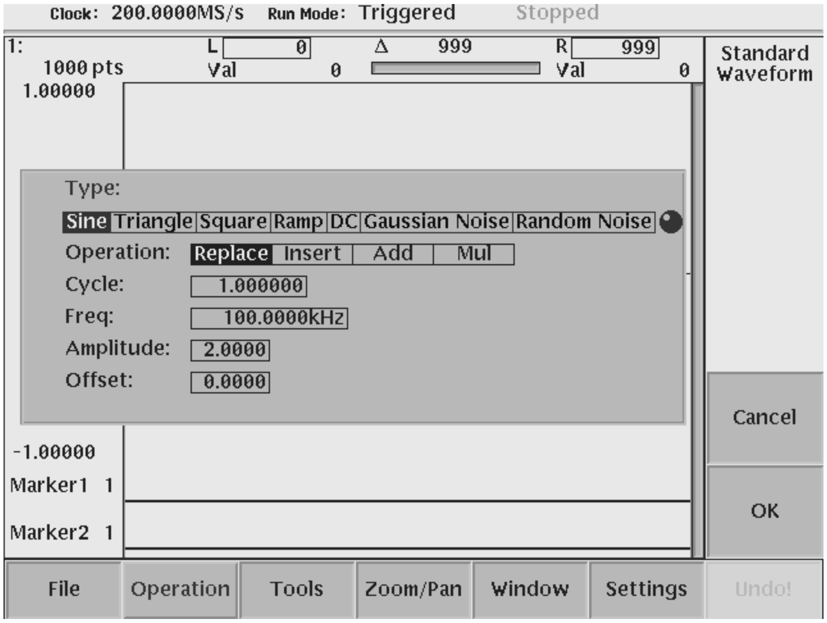
Figure 2–39: Operation pop-up menu

2. Select **Standard Waveform...** from the pop-up menu by using the general purpose knob.

   By default, Standard Waveform... is selected.

3. Push the **OK** side button.

   The instrument displays the standard function dialog box as shown in Figure 2–40.



Clock: 200.0000MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped

1:
1000 pts
L 0 Val 0
Δ 999
R 999 Val 0

Type: Sine
Operation: Replace
Cycle: 1.000000
Freq: 100.0000kHz
Amplitude: 2.0000
Offset: 0.0000

Figure 2–40: The Standard Function dialog box

4. Confirm that the knob icon is located to the right of the Type field items.

   This is the default selection for this dialog box. If Type is not selected, use the ▲ or ▼ button on the front panel to select the Type field.

5. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **Sine** field item.

   Note that Sine is the default selection.

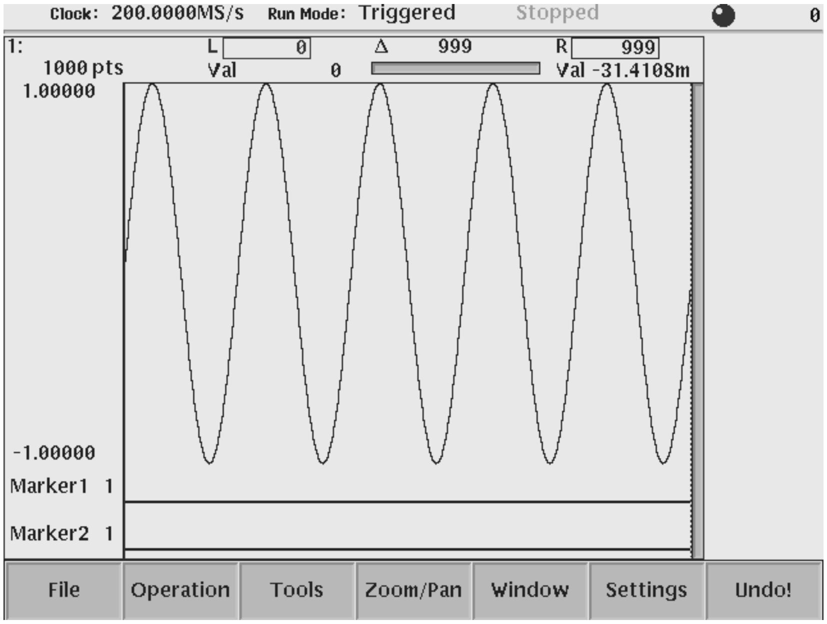
6. Push the ▼ button twice to select the **Cycle** field.

7. Turn the general purpose knob to set the cycle to **5.000000**.

8. Push the **Enter** button to enter the value in the field.

9. Push the **OK** side button.

You have created a five-cycle sine wave with a peak-to-peak range of 2.0 digital to analog converter (DAC) units, as shown in Figure 2–41.



Clock: 200.0000MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped 0

1: 1000 pts L 0 Val 0 Δ 999 R 999 Val -31.4108m

Figure 2–41: Standard sine wave function created in the Waveform Editor

---

***NOTE**. The waveform amplitude shown in the Waveform Editor does not directly correspond to the output waveform voltage amplitude. The levels in the Waveform Editor correspond to the instrument 16-bit digital-to-analog convertor (DAC) resolution. A signal with a –1.000 to +1.000 range utilizes the full resolution of the DAC circuit.*

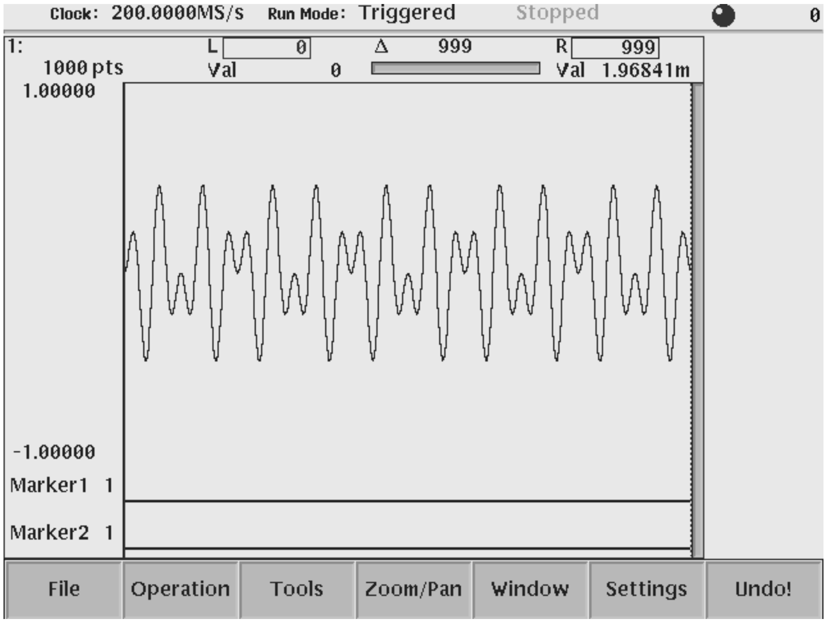
The actual output signal values (peak-to-peak and offset) are set in the Setup menu. The Setup menu output values are multipliers, and assume that the edited waveform signal uses the full ±1.000 waveform range.

Math Operation

Do the following steps to create a new waveform by multiplying the current sine waveform with a second sine function waveform:

1. Push the **Operation** bottom button. The instrument displays the Operation pop-up menu.
2. Select **Standard Waveform...** from the pop-up menu by using the general purpose knob. By default, Standard Waveform... is selected.
3. Push the **OK** side button. The instrument displays the standard function dialog box as shown in Figure 2–40.
4. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **Sine** item in the Type field. Note that Sine is the default type menu selection.

5. Select **Operation** in the standard function dialog box using the ▼ button.
6. Select ***Mul*** item using the general purpose knob.
7. Push the ▼ button once to select the **Cycle** field.
8. Use the general purpose knob to set the number of cycles to **20.000000**.
9. Push the ▼ button twice to select the Amplitude field.
10. Use the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to **1.0000**.
11. Push the **OK** side button to perform the multiply operation. This action multiplies the sine wave in the waveform editor by the sine wave you have specified in the Standard Function dialog box. Figure 2–42 shows the resulting waveform.



Clock: 200.0000MS/s Run Mode: Triggered Stopped 0

1: L 0 Δ 999 R 999

1000 pts Val 0 Val 1.96841m

Figure 2–42: Waveform created with the multiply operation

Save the Waveform

Do the following steps to save the waveform:

NOTE*. To output the waveform in the waveform editor, you must first save the waveform into a file and then load the file into the waveform memory.*

---

1. Push the **File** bottom button.

   The File pop-up menu appears.

2. Select **Save** from the pop-up menu using the general purpose knob.

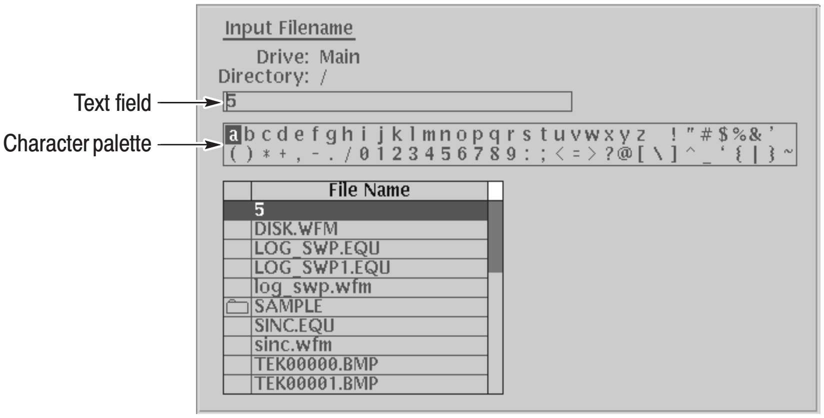
3. Push the **OK** side button.

   The Input Filename dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 2–43. Note that *.wfm* is displayed in the file name field.

4. Push the **SHIFT** button on the front-panel.

   The SHIFT LED is on.

   This operation lets you input uppercase characters with the keypad. The SHIFT LED goes off when the Input File Name dialog box disappears.



Input Filename

Drive: Main
Directory: /

5

	File Name
	5
	DISK.WFM
	LOG_SWP.EQU
	LOG_SWP1.EQU
	log_swp.wfm
📁	SAMPLE
	SINC.EQU
	sinc.wfm
	TEK00000.BMP
	TEK00001.BMP

Figure 2–43: File Name Input dialog box

5. Push the **ENTER** button once.

   Confirm that the letter A is inserted into the text field.

6. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the letter B in the character palette, and push the **ENTER** button.

7. Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the letter C in the character palette, and push the **ENTER** button.

8. Push the **4** and **5** buttons on the front-panel keypad. The ABC45.wfm is displayed in the text field.

9. Push the **OK** side button.

The waveform in the editor is saved in the file *ABC45.wfm*.

Output the Waveform

Do the following steps to load and output the saved waveform:

1. Push the **SETUP** button on the front panel to display the SETUP menu.
2. Load the file *ABC45.wfm*.

   Refer to *Load a Sample Waveform* on page 2–60 if you need help.
3. Push the **RUN** button on the front panel to output the analog waveform.

NOTE. *Pushing the RUN button causes the instrument to output the waveform. Push the* ***RUN*** *button again to stop the output. The instrument does not automatically output the waveform from a newly-loaded file.*

4. Push the **CH 1** button near the CH 1 output connector on the front panel. If you connected an oscilloscope to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator, observe that the waveform on the oscilloscope is the same as the one you viewed in Figure 2–42.

You have completed the Creating and Editing Standard Function Waveforms tutorial.

Tutorial 4: Editing a Waveform Using Quick Editor

Quick editor is a function that lets you simultaneously edit and output a waveform. When you open the quick editor, the waveforms in the quick editor waveform are completely independent of the waveform editor. When you exit from the quick editor, you can select whether to save or cancel the changes.

In this tutorial you will learn the following:

- How to enter into the quick editor
- How to edit a waveform
- How to save the changes in the waveform editor

Preparation

Do the following steps to set the instrument to the factory default settings and load a sample waveform:

1. Reset the instrument to the factory default settings. Refer to page 2–62.

   The SETUP menu screen appears.

2. Load the waveform lin_swp.wfm from the sample waveform floppy disk.

   Refer to Tutorial 1 for how to load a waveform file from a floppy disk.

Open the Quick Editor

Do the following to open the quick editor:

***NOTE**. You can enter the quick editor only from the waveform editor. First you open a file in the waveform editor, and then you enable the quick editor mode.*

---

1. Push the **Edit...** side button for editing the waveform in the waveform editor.

   The Waveform Editor screen appears, as shown in Figure 2–44.

2. Push the front-panel **QUICK EDIT** button.

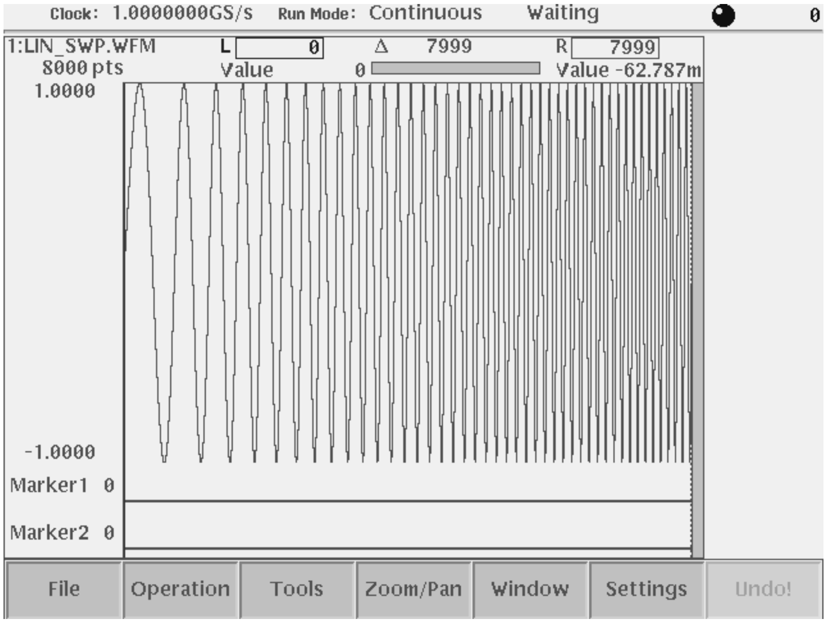
   When you enter into the Quick Editor, the bottom menu buttons are disabled and the Quick Editor side menu is displayed.

Edit a Waveform

You can only edit the waveform within the area between the two vertical cursors. You can move the active cursor (currently-selected vertical cursor) horizontally by turning the general purpose knob or by entering a numeric position with the front-panel keypad.

Select between the active cursors by pushing the TOGGLE front-panel button (located near the general purpose knob). The active cursor is represented by a solid vertical line, and the inactive cursor by a vertical dashed line.

The current cursor positions are displayed in the L and R fields in the upper part of the editor. By default, the left cursor is positioned in the left-most position of the editor screen. The right cursor is positioned in the right-most position of the editor screen.



Clock: 1.0000000GS/s Run Mode: Continuous Waiting 0

1:LIN_SWP.WFM
8000 pts
L 0 Δ 7999 R 7999
Value 0 Value -62.787m

Figure 2–44: Waveform in the waveform editor

Do the following steps to specify the edit region (area between the cursors) using the cursors:

1. Confirm that the left cursor is active by checking the following:
   - The L field is highlighted.
   - The left cursor is a solid line.
   - The right cursor is a dashed line.

   If the left cursor is not active, push the **TOGGLE** button on the front panel.

2. Move the left cursor to position 2808 by pushing the **2**, **8**, **0**, **8**, and **ENTER** buttons.

   If you have an external keyboard connected, just type the numbers and press the **Return** key.

3. Push the **TOGGLE** button on the front-panel to change the active cursor.

4. Confirm that the right cursor is now active by checking the following:

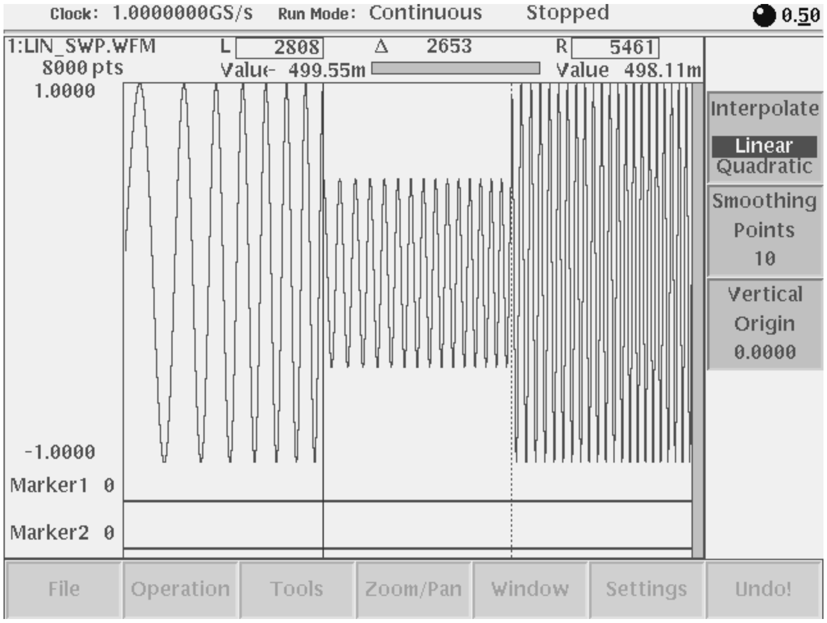
   - The R field is now highlighted.
   - The right cursor changed to a solid line.
   - The left cursor changed to a dashed line.

5. Move the right cursor to position 5461 by pushing the **5**, **4**, **6**, **1**, and **ENTER** buttons.

   If you have an external keyboard connected, just type the numbers and press the **Return** key.

Do the following to change the amplitude within the region specified by the area cursor:

Turn the **LEVEL/SCALE** knob clockwise to change the waveform amplitude to 0.5 V. The waveform should look like the one shown in Figure 2–45.



Clock: 1.0000000GS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0.50

1:LIN_SWP.WFM 8000 pts

L 2808 Δ 2653 R 5461

Value 499.55m Value 498.11m

Interpolate Linear Quadratic

Smoothing Points 10

Vertical Origin 0.0000

Figure 2–45: Waveform edit in quick editor

If you connected an oscilloscope to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator, observe that the waveform on the oscilloscope changes as soon as you make changes to the Quick Editor window.

Save Changes

The waveform in the edit buffer is copied into the Undo buffer before going into the Quick edit mode. Quick editing is performed on the waveform data in the edit buffer. When you quit the Quick Editor, you can save the changes or cancel the changes.

When you save the changes, the instrument does not take any action, as the waveform data is already current. When you select cancel the changes, the instrument copies the contents of the Undo buffer back to the edit buffer.

Do the following steps to save the Quick Edit mode changes you just made:

1. Push the **QUICK EDIT** button on the front panel to quit the quick editor.

A message box appears at the center of the screen and the side menu displays Cancel, No, and Yes menu items.

2. Push the **Yes** side button to save the changes.

If you have connected an oscilloscope to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator, the waveform being displayed on the oscilloscope screen shows the new waveform.

Remember that the waveform in the Quick Editor does not affect the waveform in the waveform memory unless you save it to the file.

You have completed the Editing a Waveform Using Quick Editor tutorial.

Tutorial 5: Using the Equation Editor

You can create a waveform by creating, compiling, and loading an equation file. An equation file is a text file that you create and edit in the equation editor.

In this tutorial you will learn the following:

- How to load an equation file
- How to edit an equation
- How to compile an equation file

Preparation

Do the following steps to set the instrument to the factory default settings:

1. Push the **UTILITY** button on the front panel to display the UTILITY menu screen.
2. Push the **Factory Reset** side menu button.

   The SETUP menu screen appears.

***NOTE**. If the Factory Reset side menu item is not shown, push the **System** bottom menu button and then push the **Factory Reset** side menu button.*

---

3. Push the **OK** side button.

The instrument is reset to the factory default setting.

The SETUP menu screen appears.

***NOTE**. Connect a standard 101- or 106-key PC keyboard to the instrument to make it easier and faster to create and edit text.*

Load an Equation File

Do the following steps to load a sample equation file from the sample waveform floppy disk:

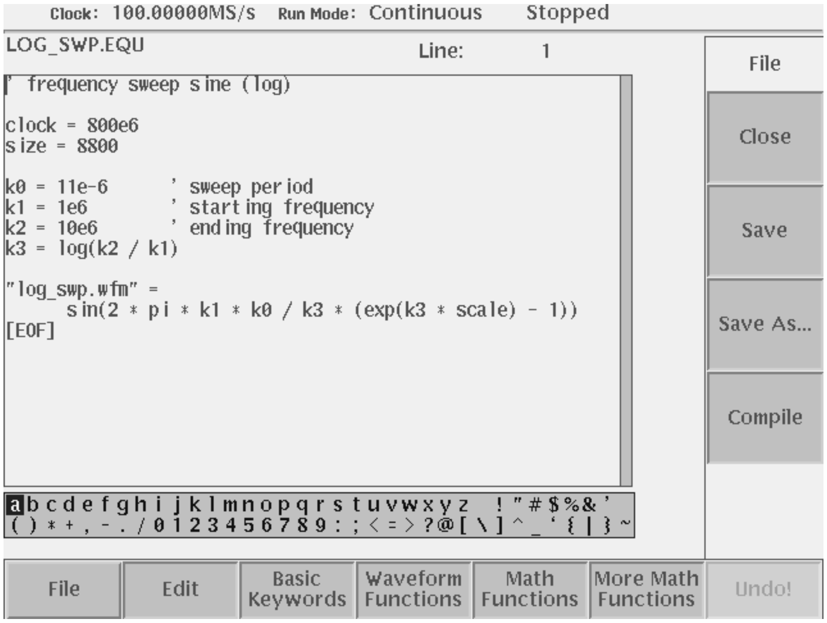
1. Insert the sample waveform floppy disk into the drive unit.
2. Push the **EDIT** button on the front panel.

   The screen listing the files in the default storage media appears. If the screen does not show the file list, push the **EDIT** button again to display the file list.

3. Push the **Drive** bottom button.
4. Push the **Floppy** side button to select the floppy disk drive.

   The file list for the floppy disk appears.
5. Select the file *log_swp.equ* from the file list using the general purpose knob.
6. Push the **Edit** bottom button.
7. Push the **Edit** side button.

   The equation editor displays the *log_swp.equ* file.



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LOG_SWP.EQU Line: 1

```
' frequency sweep sine (log)

clock = 800e6
size = 8800

k0 = 11e-6      ' sweep period
k1 = 1e6        ' starting frequency
k2 = 10e6       ' ending frequency
k3 = log(k2 / k1)

"log_swp.wfm" =
      sin(2 * pi * k1 * k0 / k3 * (exp(k3 * scale) - 1))
[EOF]
```

Figure 2-46: Equation file in Equation editor

Edit the Equation

Do the following steps to replace the sin() equation keyword with the tri() keyword:

1. Use the ⬇ button to move the cursor downward and position it at the line where the sine function is written.
2. Use the ➧ button to move the cursor position to just after the word sin.
3. Push the ⬅ button three times in the keypad to delete the word sin.
4. Push the **Math Functions** bottom button to display the math functions pop-up menu.

5. Select **tri** from the pop-up menu using the general purpose knob.
6. Push the **OK** side button. Confirm that the word tri is inserted at the cursor position.

Save the Edited Equation

At compile time you cannot specify a storage drive. The instrument uses the drive specified when you loaded or saved the equation file. To compile the edited equation file to a hard disk file, you must first save the edited equation to the hard disk.

Do the following steps to save the edited equation to a hard disk file:

1. Push the **File** bottom button.
2. Push the **Save As...** side button.

   The Storage Select dialog box is displayed on the screen.
3. Select **Main** from the dialog box using the general purpose knob.
4. Push the **OK** side button.

   The Input File Name dialog box appears.
5. Push the **OK** side button.

   This saves the equation file without changing the file name.

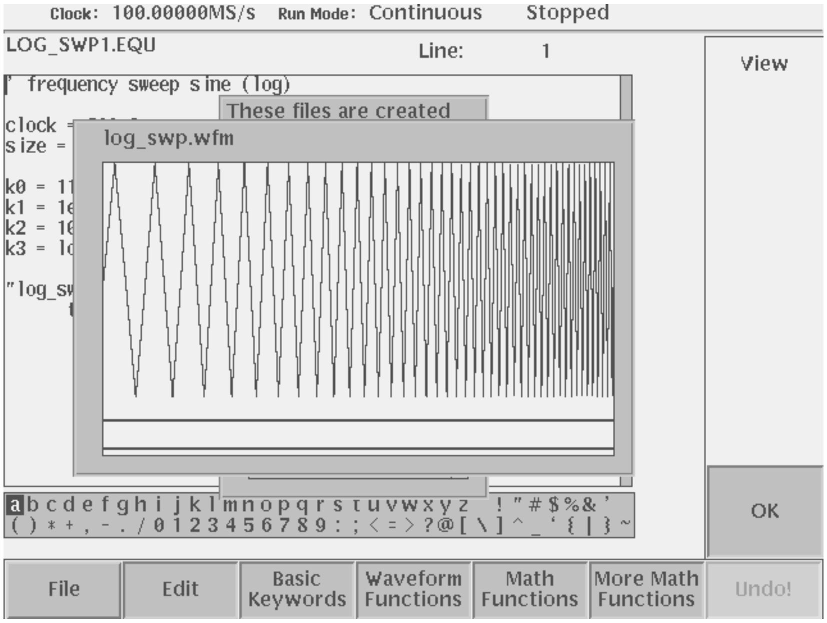
Compile the Equation

Do the following steps to compile the equation file:

1. Push the **Compile** side button.

   When the compile completes, the waveform is saved into the file *log_swp.wfm*.
2. Push the **View** side button to view the compiled waveform, as shown in Figure 2–47.
3. Push the **OK** side button to close the viewer screen.
4. Push the **Close** side button twice to exit the equation editor.

You have completed the Using the Equation Editor tutorial.



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LOG_SWP1.EQU Line: 1

```
" frequency sweep sine (log)

clock =
size =

k0 = 11
k1 = 1e
k2 = 10
k3 = lo

"log_sw
```

These files are created

log_swp.wfm

Figure 2-47: Viewer displaying compiled waveform

Tutorial 6: Creating and Running Waveform Sequences

The sequence editor lets you create a sequence file. A sequence file is a list of waveform or pattern files to output along with control statements that define how many times and when the waveform is output. This tutorial describes how to create five simple waveforms and two simple sequence files. The first sequence file is a main sequence file. The second sequence file is a subsequence called from the main sequence file.

In this tutorial you will learn the following:

- How to open the Sequence Editor
- How to edit a sequence table
- How to create a main sequence and a subsequence
- How to set run mode
- How to run the sequence

Preparation

Do the following steps to reset the instrument to the factory default settings:

1. Push the **UTILITY** button on the front-panel to display the UTILITY menu screen.
2. Push the **Factory Reset** side menu button.

   If the Factory Reset side menu item is not shown, push the **System** bottom menu button, and then push the **Factory Reset** side menu button.

   The SETUP menu screen appears.
3. Push the **OK** side button.

   The instrument is reset to the factory default setting.
4. Push **EDIT** button on the front panel.

   The screen lists the files in the current storage media.

***NOTE**. Push the **EDIT** button again to display a list of the files.*

Creating Waveforms

You will create five waveforms using standard functions. Table 2–18 lists the waveforms you will create.

Table 2–18: Waveforms to be used in sample sequences

No.	Waveform file name	Standard waveform pop-up parameters				
		Type	Operation	Cycle	Amplitude	Offset
1	SINE.WFM	Sine	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
2	TRIANGLE.WFM	Triangle	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
3	SQUARE.WFM	Square	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
4	RAMP.WFM	Ramp	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0
5	GAUSSN.WFM	Gaussian Noise	Replace	1.0	2.0	0.0

Do the following steps to create and save the sequence waveforms:

1. Follow the procedures in *Create a Sine Wave* on page 2–63.

   In the Standard Function pop-up menu, use the parameters found in Table 2–18 for each waveform.

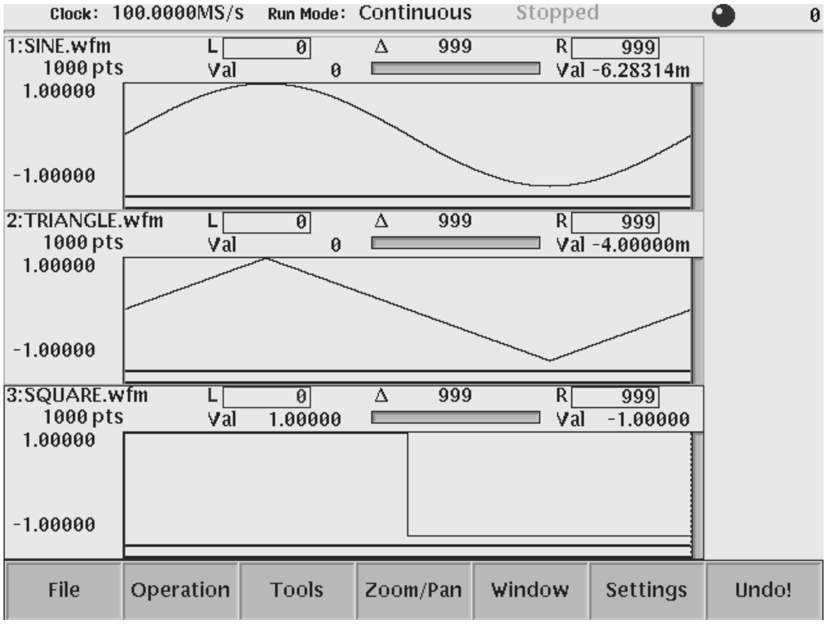
2. Follow the procedures in *Save the Waveform* on page 2–67.

   In the Input File Name dialog box, input the waveform file name according to Table 2–18.

Figure 2–48 shows the screen displaying three windows. Each window contains one of the created waveforms. You can open and edit up to three waveforms at the same time. You may use this window function in the waveform editor for creating the above waveforms.

Do the following to select a window:

1. Push the **Window** bottom button.
2. Push the **Window 1**, **Window 2** or **Window 3** side button to activate that window.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0

1:SINE.wfm L 0 Δ 999 R 999
1000 pts Val 0 Val -6.28314m

2:TRIANGLE.wfm L 0 Δ 999 R 999
1000 pts Val 0 Val -4.00000m

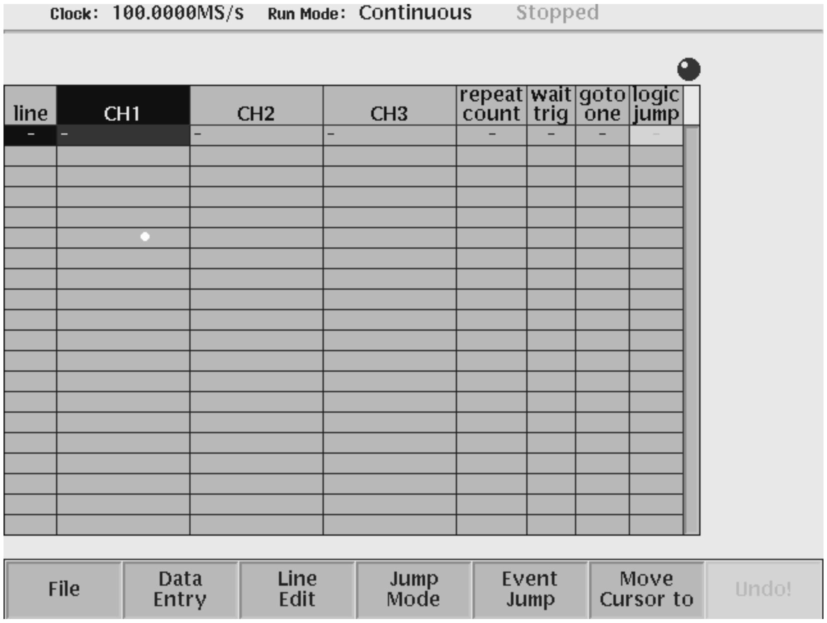
3:SQUARE.wfm L 0 Δ 999 R 999
1000 pts Val 1.00000 Val -1.00000

Figure 2-48: Waveforms created at the same time in three windows

Open the Sequence Editor

Do the following steps to open the sequence editor and create the sequences:

1. Push the **EDIT** button on the front panel.
2. Push the **Edit** bottom button.
3. Push the **New Sequence** side button. The sequence table to create a new sequence is displayed in the screen. See Figure 2–49.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Figure 2–49: Initial sequence table

Create the Subsequence

You will create the sequence list shown in Table 2–19. This sequence is used as a subsequence and is called from the main sequence that you create in *Create the Main Sequence* on page 2–84. This sequence runs as follows:

1. **Line 1**: outputs the gaussian noise waveform 40,000 times and then goes to line 2.
2. **Line 2**: outputs the ramp waveform 60,000 times and then goes to the next line 3.
3. **Line 3**: outputs the triangle waveform 60,000 times and then goes to the next line 4.
4. **Line 4**: output the sine waveform 30,000 times and then quits the subsequence and returns to the main sequence.

Table 2–19: Sequence table contents in SUBSEQ.SEQ

Line	CH1	CH2	CH3	repeat count	wait trig	goto one	logic jump
1	GAUSSN.WFM			40,000			
2	RAMP.WFM			60,000			
3	TRIANGLE.WFM			60,000			
4	SINE.WFM			30,000			

In the sequence file used as subsequence, the Wait Trigger, Goto One and Logic Jump are neglected. They are effective only in the main sequence.

Do the following steps to create the subsequence:

1. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button.
2. Push the **Insert Line** side button.

   This displays the line number in the Line column and allows you to edit the line.
3. Push the **Enter file name** side button.

   The dialog box listing files appears at the center of the screen.
4. Select *GAUSSN.wfm* from the dialog box using the general purpose knob.
5. Push the **OK** side button.

   The waveform file name *GAUSSN.wfm* appears in the CH1 column.
6. Push the ↓ button once to move the highlighted cursor to the next line.

7. Repeat steps 2 through 6 to insert lines 2 through 4 and enter waveform file names listed in Table 2–19 into the CH1 column.

8. Repeatedly push the ⬆ button to go back to line 1.

9. Push the ➧ button to place the highlighted cursor on the Repeat Count column.

10. Push the **Repeat Count** side button.

The side menu automatically changes and the Repeat Count side menu item appears. Note that the Repeat Count side menu item is selected by default.

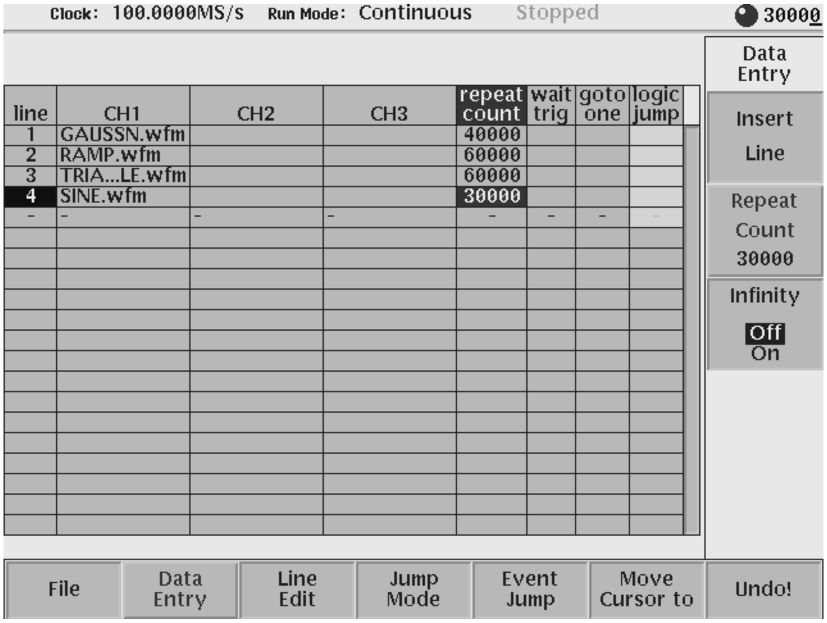
11. Push the **4**, **0**, **0**, **0**, **0**, and **ENTER** buttons in this order.

The repeat count 40000 is set in the Repeat Count column.

12. Push the ⬇ button once to move the highlighted cursor to the next line.

13. Repeat step 11 to enter the repeat count for lines 2 through 4 as specified in Table 2–19.

You have finished editing the sequence table. The table should look like Figure 2–50.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped ● 30000

line	CH1	CH2	CH3	repeat count	wait trig	goto one	logic jump
1	GAUSSN.wfm			40000			
2	RAMP.wfm			60000			
3	TRIA...LE.wfm			60000			
4	SINE.wfm			30000			
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Figure 2–50: Example of sequence (SUBSEQ.SEQ)

Save the Subsequence

Do the following steps to save the subsequence table information to the file *subseq.seq*:

1. Push the **File** bottom button.
2. Push the **Save As...** side button.

   The Input Filename dialog box appears.
3. Enter the file name *subseq.seq* into the file name field and save the file.

   Refer to *Save the Waveform* on page 2–67 for more information.

Create the Main Sequence

In this procedure you will create the main sequence list shown in Table 2–20. This sequence runs as follows:

1. **Line 1**: waits for trigger event. When a trigger event occurs, this line calls the subsequence file *subseq.seq* twice, and then goes to line 2.
2. **Line 2**: infinitely outputs the ramp waveform until an event occurs. When an event occurs, the sequence jumps to line 3.
3. **Line 3**: outputs the triangle waveform 40,000 times. When the output completes, the sequence goes back to the line 1. If an event occurs before this line completes execution, the sequence jumps to line 4.
4. **Line 4**: outputs the triangle waveform 60,000 times and then stops executing.

Table 2–20: Sequence table contents in MAINSEQ.SEQ

Line	CH1	CH2	CH3	repeat count	wait trig	goto one	logic jump
1	SUBSEQ.SEQ			2	On		
2	RAMP.WFM			Inf.			Next
3	TRIANGLE.wfm			40000		On	4
4	SINE.WFM			60000			

Do the following steps to create the main sequence:

1. Follow steps 1 and 2 in *Open the Sequence Editor* on page 2–81 to open a new sequence table.

2. Fill in the CH1 and Repeat Count columns for lines 1 through 4 according to Table 2–20.

   Refer to steps 1 through 13 beginning on page 2–82 of this tutorial if you need help. To set *Inf.* in the Repeat Count of line 2, push the **Infinity** (**SHIFT** + ←) side button once.

3. Repeatedly push the ⬆ button to go back to the line 1.

4. Push the **CLEAR MENU** bottom button.

   This step must be made to make the ◀ and ▶ buttons available to move the highlighted cursor.

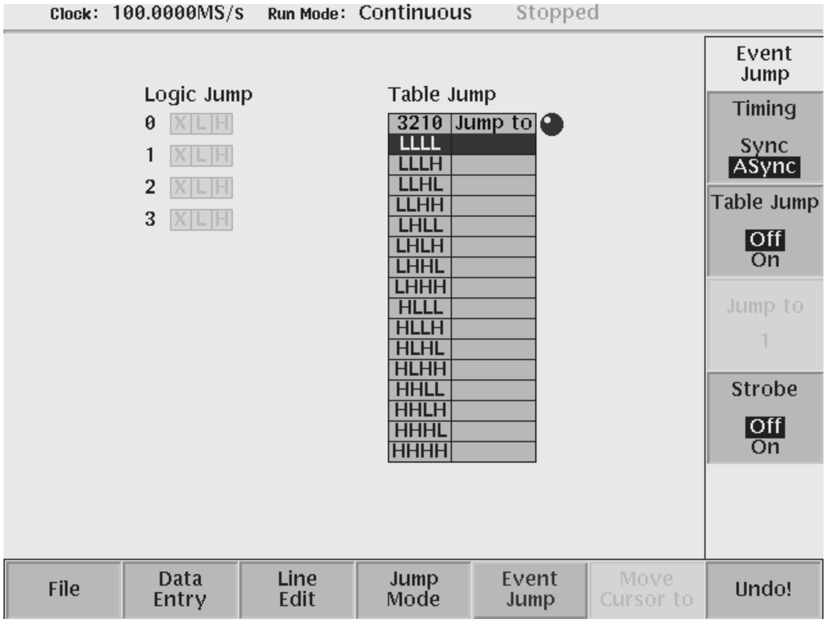
5. Push the ▶ button to move the highlighted cursor to the Wait Trigger column.

6. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button.

7. Push the **Wait Trig.** side button to set this field to *On*.

8. Push the **Jump Mode** bottom button.

   The screen as shown in Figure 2–51 appears.

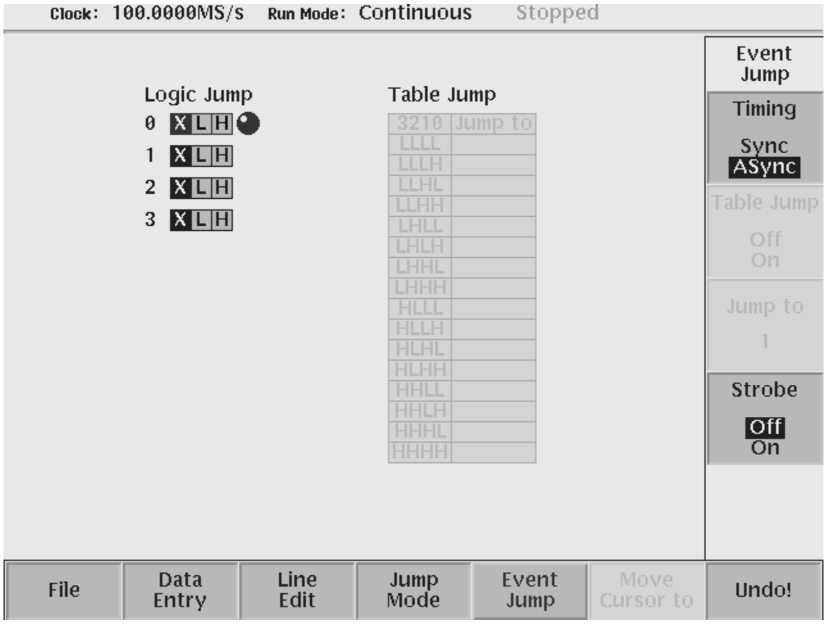


Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Figure 2–51: Screen for setting jump mode

9. Push the **Logic** side button to set the jump mode to Logic Jump.

10. Push the **Event Jump** bottom button. The screen as shown in Figure 2–52 appears.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Figure 2–52: Screen for setting event jump

11. Push the **Timing** side button to set the timing to Sync.

12. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button.

    This step must be made to go back to the sequence table screen.

13. Push the ▼ button once and then ▶ button twice to move the highlighted cursor to the Logic Jump column.

14. Push the **Jump to Next** side button.

15. Push the ▼ button once to go to the next line.

16. Push the **Jump to Specified Line** side button.

17. Push the **Jump to** side button, and set **4** using the general purpose knob.

18. Push the **CLEAR MENU** bottom button.

    This step must be made to make the ◀ and ▶ buttons able to move the highlight cursor.

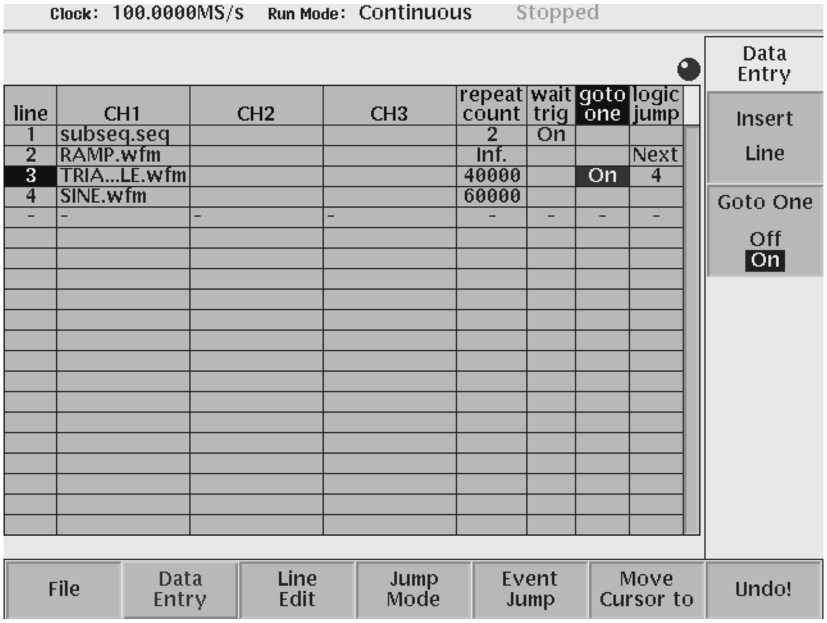
19. Push the ◀ button once to move the highlighted cursor to the Goto One column.

20. Push the **Data Entry** bottom button.

    This step must be made to go back to the sequence table screen.

21. Push the **Goto One** side button to On.

You should be able to complete the main sequence table by using steps similar to creating the subsequence table. The finished main sequence table should look like Figure 2–53.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

line	CH1	CH2	CH3	repeat count	wait trig	goto one	logic jump
1	subseq.seq			2	On		
2	RAMP.wfm			Inf.			Next
3	TRIA...LE.wfm			40000		On	4
4	SINE.wfm			60000			
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Figure 2–53: Example of sequence (MAINSEQ.SEQ)

22. Save the sequence table in the file *mainseq.seq*. Refer to *Save the Subsequence* on page 2–84.

Set Run Mode

The event jump functions in the sequence list are only functional when the instrument run mode is set to Enhanced mode. Do the following steps to set the run mode to enhanced:

1. Push the **SETUP** button on the front-panel to display the SETUP screen.
2. Push the **Run Mode** bottom button.
3. Push the **Enhanced** side button.

Load and Run the Sequence Files

Do the following steps to load and run the sequence files:

1. Push the **Waveform/Sequence** bottom button.
2. Push the **Load...** side button.
3. Select *mainseq.seq* from the file list in the dialog box.
4. Push the **OK** side button.

   If there is an error in the sequence descriptions, the instrument displays a message and stops reading the files. Errors may occur when you use infinite repeats in a subsequence.

***NOTE**. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator reads all related sequence files and waveform files at this time. If the instrument cannot read or find a sequence file, it displays an error message. Make sure that you entered the sequence and subsequence file names exactly as they appear in the file lists.*

Run the Sequence Files

Do the following steps to load and run the sequence files:

1. Push the **RUN** button.

   The RUN LED is on.

2. Push the **CH 1 OUT** button near the CH1 connector.

   The CH1 LED is on.

When the subsequence *subseq.seq* is called, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waits for a trigger event. The message Waiting is displayed in the current run status area when the instrument is waiting for a trigger. The instrument is waiting because line 1 of the main sequence is waiting for a trigger before outputting the waveforms on that line.

***NOTE**. The instrument has a function that automatically provides trigger signals at user-defined intervals. If the instrument does not wait for you to press the Force Trigger button before executing the sequence table, you will need to disable the automatic trigger signal. Refer to page 3–47 for information on how to disable automatic trigger signals.*

---

3. Push the **FORCE TRIGGER** button on the front panel to generate a trigger event.

Line 1 of *mainseq.seq* calls the subsequence file as soon as it detects a trigger event. The subsequence list outputs the four waveforms and then returns to line 2 of the main sequence.

Line 2 continuously outputs the ramp waveform while waiting for an event signal. You will supply an event signal in the next step.

4. Push the **FORCE EVENT** button on the front panel.

This causes the sequence to jump to line 3. When line 3 completes output of the triangle waveform, it goes back to the line 1 and starts the output process over again. So, line 1 to 3 loops and the main sequence file does not terminate unless you push the **FORCE EVENT** button.

You have completed the *Creating and Running Waveform Sequences* tutorial.

Refer to the *Reference* section beginning on page 3–1 for detailed information on all instrument functions.

Reference

This section provides the following information:

- Menu structures shows the tree structuring each menu
- Functions and procedures for using the waveform, pattern, sequence, and equation/text editors
- Functions and procedures for instrument setup, including horizontal and vertical axis parameters, run mode, trigger setup, markers, and file handling
- Functions and procedures for using applications and utilities

Overview

Process Flow

Figure 3–1 shows a typical process flow from creating and editing to outputting.

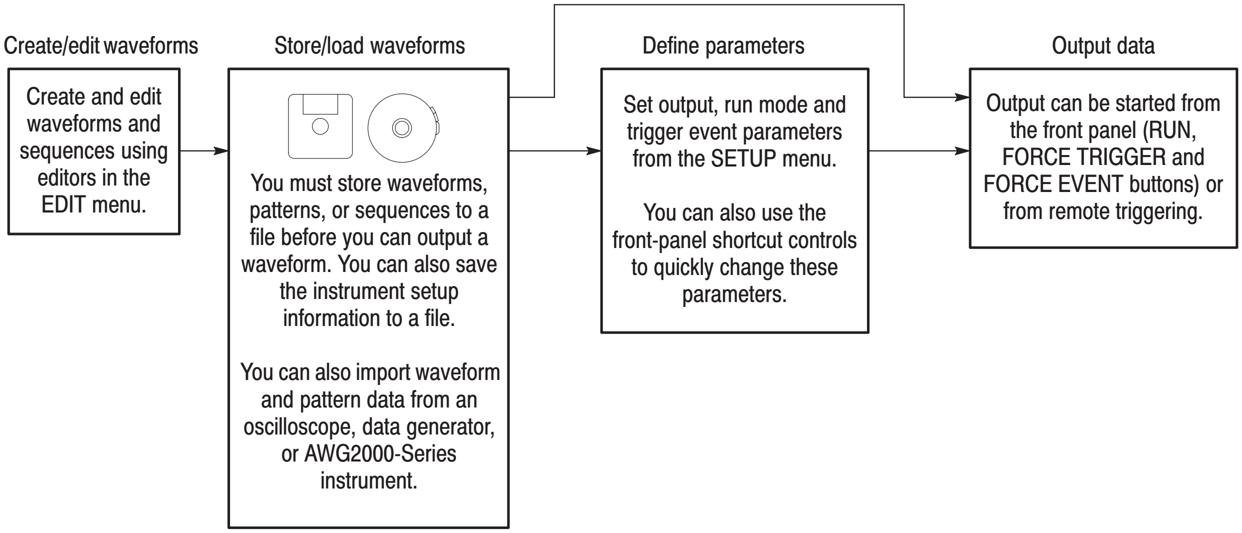


Figure 3–1: Overview of AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator process flow

Menus

Table 3–1 lists the four main menus in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator. Additional menu information can be found in the Reference section of this manual beginning on page 3–3.

Table 3–1: AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator main menus

Menu button	Description
SETUP	Controls waveform output settings including trigger source and sample clock rate.
EDIT	Controls access to all functions for creating, editing, converting, importing and exporting waveforms. Quick Editor functions are accessed through the Waveform editor. You can enter into the Quick Editor only from the waveform editor.
APPL	Creates signals for testing devices such as hard disks, networks, and also for jitter testing and digital modulation.
UTILITY	Controls instrument setup functions that are not directly related to editing or output.

Menu Structures

This section describes the structures for the menu system. The four main menu structures contain the following submenus:

- Bottom menus
- Side menus
- Pop-up menus

Item labels that follow the ellipsis (...) bring up either a subside menu, pop-up menu, or a dialog box.

The side menus are illustrated as follows:

- Side menu items that switch between two parameters:

  Format: Item-label {param1 | param2}

  Example: Output {Normal | Direct}

- Side menu items that allow the selection with the general purpose knob:

  Format: Item-label {option1 | option2 | option3 | ...}

  Example: Filter {Through | 50 MHz | 20 MHz | 5 MHz | 1 MHz}

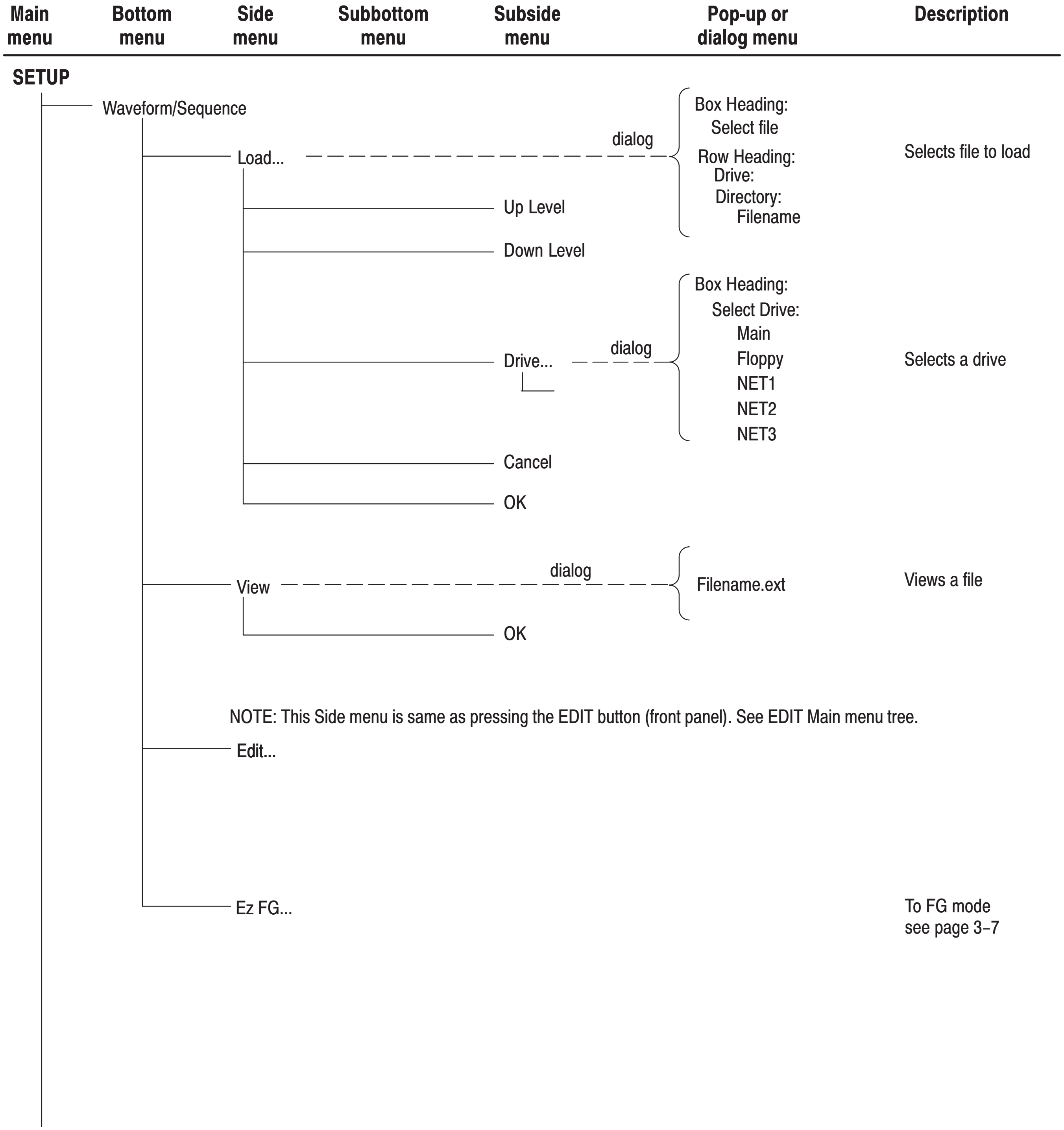
- Side menu items that allow numeric values to be set using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob:

  Format: Item-label (minimum to maximum)

  Example: Level (–2.0 to 2.0 V)

The access lines to the pop-up menu or screen menu items are represented with a dashed line.

Setup Menu Hierarchy



Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description

SETUP (cont.)

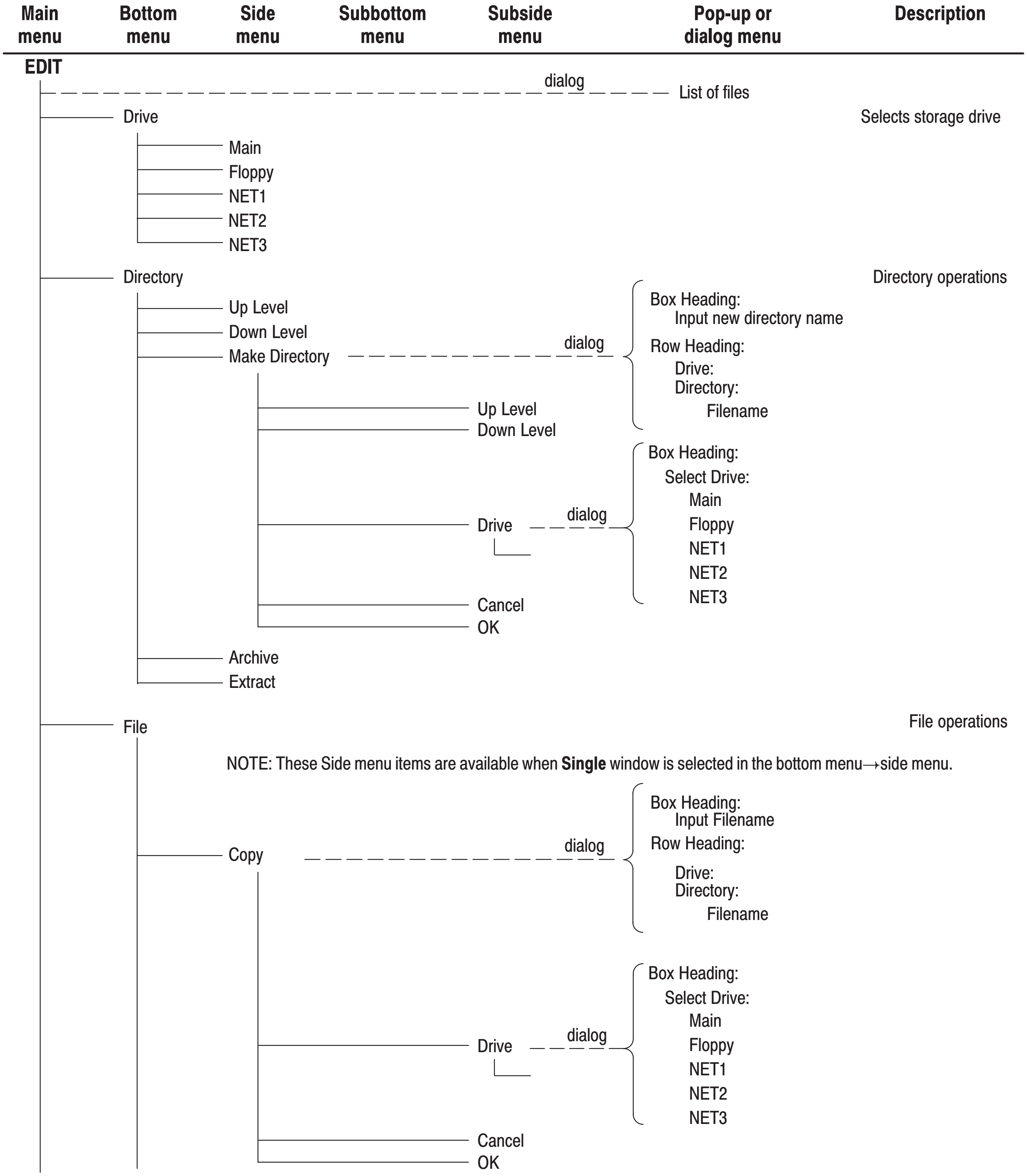
- Vertical — Adjusts vertical axis parameters
  - NOTE: This Side menu items are available when **CH1, CH2 or CH3** is selected.
  - Filter {Through | 50 MHz | 20 MHz | 5 MHz | 1 MHz} — Note: Use the General Purpose Knob to select.
  - Amplitude (20 mV$_{p-p}$ to 2.000 V$_{p-p}$ step 1mV$_{p-p}$) — (Option 05 Single end: 20 mV$_{p-p}$ to 5.0 V$_{p-p}$ step 1mV$_{p-p}$)
  - Offset (−1.0 V to +1.0 V step 1mV$_{p-p}$) — (Option 05 Single end: −2.5 V to 2.5 V step 1mV)
  - Add...
    - None
    - Noise
    - External
    - Noise Level (−140 to −95 dBm/Hz, option 05 Single End: −130 dBm/Hz)
    - Previous menu
  - Output { Normal | Direct. }
  - NOTE: This Side menu items are available when **(CH1, CH2 or CH3) + DIGITAL** is selected in the bottom menu→side menu. (Option 03 Digital out)
  - Output { Hi Z | On } — Note: Each DIGITAL output is turned Off and turned On.
  - Hi Z To All — Note: All DIGITAL outputs are turned Off.
  - On To All — Note: All DIGITAL outputs are turned On.
- Horizontal — Adjusts horizontal parameters
  - Clock (10 kS/s to 200 MS/s)
  - Clock Src {Internal | External}
  - Clock Ref {Internal | External}
  - Skew — dialog
    - Box Heading:
      - Skew
    - Row Heading:
      - CH2 (−2.52 ns to 2.52 ns step 70 ps)
      - CH3 (−2.52 ns to 2.52 ns step 70 ps)
    - Reset
    - Cancel
    - OK

Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description
SETUP (cont.)						
	Run Mode					Selects run mode
		Continuous				
		Triggered				
		Gated				
		Enhanced				
	Trigger					Sets trigger parameters
		Source {External | Internal}				
		Slope {Positive | Negative}				
		Level (–5.0 to 5.0 V step 0.1 V)				
		Impedance {50 Ohm | 1 k Ohm}				
		Interval (1.0 µs to 10.0 s)				
	Save/Restore					Saves/restores current settings
		Save Setup		dialog	Box Heading: Input Filename Row Heading: Drive: Directory: Filename.set	
				Drive		
				Cancel		
				OK		
		Restore Setup		dialog	Box Heading: Select Setup File Row Heading: Drive: Directory: Filename	
				Drive		
				Cancel		
				OK		

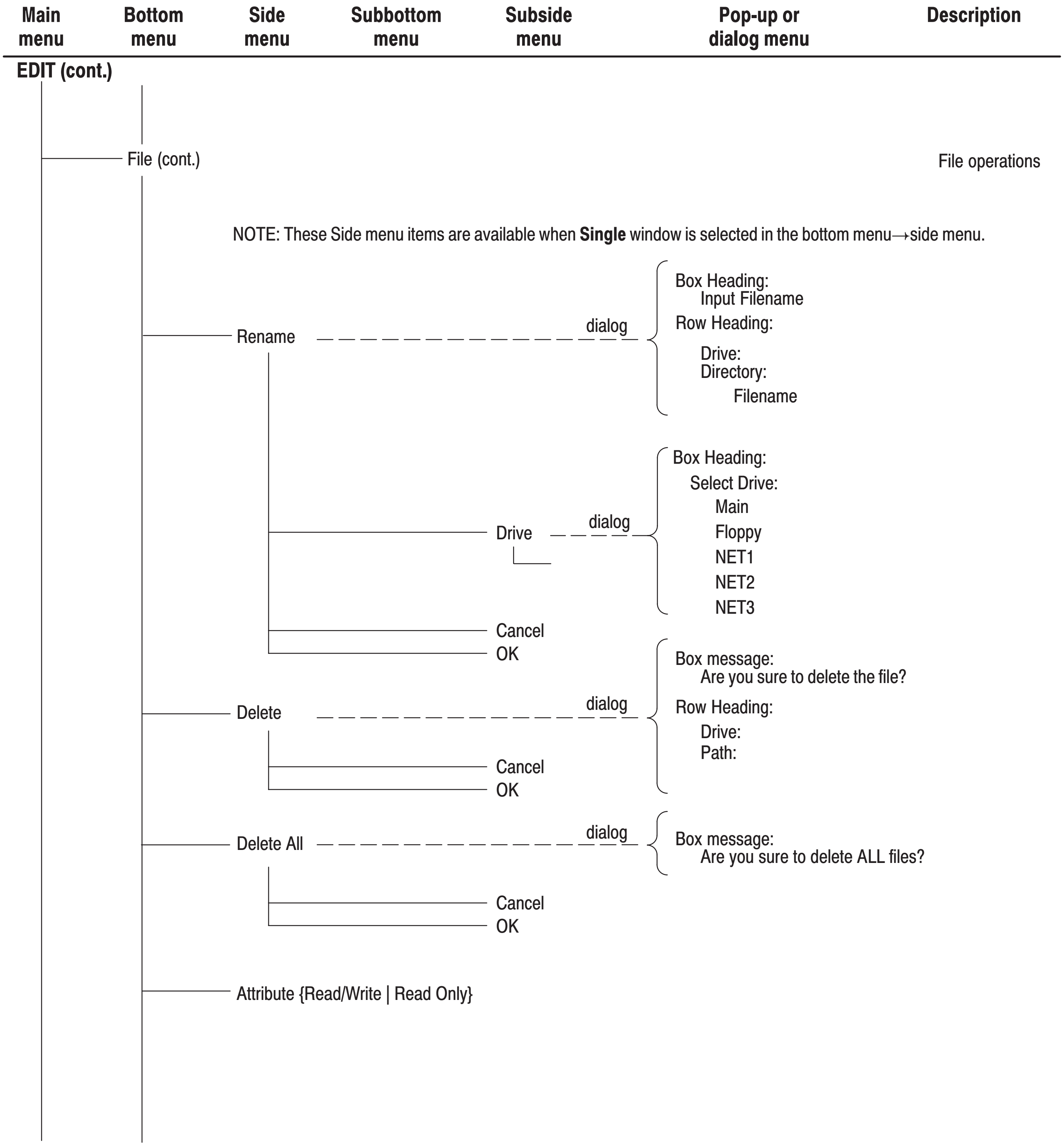
Note: Press the Front Panel Edit button repeatedly to return to the Edit Main menu.

Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description
Ez FG						
	Sine	Frequency (1.000Hz to 10.00MHz)			;	
		Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: 20mV$_{pp}$ to 5.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)	
		Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: –2.5 to 2.5 V step 1mV)	
		Polarity { Normal | Inverted }				
		Duty/Phase...				
				Phase (–360° to 360°)		
				Previous Menu		
	Triangle	Frequency (1.000Hz to 10.00MHz)				
		Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: 20mV$_{pp}$ to 5.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)	
		Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: –2.5 to 2.5 V step 1mV)	
		Polarity { Normal | Inverted }				
		Duty/Phase...				
				Phase (–360° to 360°)		
				Previous Menu		
	Square	Frequency (1.000Hz to 10.00MHz)			;	
		Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: 20mV$_{pp}$ to 5.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)	
		Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: –2.5 to 2.5 V step 1mV)	
		Polarity { Normal | Inverted }				
		Duty/Phase...				
				Phase (–360° to 360°)		
				Previous Menu		
	Ramp	Frequency (1.000Hz to 10.00MHz)			;	
		Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: 20mV$_{pp}$ to 5.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)	
		Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: –2.5 to 2.5 V step 1mV)	
		Polarity { Normal | Inverted }				
		Duty/Phase...				
				Phase (–360° to 360°)		
				Previous Menu		
	Pulse	Frequency (1.000Hz to 10.00MHz)			;	
		Amplitude (20mV$_{pp}$ to 2.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: 20mV$_{pp}$ to 5.0 V$_{pp}$ step 1mV)	
		Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: –2.5 to 2.5 V step 1mV)	
		Polarity { Normal | Inverted }				
		Duty/Phase...				
				Duty (0.1% to 99.9%)		
				Phase (–360° to 360°)		
				Previous Menu		
	DC					
		Offset (–1.0 to 1.0 V step 1mV)			(op05 Single end: –2.5 to 2.5 V step 1mV)	
	AWG...				; To AWG Mode	

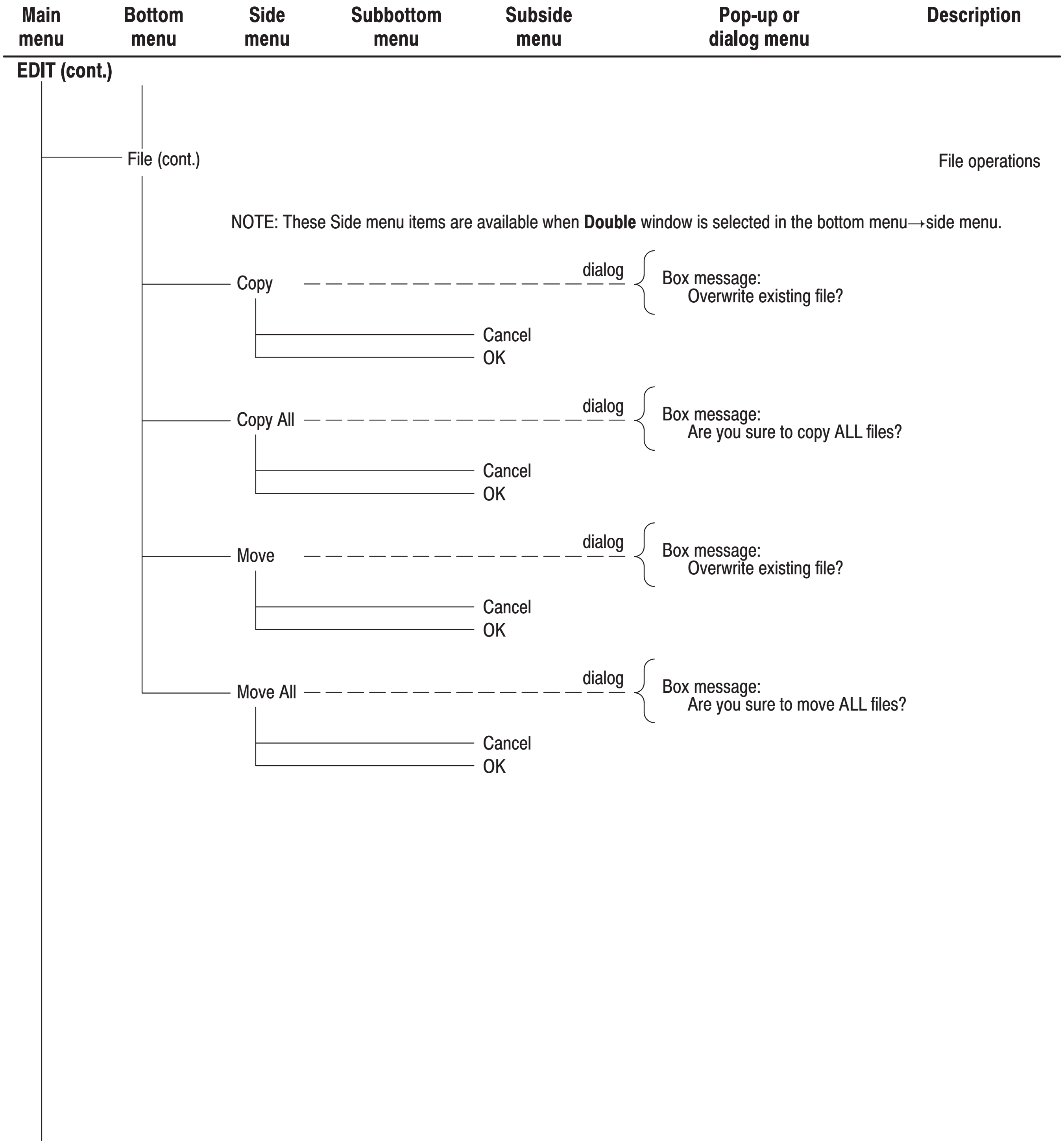
EDIT Menu Hierarchy



NOTE: These Side menu items are available when **Single** window is selected in the bottom menu→side menu.



NOTE: These Side menu items are available when **Single** window is selected in the bottom menu→side menu.



NOTE: These Side menu items are available when **Double** window is selected in the bottom menu→side menu.

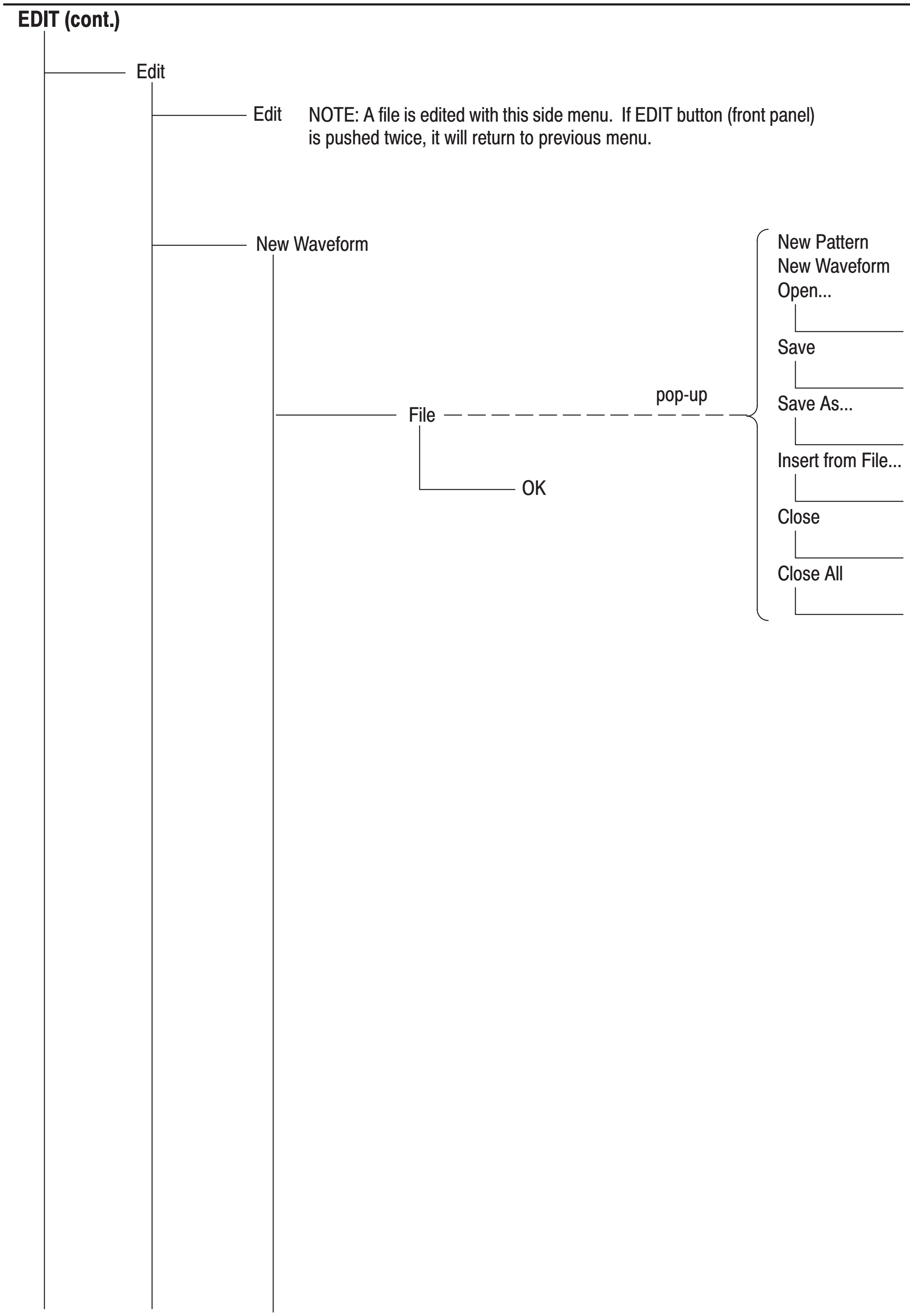
Copy — Box message: Overwrite existing file?

Copy All — Box message: Are you sure to copy ALL files?

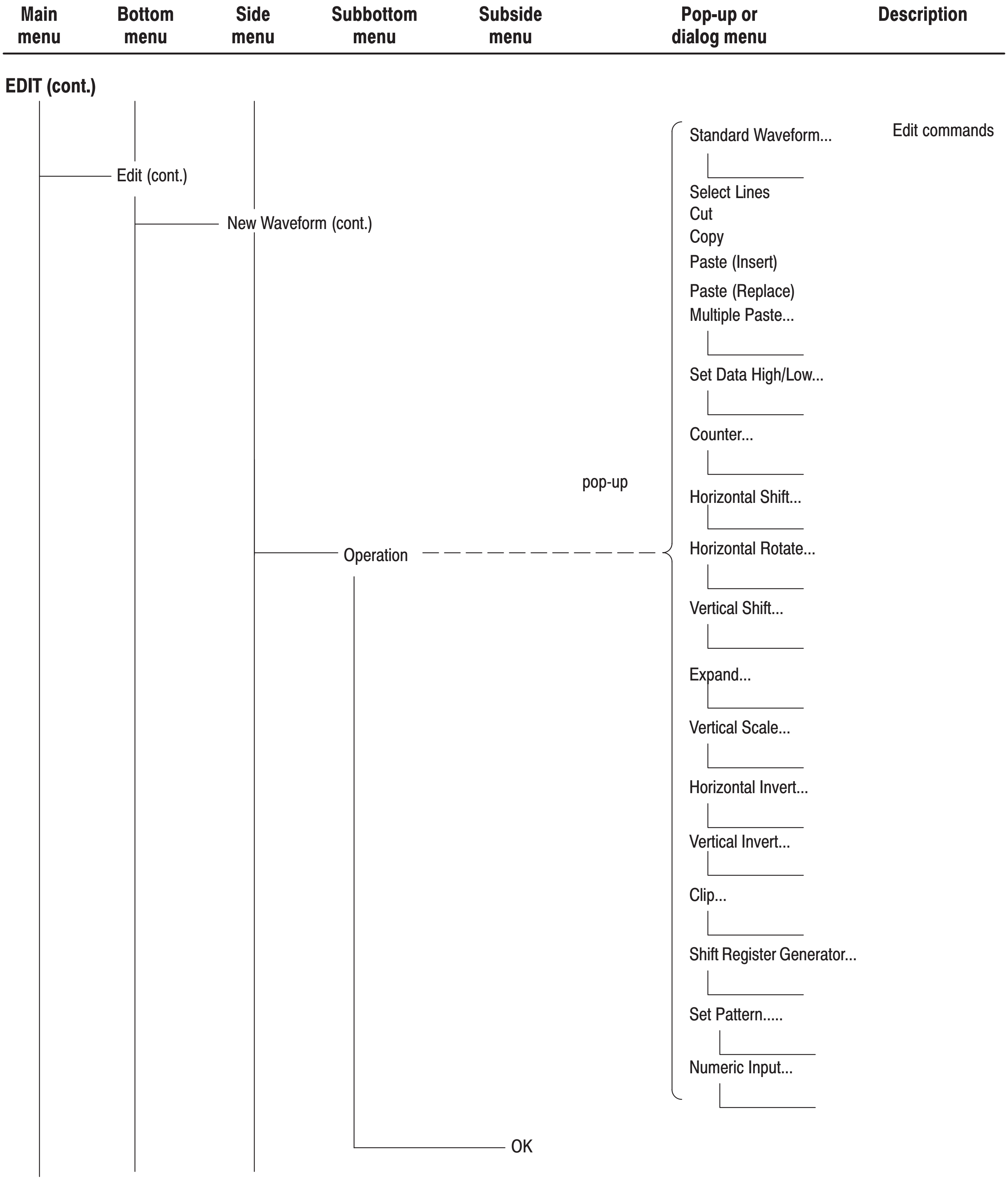
Move — Box message: Overwrite existing file?

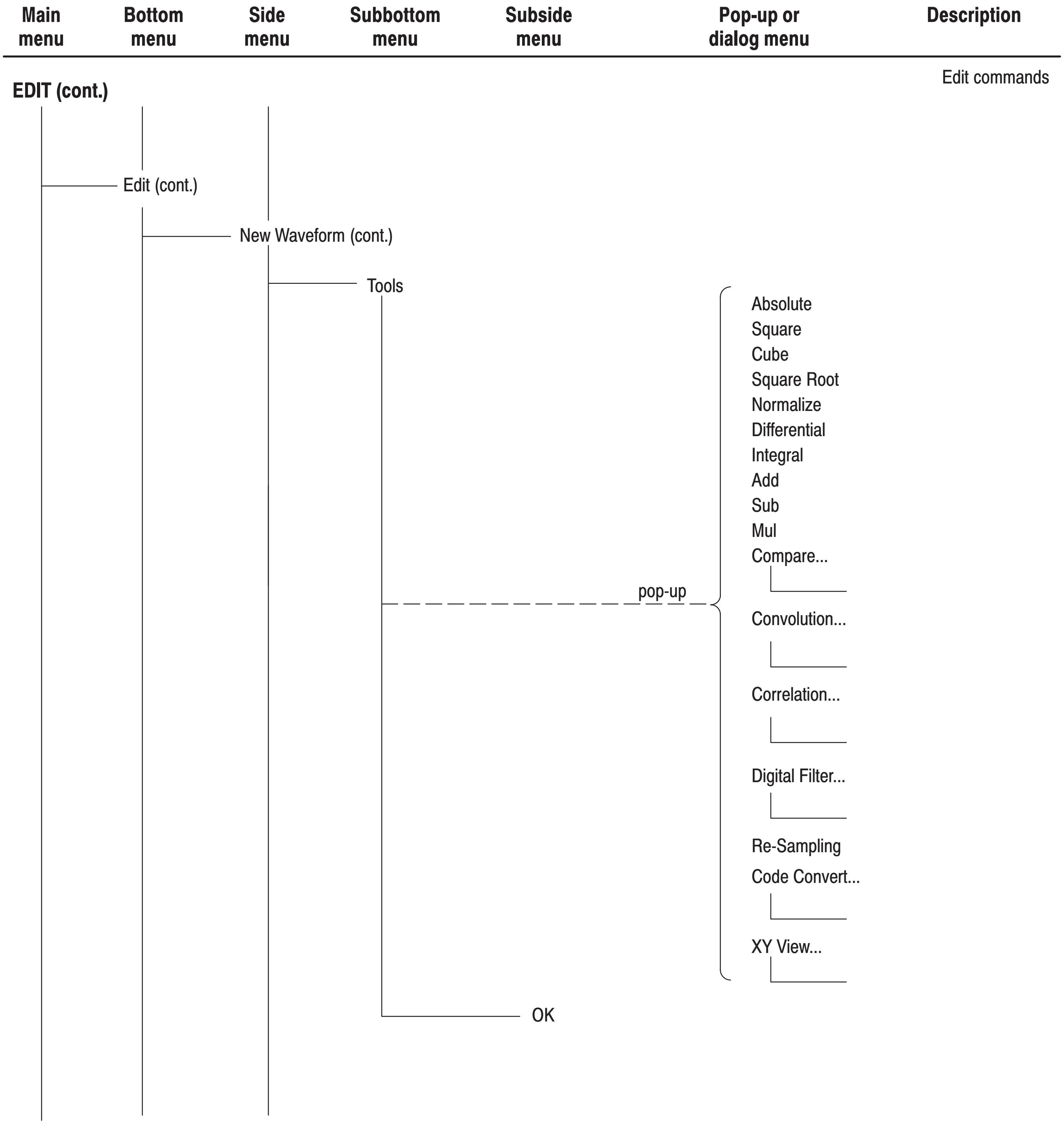
Move All — Box message: Are you sure to move ALL files?

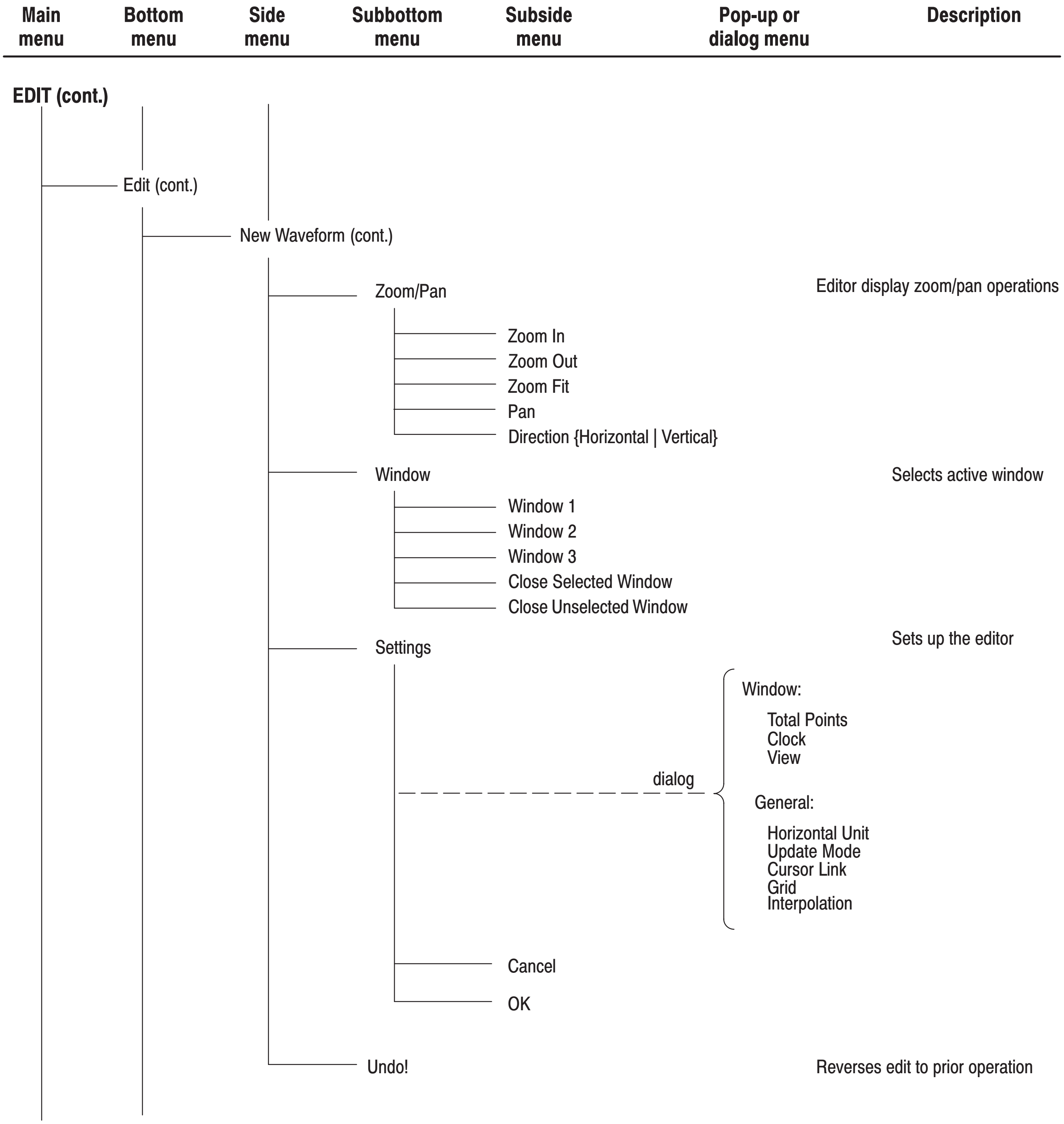
Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description

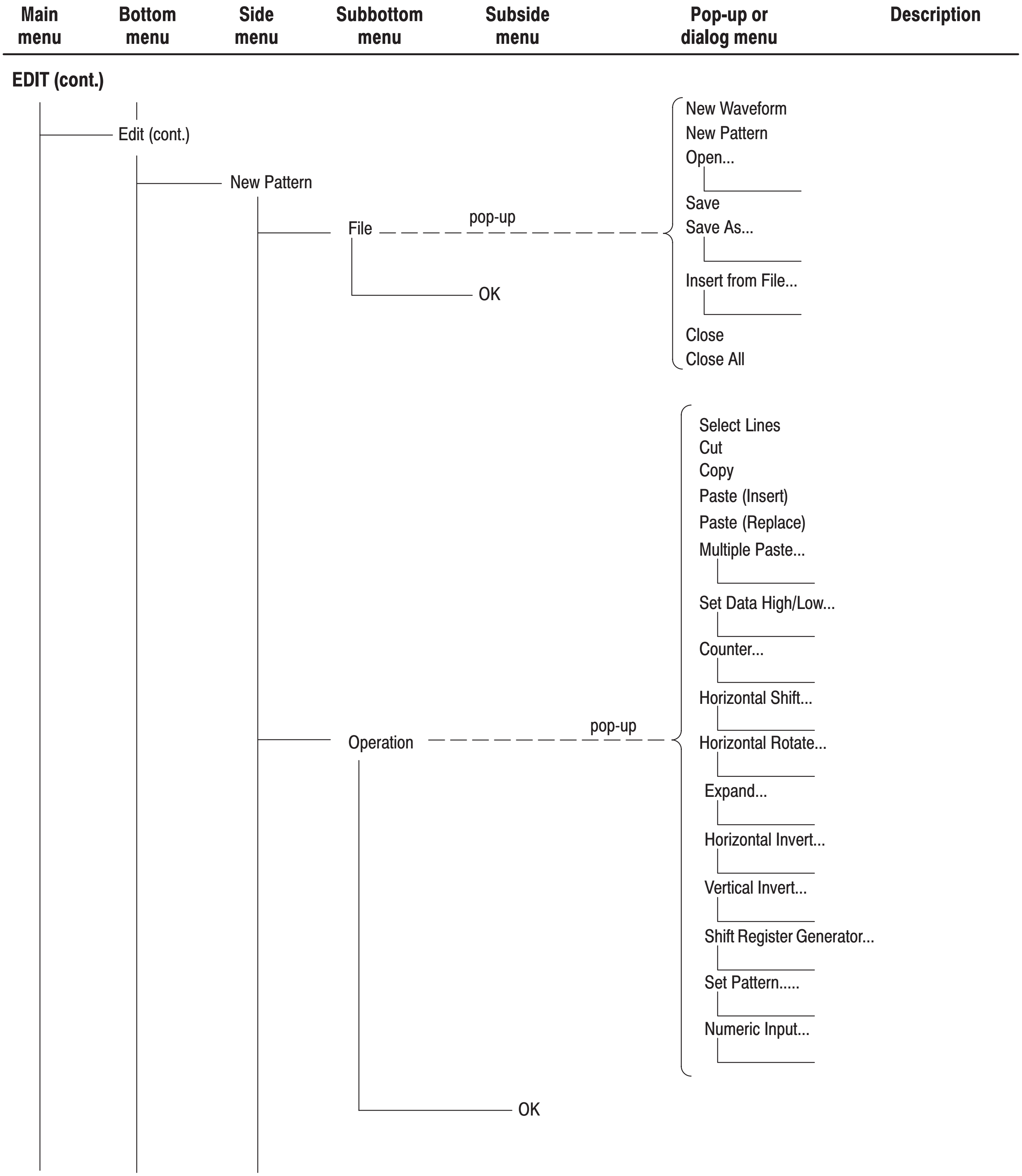


NOTE: A file is edited with this side menu. If EDIT button (front panel) is pushed twice, it will return to previous menu.

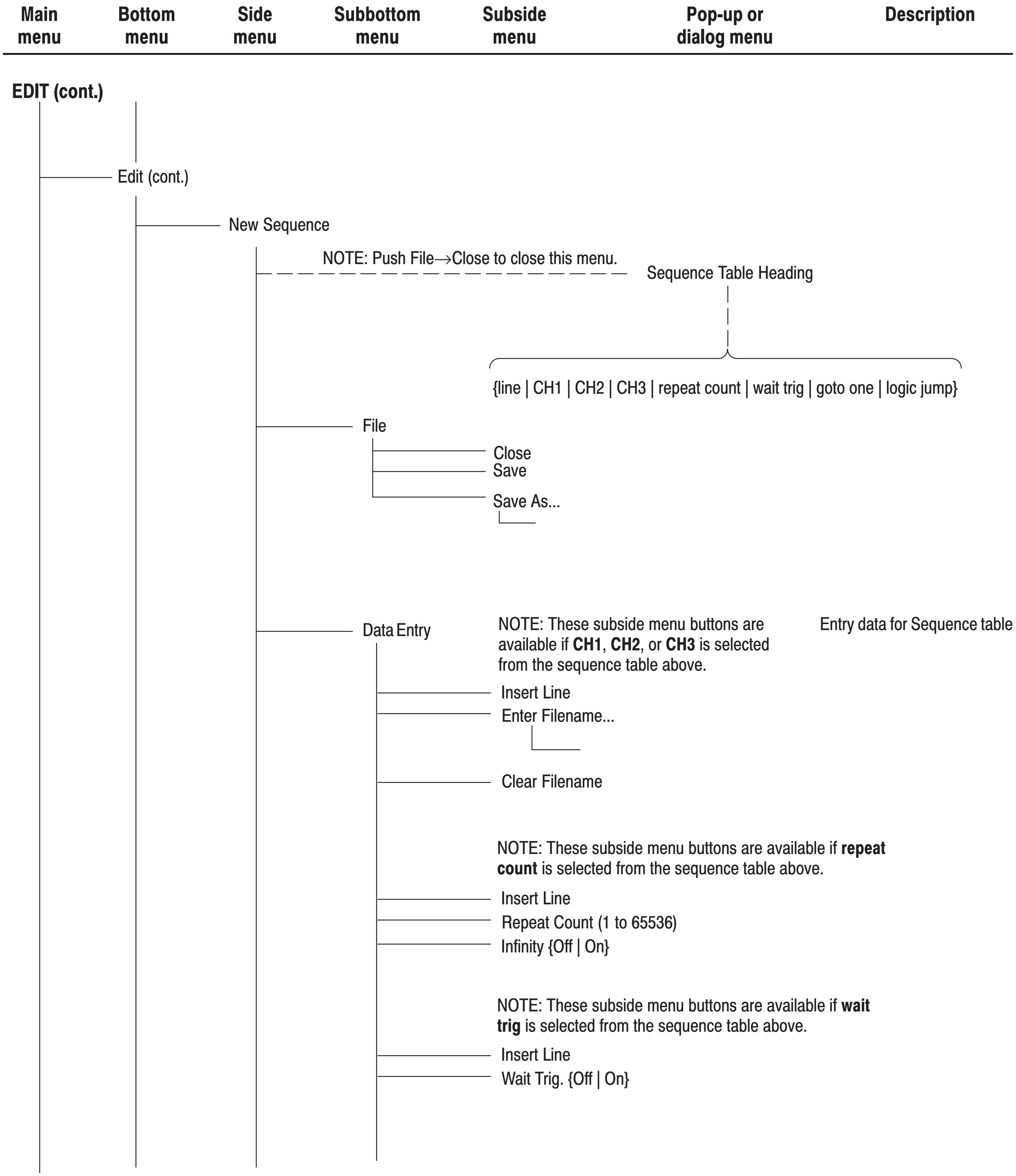

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
EDIT (cont.)
Edit (cont.)
New Waveform (cont.)
Operation
pop-up
OK
Standard Waveform...
Select Lines
Cut
Copy
Paste (Insert)
Paste (Replace)
Multiple Paste...
Set Data High/Low...
Counter...
Horizontal Shift...
Horizontal Rotate...
Vertical Shift...
Expand...
Vertical Scale...
Horizontal Invert...
Vertical Invert...
Clip...
Shift Register Generator...
Set Pattern.....
Numeric Input...
Edit commands


Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
Edit commands
EDIT (cont.)
Edit (cont.)
New Waveform (cont.)
Tools
pop-up
Absolute
Square
Cube
Square Root
Normalize
Differential
Integral
Add
Sub
Mul
Compare...
Convolution...
Correlation...
Digital Filter...
Re-Sampling
Code Convert...
XY View...
OK


Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
EDIT (cont.)
Edit (cont.)
New Waveform (cont.)
Zoom/Pan
Editor display zoom/pan operations
Zoom In
Zoom Out
Zoom Fit
Pan
Direction {Horizontal | Vertical}
Window
Selects active window
Window 1
Window 2
Window 3
Close Selected Window
Close Unselected Window
Settings
Sets up the editor
dialog
Window:
Total Points
Clock
View
General:
Horizontal Unit
Update Mode
Cursor Link
Grid
Interpolation
Cancel
OK
Undo!
Reverses edit to prior operation


Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
EDIT (cont.)
Edit (cont.)
New Pattern
File
pop-up
OK
New Waveform
New Pattern
Open...
Save
Save As...
Insert from File...
Close
Close All
Operation
pop-up
OK
Select Lines
Cut
Copy
Paste (Insert)
Paste (Replace)
Multiple Paste...
Set Data High/Low...
Counter...
Horizontal Shift...
Horizontal Rotate...
Expand...
Horizontal Invert...
Vertical Invert...
Shift Register Generator...
Set Pattern.....
Numeric Input...

Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description
EDIT (cont.)						
	Edit (cont.)					
		New Pattern (cont.)				
			Tools			
					pop-up: Code Convert...	
				OK		
			Zoom/Pan			Editor display zoom/pan operations
				Zoom In		
				Zoom Out		
				Zoom Fit		
				Pan		
				Direction {Horizontal | Vertical}		
			Window			Selects active window
				Window 1		
				Window 2		
				Window 3		
				Close Selected Window		
				Close Unselected Window		
			Settings			Sets up the editor
					dialog: Window: Total Points Clock View General: Horizontal Unit Update Mode Cursor Link Grid Interpolation	
				Cancel		
				OK		
			Undo!			Reverses edit to prior operation



NOTE: Push File→Close to close this menu.

NOTE: These subside menu buttons are available if **CH1**, **CH2**, or **CH3** is selected from the sequence table above.

Entry data for Sequence table

NOTE: These subside menu buttons are available if **repeat count** is selected from the sequence table above.

NOTE: These subside menu buttons are available if **wait trig** is selected from the sequence table above.

Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description

EDIT (cont.)

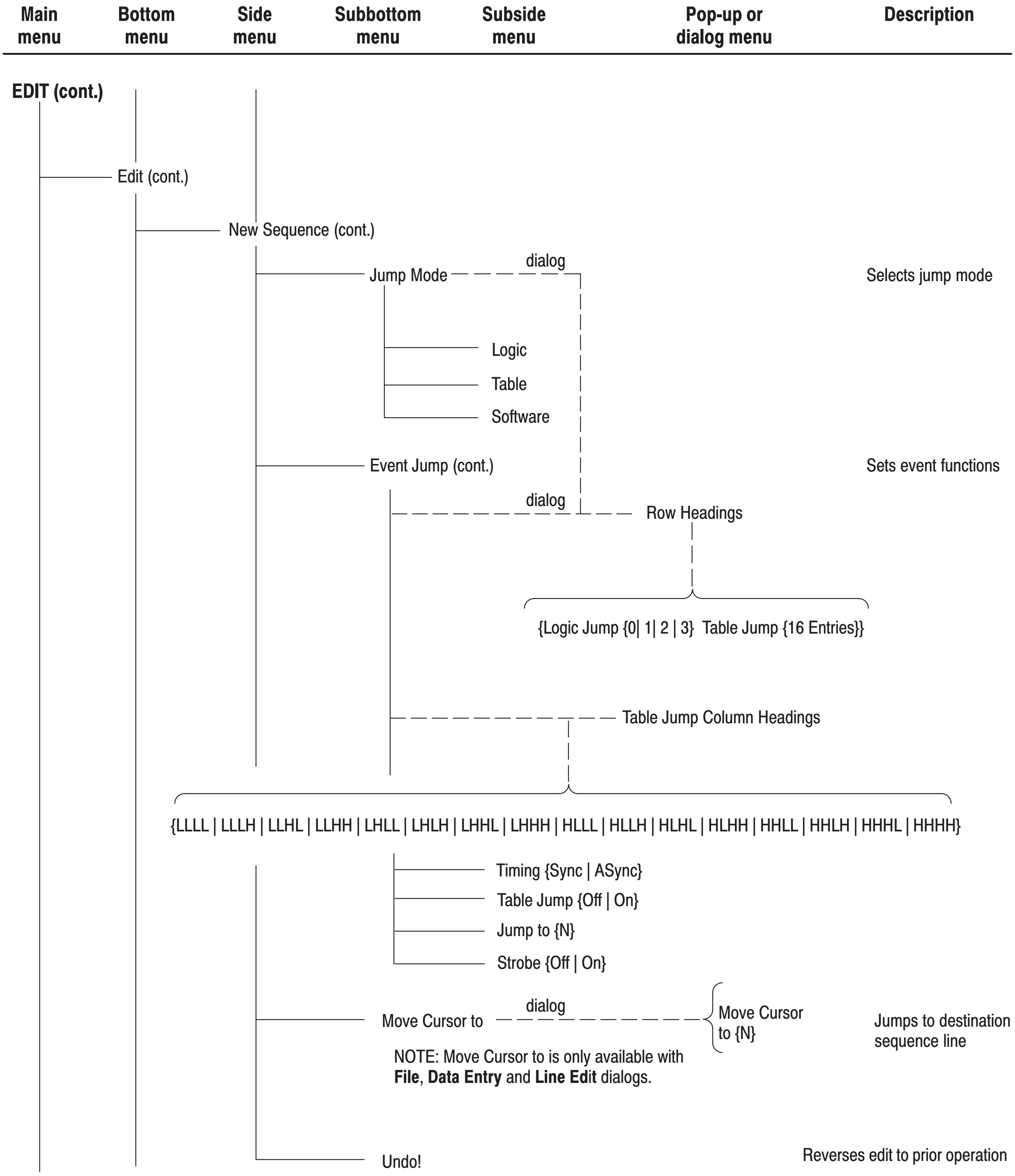
- Edit (cont.)
  - New Sequence (cont.)
    - Data Entry (cont.)

      NOTE: These subside menu buttons are available if **goto one** is selected from the sequence table above.

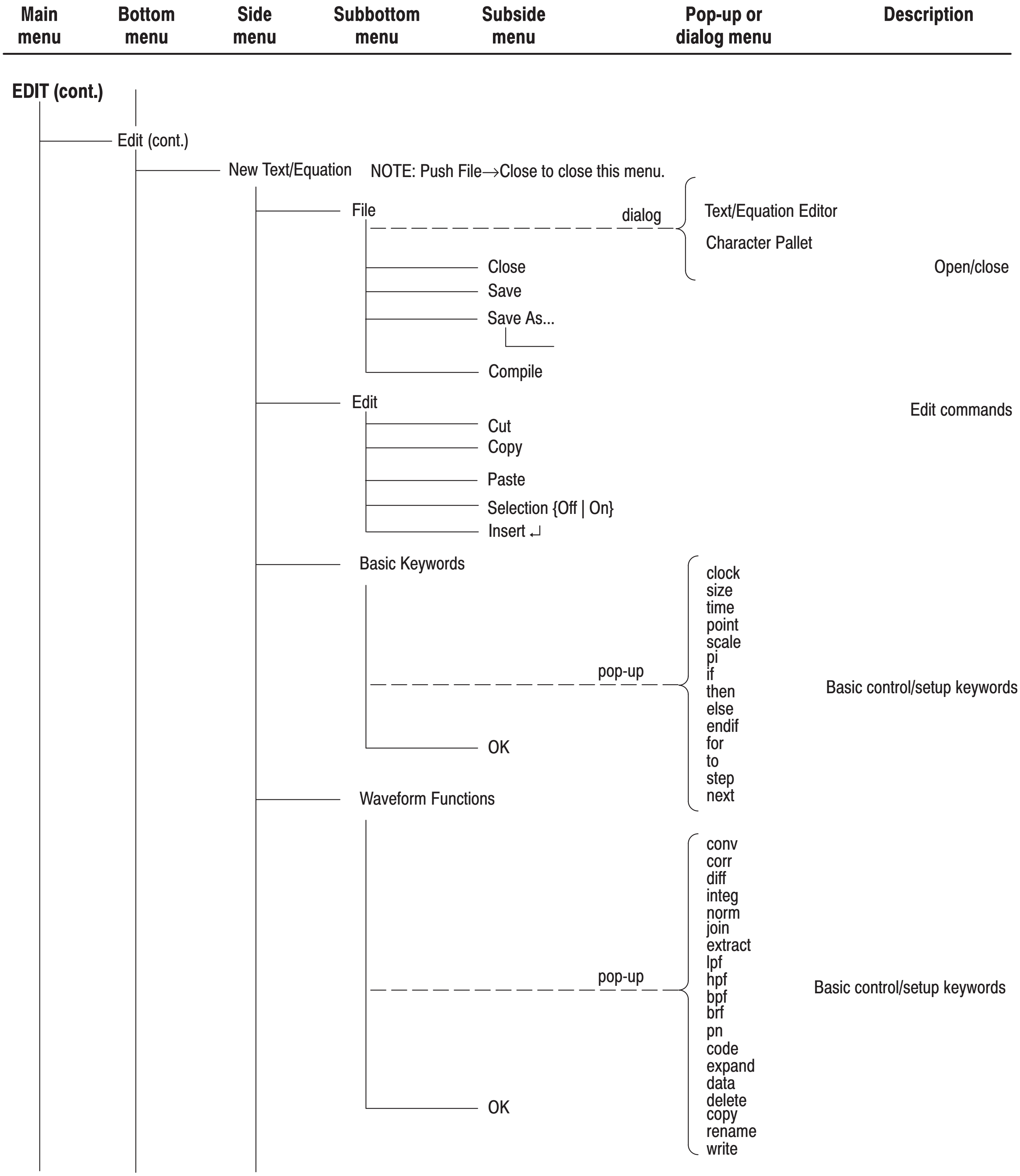
      - Insert Line
      - Goto One {Off | On}

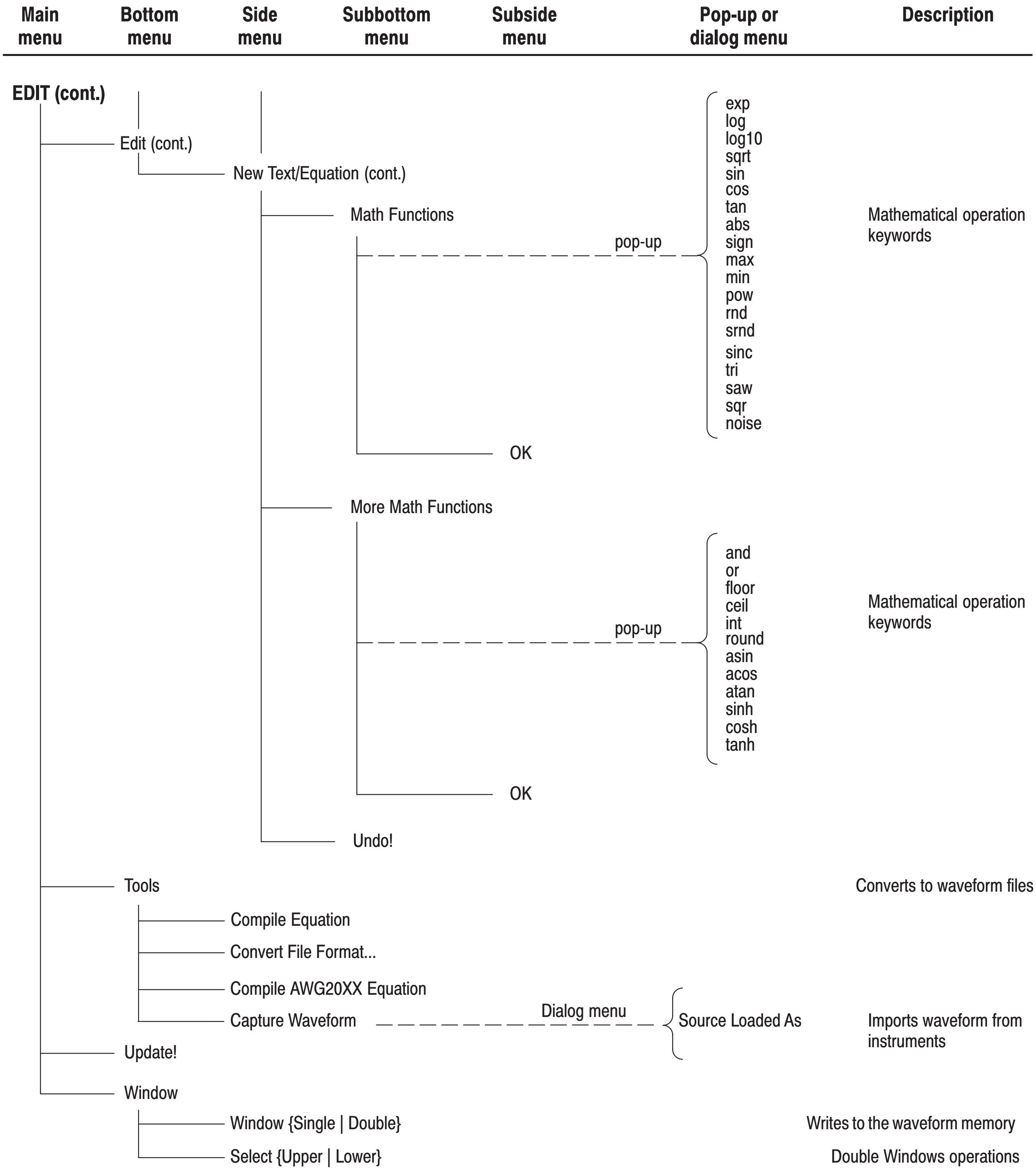
      NOTE: These side menu buttons are available if **logic jump** is selected from the sequence table above.

      - Insert Line
      - Jump Off
      - Jump to Next
      - Jump to Specified Line
      - Jump to {N}
    - Line Edit — Sequence line edit commands
      - Cut Line
      - Copy Line
      - Paste Line

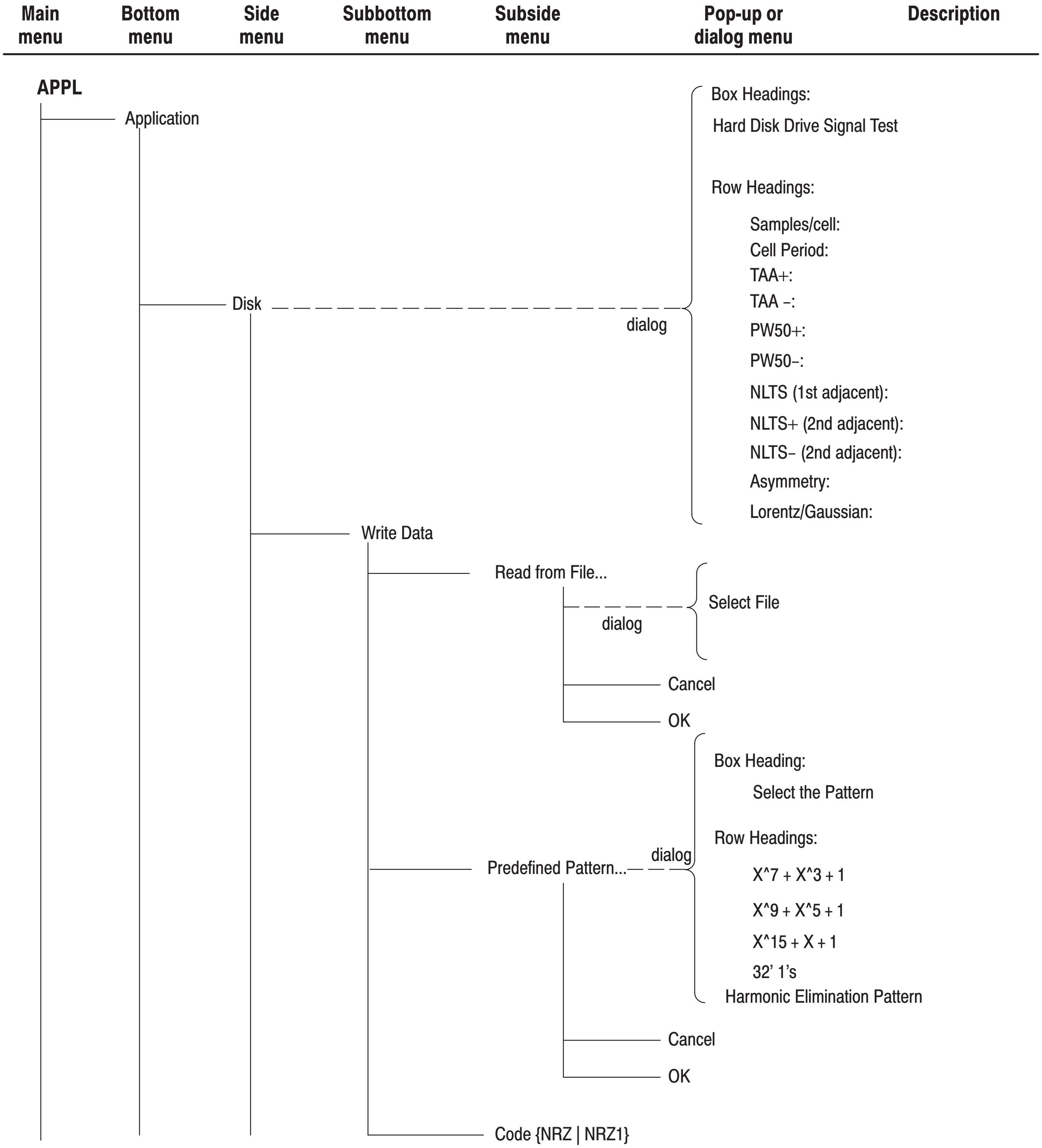


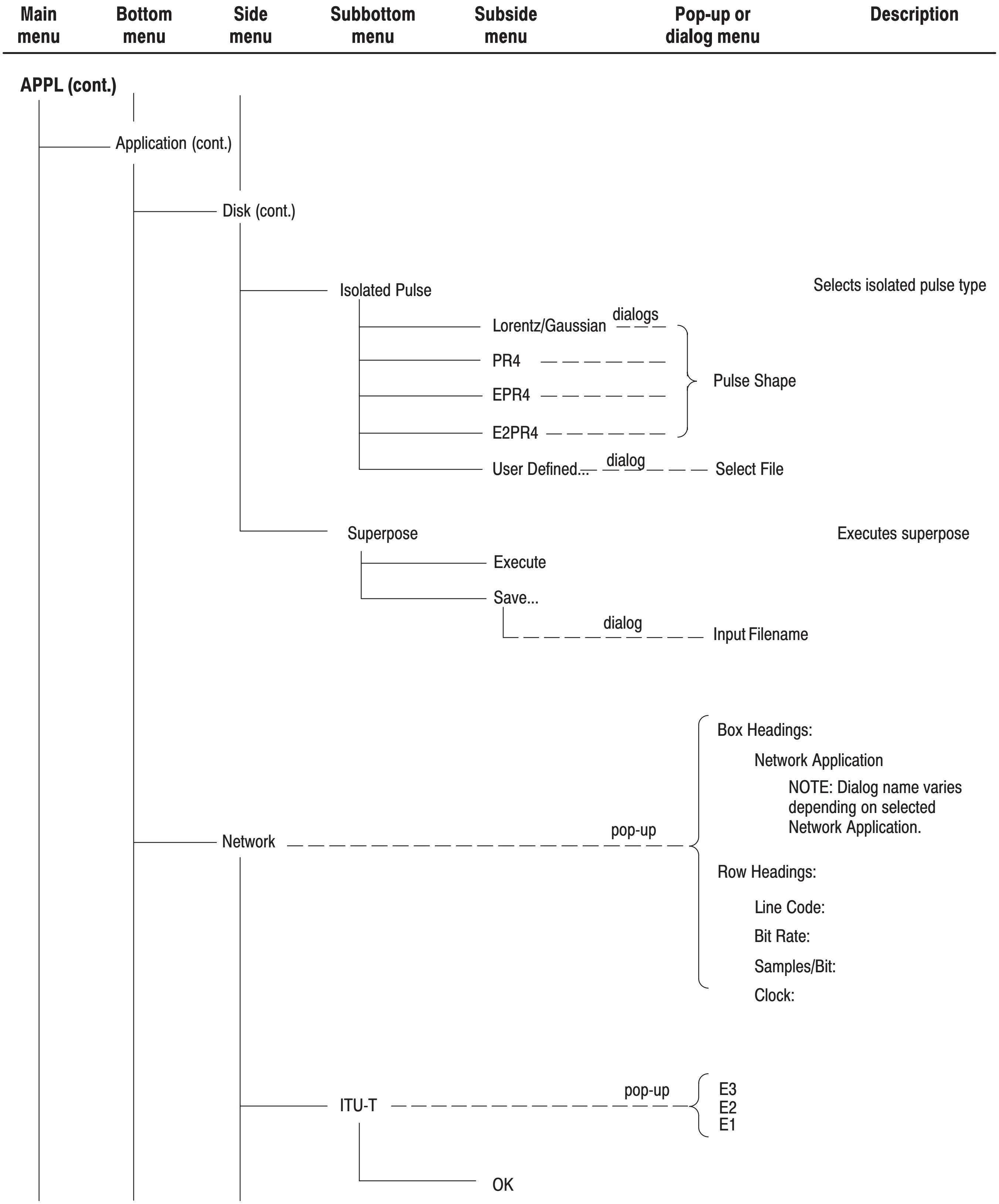
NOTE: Move Cursor to is only available with **File**, **Data Entry** and **Line Edit** dialogs.

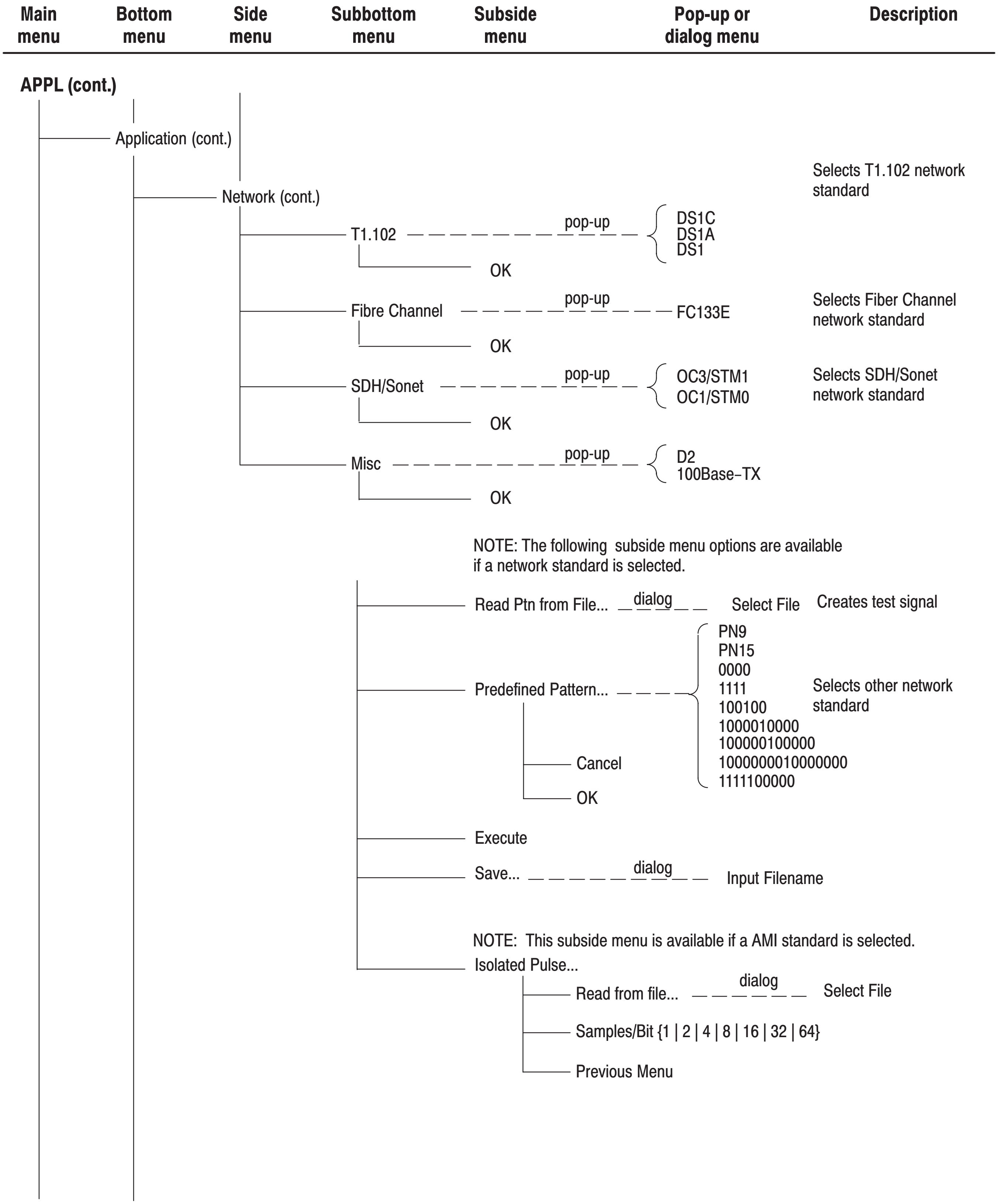

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
EDIT (cont.)
Edit (cont.)
New Text/Equation
NOTE: Push File→Close to close this menu.
File
dialog
Text/Equation Editor
Character Pallet
Close
Open/close
Save
Save As...
Compile
Edit
Edit commands
Cut
Copy
Paste
Selection {Off | On}
Insert ↵
Basic Keywords
pop-up
clock
size
time
point
scale
pi
if
then
else
endif
for
to
step
next
Basic control/setup keywords
OK
Waveform Functions
pop-up
conv
corr
diff
integ
norm
join
extract
lpf
hpf
bpf
brf
pn
code
expand
data
delete
copy
rename
write
Basic control/setup keywords
OK


Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
EDIT (cont.)
Edit (cont.)
New Text/Equation (cont.)
Math Functions
pop-up
exp
log
log10
sqrt
sin
cos
tan
abs
sign
max
min
pow
rnd
srnd
sinc
tri
saw
sqr
noise
Mathematical operation keywords
OK
More Math Functions
pop-up
and
or
floor
ceil
int
round
asin
acos
atan
sinh
cosh
tanh
Mathematical operation keywords
OK
Undo!
Tools
Converts to waveform files
Compile Equation
Convert File Format...
Compile AWG20XX Equation
Capture Waveform
Dialog menu
Source Loaded As
Imports waveform from instruments
Update!
Window
Window {Single | Double}
Writes to the waveform memory
Select {Upper | Lower}
Double Windows operations

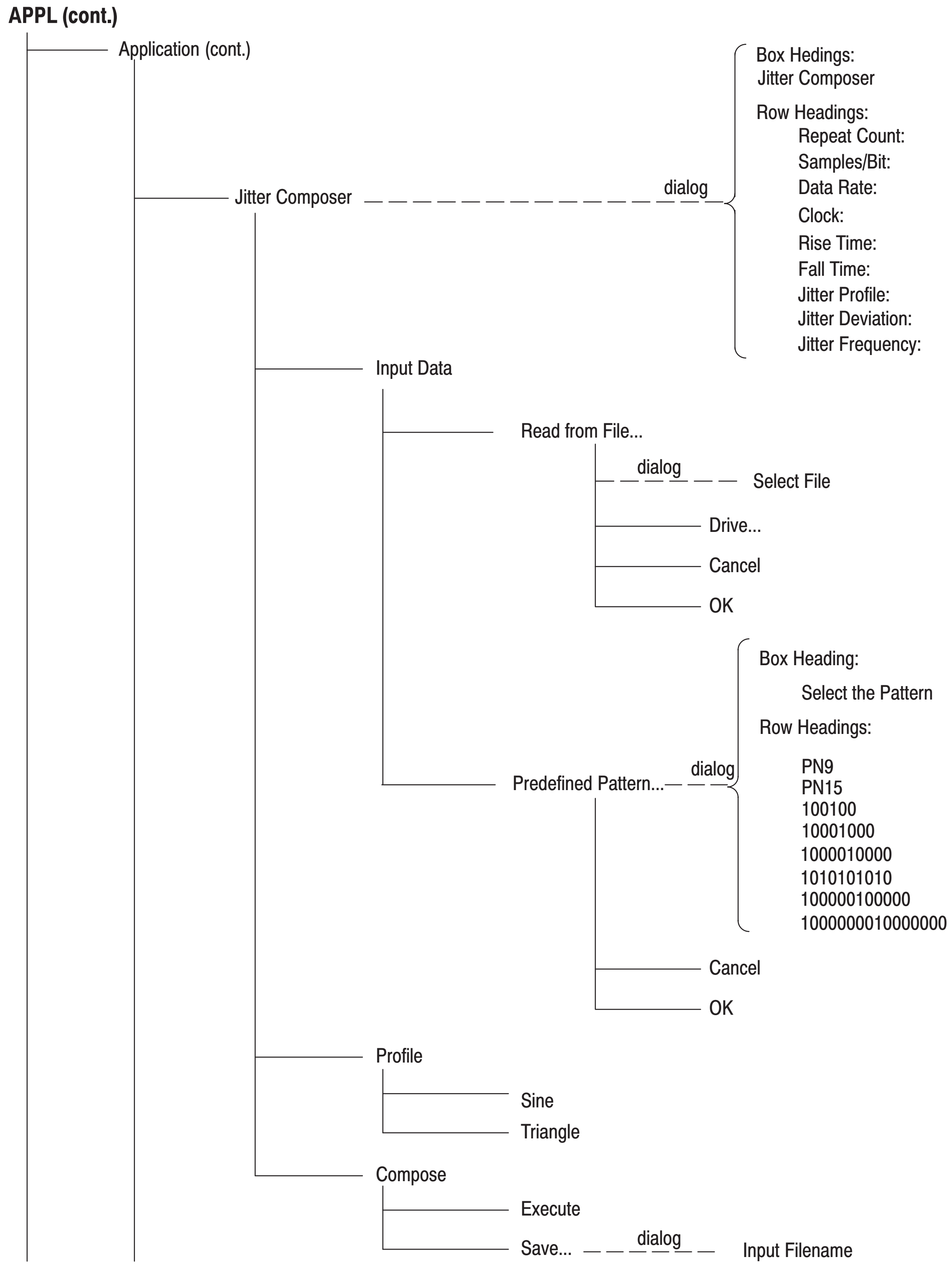
APPL Menu Hierarchy

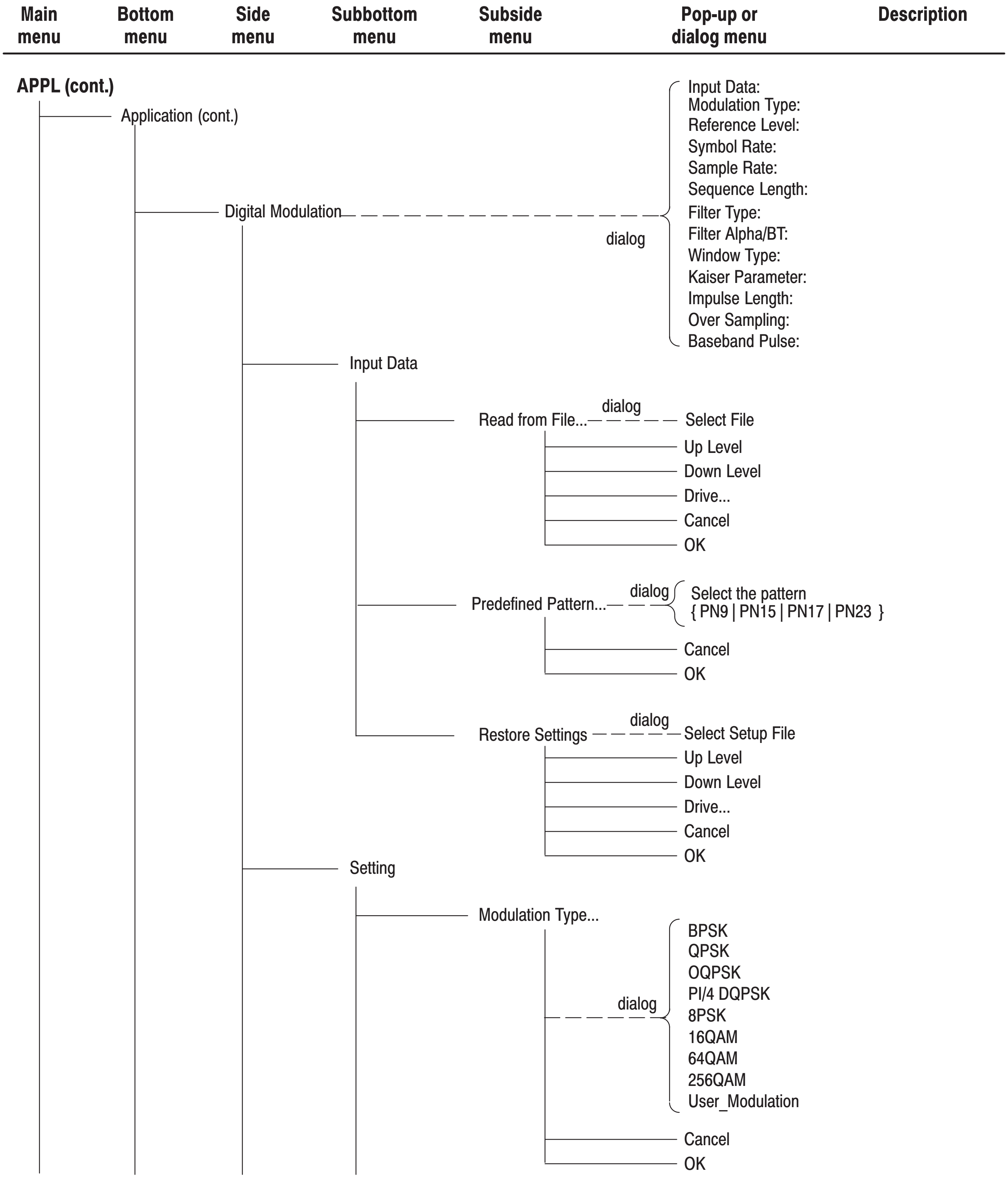


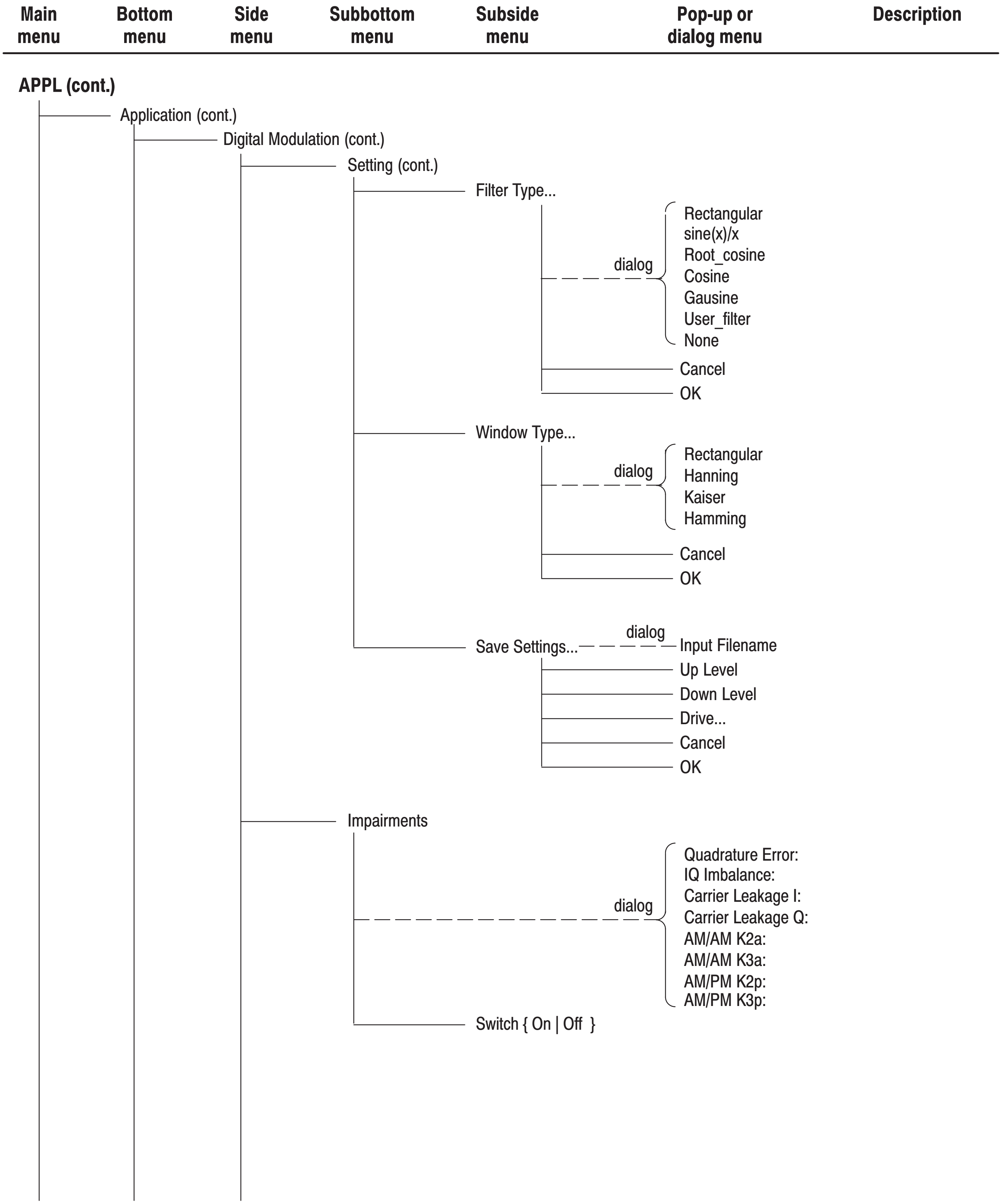

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
APPL (cont.)
Application (cont.)
Disk (cont.)
Isolated Pulse
Selects isolated pulse type
Lorentz/Gaussian
dialogs
PR4
EPR4
E2PR4
Pulse Shape
User Defined...
dialog
Select File
Superpose
Executes superpose
Execute
Save...
dialog
Input Filename
Network
pop-up
Box Headings:
Network Application
NOTE: Dialog name varies depending on selected Network Application.
Row Headings:
Line Code:
Bit Rate:
Samples/Bit:
Clock:
ITU-T
pop-up
E3
E2
E1
OK

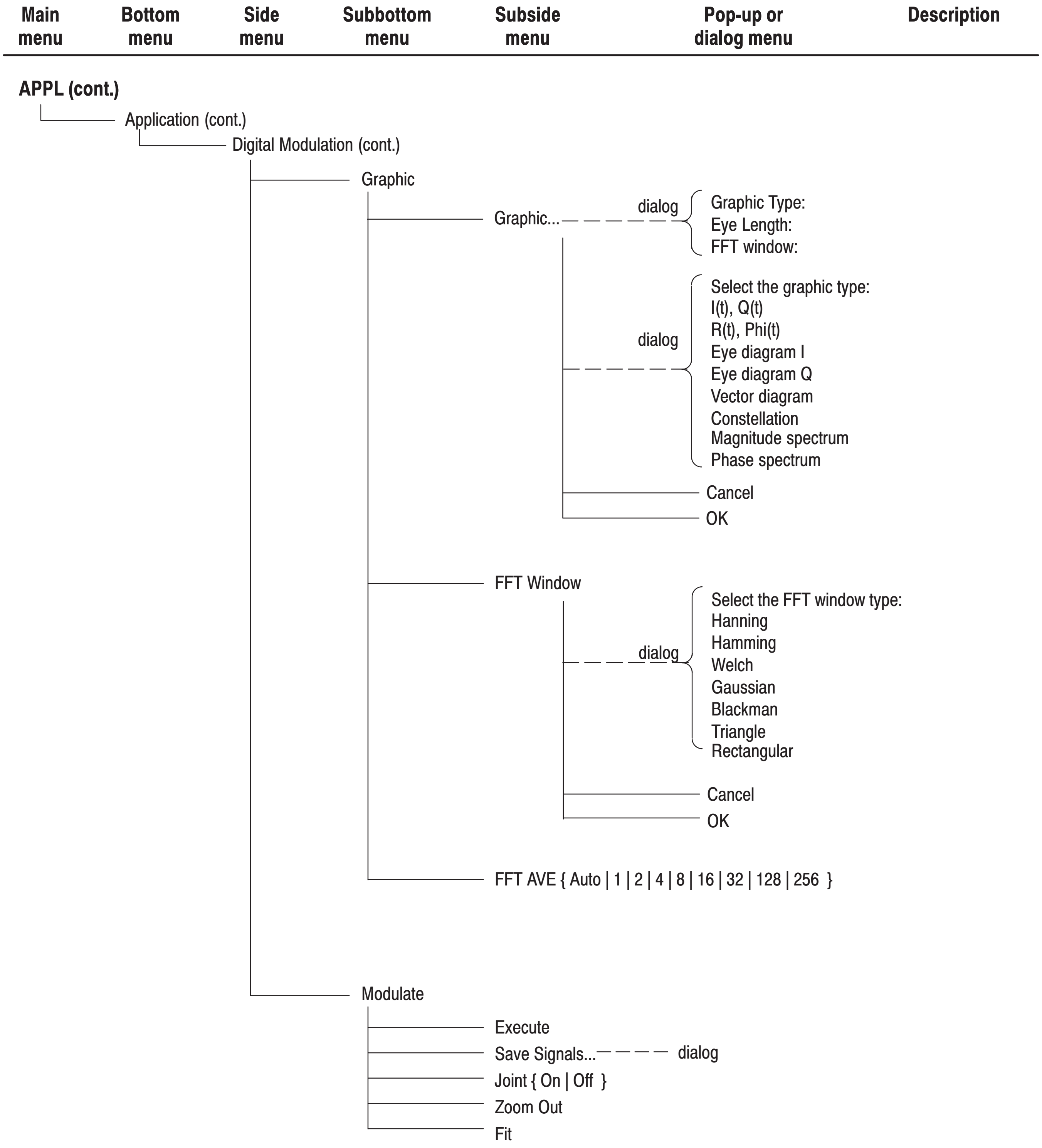

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
APPL (cont.)
Application (cont.)
Network (cont.)
T1.102
pop-up
DS1C
DS1A
DS1
OK
Selects T1.102 network standard
Fibre Channel
pop-up
FC133E
OK
Selects Fiber Channel network standard
SDH/Sonet
pop-up
OC3/STM1
OC1/STM0
OK
Selects SDH/Sonet network standard
Misc
pop-up
D2
100Base–TX
OK
NOTE: The following subside menu options are available if a network standard is selected.
Read Ptn from File...
dialog
Select File
Creates test signal
Predefined Pattern...
PN9
PN15
0000
1111
100100
1000010000
100000100000
1000000010000000
1111100000
Selects other network standard
Cancel
OK
Execute
Save...
dialog
Input Filename
NOTE: This subside menu is available if a AMI standard is selected.
Isolated Pulse...
Read from file...
dialog
Select File
Samples/Bit {1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 32 | 64}
Previous Menu

Main menu	Bottom menu	Side menu	Subbottom menu	Subside menu	Pop-up or dialog menu	Description

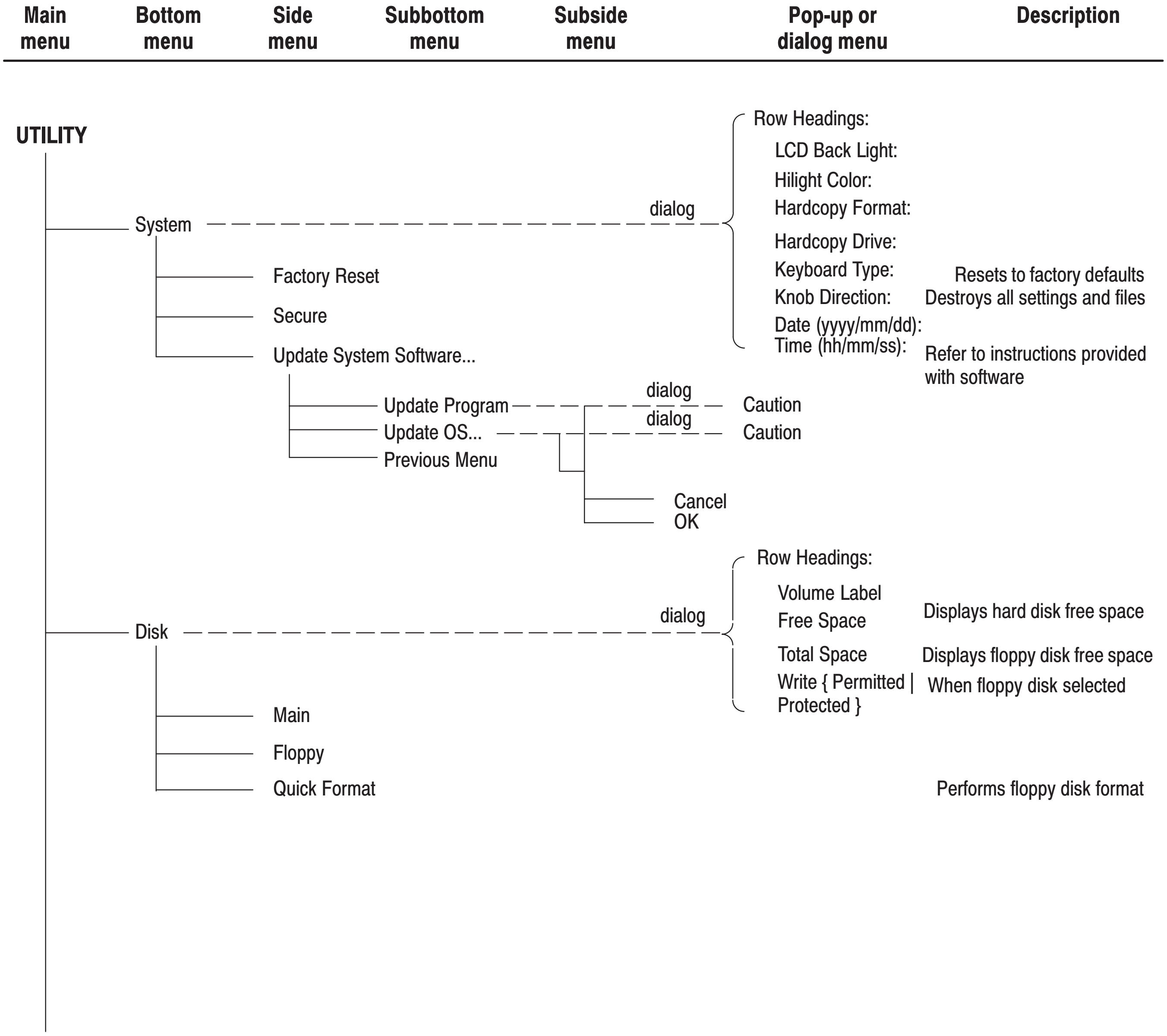


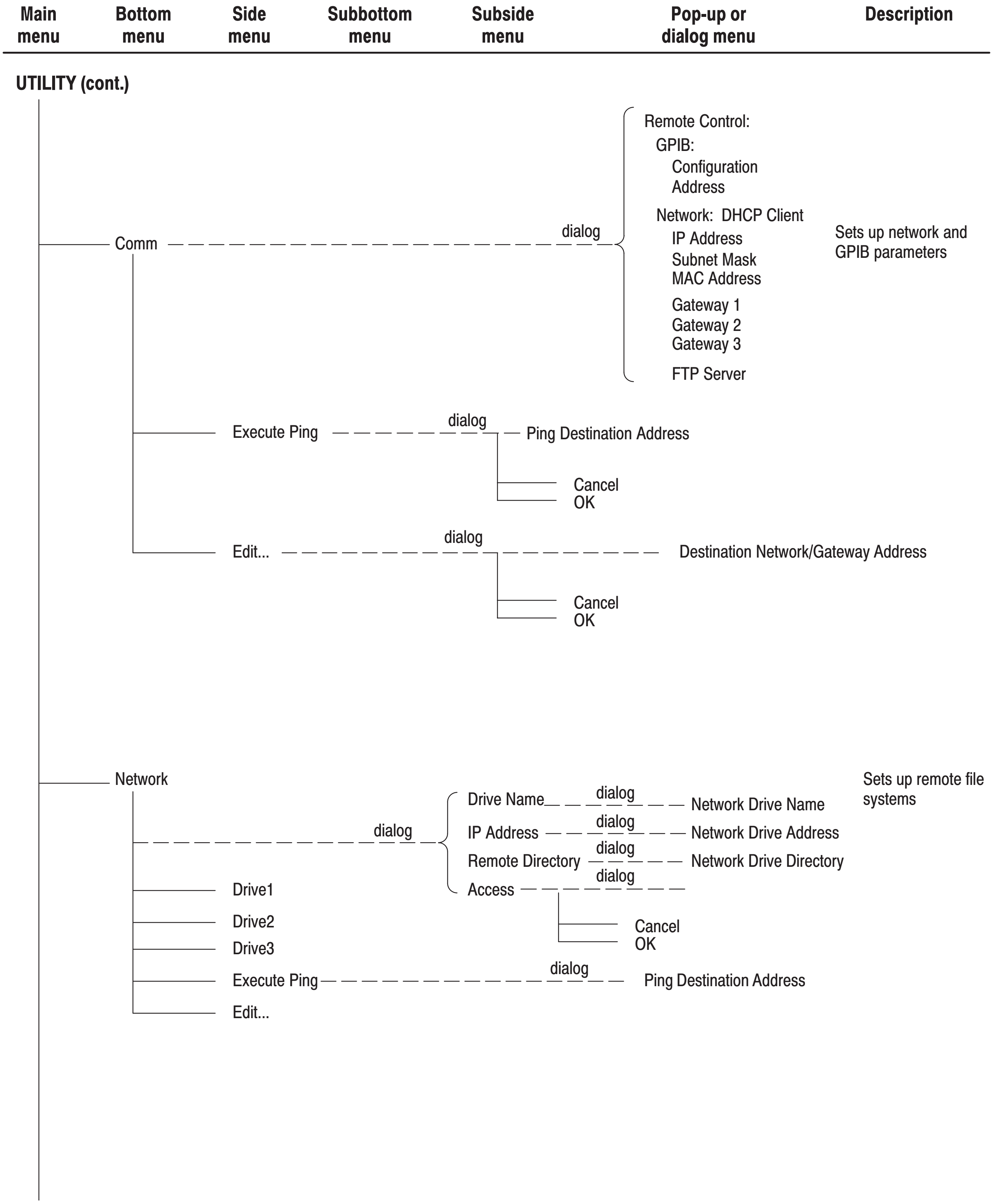

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
APPL (cont.)
Application (cont.)
Digital Modulation
dialog
Input Data:
Modulation Type:
Reference Level:
Symbol Rate:
Sample Rate:
Sequence Length:
Filter Type:
Filter Alpha/BT:
Window Type:
Kaiser Parameter:
Impulse Length:
Over Sampling:
Baseband Pulse:
Input Data
Read from File...
dialog
Select File
Up Level
Down Level
Drive...
Cancel
OK
Predefined Pattern...
dialog
Select the pattern
{ PN9 | PN15 | PN17 | PN23 }
Cancel
OK
Restore Settings
dialog
Select Setup File
Up Level
Down Level
Drive...
Cancel
OK
Setting
Modulation Type...
dialog
BPSK
QPSK
OQPSK
PI/4 DQPSK
8PSK
16QAM
64QAM
256QAM
User_Modulation
Cancel
OK

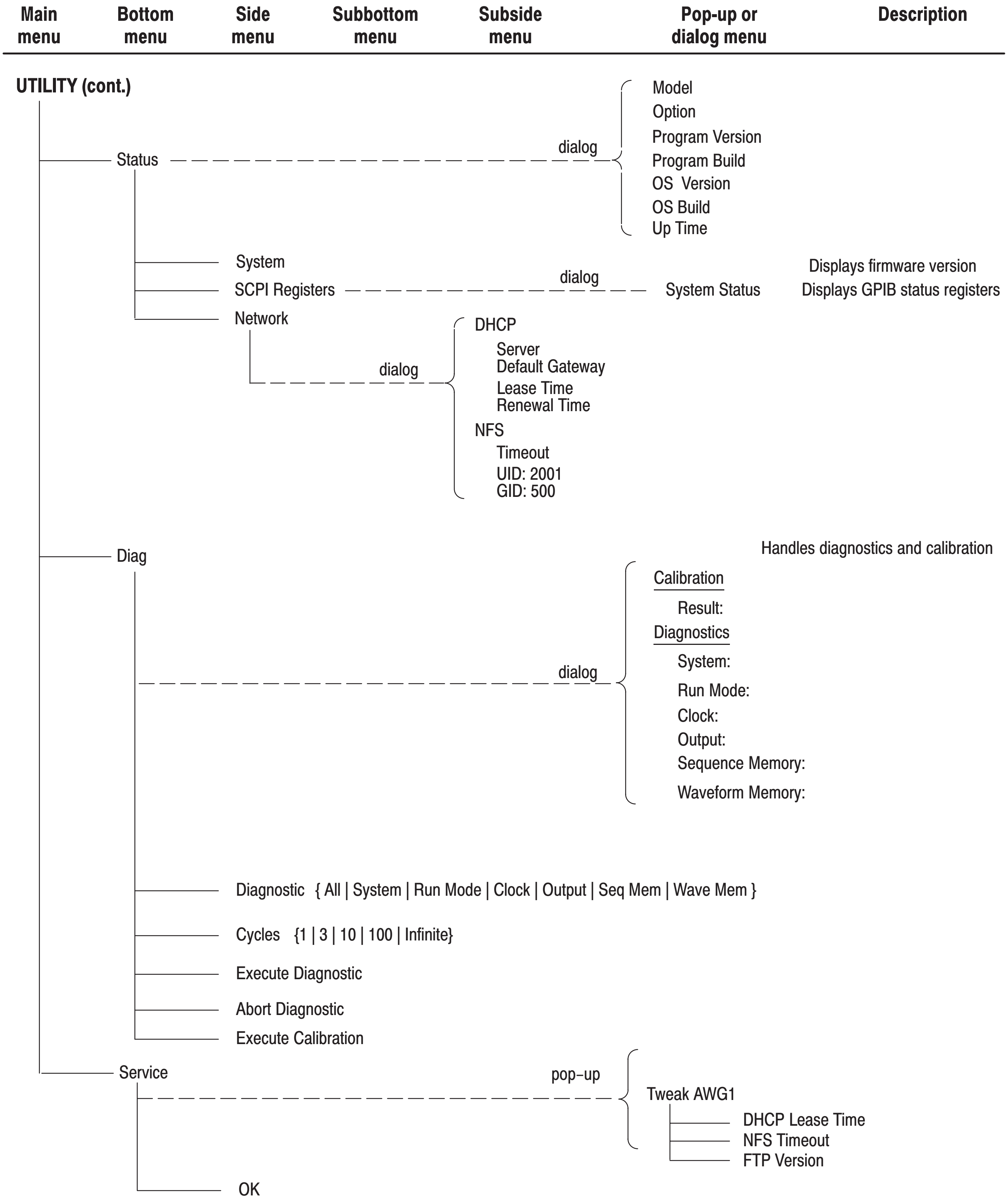

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
APPL (cont.)
Application (cont.)
Digital Modulation (cont.)
Setting (cont.)
Filter Type...
dialog
Rectangular
sine(x)/x
Root_cosine
Cosine
Gausine
User_filter
None
Cancel
OK
Window Type...
dialog
Rectangular
Hanning
Kaiser
Hamming
Cancel
OK
Save Settings...
dialog
Input Filename
Up Level
Down Level
Drive...
Cancel
OK
Impairments
dialog
Quadrature Error:
IQ Imbalance:
Carrier Leakage I:
Carrier Leakage Q:
AM/AM K2a:
AM/AM K3a:
AM/PM K2p:
AM/PM K3p:
Switch { On | Off }


Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
APPL (cont.)
Application (cont.)
Digital Modulation (cont.)
Graphic
Graphic...
dialog
Graphic Type:
Eye Length:
FFT window:
dialog
Select the graphic type:
I(t), Q(t)
R(t), Phi(t)
Eye diagram I
Eye diagram Q
Vector diagram
Constellation
Magnitude spectrum
Phase spectrum
Cancel
OK
FFT Window
dialog
Select the FFT window type:
Hanning
Hamming
Welch
Gaussian
Blackman
Triangle
Rectangular
Cancel
OK
FFT AVE { Auto | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 32 | 128 | 256 }
Modulate
Execute
Save Signals...
dialog
Joint { On | Off }
Zoom Out
Fit

Utility Menu Hierarchy




Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
UTILITY (cont.)
Comm
dialog
Remote Control:
GPIB:
Configuration
Address
Network: DHCP Client
IP Address
Subnet Mask
MAC Address
Gateway 1
Gateway 2
Gateway 3
FTP Server
Sets up network and GPIB parameters
Execute Ping
dialog
Ping Destination Address
Cancel
OK
Edit...
dialog
Destination Network/Gateway Address
Cancel
OK
Network
Sets up remote file systems
dialog
Drive Name
dialog
Network Drive Name
IP Address
dialog
Network Drive Address
Remote Directory
dialog
Network Drive Directory
Access
dialog
Cancel
OK
Drive1
Drive2
Drive3
Execute Ping
dialog
Ping Destination Address
Edit...

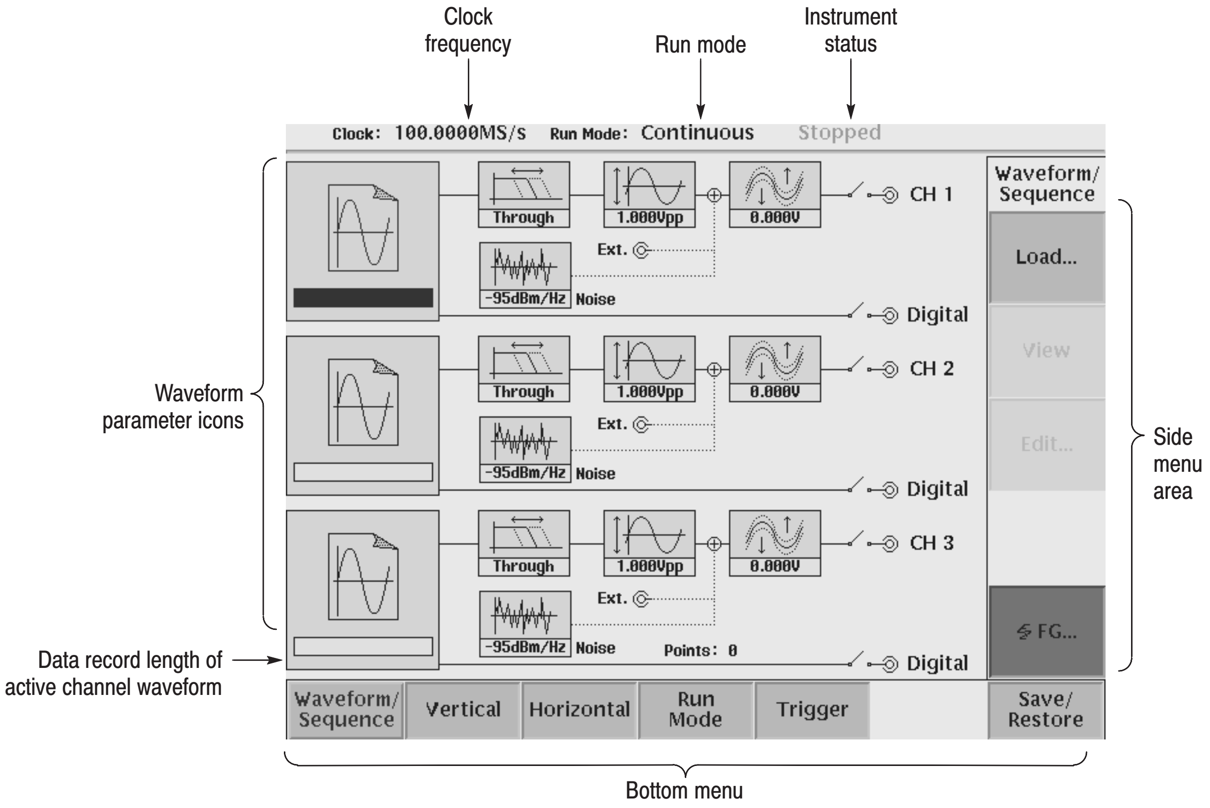

Main menu
Bottom menu
Side menu
Subbottom menu
Subside menu
Pop-up or dialog menu
Description
UTILITY (cont.)
Status
dialog
Model
Option
Program Version
Program Build
OS Version
OS Build
Up Time
System
SCPI Registers
dialog
System Status
Displays firmware version
Displays GPIB status registers
Network
dialog
DHCP
Server
Default Gateway
Lease Time
Renewal Time
NFS
Timeout
UID: 2001
GID: 500
Diag
Handles diagnostics and calibration
dialog
Calibration
Result:
Diagnostics
System:
Run Mode:
Clock:
Output:
Sequence Memory:
Waveform Memory:
Diagnostic { All | System | Run Mode | Clock | Output | Seq Mem | Wave Mem }
Cycles {1 | 3 | 10 | 100 | Infinite}
Execute Diagnostic
Abort Diagnostic
Execute Calibration
Service
pop–up
Tweak AWG1
DHCP Lease Time
NFS Timeout
FTP Version
OK

The Setup Menu Screen

This section describes the key elements of the Setup menu screen, how to load a file, how to set the signal output parameters, and how to enable signal output.

Setup Menu Screen Elements

To open the Setup menu screen, push the **SETUP** front-panel button. Refer to Figure 3–2. Table 3–2 describes the Setup menu screen elements. Table 3–3 describes the bottom menu functions. Following Table 3–3 the menu operations are discussed in detail, grouped by bottom menu function.

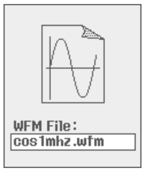
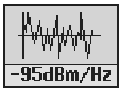
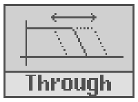
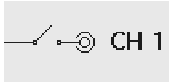
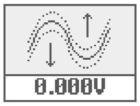
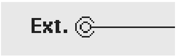


Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Points: 0

Figure 3–2: Setup main screen

Table 3–2: Waveform parameter icons

Element	Description	Element	Description
	Displays the file name of the waveform, pattern, or sequence file loaded for output. Note: use the View button to display the loaded waveform.		Displays the noise signal level added.
	Displays the lowpass filter setting through which the waveform is passed.		Indicates that the digital output is enabled or disabled. If the switch is shown open, that digital output is disabled.
	Displays the peak-to-peak signal amplitude setting.		Indicates that the channel output is enabled or disabled. If the switch is shown open, that channel output is disabled.
	Displays the signal offset setting.		Displays the external input added.

NOTE. *There is no adjustment available for timing or amplitude of the marker, therefore no marker icon is displayed on the setup screen.*

Table 3–3: Setup bottom menu buttons

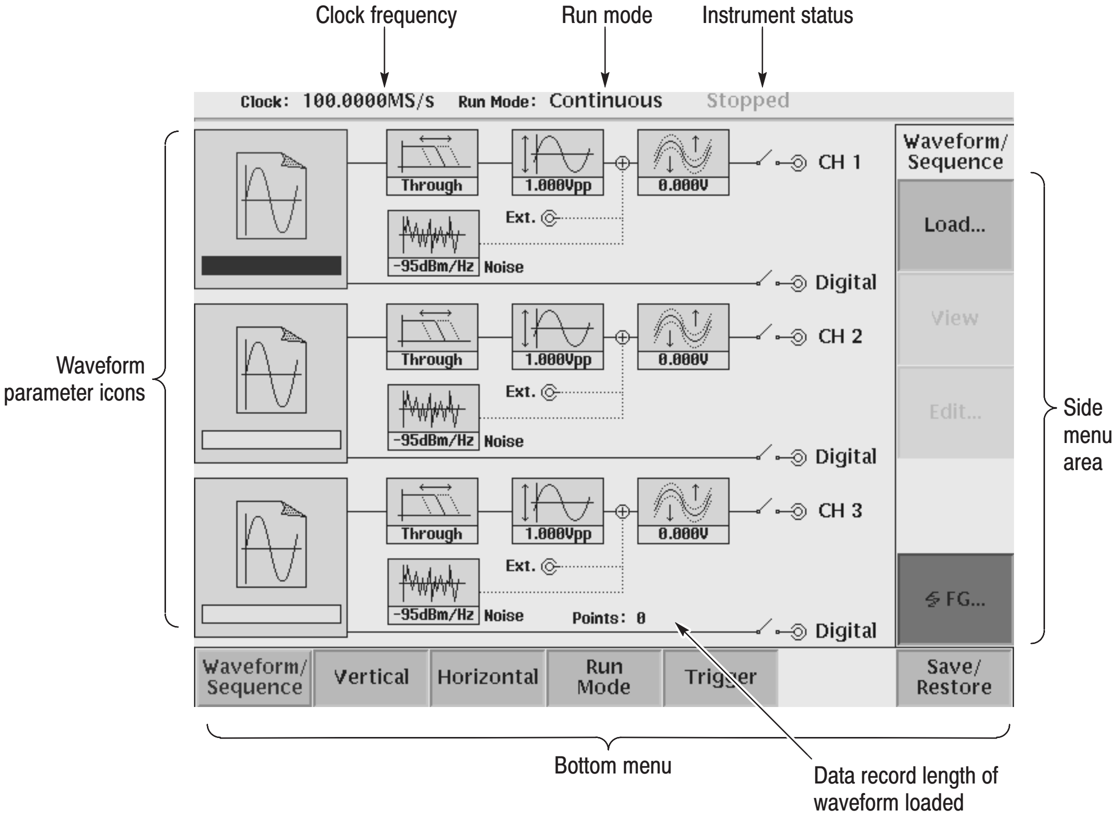
Bottom menu button	Description
Waveform/Sequence	Displays the side menu for loading, viewing, editing waveform files, and for entering the FG mode main screen.
Vertical	Displays the Vertical side menu for setting waveform peak-to-peak amplitude, offset, lowpass filter, marker, and other output parameters.
Horizontal	Displays the Horizontal side menu for setting the clock source, clock frequency, and skew adjust parameters.
Run Mode	Displays The Run Mode side menu for setting the instrument run mode. Refer to *The Run Mode Menu* section on page 3–44 for an explanation of the different run modes.

Table 3–3: Setup bottom menu buttons (cont.)

Bottom menu button	Description
Trigger	Displays the Trigger side menu for setting trigger source, slope, level, external trigger impedance, and interval parameters.
Save/Restore	Displays the Save/Restore side menu to save and restore setup output parameters.

The Waveform/Sequence Menu

The Waveform/Sequence menu is used for loading, viewing, and editing up to three waveform files. See Figure 3–3.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Points: 0

Figure 3–3: Main Setup screen (AWG430)

Load... The Load... button lets you load a waveform (.*wfm*), pattern (.*pat*), or sequence (.*seq*) file to output. Do the following steps to load a file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side).

   The instrument displays the file select list.

2. Select a waveform file, pattern file or sequence from the file listing in the Select File dialog box that appears on the screen.

3. Push the **OK** side button.

Waveform and Pattern File Restrictions. The following list describes some restrictions regarding the loading of waveform and pattern files.

- A waveform file and a pattern file can specify respectively another file in two or more channels. Each file may be in another directory. However, the number of points of each file needs to be the same. If the number of points loads the file which is not the same, the waveform file of other channels will become invalid (NULL) automatically.
- If you have a problem loading a file; the data length is the value which is not allowed by hardware or the file of the format of those other than waveform or pattern file is loaded etc.), and the file name of the channel is set to NULL.
- If a channel waveform is set to NULL then the CHx OUTPUT switch will be turned off. You cannot change the setting from the front panel while in this state.

Sequence Files. The following list describes some restrictions on loading sequence files.

- A sequence file contains information that is loaded into the waveform memory of channel 1, channel 2 and channel 3. Therefore, you can only load one sequence file into the instrument at a time.
- When the sequence file loading fails, the instrument clears the loaded output file names and waveform memory.
- The sequence file loading fails if any one of the following conditions are true:
  - There is a null character (“ ”) in the CH1 file name field of the sequence table.
  - The CH 1, CH 2 and CH 3 waveforms specified on the same line of the sequence table contain different numbers of data points.
  - The instrument cannot locate the waveform, pattern, or subsequence file specified in the sequence table. All waveform, pattern, and subsequence

files must be at the same location and the instrument drive and path settings must point to that location.

- There are too many lines in the sequence table. The maximum number of lines is 8,000.
- There is more than one nesting level of subsequence files. The maximum nesting level is one.
- The sequence calls itself.
- The destination of a line jump specified in the sequence table is greater than the number of lines in the sequence table.

Equation Files. You cannot load an equation file (*.equ*) to output a signal. You must first compile the equation file into a *.wfm* file prior to loading the waveform file.

View

This button lets you view a loaded waveform by pushing the View side menu button. The instrument opens a window on the screen and displays the loaded waveform. Push the **OK** side button to close the view window.

Edit...

This button opens the appropriate editor for a loaded waveform, pattern, or sequence file. Do the following steps to edit a loaded waveform or sequence file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Edit...** (side). The instrument opens the appropriate editor for the loaded waveform.

NOTE*. The waveform and pattern editors have an output auto-update function that can update the output waveform while you are editing the file. It has two modes: Auto and Manual***.** *Auto updates the waveform memory whenever there are changes to the edit buffer. Manual updates waveform memory when you save the file. To set the auto-update mode, push the* ***Setting*** *bottom menu button from an editor screen.*

Ez FG...

This button lets you to enter the FG mode for easy generate of a standard functional waveform. Refer to *The FG mode* on page 3–253.

The Vertical Menu

The Vertical menu lets you set waveform vertical parameters for all output channels. You can set signal peak-to-peak range, offset voltage, and lowpass filter frequency. The Vertical menu commands are Filter, Amplitude, Offset, Add... and Output.

***NOTE**. You can change the analog output amplitude and offset values directly in any screen by using the Vertical LEVEL/SCALE and OFFSET knobs on the front-panel, respectively.*

You can display the Setup Vertical menu at any time by pushing the VERTICAL MENU front-panel button.

Filter

This button lets you set the output waveform band limit. You can select 1 MHz, 5 MHz, 20 MHz, 50 MHz or Through (no limiting).

Do the following steps to set the output waveform band limit:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Filter** (side).
2. Use the general purpose knob to select 1 MHz, 5 MHz, 20 MHz, 50 MHz or Through.

Amplitude

This button lets you set the analog waveform signal output voltage range from 20 mV$_{p-p}$ to 2.0 V$_{p-p}$ (20 mV$_{p-p}$ to 5.0 V$_{p-p}$ with Option 05), in 1 mV increments, terminated into 50 Ω. You can only get the maximum output of 2.0 V$_{p-p}$ if the waveform file is using the full 16-bit DAC range of ±1.000.

When you select the direct output mode in output side menu, the output voltage range is restricted from 20 mV$_{p-p}$ to 0.5 V$_{p-p}$.

***NOTE**. The AWG400 series does not have vertical and horizontal setting parameters for the marker signal output and digital output.*

Do the following steps to set the waveform output levels:

1. Push SETUP (front)→Vertical (bottom)→Amplitude (side). The instrument highlights the Amplitude screen icon.
2. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, keyboard, or **LEVEL/ SCALE** knob to set the output amplitude value. If you use a knob, use the ◀ or ▶ button to select the digit to change.

Offset

This button lets you set the waveform output offset voltage. You may set any value from –1.000 to 1.000 V (–2.500 V to 2.500 V with Option 05) in 1 mV increments. The VERTICAL:**OFFSET** knob on the front panel works in every display except Quick Edit.

The offset setting is not available in the direct mode.

Do the following steps to set the waveform offset value:

1. Push SETUP (front)→Vertical (bottom)→**Offset** (side). The instrument highlights the Offset screen icon.
2. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, keyboard, or Vertical:**OFFSET** knob to change the offset value. If you use a knob, use the ◀ or ▶ button to select the digit to change.

Add...

The output waveform of each channel can be modified by adding a noise waveform signal from an internal noise generator or by an external signal from the ADD IN connector on the rear panel.

External. An external signal is input between the level control and the offset control and there is no way to control the signal.

The maximum input level of an external signal is ±1.0 V (DC + peak AC).

Do the following to add the external signal:

1. Select a channel to set up by pushing **CH1**, **CH2**, or **CH3** (front) button.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add...** (side)→**External** (side). The signal connected to ADD IN connector is added to the output signal.
3. Push **None** (side) to stop the addition of an external signal. To return the Vertical menu, push **Previous Menu** (side).

Noise When you select Noise, the internal noise generator adds Gaussian noise to every waveform currently output by each channel. The maximum level is from –140 dBm/Hz to –95 dBm/Hz (–130 dBm/Hz with Option 05).

Do the following to add Noise:

1. Select a channel to set up by pushing **CH (1,2,** or **3)** (front) button.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Add...** (side)→**Noise** (side). The noise generated by internal noise generator is added.
3. Push **Noise Level** (side) and use the general purpose knob or the numeric buttons to set a level.

Output

This button selects the Normal or Direct output mode. In the Direct mode, the instrument analog output is connected directly to the active channel output connector, bypassing the offset circuit. The analog waveform signal output voltage range is from 20 $\text{mV}_{\text{p-p}}$ to 0.5 $\text{V}_{\text{p-p}}$, in 1 mV increments, terminated into 50 Ω. The maximum signal level is ± 0.25 V.

The offset setting is not provided in the direct mode.

To connect the instrument analog output directly to the channel 1, channel 2 and channel 3 output connectors, push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Output Mode** (side) to select Direct.

To connect the instrument analog output back to the signal vertical parameter functions, push **SETUP** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Output Mode** (side) to select Normal.

Digital Data Output (Option 03)

The option 03 has a digital output function. When the RUN button is pushed for start of output operation, a signal is output from the CHx OUTPUT analog output connector of the front panel. Simultaneously, the 16 bit data and clock are output from the DIGITAL DATA OUT connector of a rear panel. The CMOS level 16 bit data and clock are output from the P4116 CMOS OUTPUT POD connected to the DIGITAL DATA OUT connector.

Push the Digital button (front-panel) to change to a digital menu.

The digital output level is fixed to the C–MOS level (High $\geq$ 2.4V, Low $\leq$ 0.1V into 50 Ω). The side menu only includes an On/Off switch.

1. Select a channel to set up by pushing **CH1**, **CH2**, or **CH3** (front) button.
2. Push **DIGITAL** (front)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Output** (side).
3. Push Output (side) button to toggle the current channel digital output switch On and Off.
4. Push the **All CH Off** (side) to turn all the channel digital output switches Off.
5. Push the **All CH On** (side) to turn all the channel digital output switches On.

The Horizontal Menu

The Horizontal menu lets you set waveform horizontal parameters for all output channels. The horizontal parameters include sample clock source (internal or external), reference clock source (internal or external), clock frequency, and signal delay between channel value. The Horizontal menu commands are Clock, Clock Src, Clock Ref, Skew Adjust.

The instrument uses only one clock sample frequency rate for all output signals, regardless of individual waveform settings.

NOTE. *Use the* ***SAMPLE RATE/SCALE*** *knob to adjust the clock frequency directly, without having to open the Horizontal menu.*

You can open the Horizontal menu by pushing the HORIZONTAL MENU front-panel button. This is the same as pushing SETUP (front)→Horizontal (bottom).

The HORIZONTAL OFFSET knob on the front-panel is available only for the Quick Editor. Refer to HORIZONTAL OFFSET knob on page 3–101.

Clock

This button lets you set the data sample clock rate used to output a waveform. Sample rates range from 10.00000 kS/s to 200.0000 MS/s. The sample rate controls the frequency of the output waveform frequency, which is calculated as follows:

$$Fout = \frac{Sample\ Clock\ Freq}{Samples\ per\ Cycle}$$

For example, if the clock rate is 100 MS/s and one cycle has 1000 data points, then the output frequency is 100 kHz. If you change the clock rate to 110 MS/s, then the output frequency changes to 110 kHz.

Do the following steps to set the instrument sample clock rate:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side).
2. Set the value using the general purpose knob, numeric keys, or SAMPLE RATE/SCALE knob. If you use a knob, you can use the ◀ or ▶ button to move the cursor to the numeric character you want to change.

The instrument sets the output clock rate to that specified by the most recently-loaded waveform or pattern file. In the case of sequence files, the clock rate defined in the first waveform loaded into the instrument sets the instrument clock rate. Changing the instrument output clock rate from the front-panel controls changes the active waveform output frequency but does not change the clock rate stored with that waveform file.

The instrument also outputs the internal clock signal to the rear panel MASTER CLOCK OUT connector. The frequency of the master clock signal from the MASTER CLOCK OUT connector changes depending on how to choose clock source. Refer to Clock Oscillator on page 2–47. Table 3–4 describes the MASTER CLOCK OUT signal timing as it relates to the active Run Mode.

***NOTE**. When you push the RUN button, the instrument outputs a pulse signal for a short period of time on the MASTER CLOCK OUT connector that is not related to the clock signal. This signal is generated for the instrument internal setup.*

Table 3–4: Clock signal output timing

Run modes	Timing
Continuous	The clock signal is always output when the RUN LED on the front-panel is on.
Triggered	The clock signal is always output when a waveform is being output. When the instrument waits for a trigger event, no clock output is provided.
Gated	The clock signal is always output when the RUN LED on the front-panel is on.
Enhanced	The clock signal is always output except the instrument is in the trigger wait state.

Clock Src

This button lets you set the instrument master clock source. You can specify the internal clock generator or an external clock signal connected to the rear panel **MASTER CLOCK IN** connector. The acceptable external clock signal is DC to 200 MHz, 0.4 V_{p-p} minimum, ± 2 V maximum.

Using an external sample clock can help you synchronize the AWG400-Series Waveform Generator with the rest of your test equipment.

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock Src** (side).
2. Push the **Clock Src** side button to toggle between Internal and External.

***NOTE**. When using an external clock as a clock source, and changing an external clock sampling frequency widely, the output signal of the AWG400 Series instrument will be disturbed. Push the **RUN** button twice or more to restart output function.*

If you use the external clock, you can not change the output waveform clock rate with AWG400-Series Waveform Generator Clock menu or SAMPLE RATE/SCALE knob.

When using an internal clock as a clock source, turn the external clock signal off or disconnect the external clock cable from the MASTER CLOCK IN connector.

Clock Ref

This button lets you select the instrument reference clock source. You can specify the internal clock generator or an external 10 MHz clock signal connected to the rear panel **10 MHz REF IN** connector. The acceptable external clock signal is
10 MHz ± 0.1 MHz, 0.2 V_{p-p} to 3.0 V_{p-p}, ±10 V maximum.

The instrument synchronizes the internal sample clock phase-lock-loop (PLL) generator to the external clock. Using an external sample clock can help you synchronize the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator with the rest of your test equipment.

If you use the external clock as the reference clock, you can change the output waveform clock rate like the internal clock.

Use the following procedure to select the reference clock source:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock Ref** (side).
2. Push the **Clock Ref** side button to toggle between Internal and External.

***NOTE**. When using an internal clock as a clock source, turn the external clock signal off or disconnect the external clock cable from the CLOCK IN connector.*

Skew…

The AWG 420 and AWG430 has multiple channels and each model can adjust the output timing between CH1. You can set the timing based on the CH1 and you can set any values from –2.52 ns to +2.52 ns in 70 ps increments. When you set the positive value, the output will be delayed against CH1.

Do the following steps to set the skew values:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Skew**…(side).
2. Set the value using the general purpose knob or numeric keys. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons to move to the channel you want to modify.

CH2 : 840ps

CH3 : -1.05ns

Figure 3–4: Skew dialog box

The Run Mode Menu

Push the **SETUP** on the front-panel and the **Run Mode** bottom button to set the waveform output run mode. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator Series instrument operates in response to trigger signals and/or event signals. The Run Mode menu commands are Continuous, Triggered, Gated, and Enhanced.

To specify a run mode, push **SETUP** (front)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Continuous**, **Triggered**, **Gated**, or **Enhanced** (side). The following text describes the run modes in more detail.

Continuous

This button sets the instrument to continuous output mode. When you push the RUN button on the front-panel, the output begins immediately. This occurs regardless of the state of the trigger signal and FORCE TRIGGER button on the front-panel. The output starts at the head of the waveform or sequence, and repeats until you push the RUN button again. The Status Indicator is displaying **Running** while the waveform is being output, or Stopped when the output has been stopped.

Triggered

This button sets the instrument to triggered output mode. When you push the RUN button on the front-panel, the instrument waits for a trigger signal from either the rear-panel TRIG IN connector, the automatic trigger generator trigger (set in the Trigger menu) or from the front-panel FORCE TRIGGER button. When a trigger occurs, the instrument outputs the waveform and then waits for another trigger.

Gated

This button sets the instrument to gated output mode. When you push the RUN button on the front-panel, the instrument enters the state awaiting a trigger (the status is Waiting). When the trigger signal goes true or you push the FORCE TRIGGER button on the front-panel, the output begins at the start of the waveform or sequence data (the status is Running).

While the trigger signal is at the true level or the FORCE TRIGGER button remains pushed in, the waveform or sequence data is continuously output. When the trigger signal goes false or you release the FORCE TRIGGER button on the front-panel, the output stops and the instrument again enters the state awaiting a trigger.

When the trigger source is Internal, the instrument ignores any automatically-generated trigger signals while in the Gated mode.

Enhanced

This button sets the instrument to enhanced output mode. While a waveform is being output, the Enhanced mode operates the same as the Triggered mode except for the sequence table output. For sequence table output, the Wait Trigger, Goto One, and Jump functions specified in the sequence file are enabled.

Pushing the RUN button on the front-panel toggles the output on and off. The trigger signal is used only to advance a sequence in which Wait Trigger is stopping on an ON line. When you push the FORCE EVENT button on the front-panel, the instrument operates in the same way as when the Logic Jump event signal goes true.

If the enhanced function is set in the sequence, the output will be as follows:

- **Wait Trigger**. For an ON line, the instrument awaits the trigger before the waveform is output. The selected trigger source (External or Internal) is selected.
- **Goto One**. For an ON line, the control jumps to the head of the sequence after the waveform is output.
- **Logic Jump**. When the combination of the event signals connected to the EVENT IN connector on the rear panel goes true during waveform output of the line, the control jumps to the specified destination. This also happens when you push the FORCE EVENT button on the front-panel.
- **Table Jump**. During waveform output of the line, the control jumps to the destination specified in the jump table. This depends on the state of the event signal connected to the EVENT IN connector on the rear panel. For Table Jump, the FORCE EVENT button will not operate.
- **Software Jump**. During waveform output of any line, the control jumps to the destination specified by the argument of a remote command. The software jump can be performed only with the following command:

  ```
  AWGControl:EVENt:SOFTware[:IMMediate] <line-number>
  ```

- If you specify no destination of jump on the last line of the sequence, control returns back to the first line after completion of waveform output. (Goto One automatically goes on.)

The Trigger Menu

The Trigger menu lets you set instrument external signal trigger parameters. The Trigger menu commands are Source, Slope, Level, Impedance, and Interval.

Source

This button lets you set the instrument trigger source. You can select either External or Internal.

To set the trigger signal source, push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Source** (side) to toggle between External and Internal.

If you select External, the instrument uses the signal connected to the rear-panel TRIG IN connector. The external trigger signal must meet the following requirements:

Table 3–5: External trigger signal requirements

Requirement	Values
Input voltage range	±10 V into 1 kΩ impedance ±5 V into 50 Ω impedance
Minimum pulse width	10 ns

If you select Internal, the trigger signal generated in the instrument will be used. For the internal trigger, you can set only the trigger interval. In the Gated mode, the internal trigger does not work.

Slope (or Polarity)

This button lets you set the external trigger signal slope (or polarity in the Gated run mode) on which to trigger the instrument. You can specify to trigger on the rising (Positive) or falling (Negative) edge.

To set the trigger slope, push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Slope** (side) to toggle between Positive and Negative.

***NOTE**. In the Gated run mode, triggering occurs for the time period that the external trigger signal level is greater than or equal to the specified trigger level setting.*

Trigger Level

This button lets you set the level at which the TRIG IN external trigger signal triggers the instrument. You can set the trigger level from –5.0 V to +5.0 V.

Do the following steps to set the signal level:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Level** (side).
2. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, or the keyboard to adjust the trigger level value.

Impedance

This button lets you set the impedance value of the TRIG IN back-panel connector. You can set the TRIG IN impedance to either 50 Ω or 1 kΩ.

Do the following to set the TRIG IN back-panel connector input impedance:

1. Make sure that the trigger source is set to External.
2. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Impedance** (side) to toggle between **50 Ω** and **1 kΩ**.

Interval

The internal trigger source is a pulse generator that automatically triggers the instrument every interval setting. This button lets you set the time interval between trigger pulses. The time interval ranges from 1.0 μs to 10.0 s. The automatic trigger interval starts when RUN is pressed.

Do the following steps to set the trigger interval:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Interval** (side).
2. Use the general purpose knob, numeric buttons, or the keyboard to adjust the trigger interval time.

***NOTE**. The FORCE TRIGGER front-panel button forces a trigger event immediately when pressed. Forcing a trigger does not reset the start of the automatic trigger interval. For example, if the trigger interval is set for four seconds, and you force a trigger at 2.5 seconds after the automatic trigger signal seconds, the next automatic trigger occurs 1.5 seconds after the force trigger.*

*To disable automatic triggering, push **SETUP** (front)→**Trigger** (bottom)→ **Source** (side) to **External**. You can then use an external trigger signal on the TRIG IN connector or the FORCE TRIGGER front-panel button to trigger the instrument.*

The Save/Restore Menu

The Save/Restore menu lets you save and restore instrument output setup information on both AWG mode and FG mode to a file. The setup parameters when saving is included in a setup file. When you restore a setup file, settings in both AWG mode and FG mode will replace the contents of a setup file.

Setup file includes path information of the waveform file(s) to be set in the Setup Window. When the setup file is saved in the same directory as the waveform file(s), only waveform file name(s) are included in the setup file. Otherwise, the setup file stores the drive and full path information for the waveform file(s).

So you cannot move these files to another directory and/or a drive unless they are not stored in the same directory.

Save Setup

This button lets you save the current instrument settings of both AWG mode and FG mode to a file. The instrument appends the suffix *.set* to the file name. Do the following steps to save the instrument output setup parameters to a file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→ **Save Setup** (side). The instrument displays the Select Setup Filename dialog box.
2. Use the general purpose knob or the keyboard to enter a file name.
3. Push the **Drive...** side button if you need to save the setup file to a location other than the current drive.
4. Push the **OK** side button to close the dialog box and save the setup file.

Restore Setup

This button lets you load an instrument setting file to configure the instrument settings. The instrument settings of AWG and FG mode will replace the contents of an instrument setting file. Do the following steps to restore the instrument output setup parameters from a file:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Save/Restore** (bottom)→ **Restore Setup** (side). The instrument displays the Select Setup File dialog box.
2. Use the general purpose knob to select the setup file name.
3. Push the **Drive...** side button to load a setup file from a drive other than the current drive.
4. Push the **OK** side button to close the dialog box and load the setup file. The instrument is set to the configuration specified in the setup file.

NOTE. *If you try to load a nonsetup file, you will get an error message.*

CAUTION. *Bus contentions or collisions may result if shared setup files exists on multiple instruments using one GPIB or bus or one Ethernet subnet. GPIB address and IP addresses are saved and restored with a setup file.*

Waveform, Pattern and Sequence Waveform Output

AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveforms can be output by selecting a waveform, pattern, or sequence file on the Setup menu screen and loading it into the waveform memory.

A waveform will be output using the single system clock. When you load a file which requires a different clock, the system clock will be set up accordingly.

You may set the run and trigger modes and the output parameters such as the clock frequency, amplitude, offset an so on. Then, push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons on the front panel to output the waveforms in the waveform memory. A procedure to output.

Do the following to output the waveform:

1. Push **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side). Specify the file you want to output.
2. Push **Run Mode** (bottom)→Set the run mode in the side menu.
3. Push **Trigger** (bottom)→Set the trigger parameter in the side menu.
4. Push **Vertical** (bottom)→Set the vertical axis parameters, such as the amplitude, in the side menu.
5. Push **Horizontal** (bottom)→Set the horizontal axis parameters such as the clock frequency in the side menu.
6. Push the **RUN** and **OUTPUT** buttons on the front panel.

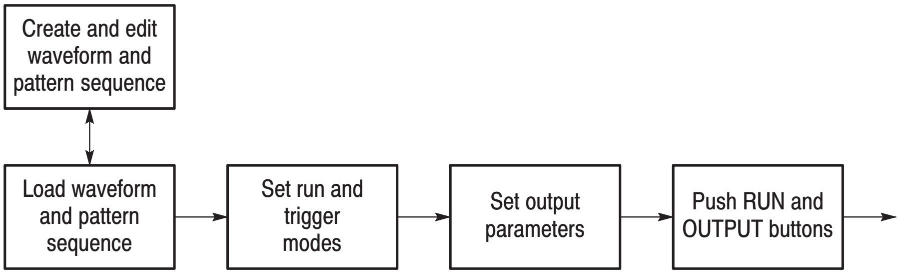


Figure 3–5: Waveform output sequence example

During waveform output, you can make changes to an output parameter using the shortcut controls: VERTICAL LEVEL/SCALE, VERTICAL OFFSET, and HORIZONTAL SAMPLE RATE/SCALE.

Changes you make with the editor during waveform output are shown immediately. Refer to *Edit...* on page 3–37.

Automatic Reloading of Output Files

A file that has been loaded and that is being output will be reloaded when one of the following conditions is met:

- The waveform or pattern file is modified with the editor. (Auto or Manual mode in the Settings bottom menu).
- The file is changed with Copy or Rename by operating the front-panel, GPIB or Ethernet control.
- Changes are made to a sequence file.
- A file is received from GPIB or Ethernet and changes are made to the file.

Auto-reload occurs when changes are made to a file. The file length may change due to Cut or Paste or because it is subjected to Copy as a thoroughly different file. If this happens, auto-reload will fail and the output file will be named *NULL*.

Waveform Files and Sample Clock Rates

Waveform and pattern files contain the clock attribute values appended. If you specify a waveform or pattern file as the output file, the clock value will be loaded from the file and set.

A waveform will be output using the single system clock. When you load a file which requires a different clock, the system clock will be set up accordingly.

When a file that has a different clock is loaded to a different channel, the clock of the last loaded file is set up.

If you specify a sequence file for the output file, the clock specified in the first file in the sequence list sets the instrument clock rate.

If you load the file as the output file when the following two conditions are met, the waveform in the edit buffer will be loaded:

- You have performed a edit session before loading the output file (while the output file name is *NULL*).
- You have made changes to the waveform data and/or clock attributes (regardless of whether the file has already been saved).

Regarding the clock attributes, the values specified in the edit will be loaded.

If the output with the editor is in the Auto mode, reload takes place each time changes are made to the edit buffer. The clock attributes are not updated at this time.

When the file is first loaded, the clock attributes are set. Clock changes made with the menu take higher priority over those that are made with the editor by means of the auto-update of the output.

Starting and Stopping Output

When you load or create a waveform in the waveform memory, the output does not start until you push the RUN button on the front-panel. The RUN LED is on and the instrument starts sweeping the waveform data in the waveform memory.

When the Waveform Generator is set to the Trigger mode, the Waveform Generator waits for a trigger event to be generated by pushing the FORCE TRIGGER button or by external trigger event signal. Refer to *The Run Mode Menu* on page 3–44.

The current run state of the instrument is displayed in the status area at the upper part of the screen. Refer to Table 3–6 for state messages.

Table 3–6: Instrument run state and state messages

State messages	Descriptions
Stopped	The output operation is currently stopped.
Waiting	The instrument is waiting for a trigger.
Running	The instrument is outputting waveform(s).

If waveforms are not present in any of the channels the Running or Waiting message will be changed to the Stopped message. There will be no output when you push the RUN button and the Stopped message will continue to be displayed.

The RUN LED is on when the run state is Running or Waiting.

The line circuit from internal generator module to the output connector must be closed to output waveform from the front-panel output connector.

Turning Channel Output On and Off

Push the **CH (1, 2, or 3) OUT** button to connect or disconnect the instrument output to the CH 1 connector. When you push the CH1 button, the CH1 LED goes on and a waveform is output from the CH1 connector if the instrument is in the Running state. When you push the CH1 button again, the signal output is disconnected and the waveform output is stopped, even if the instrument is in the Running state. If there is no waveform loaded into a channel, you cannot turn that channel output on or off.

The CH1 LED automatically turns off when the waveform data in that channel becomes invalid. For example, you attempt to load an incorrect file, and the instrument deletes the current waveform from memory.

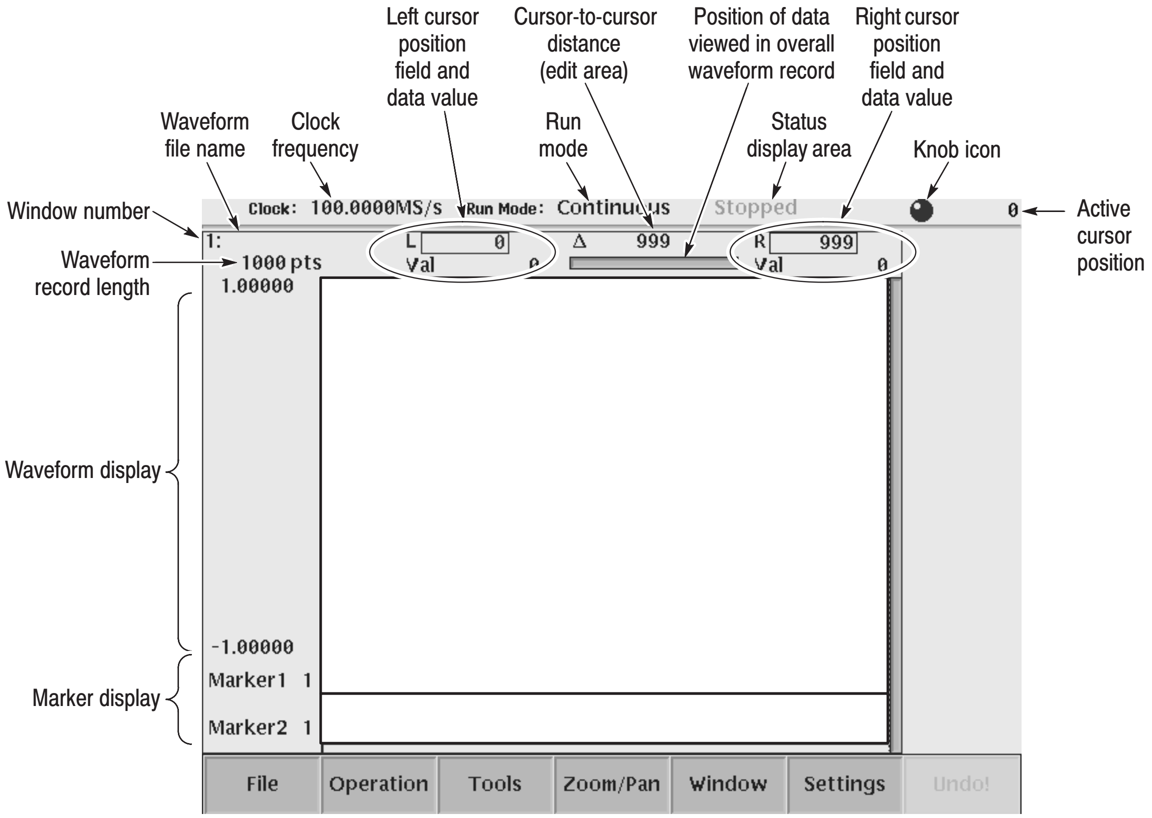
To turn all outputs on/off simultaneously, push the shift button then push any CH button to the state desired.

The Graphical Waveform Editor

This section describes the Graphical Waveform editor. The Graphical Waveform editor lets you create and/or edit an analog waveform. You can choose to display the waveform graphically or in table format. Refer to page 3–105 for information on editing waveform data using a table editor.

Editor Screen Elements

To open a new window for graphical waveform editing, push **EDIT**(front)→ **Edit**(bottom)→**New Waveform** (side). Figure 3–6 shows the Waveform Editor screen elements. Table 3–7 describes the editor screen elements. Table 3–8 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–8 describe the menu operations in detail.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Figure 3–6: Waveform editor initial screen

Table 3–7 provides a description of the Waveform editor screen elements.

Table 3–7: Waveform editor screen elements

Element	Description
Active cursor position	The position of the active cursor in the data record relative to the start of the data record. Position is stated as point location or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu.
Clock frequency	The clock value set up with Clock menu of SETUP menu is displayed. Although the clock set up with Setting menu in an editor is used for calculating the time interval between the points on data, it is not displayed on a screen. Note that this value is not the output waveform frequency. Output frequency is calculated as follows: $\text{Freq}_{out} = \text{Freq}_{clk}$ / points per waveform cycle
Cursor-to-cursor distance	The number of data points or time between the left and right cursors. Distance is stated as points or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu.
Waveform record length	The record length of the entire waveform file, in points. Record length is always shown as points regardless of the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu. The default value is 1000 points.
Edit area position bar	The edit area position bar is relative to the position of the displayed edit area in the entire record length. This helps you determine where you are in a waveform record when you do zoom operations on the display area.
Window number	The edit window number is from one to three. The maximum number of editor windows you can open at one time is three.
Knob icon	The knob icon is displayed when you can use the general purpose knob to change a highlighted field.
Left cursor position field and data value	The position of the left cursor and the data value at that position. Cursor position 0 is the start of the data record. Position is stated as point location or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu. You use the TOGGLE front-panel button to select between the left or right cursor. When the left cursor is active, you can use the general purpose knob, ◀, ▶, or the Keypad buttons to change the cursor position.
Marker display	The marker display is a graphical representation of the marker data values.

Table 3–7: Waveform editor screen elements (cont.)

Element	Description
Right cursor position field and data value	The position of the right cursor and the data value at that position. Cursor position 0 is the start of the data record. Position is stated as point location or time depending on the horizontal unit set with the Settings menu. You use the TOGGLE front-panel button to select between the left or right cursor. When the right cursor is active, you can use the general purpose knob, ◀, ▶, or the Keypad buttons to change the cursor position.
Run mode	The current instrument run mode (Continuous, Triggered, Gated, and Enhanced).
Status display area	The status display area shows the instrument status (Stopped, Running or Waiting).
Waveform display	The waveform display shows a graphical representation of the waveform data values. Refer to the note on page 2–66 for information on the waveform data range.
Waveform file name	The waveform file name is the file name to which the waveform data is written. The Graphical Waveform editor appends the *.wfm* file suffix to all waveform files. If this is a new or modified waveform, you are prompted to save the waveform data to a file name before exiting the editor.

Table 3–8 provides a description of the Waveform editor bottom menus.

Table 3–8: Waveform editor bottom menu

Button	Description
File	Provides commands for opening new waveform or pattern edit windows, inserting data from a file, loading an file, saving edited data to a file, and closing the active editor window. Refer to page 2–18 for information on file management tasks.
Operation	Provides commands for editing and manipulating waveform data, including cutting, copying, pasting, rotating, shifting, creating function generator waveforms, and so on. These commands operate on the data located between the left and right cursors.
Tools	Provides commands to perform mathematical operations on the entire waveform record.
Zoom/Pan	Provides commands to zoom in on, zoom out from, and pan the edit window waveform. You can zoom and pan a waveform horizontally and vertically.
Window	Provides commands to select the active window when more than one edit window is open. Refer to page 2–26 for information on multiple editor windows.

Table 3-8: Waveform editor bottom menu (cont.)

Button	Description
Settings	Displays a dialog box in which to define editor setup parameters including waveform record length, clock frequency, display mode, cursor linking, grid on/off, and so on.
Undo!	Undoes the last edit operation. Undo! is a one-level undo operation. Press Undo! more than once to toggle between the last two operations (the Undo! step itself and the last edit operation).

The File Menu

The File menu controls loading, saving, and insertion of data from the system, floppy disk, or network files. The following sections describe the File menu operations.

New Waveform, New Pattern

The New Waveform, New Pattern command opens a new waveform or pattern editor window. If three editor windows are already open, these commands are unavailable.

Open...

The Open command displays a file name list and side menu that lets you select and load a file.

Save, Save As...

The Save, Save As... command lets you save the active editor waveform data to its currently named file or to a new filename. You must save waveform data to a file before you can output the waveform data. To save a waveform to its current file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

If you are saving a waveform for the first time, the instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–17 on page 2–23. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a different storage media or directory by pushing the Drive... side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **OK** side button or the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

***NOTE**. When you exit an editor without saving edited data, the instrument displays the following message* Save the changes you made?. *Push the **Yes** side button to save the waveform data, or **No** to close the editor without saving the waveform data.*

To save waveform data to a new file name, push **File** (bottom)→**Save As** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The instrument opens the Input Filename dialog box, shown in Figure 2–17 on page 2–23. Use this dialog box to enter a file name. If necessary, you can select a storage media or directory by pushing the Drive... side menu button. When you are done entering the file name, push the **ENTER** front-panel button to close the dialog box and save the file.

If you are saving a file with a record length less than 64 data points, the instrument needs to adjust the record length to meet internal memory record length requirements. The instrument displays a dialog box asking you to select one of the adjustment methods shown in Table 3–9 on page 3–58. Push the **OK** side button to accept the recommended change, or cancel the save and then edit the file to satisfy the data record length requirements.

Table 3–9: Waveform record length adjustment messages

Message	Descriptions
Leave as it is	The data is saved, as it is, without making changes.
Append 0	Appends zero-level data to the end of the record to meet the waveform data length requirements.
Expand	Interpolates and expands the data to make the record length a multiple of eight.
Expand with Clock	Interpolates and expands the data to make the record length a multiple of eight. Increases the clock setting proportionately.
Repeat	Increases the data record by repeating the first few waveform data points at the end of the data record.

Insert From File...

You can insert another waveform file into the active editor window. The data is inserted starting at the active cursor position. Inserting waveform data increases the length of the whole waveform.

Do the following steps to insert waveform data from a file:

1. Move the active cursor to where you want to insert the file data.
2. Push **File** (bottom)→**Insert from File...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Select a file from the Select File dialog box.
4. Push the **OK** side button.

   The data is inserted starting at the active cursor position.

Close

The Close command closes the active editor window. If you have made edit changes since the last time you saved your waveform data, and you attempt to close the editor window, the instrument displays the message *Save the changes you made?*. Push the **Yes** side button to save the waveform data. If you have not made any edit changes since the last time you saved the file, the instrument closes the editor window and redraws the screen to display the remaining editor windows. If you only have one editor window open and close that window, the instrument returns you to the EDIT main screen.

The Operation Menu

The **Operation** bottom button provides waveform data edit commands. The following sections describe each edit command in detail.

If you select a command with an ellipsis (...), the instrument displays either a side menu or dialog box that lets you set additional parameters. Commands that do not have ellipses are executed immediately.

Standard Waveform

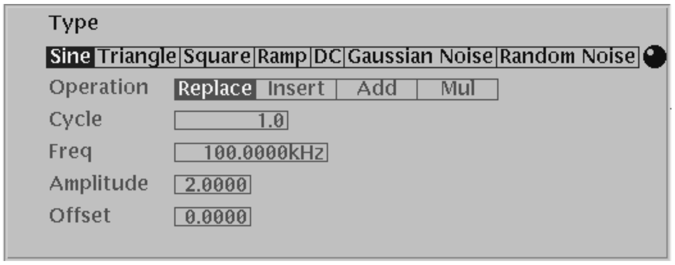
This command creates standard waveforms such as sine and triangle waves in the edit area. The edit area is the area between the cursor positions. Do the following steps to create a standard waveform:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area where the function waveform will be created.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Standard Waveform...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side)→.

   The Set Standard Function dialog box as shown in Figure 3–7 is displayed. Table 3–10 describes the dialog box field functions.

3. Set the required parameters and the push the **OK** side button.

   The instrument replaces, inserts, adds, or multiplies the edit area with the specified standard waveform data.



Type

Sine | Triangle | Square | Ramp | DC | Gaussian Noise | Random Noise

Operation: Replace | Insert | Add | Mul

Cycle: 1.0

Freq: 100.0000kHz

Amplitude: 2.0000

Offset: 0.0000

Figure 3–7: Standard Function Waveform dialog box

Table 3–10: Standard Function Waveform dialog box parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	Specifies the type of standard function waveform to create. You can select Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, DC, Gaussian Noise, or Random Noise.
Operation	Selects how the standard function waveform is added to the edit area. Replace replaces the edit area data with the specified standard function waveform. This operation does not change the waveform data record length. Insert interpolates the standard function waveform starting at the active cursor position. This operation increases the waveform data record length by the amount of the inserted waveform. Add replaces the edit area data with the sum of the current edit area data and the specified standard function waveform. This operation does not change the waveform data record length. Mul replaces the edit area data with the product of the current edit area data and the standard function waveform. This operation does not change the waveform data record length.
Cycle	Specifies the number of function waveform cycles to insert in the specified cursor area. The range of values is from 0.1 to 99,000 in 0.1 increments. The default value is 1 cycle. If the Operation field is set to Replace, Add, or Mul, the Cycle field value determines the Frequency field value according to the equation Frequency = Cycle x clock frequency / data length. When a big value is set as Cycle, the value of Frequency will be set up exceeding 100MHz, and you cannot change the value of Frequency by the general purpose knob. When such, a value is changed by the numeric key.
Frequency	Specifies the frequency of the function waveform to insert in the specified cursor area. The range of values is from 0.1 to 100 MHz, with 9-digit accuracy. If the Operation field is set to Replace, Add, or Mul, the Frequency field determines the Cycle field value according to the equation Cycle = Frequency x data length / clock frequency.
Amplitude, or RMS	Specifies the standard function waveform’s DAC range. The range of values is from –2.0 to 2.0 in 0.00001 increments. Specifying a negative value creates a waveform whose first cycle starts with a negative transition (in other words, a 180° phase shift). Refer to the note on page 2–66 for more information on DAC values. If you selected Gaussian Noise, this parameter turns to RMS. You can use Root Mean Square to specify the signal amplitude.
Offset	Specifies the function waveform offset value. The range of values is from –1.0 to 1.0 in 0.00001 increments. The default offset is 0.

Cut

The Cut command deletes the edit area waveform and marker data and places the deleted data in the paste buffer. The waveform data length decreases by the amount of data deleted. If you unintentionally delete data, you can use the Undo! bottom button to undo the cut operation.

Copy

The Copy command copies the waveform and marker data located between the cursors and places the copied data in the paste buffer. The overall waveform data record length does not change.

Paste (Insert)

The Paste (Insert) command inserts the contents of the paste buffer into the waveform record starting at the active cursor position. The data to the right of the active cursor shifts to the right by the number of data points inserted. The overall waveform data record length increases by the number of data points inserted. If the paste buffer is empty, this command is ignored.

Paste (Replace)

The Paste (Replace) command inserts the contents of the paste buffer into the waveform record, starting at the active cursor position. The data to the right of the active cursor is replaced with the number of data points inserted. The overall waveform data record length is unchanged. If the paste buffer is empty, this command is ignored.

Multiple Paste...

The Multiple Paste... command inserts the contents of the paste buffer a specified number of times into the waveform record, starting at the active cursor position. The data to the right of the active cursor shifts right by the number of data points inserted. The overall waveform data record length increases. If the paste buffer is empty, this command is ignored.

Do the following steps to do a multiple paste operation:

1. Move an active cursor to the location in the waveform record where you want to insert the data.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Multiple Paste** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

The instrument displays a dialog box in which you can enter the number of times to insert the paste buffer contents.

3. Set the paste count by using the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.

4. Push the **OK** side button.

The contents of the paste buffer are inserted the specified number of times, starting at the location of the active cursor.

Set Data High/Low

The Set Date High/Low command sets all Marker 1 or 2 values that are between the two cursors to High or Low. Do the following steps to set the marker values:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area that you want to change.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Data High/Low** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Marker 1** or **Marker 2** side button to select the marker.
4. Push the **Set Data** side button to toggle between High and Low value.
5. Push the **Exec** side button to change the marker specified in Step 3 to the value specified in Step 4 for the entire edit area.

Horizontal Shift...

The Horizontal Shift... command shifts the edit area data to the left or right by the specified value (points or time), within the cursor area. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left. All data that is shifted past the left or right cursor is truncated. The opposite, blanked field is padded with the initial cursor point values. This command can only shift one type of data (waveform, Marker 1 or Marker 2) at a time.

Do the following steps to horizontally shift the waveform or the marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area of data to shift.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Horizontal Shift** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to select the data you want to shift.
4. Push the **Point** (or **Time**) side button.

   Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to specify the amount of shift. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left.
5. Push the **Exec** side button to shift the part specified in step 3 by the amount specified in step 4.

Horizontal Rotate...

The Horizontal Rotate... command rotates the edit area data to the left or right by the specified value (points or time), within the cursor area. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left. All data that is shifted past the left or right cursor is rotated to the opposite cursor. This command can only shift one type of data (waveform, Marker 1 or Marker 2) at a time.

Do the following steps to horizontally rotate waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to shift.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Horizontal Rotate** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to select the data you want to shift.
4. Push the **Point** (or **Time**) side button. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to specify the amount of shift. A positive value shifts data to the right, and a negative value shifts data to the left.
5. Push the **Exec** side button to shift the part specified in step 3 by the amount specified in step 4.

Vertical Shift...

The Vertical Shift... command shifts the cursor-to-cursor waveform data up or down the value specified with Value. If Value is positive, the data shifts up; if Value is negative, the data shifts down. The editor retains values that exceed the default ±1.0 waveform peak-to-peak range. You can use the Zoom or Pan commands to view data that is out of the waveform display range. You can only vertically shift waveform data; you cannot vertically shift marker data.

Do the following steps to vertically shift waveform data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to shift.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Vertical Shift** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Value** side button. Specify the amount of shift using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. A positive value shifts data up, and a negative value shifts data down.
4. Push the **Exec** side button to shift the waveform by the amount you specified in Step 3.

Expand...

The Expand... command horizontally expands (scales) the edit area waveform and marker data by a specified amount in the range of 2 to 100. Expansion starts at the left cursor position. All data in the edit area expands as required for the amount of expansion.

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to expand.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Expand...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **By** side button. Specify the amount of expansion by using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. You may specify any integer from 2 to 100.
4. Push the **Exec** side button to expand the edit area data starting at the left cursor position.

Vertical Scale...

The Vertical Scale... command vertically shrinks or expands the edit area waveform data by a specified factor value, around a specified origin value. The Factor value range is –100 to 100 in 0.01 increments. The Origin value range is –1 to 1 in 0.00001 increments.

Do the following steps to vertically scale the waveform data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to scale.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Vertical Scale...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Factor** side button.

   This is the value by which you want to multiply the edit area waveform data. Specify the scale using the general purpose knob or the numeric buttons. A negative value of –100 to –1.01 inverts and rescales the signal. A value from –1 to –0.01 inverts and reduces signal vertical values.
4. Push the **Origin** side button.

   Specify the center of scale using the general purpose knob or the numeric buttons.
5. Push the **Exec** side button.

   The cursor-to-cursor data vertically expands or shrinks with the center at the Origin position.

Horizontal Invert...

The Horizontal Invert... command horizontally inverts (flips) the edit area waveform and marker data. You can invert the waveform and marker data separately. This command does not change the waveform data record length.

Do the following steps to horizontally invert the waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to invert.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Horizontal Invert...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to specify which data to invert.
4. Push the **Exec** side button.

   The data in the edit area inverts (flips) horizontally.

Vertical Invert...

The Vertical Invert... command vertically inverts (flips) the edit area waveform and marker data. You can invert the waveform and marker data separately. This command does not change the waveform data record length.

Do the following steps to vertically invert the waveform or marker data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to invert.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Vertical Invert...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** side button to specify which data to invert.
4. Push the **Exec** side button to vertically invert the cursor-to-cursor data you have specified in Step 3.

Clip...

The Clip... command sets the edit area waveform data maximum upper or lower signal level to a specified value.

Do the following steps to clip the waveform data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to clip.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Clip...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Clip** side button to specify the portion of level to be clipped. Select either the **Upper** or **Lower**. Upper refers to all signal data located above the clip level, and lower refers to all signal data located below the clip level.
4. Push the **Level** side button and specify the clip level using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.
5. Push the **Exec** side button to clip the waveform data.

Shift Register Generator...

The Shift Register Generator... command specifies a shift register to generate pseudo-random pulses with the value of 1 or 0 that replace the waveform data in the edit area. The pseudo-random shift generator consists of a user-definable register size (1 to 32 bits) and a user-specified number of feedback taps that do an XOR operation between a specified register bit and the register output.

NOTE. *XOR (exclusive OR) is a boolean logic operation that outputs one if two input values are different and outputs 0 otherwise.*

Figure 3–8 shows an example of the pattern generated for a 3-bit register with an initial value of 101 and a single tap on register bit 2.

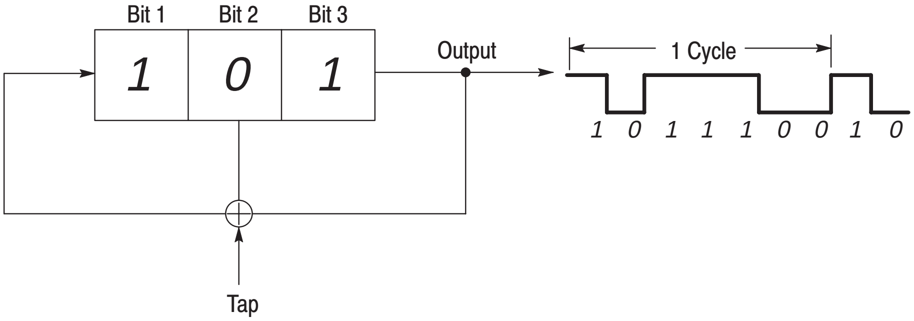


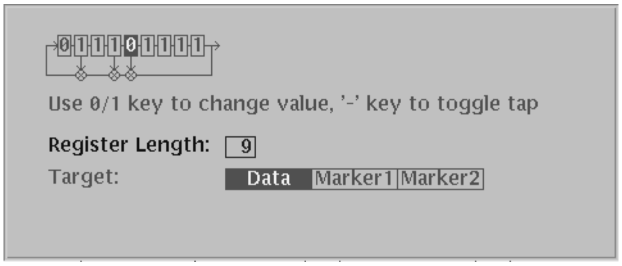
Figure 3–8: Register value and tap setting example

The following steps describe how the instrument generates the output waveform values.

1. Output 1 of the rightmost bit.
2. Take XOR of the output value 1 and the Bit 2 value 0 (result is 1).
3. Shift the bit values one column to the right.
4. Assign the value 1 to Bit 1, which is the XOR value from Step 2. The new array of the register values is 110.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4, with 110 as the register value.
6. Repeating output of the rightmost bit of the register and the subsequent shift of the register value results in the output values as shown in Figure 3–8. In this example, the shift register output pattern starts to repeat after seven cycles.

The data generated by the shift register is called an M Series. If n is defined as the number of shift register bits, then the output pattern from the shift register generator (M Series length) will begin to repeat after 2^n – 1 cycles.

The Shift Register Generator dialog box lets you define the register length, initial register bit values, and XOR tap bits used to generate pseudo-random pulses. Figure 3–9 shows the dialog box, and Table 3–11 describes the dialog box parameters.



Use 0/1 key to change value, '-' key to toggle tap

Register Length: 9

Target: Data Marker1 Marker2

Figure 3–9: Shift Register Generator dialog box

Table 3–11: Shift Register Generator dialog box setting parameters

Parameter	Description
Register Icon	The Register Icon displays the current register length and tap position values at the top left side of the dialog box.
Register Length	Specifies the register length. Set a value from 1 to 32 using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons. The graphic register image in the dialog box will change to show the number of registers you enter.
Target	Specifies the location where the generated pseudo-random pulse data is created. Selecting Data replaces the waveform data. Selecting Marker1 or Marker2 replaces the marker data. If the register data has fewer data points than those in the edit area, the register output repeats until the end of the edit area.

Do the following steps to generate a set of pseudo-random pulses:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area to replace with the pseudo-random signal.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Shift Register Generator...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Shift Register Generator dialog box appears.
3. Specify a register length in the Register Length field.

   The graphical register icon at the top of the dialog box redraws to show the number of registers entered in the Register Length field. The value can be 0 to 32.
4. Specify the register tap position(s) by selecting the register graphic icon. Use the ◀ or ▶ buttons to move the cursor to the desired tap position, and then push the **–** button to set the tap at the cursor position.

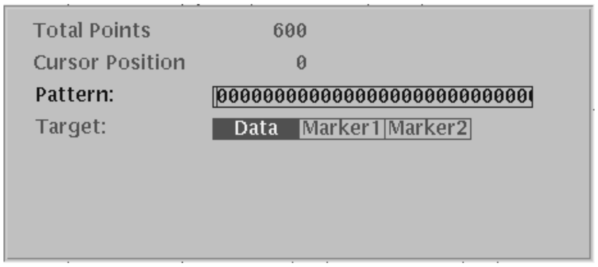
You can also use the Maximum Length Setting side button to automatically set the tap positions to maximize the length of the random waveform data sequence.

5. Select **Data, Marker1**, or **Marker2** in the **Target** field to specify the waveform data type to replace with the register output.
6. If desired, enter the initial register bit pattern values in the register graphic icon at the top of the dialog box.

   You can also use the Set All Registers side menu to set all register bits to one.
7. Push the **OK** side button to generate the cursor-to-cursor pseudo-random pattern in the area specified in Target.

Set Pattern...

The Set Pattern... command replaces existing edit area waveform data with 0 or 1 data values that you specify. You can also use this command to copy the pattern data from one editor window and replace it in another editor window. If the pattern you enter has fewer data points than those in the edit area, the pattern repeats until the end of the edit area. This command does not change the waveform data record length. Selecting Set Pattern opens the Set Pattern dialog box, shown in Figure 3–10.



Total Points 600

Cursor Position 0

Pattern: 0000000000000000000000000000

Target: Data Marker1 Marker2

Figure 3–10: Set Pattern dialog box

Table 3–12: Set Pattern dialog box parameters

Parameter	Description
Total Points	Displays the number of data points entered in the Pattern field. The instrument updates this value as you change the pattern data in the pattern field.
Cursor Position	Displays the cursor position in the pattern field. The instrument updates this value as you change the cursor position in the Pattern field.

Table 3–12: Set Pattern dialog box parameters (cont.)

Parameter	Description
Pattern	Specifies the pattern field value. Enter the pattern data by using the 0 or 1 numeric buttons on the front panel or from an attached keyboard. Push the **Clear Pattern** side button to clear the pattern data field. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to insert the edit area pattern data from the active window target data type into the pattern field. You can then write the pattern data to a target waveform type in the active window or another window.
Target	Specifies the location where the generated data is created or the source for imported pattern data. If you specify Data, the pattern data replaces edit area waveform data; if Marker1 or Marker2 is selected, the pattern data replaces the edit area marker data. To import the pattern from the Target specified here, use the **Import Pattern** side menu.

Do the following steps to specify a pattern:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area in which to replace the waveform data with pattern data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the target data type to replace with the pattern data.
4. Define the pattern using numeric buttons, or push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the pattern data.
5. If necessary, you can change the pattern value by moving the cursor with the ◀ or ▶ button and then using numeric keys and the ← key.
6. Push the **OK** side button to replace the waveform or marker data with the specified pattern data.

The Import Pattern function lets you read waveform or pattern data from the specified target data type of the active window and stores it in the pattern buffer. You can then replace waveform or marker data with the pattern data in the current window or another window. The Set Pattern dialog box converts all waveform data greater than 0.5 volts to a one level if the waveform data is analog. All waveform data less than or equal to 0.5 volts is set to a zero level.

Do the following steps to use the Import Pattern function to convert waveform data into pattern data:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area from which to import the waveform pattern data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the data type from which to import the pattern data.
4. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the pattern data.

   All waveform data above 0.5 becomes a one pattern value, and all waveform data at or below 0.5 becomes a zero pattern value. The pattern data is stored in the pattern buffer.
5. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the data type to replace with the pattern data.
6. Push the **OK** side button to replace the waveform or marker data with the specified pattern data.

Do the following steps to write pattern data between different editor windows:

1. Move the cursors to specify the edit area from which to import the waveform pattern data.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the data type from which to import the pattern data.
4. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the pattern data.

   All waveform data above 0.5 becomes a one pattern value, and all waveform data at or below 0.5 becomes a zero pattern value. The pattern data is stored in the pattern buffer.
5. Push the **Cancel** side button.

   This cancels the Set Pattern dialog box but retains the pattern data in the pattern buffer.
6. Open or make active the other editor window.
7. Move the cursors to specify the edit area in which to replace the existing data with the pattern data.

8. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** .

The Set Pattern dialog box appears, with the pattern field displaying the pattern data from the other editor window.

9. Select **Data**, **Marker1**, or **Marker2** to specify the target data type to replace with the pattern data.

10. Push the **OK** side button to replace the waveform or marker data with the specified pattern data.

Numeric Input...

The Numeric Input... command lets you change the waveform or marker data value at the active cursor location. You can use the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob to change the waveform data value.

Do the following steps to change the numeric value of the data at the active cursor position:

1. Move a cursor to the data point that you want to change.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Numeric Input...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **Data** side button and use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to set the waveform data value.
4. Push the **Marker1** or **Marker2** button to toggle between the marker values.

***NOTE**. The values modified through the side menu are immediately shown in the data. Use the general purpose knob after the value has been modified. Push Undo! to return to the previous value prior to modification.*

The Tools Menu

The Tools menu performs mathematical operations on the entire waveform data record you are currently editing. There are two mathematical operations:

- Single Waveform Math, which performs the specified mathematical operation on the currently edited waveform.
- Dual Waveform Math, which performs a specified mathematical operation between the currently edited waveform and a different waveform.

The math operations do not change the marker data.

The math waveform operations apply to the whole waveform rather than merely the edit area. The waveform math commands opens a new window that contains the waveform data that is the result of the math operation. The operation uses the values of the points on the waveform or waveforms for input, and performs the operation, point by point, to generate the results.

***NOTE**. If you perform a math operation that needs to create a new window, and there are three windows already open, the math command displays an error message.*

If a math operation creates a waveform with values greater than ±1.0, you can use the Zoom/Pan (bottom) commands to view the part of waveform that lies outside the window. The instrument retains the calculated values even if they exceed the current editor settings. Use the **Normalize** command to scale the signal values to a ±1.0 DAC range.

For Dual Waveform Math, there may be a mismatch between the data lengths of the two input waveforms. The output waveform's data length will equal the shorter of the two compared waveforms.

Table 3–13 lists the waveform math commands along with the equation used to calculate the new waveform data. Information regarding more complicated commands follow Table 3–13.

Table 3–13: Mathematical function commands

Command	Equation [1]	Description
Absolute	$G(x) = \mid F1(x) \mid$	Creates a new waveform that is the absolute value of the points in the source waveform.
Square	$G(x) = (F1(x))^2 :$ $F1(X) \geqq 0$ $G(x) = - (F1(x))^2 :$ $F1(X) < 0$	Creates a new waveform that is the squared value of the points in the source waveform.
Cube	$G(x) = (F(x))^3$	Creates a new waveform that is the cubed value of the points in the source waveform.
Square Root	$G(x) = \sqrt{\mid F1(x) \mid} : X \geqq 0$ $G(x) = -\sqrt{\mid F1(x) \mid} : X < 0$	Creates a new waveform that is the square root value of the points in the source waveform.
Normalize		Scales the active editor window signal values to a ±1.0 range, centered on 0. This command makes changes to the active editor window data values.
Differential	$G(x) = d/dx\ F1(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the differentiation of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page G–1 for the differentiation algorithm.
Integral	$G(x) = \int F1(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the integral value of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page G–3 for the integration algorithm.

Table 3-13: Mathematical function commands (cont.)

Command	Equation [1]	Description
Add	$G(x) = F1(x) + F2(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the sum of the active window and a nonactive window data points. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The data length of the resultant is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms.
Sub	$G(x) = F1(x) - F2(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the subtraction of the active window and a nonactive window data points, starting a data position 0. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The data length of the resultant waveform is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms.
Mul	$G(x) = F1(x) \times F2(x)$	Creates a new waveform that is the multiplication of the active window and a nonactive window data points. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The data length of the resultant waveform is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms.
Compare...		Creates a new waveform that is the comparison of the active window and a specified window data points. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two source waveforms. The resultant waveform's data length is equal in length to the shortest of the source waveforms. You can also set comparison hysteresis levels. **Standard Compare.** The new waveform consists of logical 0 and 1 values. If the source level exceeds the reference signal level, the comparison result is a one. If the source level is less than the reference signal level, the comparison result is a 0. See Figure 3-11. **Hysteresis Compare.** The new waveform consists of logical zero and 1 values. If the source level exceeds the reference signal level by the specified hysteresis amount, the comparison result is a one. If the source level is less than the reference signal level by the specified hysteresis amount, the comparison result is a zero. See Figure 3-11.
Convolution...		Creates a new waveform that is the convolution value of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page 3-75 for information on the Convolution dialog box. Refer to page G-4 for the convolution algorithm.

Table 3–13: Mathematical function commands (cont.)

Command	Equation [1]	Description
Correlation...		Creates a new waveform that is the correlation value of the points in the source waveform. Refer to page 3–76 for information on the Correlation dialog box. Refer to page G–5 for the correlation algorithm.
Digital Filter...		Creates a new waveform by applying a user-defined digital filter to the source waveform data values. Refer to page 3–77 for information on the Digital Filter dialog box.
Re-Sampling...		Changes the active editor window clock frequency or data record length (number of points). This command changes the data values of the entire waveform record in the active editor window. Refer to page 3–78 for information on the Re-sample dialog box.
XY View...		Displays the XY view of two waveforms. The XY view dialog box is an information display and does not alter the waveform data. Waveform XY view. Refer to page 3–79 for information on the XY View dialog box.

[1] **F1, F2: Source waveforms**
G: Waveform resulting from operation
(x): Waveform data point value

Compare... Figure 3–11 shows an example of the output of standard and hysteresis comparison operations. The rectangular wave is the reference waveform, and the triangular wave is the source waveform.

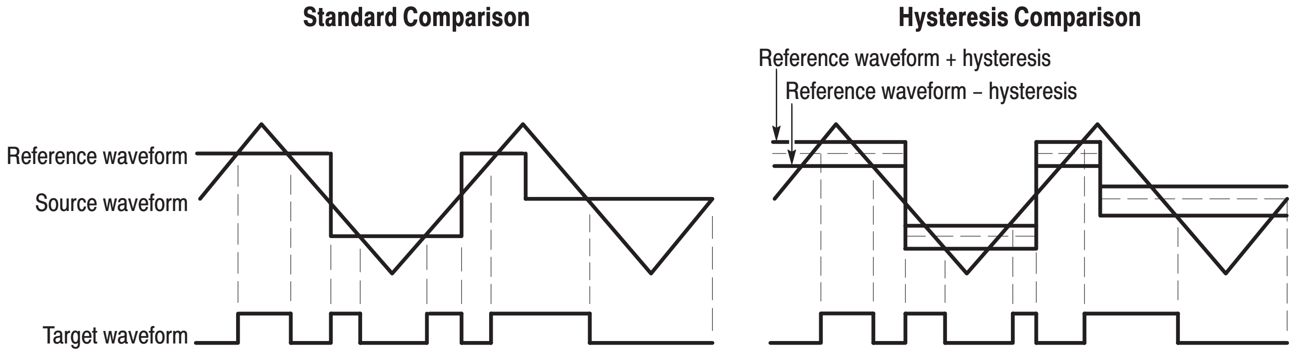


Figure 3–11: Waveform compare operation example

Compare Dialog Box. The Compare dialog box lets you set the target and source waveform and hysteresis values. Table 3–14 describes the Compare dialog box parameters.

Table 3–14: Compare dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Target	Specifies the location where you want to display the result of operation. Options are Data, Marker 1 and Marker 2.
With	Specifies the reference waveform.
Hysteresis	Specifies the amount of hysteresis. The value may be –1 to 1 in 0.0001 increments.

Do the following steps to do a comparison math operation between two waveforms:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Compare...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Compare dialog box appears.
3. Push either **Data**, **Marker1** or **Marker2** in the Target to specify the location where you want to create the data.
4. Select the reference waveform in the With field.
5. Specify the amount of hysteresis in the Hysteresis field.
6. Push the **OK** side button to generate a pattern in the target edit area.

   This pattern shows the result of the compare process.

Convolution...

The Convolution... command performs convolution for the active window's and a nonactive window's waveforms and displays the result in the third window. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two waveforms. For markers, the value of the first point is 1, and those of all the others are 0. If one or three windows are open, the operation will not work.

Refer to *Convolution* on page G–4 for more information about convolution and examples.

Convolution Dialog Box. The Convolution dialog box lets you set the second waveform for the operation and the Periodic On/Off toggle. Table 3–15 describes the Convolution dialog box parameters.

Table 3–15: Convolution dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
With	Specifies the second waveform for the operation.
Treat waveform periodic	Specifies whether the waveform must be regarded as periodic during calculation.

Do the following steps to perform a convolution math operation between two waveforms:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Convolution...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). Th**e** Convolution dialog box appears.
3. Select the second waveform in the With field.
4. Select either **Off** or **On** in the Treat waveform as periodic field.
5. Push the **OK** side button to generate the result of convolution of the two waveforms.

Correlation...

The Correlation... command performs correlation between the data points in the active window and the data points in a nonactive window, starting at data point 0. The results are displayed in a third window. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two waveforms. For markers, the value of the first point is 1, and those of all the others are 0. If one or three windows are open, the operation will not work.

Refer to *Correlation* on page G–5 for more information on correlation.

Correlation Dialog Box. The Correlation dialog box lets you set the second waveform for the operation and the Periodic On/Off switch. Table 3–16 describes the Correlation dialog box parameters.

Table 3–16: Correlation dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
With	Specifies the second waveform for the operation.
Treat waveform periodic	Specifies whether the waveform must be regarded as periodic during calculation.

Do the following steps to perform a correlation math operation between two waveforms:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Correlation...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Correlation dialog box appears.
3. Select the second waveform in the With field.
4. Select either **Off** or **On** in the Treat waveform as periodic field.
5. Push the **OK** side button to generate the result of correlation of the two waveforms.

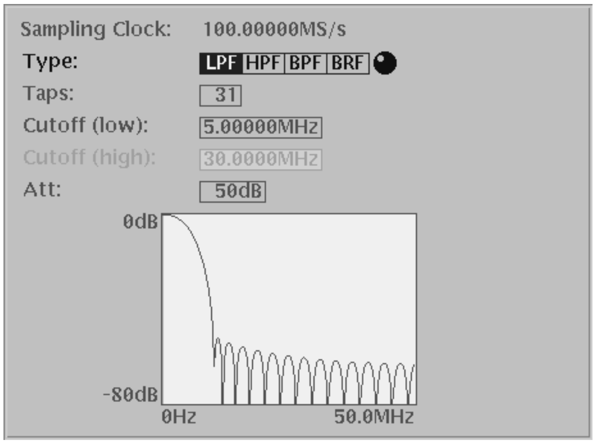
Digital Filter...

The Digital Filter... command applies a digital filter to the whole of the active window's waveform and displays the result in another window. If three windows are open, the operation will not work.

The digital filter implemented in this instrument is composed of *n* FIR filter and Kaizer window functions, where *n* represents the number of delay elements that composes the filter. You can specify the *n* as a tap that varies from 3 to 101. The larger the value of *n* (number of taps), the greater the filtering capability. However, filtering will take a longer time to perform as the value of *n* increases.

Digital Filter Dialog Box. Figure 3–12 shows the Digital Filter dialog box. Table 3–17 describes the digital filter parameters.

Applying the digital filter results in delay by (number of taps – 1)/2. The original data is regarded as an iterative waveform during calculation. As a result of the delay due to the filter, the portion around the start of the output waveform is influenced by the end of the input waveform.



Sampling Clock: 100.00000MS/s
Type: LPF HPF BPF BRF
Taps: 31
Cutoff (low): 5.00000MHz
Cutoff (high): 30.0000MHz
Att: 50dB

Figure 3–12: Digital Filter dialog box

Table 3-17: Digital filter dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Type	Selects the filter type. You can select LPF (low pass filter), HPF (high pass filter), BPF (band pass filter), or BRF (band rejection filter).
Taps	Specifies the number of taps (odd number, 3 to 101).
Cutoff	Specifies the cutoff frequency. If you selected BPF or BRF, you must specify the upper and lower bandpass limits.
Att	Specifies the attenuation of the inhibited bands (21 to 100, in dB increments).

Do the following steps to digitally filter a waveform:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Digital Filter...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Digital Filter dialog box appears.
3. Select the filter type in the Type field.
4. Specify the number of taps in the Taps field.
5. Specify the cutoff frequency in the Cutoff field.
6. Specify the attenuation of the inhibited band in the Att field.
7. Push the **OK** side button to generate a waveform by applying the active waveform to the digital filter.

Re-sampling...

The Re-sampling... command enables you to specify a new clock frequency or a new number of points. It resamples and updates the whole waveform data record in the active window.

Re-sampling Dialog Box. The current number of points and the current sample clock frequency are in the top display. You should set the new number of points or sample clock frequency at the bottom. The number of points and the sample clock frequency are dependent on each other.

Table 3-18: Re-sampling dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
New Points	Specifies the new number of sample points.
New Clock	Specifies the new sample clock frequency.

***NOTE**. If you enter a large number in New Points, New Points will be set greater than 200 MS/s. In this case, you cannot change the New Clock value with the general purpose knob. Use the numeric keys to change the New Clock value.*

Do the following steps to resample a waveform:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Re-Sampling...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Re-sampling dialog box appears.
3. Set a value in either the New Points or the New Clock.
4. Push the **OK** side button to update the current window with the waveform that resulted from resampling with the above specified sample clock frequency.

Code Convert...

The Code Convert... command can be applied to the waveform data and marker data. The code convert function inputs a 01 pattern. When you select waveform data as the input source, the input data is considered to be 1 when the point values are equal to or larger than 0.5 and 0 when the point values are less than 0.5.

For the details on the code conversion, refer to *The Tools Menu* on page 3–87 and to *Code Conversion* on page G–7.

XY View...

The XY View... command displays the XY view of two waveforms. The XY view dialog box is an information display and does not alter the waveform data.

The XY View dialog box, shown in Figure 3–13, lets you specify the waveforms you want to display in the XY view. Table 3–19 describes the dialog box fields.

XY View Dialog Box.

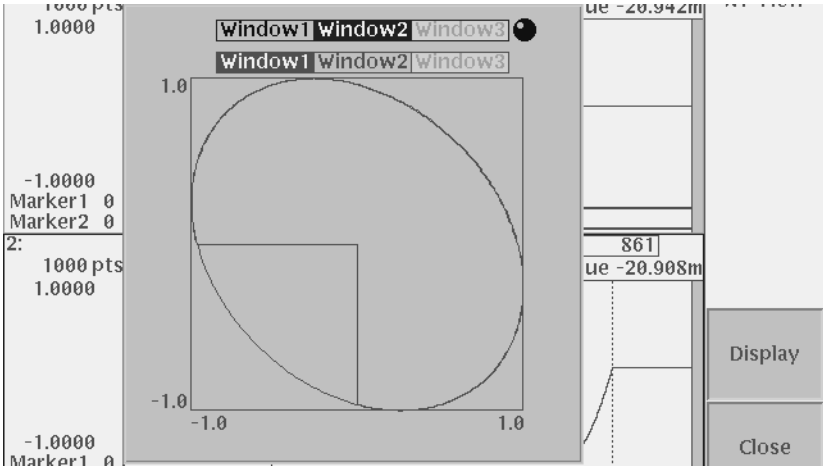


Figure 3-13: XY View dialog box

Table 3-19: XY View dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
X Axis	Specifies the waveform you want to assign to the X axis.
Y Axis	Specifies the waveform you want to assign to the Y axis.

Do the following steps to view two waveforms in an XY display:

1. Make sure that two or more windows are currently open.
2. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**XY View...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The XY View dialog box appears.
3. Select the window waveform to use for the X axis.
4. Select the window waveform to use for the Y axis.
5. Push the **Display** side button to display the two specified waveforms in the XY view.
6. Push the **Close** side button to close the dialog box.

The Zoom/Pan Menu

You can use the Zoom function to expand or shrink the waveform display in an editor window. The Pan function shows a segment of waveform that lies outside the window due to the expansion.

When you push the **Zoom/Pan** bottom button, the side menu displays the operation menu. The displayed waveform can either expand or shrink, with the waveform data unchanged. If two or more waveforms are on display, this command zooms in on only the waveform of the current window.

Table 3–20: Zoom/Pan side menu buttons

Side buttons	Descriptions	
Direction	Specifies the direction of zoom or pan. The direction you specify here will apply to both zoom and pan operation.	
Zoom In	Expands the waveform with the center defined as follows:	
	Horizontal zoom	The active cursor is the center.
	Vertical zoom	The window center is the center.
Zoom Out	Shrinks the waveform with the center defined as follows:	
	Horizontal zoom	The active cursor is the center. (Left end, if the size has become smaller than the window width.)
	Vertical zoom	The window center is the center.
Zoom Fit	For horizontal	Horizontal fit takes place so that the whole waveform is contained in the window.
	For vertical	Vertical fit takes place so that the segment from –1.0 to 1.0 is contained in the window.
Pan	Assigns the general purpose knob to the waveform view movement.	

To do the Zoom/Pan, do the following steps:

1. If more than one window is open, select the source waveform as follows: Push **Window** (bottom)→**Window1**, **Window2**, or **Window3** (side).
2. Push the **Zoom/Pan** bottom button to display the side menu.
3. Use the **Direction** side button to set the direction of zoom/pan.
4. Move the cursor to the center of zoom to perform horizontal zoom. When the Pan button is held down, the general purpose knob is already assigned to the pan function. To move the cursor using the general purpose knob, push the **TOGGLE** button to assign the cursor movement to the knob.
5. Push the **Zoom In** or **Zoom Out** side button to cause the waveform to expand or shrink.

If the desired portion of the waveform went outside the window as a result of zoom, move the waveform by using the Pan and the Direction side button and the general purpose knob. For waveforms with extremely large amplitude or a large offset value, use the Pan function to bring it in the window.

6. Push the **Zoom Fit** side button to reset the expansion/shrinkage that is in the direction specified with Direction.
7. Push the **CLEAR MENU** or any other bottom button to terminate zoom/pan.

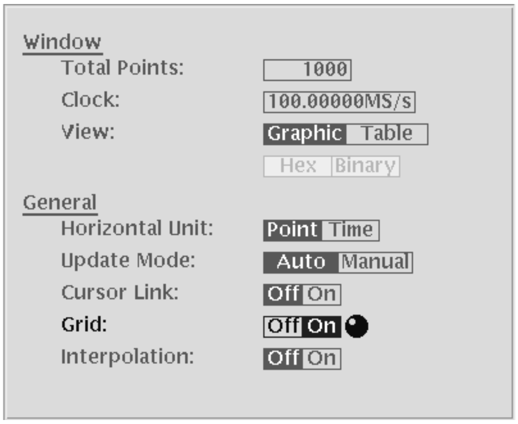
The Window Menu

The Window menu displays a side menu that lets you select which edit window is active. Simply push the side button of the window you want to make active.

***NOTE**. Push **File** (bottom)→**Open** (pop-up) to load a file into a second or third edit window.*

The Settings Menu

There are a number of waveform parameters, including the number of data points in the waveform (data record length), the clock frequency, display mode, and horizontal units, that you can define. Although the instrument had default values for these parameters, you should set these to your own waveform requirements. These settings are done in the Settings dialog box. To display the Settings dialog box, push the **Settings** bottom button. Figure 3–14 shows the Settings dialog box.



Window
Total Points: 1000
Clock: 100.00000MS/s
View: Graphic Table
Hex Binary

General
Horizontal Unit: Point Time
Update Mode: Auto Manual
Cursor Link: Off On
Grid: Off On
Interpolation: Off On

Figure 3–14: Settings dialog box

Window and General are two types of editor setup parameters. Window parameters only affects the active edit window. General parameters influence all windows currently opened and that will be opened, whether they are active or not. Table 3–21 describes the Window setup parameters, and Table 3–22 describes the general setup parameters.

Table 3–21: Setup window parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Total Points	Specifies the data length of the waveform in the current window. The default is 1000 points. The range of data points is from 0 to 4M (4,194,048), or from 0 to 16M (16,200,000) with Option 01. If you specify a value larger than the current data length, one or more zeros are added at the end of the data. If you specify a value less than the current length, all data after the end data point is deleted. The displayed value reflects data point changes resulting from any edit operations (such as cut or paste) that increase or decrease the number of data points in the record.
Clock	Specifies the clock frequency used to calculate the point-to-point time interval between each data point. The default setting is 100 MS/s. Note that this clock does not define the waveform output frequency.
View	Selects either the Graphic or Table waveform data display mode. The default setting is Graphic.
Table Type	Specifies to display tabular waveform data in binary or hexadecimal format. This selection is available only when the View parameter is set to Table. The Editor displays all data values in real numbers.

Table 3–22: Setup general parameters

Parameter	Description
Horizontal Unit	Specifies the horizontal axis data point unit (points or time) used to represent the position along the horizontal axis. The default setting is points.
Update Mode	Specifies when output memory is updated. In Auto the output waveform is automatically updated in the waveform memory as you change the waveform in the editrot. Changes are not saved to the original file, unless you manually save the changes. Note: Auto mode only works when the file you currently editing is also loaded in the waveform memory. Selecting Manual causes the instrument to update the output waveform only when the contents of the waveform file on the disk is changed by the save function of the editor. In Auto mode, you cannot edit waveform while the instrument is reloading. The longer the waveform, the longer you may have to wait to return to edit mode. Manual mode allows faster editing when you have a large number of points in the data file.

Table 3–22: Setup general parameters (cont.)

Parameter	Description
Cursor Link	Specifies whether to link cursor movement when two or three edit windows are open. Selecting ON causes the cursors in the inactive windows to be linked to their respective cursor in the active window. The default value is Off. If a linked cursor reaches either end of its data record before the active window cursor, the linked cursor remains at the data record end. This can result in changes to the relative cursor positions and edit areas between the editor windows.
Grid	Specifies whether to display a grid. Selecting On displays a grid in all open Graphical Waveform Editor windows. Selecting Off disables grid display. The default value is Off. The grid is not displayed in the Tabular Waveform Editor window or the Pattern Editor window. The instrument automatically sets the grid interval.
Interpolation	Specifies whether to enable waveform display interpolation when the density of points decreases due to zooming. Selecting On specifies that the instrument use the algorithm $aX^2 + bX + c$ to interpolate the waveform level between data points. Selecting Off displays the data point values as they are. The default value is Off. This function is provided to display a smooth waveform from data that contains relatively few data points in a cycle (such as in a disk test waveform). Note that this function may cause reduction in the linearity of some types of waveforms, such as a ramp waveform.

The Pattern Editor

The Pattern Editor lets you create and edit data to output the analog signal. Graphic and tabular are the two display modes. The graphic mode displays the waveform graphically, while the tabular mode displays the tubular mode numerically in tabular form.

The instrument will interpret the data bit values and send the resulting signal to the outputs (CH1, $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\mathrm{CH2}}$, CH3 or $\overline{\mathrm{CH3}}$).

About Waveform and Pattern Files

You can load both the waveform (.wfm) and pattern (.pat) files to output a waveform to the outputs (CH1, $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\mathrm{CH2}}$, CH3 and $\overline{\mathrm{CH3}}$). When you load a waveform file, the instrument converts the file to an 16-bit digital pattern and stores the pattern into the waveform memory. At the same time, the instrument stores the data in the pattern file into the waveform memory without any conversion.

The waveform file format is composed of 4-bytes for each data point and 1-byte for markers. The pattern file format is composed of 3-bytes including 16-bit data and 2-bit markers.

When you transfer the data, select pattern file to shorten the transfer time if you are not going to perform other operations on the data. The number of bytes in the pattern file is always less than that of the waveform file even though they are the same data length.

However, when you use waveform data to generate another waveform by mathematical operations, such as multiplying, dividing, or adding, you must keep the waveform data as a waveform file. The waveform file format exists for keeping the data precision in mathematical operations.

For more details about file format, refer to the *Data Transfer* section in the *AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator Programmer Manual*.

Starting the Pattern Editor

To start the Pattern Editor, push **EDIT** (front)→ **Edit** (bottom)→**New Pattern** (side). Figure 3–15 shows the Pattern Editor screen elements. All Pattern editor screen elements are the same as for the Waveform Editor (page 3–54) except for those listed in Table 3–23. All Pattern Editor bottom menu items are the same as for the Waveform editor (page 3–55) except for those listed in Table 3–24.

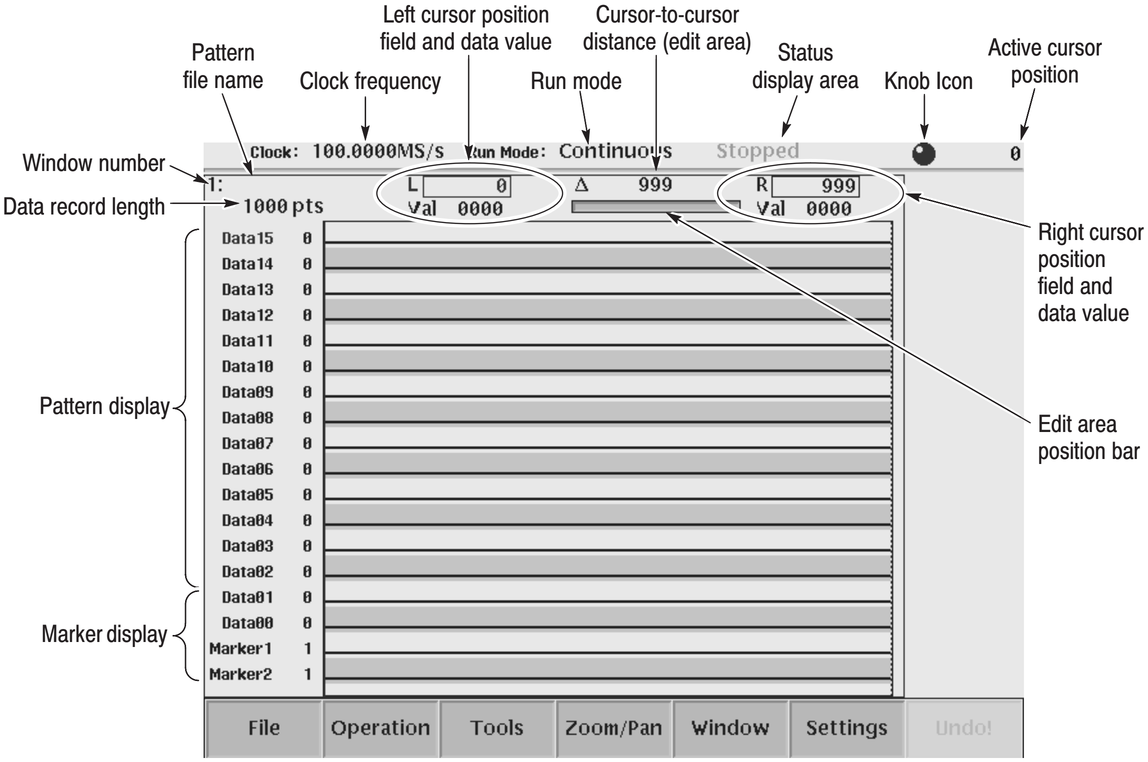


Figure 3–15: Pattern editor initial screen

Table 3–23: Pattern editor screen elements

Element	Description
Pattern display	The pattern display is a graphical representation of the pattern data values. There are a total of 16 data bits (Data0 through Data15) and two marker signals. Data values are 1 or 0.
Pattern file name	The pattern file name is a file name to which the waveform data is written. The instrument appends the .pat file suffix to all pattern files. If this is a new pattern, you are prompted to enter a file name before exiting the editor.

Table 3–24: Pattern editor bottom menu

Button	Description
Tools	Provides a command to convert pattern waveform data. This is the only Tools command available while in the Pattern Editor.

The File Menu

The File menu command descriptions are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor. Refer to *The File Menu* on page 3–57 for a description of the File menu commands.

The Operation Menu

The Operation menu command descriptions are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor except for Standard Waveform..., Vertical Shift..., Vertical Scale..., and Clip..., which are not available in the Pattern Editor. Refer to *The Operation Menu* section on page 3–59 for a description of the Operation menu commands.

The Tools Menu

The only Tools command available in the Pattern Editor is the Code Convert... command. This command creates a new pattern by using a user-specified table to convert the pattern of the specified line. The instrument opens a new window to display the results of the conversion.

Code Conversion Process

The outline for the code conversion procedures is:

- Use the data bits you specified with Target as the source data.
- Define the code conversion rules in a code conversion table.
- A new code conversion table must be created using the Edit... side menu command. An existing conversion table must be used with the commands in Open... side menu.
- Any new code conversion table created can be saved.
- When you push the **OK** side button, the pattern of code-converted source data is created in a separate window.

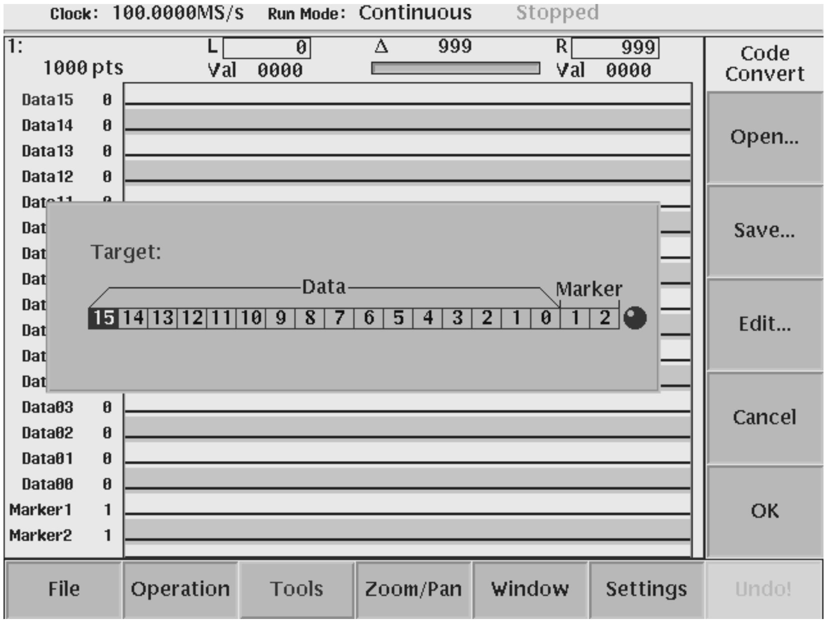
To open the code conversion table:

1. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Code Convert...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

Figure 3–16 shows the Code Convert dialog box and side menu.

2. In the Code Convert dialog box, use the general purpose or the ◀ or ▶ button to specify the data scope to convert.

The side menu has commands related to the code conversion tables.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

1: 1000 pts L 0 Val 0000 Δ 999 R 999 Val 0000

Figure 3–16: Code Convert dialog box and side menu

Table 3–25: Code conversion commands

Commands	Description
Open...	Reads an existing code conversion table.
Save...	Saves a code conversion table that was newly created or edited. It is saved in an ASCII file and the cells are separated by commas.
Edit...	Creates or edits a code conversion table.

Code Conversion Table

When you push the Edit... side button, the code conversion table appears as shown in Figure 3–17. Each code conversion table defines the template pattern that is used for pattern matching with the source code. Use the Edit... side button to create a new code conversion table. Alternatively, use the Open... side button to read an existing code conversion table.

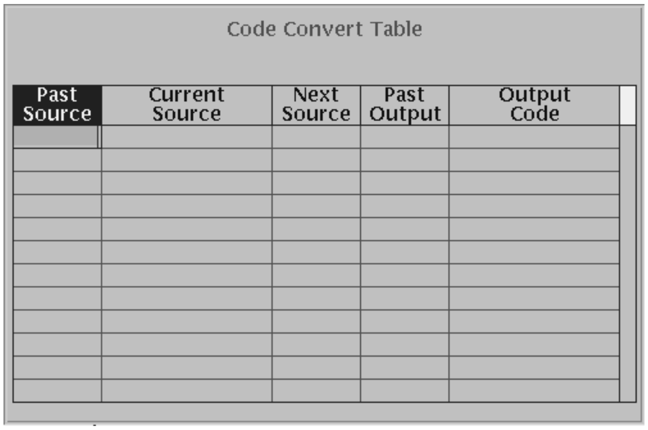


Figure 3–17: Code conversion table

Table 3–26: Code conversion parameters

Parameters	Description
Past Source	Corresponds to the previous source data, which is to the left of the current noticed point. You can view up to eight points of past data.
Current Source	Shows the source data you are currently looking up. You may specify up to 16 points, starting in the noticed point.
Next Source	Specifies the source pattern that is further to the right of the portion read with Current Source. You can look at up to eight points of data.

Table 3–26: Code conversion parameters (cont.)

Parameters	Description
Past Output	The portion in which you view the output data that was output first. You can view up to eight points of the conversion result of the past output.
Output Code	Writes the resulting data of conversion that is output when all the above four conditions are satisfied. You may specify 16 points of data. If all conditions from Past Source to Past Output are satisfied in the conditions portion, Output Code will be output. Past Source, Current Source, Next Source, and Past Output are defined as conditions segments, and Output Code as the output segment.

Operations in the dialog box can be made as follows:

- A pattern must have been defined in at least one cell within a line conditions segment on one line.
- The Current Source cell is not allowed to be blank. You need to enter Don't Care or – (minus) sign even if you do not set any pattern.
- The number of points in a cell may be optional, unless it exceeds the maximum number of points. Any blank cell is ignored during pattern matching.
- Each cell must be a pattern of 0s, 1s, and/or don't care (minus) signs.
- The maximum definable number of lines is 256 lines.

Code Conversion Mechanism

The following information explains the code conversion mechanism:

- Initial state: The left end of source data is defined as the noticed point. Past Source and Output Code data are regarded as all 0 data.
- The left and right patterns to the noticed point are compared with the individual lines of the conditions segment in the conversion table. The comparison is from the top to the bottom to find identical lines. If such lines are found, the Output Code data defined in the line is added to the output data.
- The noticed point shifts to the right. The amount of shift corresponds to the size of the Current Source data that was found to identical in the source data. The new noticed point is defined there.
- The above compare process for the individual lines is repeated for the new noticed point.
- An error is caused if there are no identical lines found during the compare process.

Refer to *Appendix G:Code Conversion* for code conversion examples.

Executing Conversion

Follow the steps below to execute code conversion:

1. Push the **Save...** side button and name the file.
2. Push **OK** side button.

   Code conversion is executed with the specified pattern as the source code. The result of code conversion is displayed in a new window.

The Zoom/Pan Menu

You can use the Zoom function to expand or shrink the pattern display in an editor window. The Pan function lets you scroll the pattern image to show waveform data that lies outside the edit display.

The Zoom/Pan menu commands are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor except that you cannot select vertical zoom/pan operations. You can only zoom or pan horizontally in the Pattern Editor. Refer to *The Zoom/Pan Menu* section on page 3–81 for a description of the horizontal Zoom and Pan menu commands.

The Window Menu

The Window menu displays a side menu that lets you select which edit window is active. Push the side button of the window you want to make active.

The Settings Menu

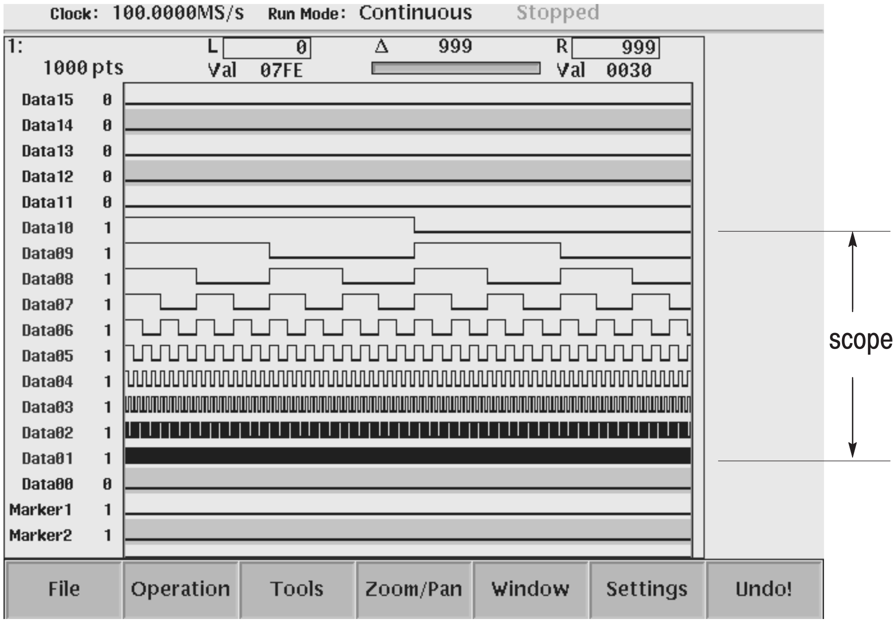
The Settings menu commands define editor setup parameters, including waveform record length, clock frequency, display mode, cursor linking, grid on/off, and so on. The Settings menu commands are the same as those for the Graphical Waveform editor except for View, Grid and Interpolation. When you select Table View in pattern editor, you can select binary or hexadecimal format. You can set grid and/or interpolation. However, the pattern editor does not use these parameters. These parameters are used only for the waveform editor when you are editing two or more windows. Refer to *The Settings Menu* section on page 3–82 for a description of the Settings menu commands.

The Undo! Command

The Undo! command reverses the last edit operation. This is only a one-level undo function.

Selecting Data Bits to Edit

Like the waveform editor, the pattern editor executes operation menu commands on the data between the two cursors. You must select which of the 16 data bit signals to edit. Selected bits (data and marker) are indicated by highlighting the data bit and/or marker names at the left of the pattern display area. The selected bits are referred to as the edit scope. For example, Figure 3–18 shows the edit scope (selected data bits) as Data10 through Data01. Note that you can only select continuous sets of data bits.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

1: 1000 pts

L 0 Val 07FE

Δ 999

R 999 Val 0030

Data15 0
Data14 0
Data13 0
Data12 0
Data11 0
Data10 1
Data09 1
Data08 1
Data07 1
Data06 1
Data05 1
Data04 1
Data03 1
Data02 1
Data01 1
Data00 0
Marker1 1
Marker2 1

Figure 3–18: Operating data bits (scope)

To specify the edit scope, do the following steps:

1. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Select Lines** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The side menu items From and To appear.

2. Push the **From** side button and specify the start bit of the scope using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons.

   The option may be Data0 to Data15, Marker1, and Marker2.

3. Push the **To** side button and specify the end bit of the scope using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons.

   The option may be Data0 to Data15, Marker1, and Marker2.

Do the following to copy data from one bit to another. The following example copies Data7 data, consisting of 1000 points, to Data0.

1. Place the left cursor at data point 0, and the right cursor at data point 999. Make the left cursor active with the TOGGLE button.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Select Lines** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. Push the **From** side button to set to Data7.
4. Push the **To** side button to set to Data7.
5. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Copy** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
6. Specify the edit scope position as Data0 using the ⬆ or ⬇ button. (Data0 is highlighted.)
7. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Paste** (**Replace**) (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

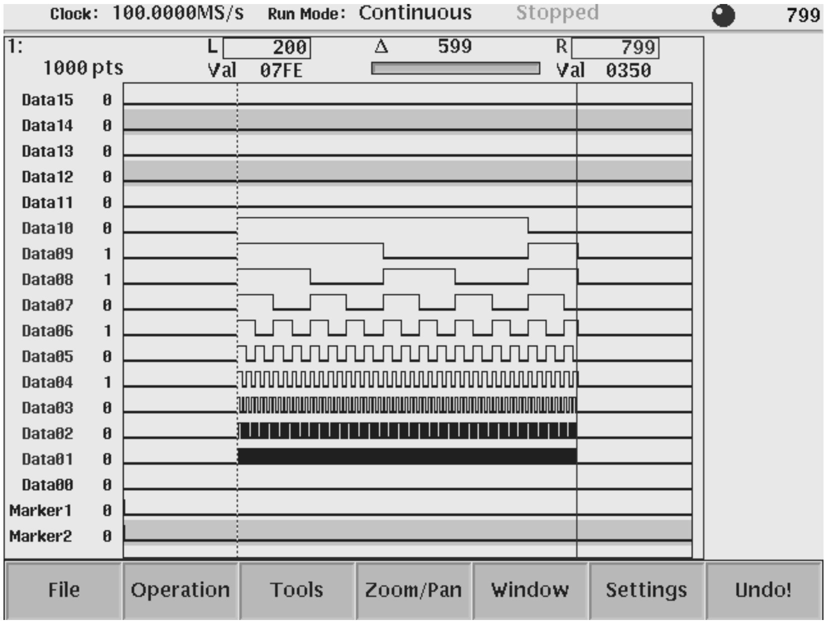
Defining Edit Area

Figure 3–19 shows an example of the waveform pattern created in the area defined by area cursor. All edit operations act on either the area between the cursors or the area to the right of the active cursor. When you edit a pattern, you must first specify the area or the position to be edited.

The area to edit is specified as the area between the left and right vertical cursors. You can select the active cursor by pushing the TOGGLE button, and move a cursor by using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

- Push the **TOGGLE** button on the front panel to switch the active cursor between the left and right cursor. You cannot activate both the left and right cursors at the same time. The activated cursor is represented with the real vertical line and the nonactive cursor with the dashed vertical line.
- Move the active cursor to the position to be edited.

Depending on the type of operation, only the active cursor position may be important. In this case, you must activate either the left or right cursor and move to the position to perform the action.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 799

1: 1000 pts L 200 Val 07FE Δ 599 R 799 Val 0350

Figure 3-19: Area cursors

Creating a Pattern

The New Pattern command opens a pattern edit window with the following default values:

Data length:	1000 points
Bit value level:	0
Clock frequency:	100 MS/s
Edit scope:	Data15

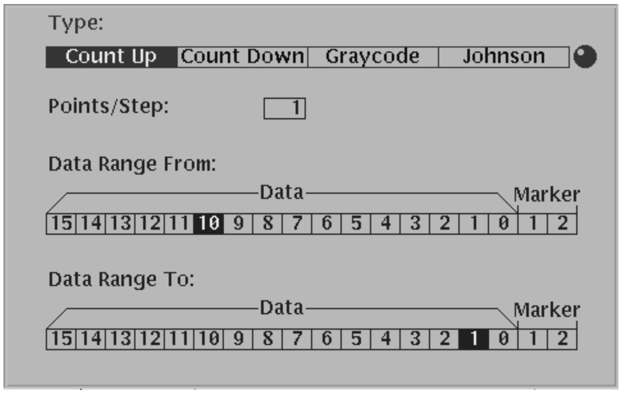
The Pattern Editor does not change the data length when executing Cut operations. To create 1000-point or shorter data, change the data length in the Total Points item of the Setting menu.

For creating pattern, you can use the following methods alone or in combination:

- Select from standard patterns
- Import from external file
- Newly created and/or edit pattern
- Generate random pattern

Creating Standard Patterns

The counter dialog box lets you specify the type of pattern and the range (scope) of data bits to apply to the pattern. See Figure 3–20. The instrument lets you create one of four standard counter patterns as listed in Table 3–27, and inserts the pattern in the edit area between the cursors.



Type: Count Up

Points/Step: 1

Data Range From: 10

Data Range To: 1

Figure 3–20: Counter dialog box

Table 3–27: Patterns to be selected in Counter dialog box

Standard patterns	Descriptions
Count Up	Creates a binary incrementing counter pattern
Count Down	Creates a binary decrementing counter pattern
Graycode	Creates a gray code counter pattern
Johnson	Creates a Johnson counter pattern

Do the following steps to create a counter pattern:

1. Specify the scope and area in which you want to create the pattern.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Counter...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side). The Counter dialog box as shown in Figure 3–20 is displayed.
3. Select a type (standard pattern) from the dialog box.
4. Specify the number of points in Points/Step in which you want to represent one step of the standard pattern.

   You may specify a value from 1 to 100 by using the general purpose knob or numeric buttons.

5. Specify bit width in the Data Range From and Data Range To.

   These two parameters specify the counter bit width and the position in the data. The markers are also available.

6. Push the **OK** side button.

Importing Data From Files

You can import pattern data from a file on the floppy drive, hard disk, or the network, to any location in the current pattern edit window. The data is inserted starting at the active cursor position. Importing data results in an increase in the record length (number of points) of the pattern.

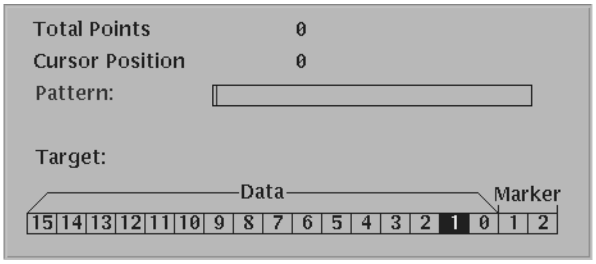
Do the following steps to import pattern data from a file:

1. Move the cursor to the position to which you want to move the data.
2. Push **File** (bottom)→**Insert from File...** (pop-up)→ **ENTER** (front).
3. Select the file from the Select File dialog box.
4. Push the **OK** side button.

Set Pattern...

This command generates a binary pattern (0 and 1 values) for the cursor-to-cursor waveform data or markers. You have two options of generating this pattern: you can enter the new data using the numeric buttons or keyboard, or you can import the pattern from the current edit area between the cursors. For the target of operation, you can specify the data or markers with Target, which is displayed in the dialog box independently of the scope.

Set Pattern dialog box. Figure 3–21 shows the Set Pattern dialog box that lets you set a pattern.



Total Points 0

Cursor Position 0

Pattern:

Target:

Figure 3–21: Set Pattern dialog box

Table 3–28: Set Pattern dialog box parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Total Points	Shows that the number of points of a pattern defined in the [Pattern] field. This value cannot be modified using numeric buttons.
Cursor Position	Shows that the cursor position in the [Pattern] field is displayed. This value cannot be modified using numeric buttons.
Use Code Table	Specifies whether to use the code translation table.
Pattern	Specifies the pattern field value. Enter the value using the ‘0’ or ‘1’ numeric button. Push the Import Pattern side button to set the cursor-to-cursor data corresponding to the section specified in Target.
Target	Specifies the location in which the generated data is created. If you specify Data, the ‘01’ pattern will be generated in the pattern section. The pattern imported with the Import Pattern side menu is from the Target specified in this field.

Operations in the dialog box are as follows:

- Use the ⬆ or ⬇ button to move the selection to move up or down.
- Use the general purpose knob or the ⬅ or ➡ button to move the selection cursor left or right.
- The pattern between the cursor lines you specified in Target is imported by pushing the Import Pattern side button.
- Push the **Clear Pattern** side button to cause the pattern field value to clear to NULL.
- Push the **OK** side button to cause the pattern in the Pattern field to be generated between the Target cursors. If this pattern is shorter than the cursor-to-cursor interval, continue pushing the **OK** side button until it is filled. If the pattern is longer than the interval, use part of the pattern to fill this interval.

Do the following steps to set a pattern:

1. Move the cursors to specify the area in which you want to generate a pattern.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Set Pattern...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).

   The Set Pattern dialog box appears.
3. Specify the location where the pattern is created.

   You can do this from Data, Marker1, or Marker2 in the Target.
4. Push the **Import Pattern** side button to import the cursor-to-cursor data.

If necessary, you can change the pattern value by moving the cursor with the ◀ or ▶ button and then using numeric keys and the ← key.

5. Push the **OK** side button to generate the Pattern field pattern between the cursors in the area specified in Target.

   A pattern is generated in the cursor-to-cursor area you specified in **Target**.

Numeric Input...

The Numeric Input... command enables you to set the pattern data located in the current active cursor position by using the numeric buttons. The marker values can also be set.

1. Move the cursor to the point where you want to set a value.
2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Numeric Input...** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
3. The current values are displayed in the Data, Marker1, and Marker2 side menus. In this condition, you can change the position setting by moving the cursor.
4. Push the **Data** side button, then set the pattern data value using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.
5. Push the the **Marker1** or **Marker2** to toggle between the marker values.

***NOTE**. The value modified through the side menu are immediately reflected in the data. Push **Undo!** to cause the value to return to the previous value.*

Quick Editing

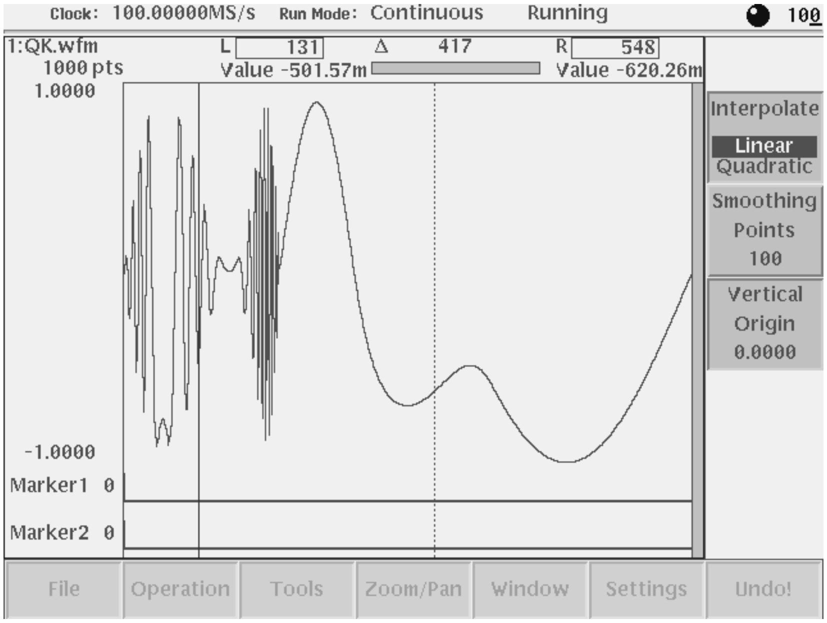
Quick edit allows you to modify and output the currently edited waveform (with the waveform editor) in real time by using the knobs on the front-panel. The Quick Edit enables you to scale or shift the cursor-to-cursor data on the Waveform editor screen along the vertical and/or horizontal axis. Use the vertical scale, vertical offset, horizontal scale, and horizontal offset front-panel knobs.

If the Update Mode is set to Auto with the waveform editor, waveform modifications using the knobs are automatically updated to the waveform file and to the output waveform.

***NOTE**. You can enter into the quick edit mode only from the waveform editor.*

Screen Display

Open a target waveform with the waveform editor, and then push the **QUICK EDIT** button on the front-panel. The screen is the same as that of the waveform editor in graphic mode except for the bottom and side buttons. A bottom button is not available, and only three side buttons can be used for adjusting the editing parameters. See Figure 3–22 for an example of the quick edit screen.



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Running

1:QK.wfm
1000 pts

L 131 Δ 417 R 548

Value -501.57m Value -620.26m

Interpolate: Linear

Smoothing Points 100

Vertical Origin 0.0000

Figure 3–22: A waveform example under quick editing

Quick Edit Mode

Using the Quick Edit mode enables the following:

- Operating four knobs of VERTICAL SCALE, VERTICAL OFFSET, HORIZONTAL SCALE, and HORIZONTAL OFFSET.
- Setting parameters in the Quick Edit screen
- Moving the cursors using the general purpose knob or numeric keys
- Operations not requiring menu changes (pressing a button such as RUN, OUTPUT, or HARDCOPY)
- Updating the contents of the edit buffer

Quick Edit Mechanism

When you enter into the quick edit mode, the instrument copies the data that is in the edit buffer and places it into the undo buffer. All the changes you make immediately reflect to the data in the edit buffer (and also to the data in the waveform memory if that data is being loaded to output).

When you cancel the changes and quit the quick editor, the instrument copies the data in the undo buffer back to the edit buffer (and also to the waveform memory if the data is being loaded), and then terminate the quick editor.

About Smoothing

Quick Edit performs expand, shrink, or shift the cursor-to-cursor data. Consequently, if nothing is processed, a gap may be produced between the changed and unchanged portions. To link the entire data smoothly, smoothing is performed.

Cursor-to-cursor points move in response to turning the general purpose knob. Also for the unchanged portions, the smoothing moves the positions so that the entire data is linked smoothly. This occurs throughout the range specified with the Smoothing Points side menu. The amount of shift is calculated internally to enable a smooth link and to minimize the effect on the unchanged portions. The calculation uses a cubic polynomial for the horizontal amount and sine for the vertical amount.

The value of the points mentioned above are usually nonintegers. That is, the resulting horizontal coordinates of the points are not integers. The values at the coordinates (integers) on the horizontal axis of the waveform data are sequentially obtained using the interpolation you specified with the Interpolate side menu.

Quick Controls

To enable the Quick Edit mode, press the QUICK EDIT front-panel button, as shown in Figure 3–23.

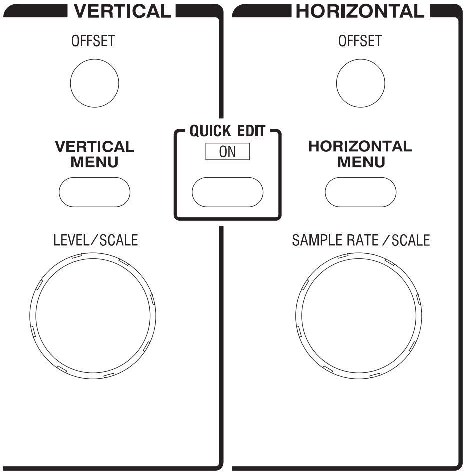


Figure 3–23: Controls for quick editing

VERTICAL SCALE Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is scaled vertically with the Vertical Origin side menu as the center. You may set a three-digit value (0.1 to 10.0) for the scaling factor. Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with the value set in the Smoothing Points side menu, with the appropriate cursor position as the center.

VERTICAL OFFSET Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is shifted vertically. The amount of shift can be set in 0.00001 increments in the –1.0 to 1.0 range. Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with the Smoothing Points side menu, with the appropriate cursor position as the center.

HORIZONTAL SCALE Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is scaled horizontally with the midpoint of the data as the center. You may set a three-digit value (0.1 to 10.0) for the scaling factor. Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with the Smoothing Points side menu, with the end point of the scaled data as the center.

HORIZONTAL OFFSET Knob

The cursor-to-cursor data is shifted horizontally. The amount of shift can be set with a five-digit value from –1000.0 to 1000.0 (0.001 point resolution). Smoothing should be done for the area you specified with the Smoothing Points side menu, with the end point of the scaled data as the center.

Starting Quick Edit

Quick Edit works for the cursor-to-cursor waveform data you placed in the edit mode in the Waveform editor.

Follow the steps below to start Quick Edit.

1. Start the Waveform editor to display the target waveform.
2. Specify the modification area using the cursors.
3. Press the **QUICK EDIT** button on the front-panel.

The QUICK EDIT LED stays on while you are in the Quick Edit mode.

You must load the target waveform into the waveform memory to observe changes while outputting the waveform.

Follow the steps below to load and output the target waveform:

1. Select **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load** (side).
2. Set the output parameters on the side menu screen to output the waveform.
3. Place the loaded waveform in the edit mode.

   Specify the modification area using the cursors.
4. Press the **OK EDIT** button on the front-panel to execute Quick Edit.

***NOTE**. When a waveform is loaded in the waveform memory, the changes made in the Quick editor cannot reflect to the output. To reflect the changes to the output, be sure to load the target waveform in the SETUP menu, enter into the editor, and then enter into the Quick Editor.*

Exiting Quick Edit

When exiting Quick Edit, you can select whether or not to save the waveform changes.

1. Press the **QUICK EDIT** button on the front panel.
2. Before Quick edit is exited, you are asked if you want to fix the current changes.
3. Select the **Yes**, **No**, or **Cancel** side menu.

Setting Parameters

Interpolating Method

When changes are made to the waveform by turning a knob, the values of the shifted points are calculated by interpolation. You can select either Linear or Quadratic for the interpolating method.

Press the **Interpolation** side button to toggle between Linear or Quadratic.

Range of Smoothing

When changes are made to the waveform by turning a knob, the shifted points and the points in the nonshifted area are linked smoothly. This is called smoothing. This parameter specifies the extent (of the nonshifted points) to which smoothing applies. The value may be 0 to 1000.

1. Press the **Smoothing** side button.
2. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys for value.

Position of Center of Vertical Extent

This specifies the center used for vertical scaling. The value may be –1.0 to 1.0.

1. Press the **Vertical Origin** side button.
2. Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to change the value.

Moving the Cursor

During execution of Quick Edit, you can change the target area for editing, by moving the cursors. When you use one of the four VERTICAL/HORIZONTAL knobs; the general purpose knob and the numeric keys remain assigned to change the value. To move a cursor, press the TOGGLE button on the front-panel before operating the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

Follow the steps below to move the cursor:

1. Press the **TOGGLE** button on the front-panel to assign the general purpose knob to cursor movement.
2. Set the cursor position using the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

Renewing Edit Buffer

During execution of Quick Edit, you can combine the four VERTICAL and HORIZONTAL knobs and the general purpose knob for the operation purpose. Each time you operate any of the knobs, the following internal calculation is made to renew the waveform data:

- The cursor-to-cursor data is defined as the object of calculation with respect to the waveform that was obtained when you start Quick Edit.
- Using the current Vertical Scale, Vertical Offset, Horizontal Scale, and Horizontal Offset values, the calculation is made in this order with respect to the cursor-to-cursor data.
- Smoothing is executed.

About Undo

The undo buffer is used for waveform backup, so the Quick Editor does not support the Undo! function. Before exiting Quick Edit, you are asking whether to reflect the changes to the waveform. To cancel the changes, select **No**.

The Table Editor

Editing in the graphic display lets you see the shape of the waveform you are editing. However, changing data values in the graphical edit mode is a difficult task. The Table Editor lets you quickly enter or edit data values by using a table display format.

Opening The Table Editor

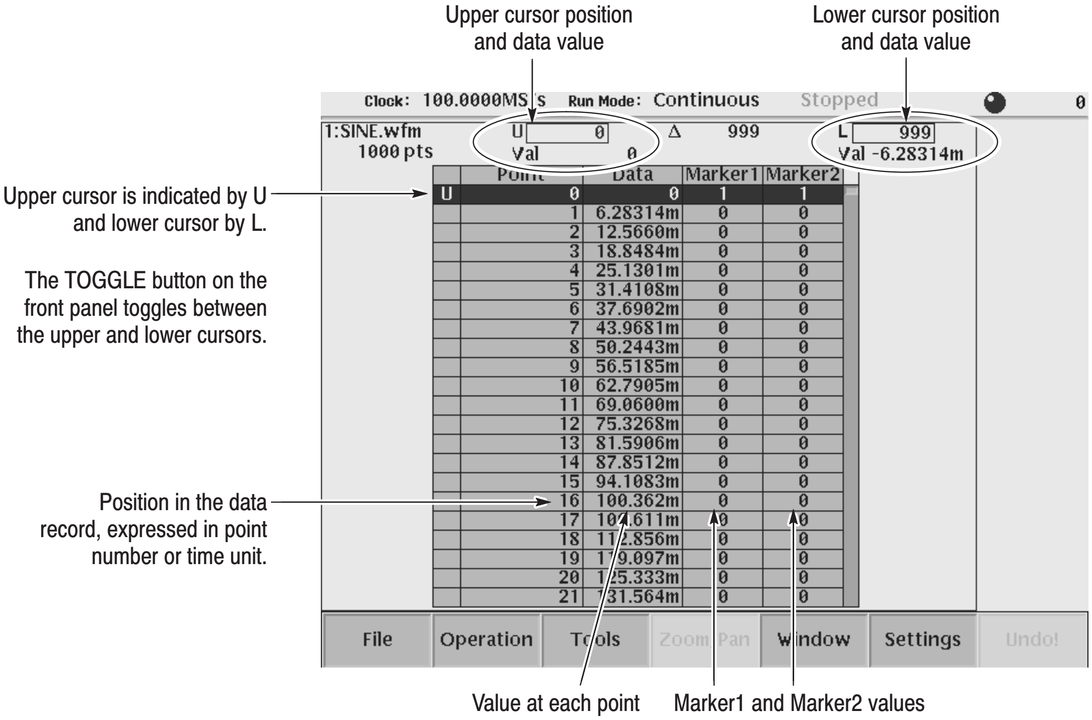
By default, the Waveform and Pattern editors open in the graphic display mode. (The assumption is made that you have already opened a waveform or pattern file.)

Do the following steps to switch to the Table Editor:

1. Push the **Settings** bottom button to display the Setting dialog box.
2. Select **Table** in the View field.
3. Push the **OK** side button.

   The instrument opens the Table Editor, as shown in Figure 3–24.

Follow the procedure above to return to the graphic display mode. Select **Graphic**, instead of Table, in step 2.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0

1:SINE.wfm
1000 pts

U 0
Val 0

Δ 999

L 999
Val -6.28314m

	Point	Data	Marker1	Marker2
U	0	0	1	1
	1	6.28314m	0	0
	2	12.5660m	0	0
	3	18.8484m	0	0
	4	25.1301m	0	0
	5	31.4108m	0	0
	6	37.6902m	0	0
	7	43.9681m	0	0
	8	50.2443m	0	0
	9	56.5185m	0	0
	10	62.7905m	0	0
	11	69.0600m	0	0
	12	75.3268m	0	0
	13	81.5906m	0	0
	14	87.8512m	0	0
	15	94.1083m	0	0
	16	100.362m	0	0
	17	10[illegible].611m	0	0
	18	112.856m	0	0
	19	119.097m	0	0
	20	125.333m	0	0
	21	[illegible]31.564m	0	0

Figure 3–24: Table Editor window

Editing The Table Data

The Numeric Input... command in the Operation bottom menu lets you edit waveform and marker data in the Table Editor. Do the following steps to edit the waveform or the marker data in the table:

1. Use the general purpose knob or cursor fields to move the active cursor to the data point that you want to edit.

   The active data point is the highlighted row in the table.

2. Push **Operation** (bottom)→**Numeric Input...** (pop-up).
3. To edit waveform data, push the **Data** side button and change or enter the data value using the general purpose knob, keyboard, or keypad buttons.
4. To edit the marker data, push the **Marker 1** or **Marker 2** side button to toggle between High and Low.

The data in table display mode is the same data that is displayed in the graphic editors. You can use all applicable bottom menu commands, except for the Zoom/Pan commands, to manipulate data in the Table Editor mode.

***NOTE**. Remember that you need to define the edit area (data points located between the cursors) before executing the Operation commands.*

To look at the waveform area outside the current display area, scroll the display using the general purpose knob or the ⬆ and ⬇ buttons. If the data to view is more than 50 data points away from the current cursor location, it is faster to use the numeric keypad to enter the new cursor value in the Cursor Position field.

Pushing the **TOGGLE** front-panel button switches the table contents to show the data values at the other cursor. When toggling between the cursors, the Table Editor displays the Upper cursor at the top of the table and the Lower cursor at the bottom of the table.

The Equation Editor

The Equation editor is an ASCII text editor that includes menus and commands for writing waveform equation files using the Waveform Programming Language (WPL). You can use WPL to generate a waveform from a mathematical function, perform calculations between two or more waveform files, and use loop and conditional branch commands to define waveform values.

The WPL duplicates almost all of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator Waveform and Pattern editor functions. However, you cannot perform sequential data processing on a point-by-point basis. Instead, the Equation editor has functions for performing calculations between two or more waveform files that affect all the points in a waveform.

By default, all Equation editor files are saved to a specified filename and have the suffix *.txt*. However, in this manual all equation file names use the suffix *.equ* to differentiate them from nonequation-content text files. To output an equation waveform you must compile the equation file into a waveform file.

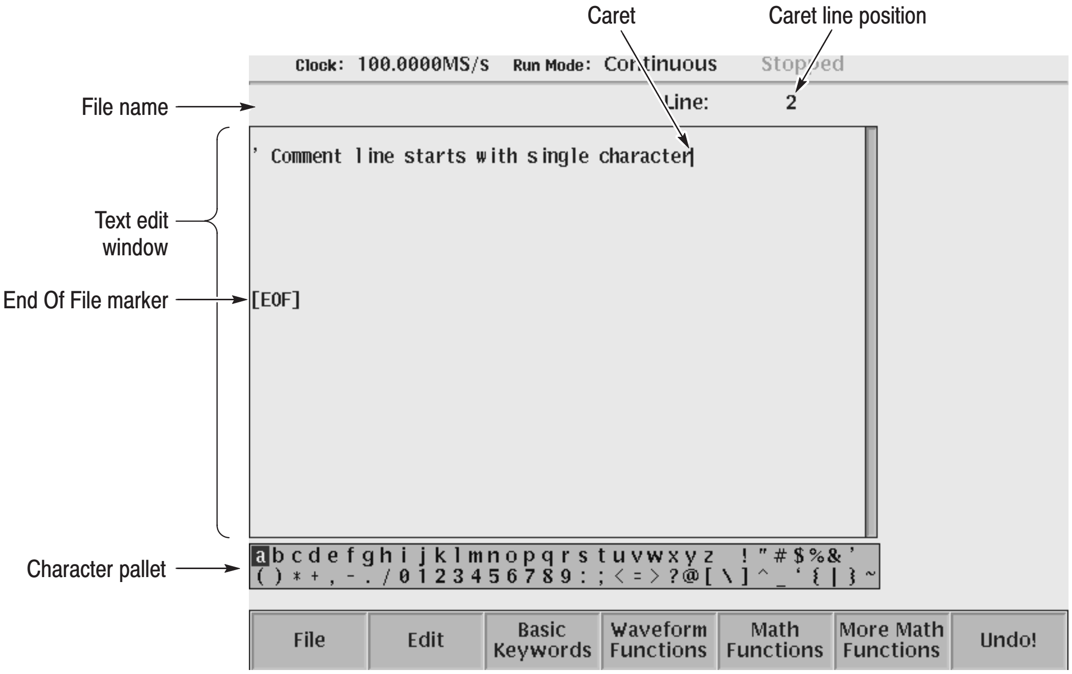
NOTE. *It is highly recommended that you install a PC-style keyboard if you intend to use the Equation editor. It is much easier to enter and edit text from a keyboard then to use the front-panel controls to edit a file.*

In this manual, all equation file names use an .equ suffix to differentiate them from nonequation-content text files.

You can use the Equation editor to create and load text-only files, such as readme or other text files. However, the focus of this section is to describe how to use the Equation editor to create waveform equations.

Starting the Equation Editor

To start the Equation editor, push **EDIT** (front)→**Edit** (bottom)→**New Equation** (side). You can also automatically start the Equation editor by loading an equation file from the EDIT menu file list. Figure 3–25 shows the Equation editor screen. Table 3–29 describes the editor screen elements that are specific to the Equation editor. Table 3–30 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–30 describe the menu operations in detail.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Line: 2

' Comment line starts with single character

[EOF]

Figure 3-25: Equation editor window

Table 3-29: Equation editor screen elements

Element	Description
File name	The file name to which the equation or text is written, or the name of the file being edited. The instrument appends the default *.txt* suffix to all Equation editor files. If this is a new file, you are prompted to enter a file name before exiting the editor. It is suggested that you use the *.equ* suffix to identify equation files.
Caret line position	The line number in the file where the caret is located. The file starts at line 1.
End Of File marker	Indicates the end of the file. All equations or text must be entered before this marker.
Character pallet	Used with the general purpose control knob to enter alphanumeric characters into the edit window. To enter a character at the caret position, highlight a character and push the ENTER button.
Text edit window	Area where you enter text and/or equation information. The maximum length of a character string is 256 characters, including spaces. You can concatenate character string by entering a colon character (:) at the end of a string. The maximum number of the total string characters in one equation file is 5000.

Table 3–30: Equation editor bottom menu

Button	Description
File	Provides side-menu commands for closing the editor, saving text to the current file or a new file, and compiling an equation file into a waveform file. Refer to page 2–18 for information on relevant file management tasks.
Edit	Provides side-menu commands for text edit functions to cut, copy, paste, select, and insert text.
Basic Keywords	Provides a pop-up menu of WPL basic keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section beginning on page 3–207.
Waveform Functions	Provides a pop-up menu of WPL waveform operation keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
Math Functions	Provides a pop-up menu of WPL math operation keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
More Math Functions	Provides a pop-up menu of more WPL math operation keywords. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section.
Undo!	Reverses a character or string cut or paste operation to the previous state. This is a one-level undo function.

Using the Equation Editor

The text display area and character palette are shown on the display. Input characters or strings (such as keywords) using bottom buttons. Use the general purpose knob and the ◀, ▶, ▼, and ▲ buttons to input characters.

Front-Panel Edit Controls

Table 3–31 describes the front-panel buttons, keys and knob to use for entering and editing text.

***NOTE**. It is highly recommended that you install a standard PC-style keyboard if you intend to use the Equation editor. It is much easier to enter and edit text from a keyboard than to use the instrument front-panel controls.*

Table 3–31: Front-panel Equation editor controls

Control	Description
◀ and ▶ button	Moves the caret horizontally in the edit area. Hold down an arrow key to continue moving the caret in the specified direction.
▲ and ▼ button	Moves the caret vertically in the edit area. Hold down an arrow key to continue moving the caret in the specified direction.
General purpose knob	Selects a character in the Character Palette.
ENTER button ↵	Inserts the highlighted character in the Character Palette at the caret location.
← Key	Deletes the character that is to the left of the caret in the edit area.
SHIFT Button	Toggles between the uppercase and lowercase character modes in the Character Palette.

Do the following steps to insert a character:

1. Use the general purpose knob to select the character from the character palette.
2. Press the **ENTER** key.

   The character is inserted at the current caret position.
3. Use the arrow keys to move the caret in the edit area.

Carriage return input. You cannot use the ENTER button or the ↵ Key because they are assigned to select characters. Push **EDIT** (main) → **Insert ↵** (side) to enter carriage return.

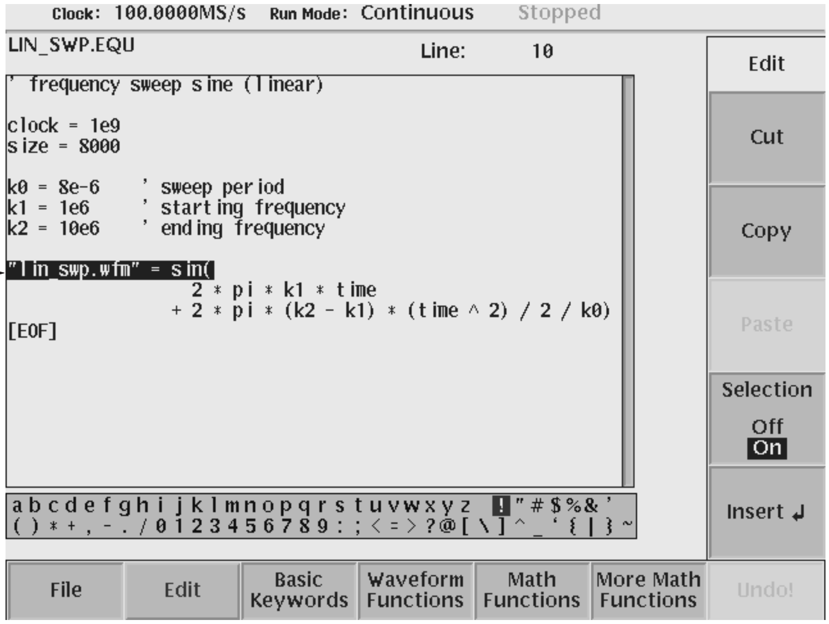
Selecting Text

You must select text before doing copy or cut operations. Do the following steps to select text:

1. Move the caret to the start of your text to select.
2. Push **Edit** (bottom)→**Selection** (side) menu.

3. Push the ◀ or ▶ buttons to select text. See Figure 3–26. The selected text is highlighted. You can now cut or copy the selected text to the paste buffer.

***NOTE**. You can also use the TOGGLE button to toggle the text selection mode to on and off.*



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LIN_SWP.EQU Line: 10

```
' frequency sweep sine (linear)

clock = 1e9
size = 8000

k0 = 8e-6    ' sweep period
k1 = 1e6     ' starting frequency
k2 = 10e6    ' ending frequency

"lin_swp.wfm" = sin(
                  2 * pi * k1 * time
                + 2 * pi * (k2 - k1) * (time ^ 2) / 2 / k0)
[EOF]
```

Highlight area is the one currently selected. You can cut or copy this area.

Figure 3–26: Text selection (example)

Cutting, Copying, and Pasting Text

The Paste command inserts the paste buffer text starting at the caret position. You must have copied or cut text prior to using the Paste command.

Do the following steps to cut or copy text from the edit area:

1. Select the text to cut or copy. Refer to *Selecting Text* on page 3–110.
2. Push the **Cut** side button to delete the selected text from the edit area and place it in the paste buffer from the selection range.
3. Push the **Copy** side button to copy the selected text from the edit area and place it in the paste buffer.

The text is unselected after completing the copy operation.

Do the following steps to paste text into the edit area:

1. Move the caret to where you want to insert the paste buffer text.
2. Push the **Paste** side button. The string in the paste buffer is inserted at the caret position.

Using an External Keyboard

You can connect a 101- or 106- keyboard to the rear panel. You can use the keyboard to enter the same characters shown in the Character Palette. Use the Shift key to enter uppercase characters. Table 3–32 describes the editor operations available from the keyboard.

Table 3–32: Control keys from the external keyboard

Keyboard key	Description
Character and numeric keys	Characters found in the character palette can be input from the corresponding keys on the keyboard.
Arrow keys	Moves the caret horizontally or vertically.
Back Space	Deletes the character that is to the left of the caret.
Delete	Deletes the character that is to the right of the caret.
Return	Inserts an End Of Line character at the caret position.
Ctrl-C	Copies selected text to the paste buffer.
Ctrl-X	Cuts selected text to the paste buffer.
Ctrl-V	Pastes the contents of the paste buffer at the caret location.
Ctrl-Z	Reverses the last character, cut, or paste operation to the previous state.
Ctrl-S	Toggles the selection on and off.

Entering Keywords and Functions

The Equation editor has built-in keywords and functions to make creating equations an easier task. These commands insert correctly-formatted keywords or functions into the text file at the current caret position. Inserted keywords are treated as ordinary text if you need to edit them. The keywords are described in the *Waveform Programming Language* section starting on page 3–207.

Do the following steps to insert a keyword or function:

1. Move the caret to the position you want to insert the keyword or function.
2. Push the **Basic Keywords**, **Waveform Functions**, **Math Functions**, or **More Math Functions** bottom button. A pop-up menu appears.

3. Select the keyword to insert from the pop-up menu.
4. Press the **OK** side button. The keyword is inserted at the caret position.

Compiling Equations

The instrument cannot directly output an equation waveform. You must compile the equation into a standard waveform file. You then load and output this waveform file the same as any other waveform file. You can compile an equation file from either the Equation editor or the main EDIT menu.

The syntax checker runs after you initiate the compile command. The error line number is displayed if a syntax error is found.

Compiling from the Equation Editor

Do the following steps to compile an equation from the Equation editor:

1. Push **File** (bottom)→**Compile** (side).

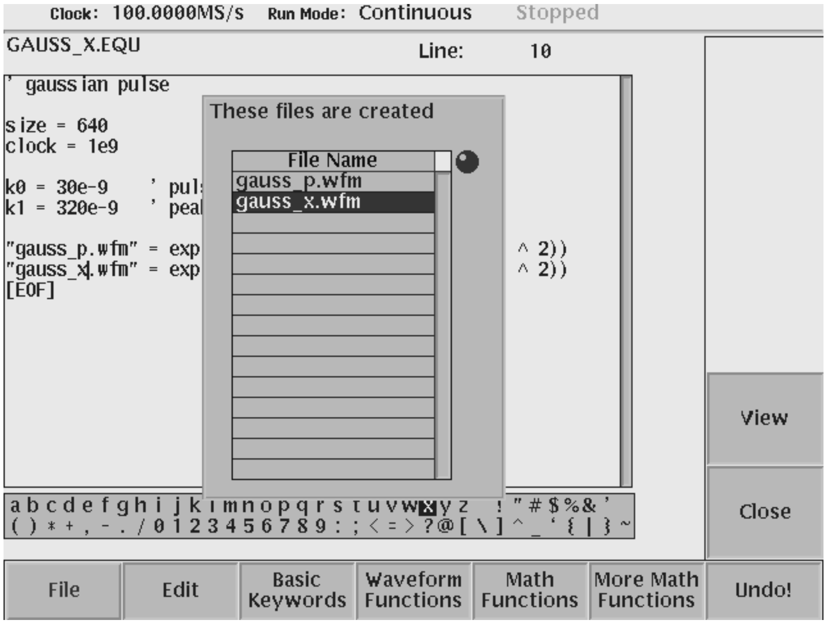
   The instrument checks the equations for syntax errors. If the equation file contains syntax errors, the instrument displays the line number it thinks contains the syntax error. Push the **OK** side button to return to the editor and correct the equation(s).

   If the equations contain no syntax errors, the instrument compiles the equations and saves them to a waveform file. The instrument then displays the names of the new waveform file. By default, the instrument uses the equation file name with a *.wfm* suffix.

2. Select the compiled waveform in the list, and push the **View** side button.

   The instrument displays the waveform in the waveform view window.

3. Push the **Close** side button to return to the editor screen.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

GAUSS_X.EQU Line: 10

```
' gaussian pulse

size = 640
clock = 1e9

k0 = 30e-9    ' pul
k1 = 320e-9   ' peal

"gauss_p.wfm" = exp                    ^ 2))
"gauss_x.wfm" = exp                    ^ 2))
[EOF]
```

These files are created

File Name
gauss_p.wfm
gauss_x.wfm

Figure 3-27: File list listing two waveforms created

Compiling from the EDIT Menu

Do the following steps to compile an equation from the main EDIT screen:

1. Push the **EDIT** button once or twice to display the EDIT file listing screen.
2. Select an equation file from the file list.
3. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Compile Equation** (side).

   The instrument checks the equations for syntax errors. If the equation file contains syntax errors, the instrument displays the line number it thinks contains the syntax error. Push the **OK** side button to clear the error message. You must then open the equation file in the Equation editor to fix the error.

   If the equations contain no syntax errors, the instrument compiles the equations and saves them to a waveform file. By default, the instrument uses the current equation file name with a *.wfm* suffix.

4. Select the compiled waveform in the list, and push the **Edit** side button.

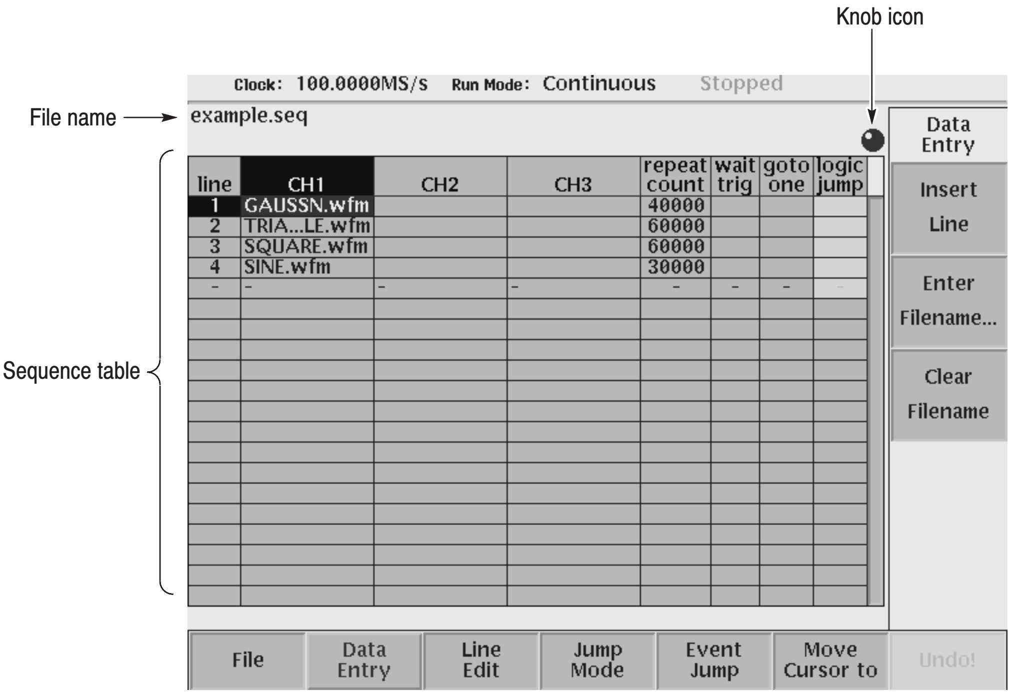
The instrument displays the waveform in the Waveform editor window.

The Sequence Editor

The Sequence editor is used to create a sequence file. A sequence file is simply a list of waveform file names that the instrument will output. Additional parameters like repeat count, event triggering, and conditional jumps allow you to generate very large and complex output waveforms. You can also specify another sequence file as an output file. This section describes the features of the Sequence editor. *Tutorial 6: Creating and Running Waveform Sequences* on page 2–78 provides detailed instructions for creating sequence files.

Starting the Sequence Editor

To start the Sequence editor, push **EDIT** (front)→**Edit** (bottom)→**New Sequence** (side). You can also automatically start the Sequence editor by loading a *.seq* file from the EDIT menu file list. Figure 3–28 shows the Sequence editor screen with an example sequence list. Table 3–33 describes each column of the sequence table, with more information and procedures on page 3–120. Table 3–34 describes the bottom menu functions. The sections that follow Table 3–34 describe the menu operations in detail.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

example.seq

line	CH1	CH2	CH3	repeat count	wait trig	goto one	logic jump
1	GAUSSN.wfm			40000			
2	TRIA...LE.wfm			60000			
3	SQUARE.wfm			60000			
4	SINE.wfm			30000			
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Figure 3–28: Sequence editor screen with example sequence list

Table 3–33: Sequence table columns

Column	Description
Sequence file name	Remains blank if you have not saved the sequence once after opening a new file.
line	Sequence line number. It is assigned automatically here as a result of the addition or deletion of a line.
CH1 , CH2, CH3	Specifies the waveform, pattern or sequence file to output on CH1, CH2, and CH3 for that line of the sequence table. A sequence file may be specified for an output file. You can only nest sequence files one level. The waveform file name cannot contain a drive or directory name. The sequence file and all waveform files called must be accessible at the same directory level. If the waveform file name fields for CH1 is blank on a sequence line, or the instrument cannot locate a specified file, the instrument displays an error message and aborts loading the sequence file. Remember that file names are case insensitive. The data length of each waveform file used for the sequence process must be 64 points to 4 M (16M with Option 01) points. For sequence output, the total of data length of the waveforms must not exceed 4 M points.
repeat count	Specifies the number of repeats. You may specify any integer from 1 to 65536, or select the keyword Infinity. The Infinity setting is neglected in a nested sequence file (subsequence).
wait trig	Causes the instrument to wait for a trigger event before outputting the waveform(s) on the specified sequence table line. Valid values are On and Off (blank). Wait Trigger functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. This setting is neglected in the subsequence.
goto one	Specifies whether control jumps to the head of the sequence table after outputting. Valid values are On or Off (blank). Goto One functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. This setting is neglected in the subsequence. Note that, for the last line of the sequence table, this setting is always ON independently of the setting.
logic jump	Specifies the sequence table to jump to a specified line depending on signal values on the EVENT IN connector. You may specify Next (go to the next line) or Off (blank) as well as specify the sequence line number for the destination. Selecting Off means that the line that is currently being edited is set as a jump address. For example, when an event occurs during the output of the waveform set in the line 5 with jump off, the waveform in the line 5 is output again from the top. This field remains gray if the Jump Mode is set to Table or Software. This setting is neglected in the subsequence or when the jump mode is set to Software.

NOTE*. Infinity setting in Repeat Count and all settings in Wait Trigger, Goto One and Logic Jump are neglected in the subsequence.*

NOTE*. The AWG400–Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator saves memory by saving waveforms that are output when using the sequence editor, if the waveforms that are output from the instrument are identical. However, the subsequence set to multiple repeat count is expanded into the sequence memory, so you need to be careful about the waveform data length. Refer to Limitation on Using Sequences on page 3–126 .*

If you use multiple waveforms, the instrument may not output waveform even thought the number of points are within the 4M (4 050 000) or 16M(16 200 000, option 01). This is because the waveform memory is comprised of internal 64 points segments. Also refer to Note on page 2–32.

Table 3–34: Sequence editor bottom menu

Button	Description
File	Provides side-menu commands for closing the editor, saving the sequence table to the current file name, and saving the sequence data to a new file name.
Data Entry	Provides side-menu commands for inserting a new line in the table as well as entering and editing data in the sequence table columns.
Line Edit	Provides side-menu commands to cut, copy, and paste table lines.
Jump Mode	Provides side-menu commands to select jump mode.
Event Jump	Provides side-menu commands and a new screen for entering event jumps into the sequence table.
Move Cursor To	Provides a pop-up dialog box to specify table line number to select for editing.

Sequence Table Editing

This section describes the sequence table edit operations.

Sequence table editing is based on selecting a cell in the table and editing or setting parameters in that cell.

Cursor Movement

The cursor moves on a cell-by-cell basis. The following text describes how to move the cursor. The instrument highlights the active cell.

- Move the cursor up or down a line by using the general purpose knob, the ↑ and ↓ buttons, or the keyboard keys.
- Move the cursor horizontally along a line by using the ← and → buttons or the keyboard keys.
- You can also move the cursor by entering numeric values. This is convenient, for example, when a long sequence results, because more rapid cursor movement is implemented.

  Push the **Move Cursor to** bottom button to display the Move Cursor to the dialog box. Input the destination line number in the dialog box, and then push the **OK** side button.
- When you set the value in the Repeat Count, the ← and → buttons are assigned to shift the numeric values. To move the cursor horizontally, push the TOGGLE or CLEAR MENU on the front-panel. Use the ← and → button to move the cursor.
- The side menu corresponding to the Data Entry bottom button varies with the parameter value in the cursor position.

Inserting a Line

When you first open a new sequence table, a table containing 0 lines is created. You must insert new lines into the table before you can edit the contents. To insert new lines, use the Insert Line command as follows:

1. Move the cursor to the position that you want to insert a new line. If this is a new table, you are already at the place to insert a new line.
2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Insert Line** (side).

   A new line is created immediately above the line of the current cursor position.

If you insert a new line into a table that contains line jump numbers, the instrument automatically updates the table line numbers and the jump line numbers.

***NOTE**. The maximum number of lines in a sequence table is 8000.*

Cutting a Line

You can cut a selected line to the paste buffer. Do the following steps to cut a line:

1. Move the cursor to select the line that you want to delete.
2. Push **Line Edit** (bottom)→**Cut Line** (side).

   The instrument deletes the selected table line. You can use the Paste Line command to insert the cut line into a new position in the table.

***NOTE**. After cutting a line from the table, the table automatically updates all current and destination line numbers for jump operations. If you cut a line that was specified as a jump destination, the jump setting is set to Off (no jump). Reinserting the cut line will re-establish the jump connections.*

Copying a Line

You can copy a selected line to the paste buffer. Do the following steps to copy a line:

1. Move the cursor to the line you want to copy.
2. Push **Line Edit** (bottom)→**Copy Line** (side).

Pasting a Line

You can insert the paste buffer contents into the sequence table. Do the following steps to paste a line:

1. Move the cursor to the line you want to insert the paste buffer contents.
2. Push **Line Edit** (bottom)→**Paste Line** (side).

   The paste buffer contents are inserted at the selected table line. The contents of the line at the point of insertion, and all subsequent lines, are shifted down by one line.

***NOTE**. After pasting a new line in the table, the table automatically updates all current and destination line numbers for jump operations.*

Sequence Table Fields

Line

Indicates the line number of each row of the sequence table. The instrument automatically assigns line numbers as well as updates line numbers after editing the sequence table.

CH1, CH2, CH3

Specify the names of the waveform files that are output to the CH1, CH2 and CH3 cells. You can mix and match *waveform, pattern, and sequence* files on a single sequence line.

***NOTE**. Remember that you can only nest sequence files one level. Also, the sequence table cannot call itself as a subsequence.*

Select a file from the displayed file listing. You must not use a drive or directory name. All waveform files and the sequence file must be under the same directory.

You can also specify a sequence file. The sequence file has the waveform settings for three channels. You can specify that the same sequence file is to be used for all channels.

The CH1, CH2 and CH3 waveform files in the same line must be identical in number of points. For the CH2 and/or CH3 waveform, the field may be null. DC will be output in this case.

Do the following steps to enter a waveform, pattern, or sequence file name:

1. Move the cursor to **CH1, CH2, or CH3**.
2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Enter Filename...** (side).
3. The Select File dialog box appears.

   From the file listing, select the file to output.
4. Push the **OK** side button.

   The instrument inserts the file name into the sequence table.

To delete a specified waveform file, move the cursor to the desired file. Then push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Clear Filename...** (side).

Repeat Count

Specify the number of repeats used to cause repetitive output of a waveform on a line. This value may be 1 to 65536. In addition, Infinity may also be specified. When infinity is specified, control will no longer advance. Thus, it should usually be used together with Logic Jump or Table Jump. Do the following steps to enter a repeat count:

Do the following steps to set the repeat count value:

1. Move the cursor to the Repeat Count column.
2. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Repeat Count...** (side).
3. Specify a repeat count value using the general purpose or numeric keys.

Do the following steps if you specify Infinity.

1. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Infinity** (side) to toggle between **On** and **Off**.
2. Alternatively, push the **SHIFT** on the front-panel and then the **INF** numeric key in step 3. Specify the infinity count.

***NOTE**. The **Infinity** setting is neglected in the subsequence. The general purpose knob is assigned to shift the numeric values when Repeat Count has been set. Push **TOGGLE** or **CLEAR MENU** on the front panel to exit the setting mode.*

Wait Trigger

The Wait Trigger column lets you set the instrument to wait for a trigger event before outputting a waveform on the specified sequence table line. Either the Internal or External trigger source will be used, depending on which is selected in the SETUP menu. Valid values are On and Off (blank). Wait Trigger functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. Note that this setting is neglected in the subsequence.

The instrument processes sequence table entries until it encounters a Wait Trigger set to ON. If the instrument Run Mode is set to Triggered or Enhanced, the instrument then stops output until it receives a trigger. When the instrument receives a trigger, it outputs the waveform on the sequence table line that contains the Wait Trigger, then continues to process the sequence table lines.

Do the following steps to set the Wait Trigger value:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Wait Trigger value.
2. Move the cursor to the wait trigger column.
3. Push **Data Entry** (bottom).
4. Push **Wait Trig.** (side) to toggle between On and Off. The Off state is a blank in the column.
5. Push the **CLEAR MENU** on the front panel to exit the setting mode.

Goto One

The Goto One column lets you set an unconditional jump to the first line of the sequence table (go to line one). Valid values are On and Off (blank). Goto One functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. Note that this parameter is ignored if it is set in a subsequence file.

The instrument processes sequence table entries until it encounters a Goto One. If the instrument Run Mode is set to Enhanced, the instrument jumps to line one of the table, then continues to process the sequence table lines.

NOTE*. By default, the last line of a sequence table always jumps back to line one, unless you have set another jump destination.*

Do the following steps to set the Goto One value:

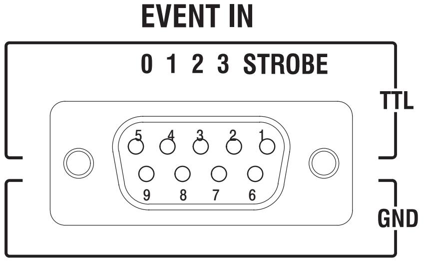
1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Goto One value.
2. Move the cursor to the goto one column.
3. Push **Data Entry** (bottom).
4. Push **Goto One** (side) to toggle between On and Off.

   The Off state is a blank in the column.
5. Push the **CLEAR MENU** on the front panel to exit the setting mode.

Logic Jump

The Logic Jump column specifies a conditional jump to a line in the sequence table. Conditional jumps move to a sequence line depending on the value of the TTL logic signals on the EVENT IN rear panel connector. The instrument uses event signals to trigger line jumps in the sequence table. Logic Jump functionality is only valid when the Run Mode is set to Enhanced. Note that this setting is neglected in the subsequence.

Figure 3–29 shows the standard 9-pin, D type EVENT IN connector that accepts TTL-level signals (0.0 V to 5.0 V (DC + Peak AC)). The external event input connector lines are pulled to a logic high level when nothing is connected to it.



Pin #	Signal	Direction
1	STROBE	INPUT
2	EVENT Bit 3	INPUT
3	EVENT Bit 2	INPUT
4	EVENT Bit1	INPUT
5	EVENT Bit 0	INPUT
6	GND	
7	GND	
8	GND	
9	GND	

Figure 3–29: EVENT IN connector

You can define two types of conditional jumps: a Logic Jump and a Table Jump. You can also specify whether the jump occurs synchronously or asynchronously, and whether to use an external strobe signal to sample the event values. These features are discussed in the following text.

Logic Jump. The Logic Jump lets you specify the signal values on all four EVENT IN lines for a single event that triggers the jump. You can specify high, low, or don't care values for each line.

Do the following steps to enter a logic jump line number:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Jump Logic value.
2. Move the cursor to logic jump column.
3. Push **Jump Mode** (bottom)→**Logic** (side) to select **Logic**.

   The Logic Jump graphic is highlighted.
4. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Jump to Next** (side) to specify a jump to the next line when the event conditions are true.
5. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Jump Off** (side) to clear the Jump Logic table cell. Note that the currently edited line is set as a jump destination in this case.
6. Push **Data Entry** (bottom)→**Jump to Specified Line** (side) and **Jump To** to indicate a jump to a specified line when the event conditions are true.

   Use the general purpose knob, front-panel keypad, or keyboard numeric keys to enter a line number.
7. Push **Jump Mode**. The instrument displays the Jump Mode screen.

   The Logic jump mode is still selected.
8. Use the general purpose knob, front-panel arrow keys, or keyboard keys to select the logic level for each of the four EVENT IN lines.

   X = don't care, L = low (false) logic level, and H = true (high logic level)

Table Jump. The Table Jump lets you specify a line jump for one or more of the 16 possible logic levels of the EVENT IN lines. Undefined (no line number entered) lines are ignored.

Do the following steps to enter values in the Table Jump table:

1. Move the cursor to the line in which to set the Jump Logic value.
2. Move the cursor to logic jump column.

3. Push **Jump Mode** (bottom)→**Table** (side).

   The Table Jump graphic is highlighted.

4. Push **Event Jump** bottom button.
5. Use the general purpose knob, the front panel arrow buttons or keyboard arrow keys to select an event logic value line in the table.
6. Push the **Table Jump** side button to **ON** to enable entering a jump line number.

   To clear a value, push the **Table Jump** side button to **Off**.

7. Push the **Jump To** side button and then use the general purpose knob, front-panel keypad, or keyboard numeric keys to enter a line number.
8. Repeat steps 5 through 7 to enter jump line numbers for other event table values.
9. Push the **CLEAR MENU** button on the front-panel to return to the sequence table display.

Timing. The Timing function controls when a jump occurs in the waveform output sequence. Selecting ASync causes the instrument to jump to the specified sequence table line as soon as an event goes true.

Selecting Sync causes the instrument to jump to the specified sequence table line after completing the output of the current waveform memory. For example, suppose that an event occurs during the second repeat count of a line on which the waveform is defined to be output three times. The jump occurs after completing the second output repetition and before starting the third output repetition.

To set the timing value in the Event Jump screen, push the **Timing** side menu button to toggle between Sync and ASync.

Strobe. You can set the instrument to enable or disable strobing in the EVENT IN signals. Event signals must be input to the EVENT IN connector on the rear panel when you run the sequence in Enhanced mode. You can input four event signals and one strobe signal in the connector.

When Strobe is set to Off, the instrument reads the event signals at the timing of every two internal clock cycles, and updates the event value if a state transition in the event signals are found.

When Strobe is set to On, the instrument reads the event signals when the strobe signal goes to low state (Enable), and updates the event value if a state transition in the event signals are found.

If you set the strobe signal to low state after all the event signals have finished the state transitions and have been in stable period, the instrument can read the event signal state without error. This prevents an incorrect action in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator sequence control. Figure 3–30 illustrates an signal timing example.

To enable or disable Strobe functionality in the Event Jump screen, push the **Strobe** side menu button to toggle between On and Off. The strobe setting is saved in the sequence file as an attribute, and used when the sequence is executed. You cannot change this setting while a sequence is being performed.

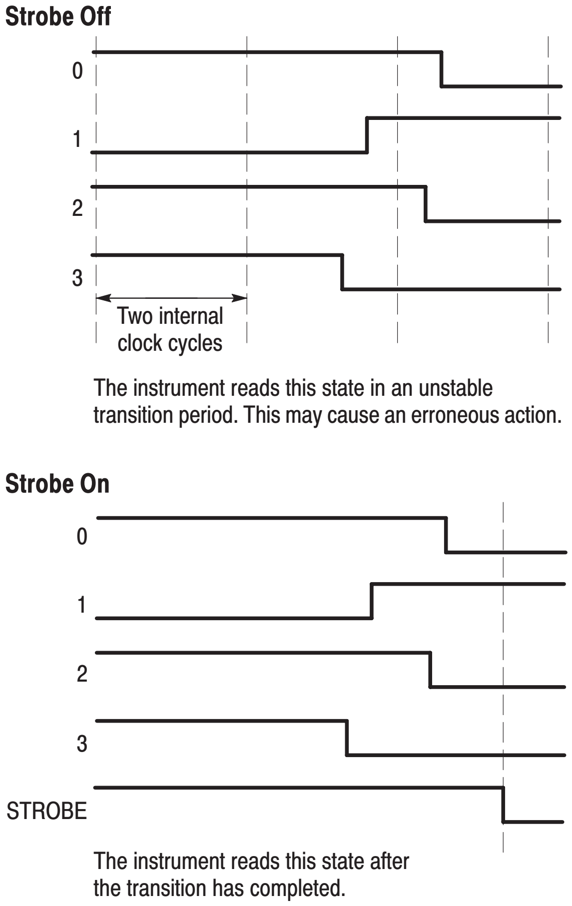


Figure 3–30: Event signal timing and strobe

Software Jump

Software jump can be performed only with the command using a GPIB or Ethernet interface. When you specify a line number as an argument in the command line, the control in the currently loaded sequence file will jump to the specified line.

To perform a software jump, the mode must be set in the loaded sequence file. This can be set in the sequence editor by pushing:

Jump Mode (bottom)→**Software** (side)

For more detail, refer to the description of the AWGControl:EVENt:SOFTware[:IMMediate] in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator Programmer Manual.

Limitations on Using Sequences

The sequence is processed by the instrument hardware. The nested sequence, however, is expanded into the sequence memory by the instrument firmware.

The sequence to be called from a sequence is called Subsequence, and the nested level is limited to 1. The number of sequence steps expanded in the sequence memory may go over the sequence memory capacity, depending on how you configure sequence and/or subsequence.

The enhanced settings which include, Infinity, Trigger Wait, Goto One, and Logic Jump are neglected in the subsequence when you set the run mode to Enhanced.

Sequence memory usage. Sequence memory controls the maximum number of subsequence calls and their repeat counts that can be run. When you load a sequence, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator compiles the sequence and subsequence lines into internal codes that are stored in the sequence memory. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator then uses the sequence memory code to output the waveform data. There is one internal code item for each sequence line except for lines that contain a subsequence call.

For subsequence calls without a repeat count, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator compiles a number of internal code items equal to the number of lines in the subsequence.

For subsequence calls with a repeat count, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator compiles a number of internal code items. These are equal to the repeat count for that subsequence call times the number of lines in the subsequence. For example, if a sequence line has a subsequence call with the repeat count of 25 and that subsequence has two lines, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator generates 50 internal code items for that sequence line and stores them in the sequence memory. This occurs for each subsequence call. Figure 3–31 illustrates how the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator compiles the sequence and subsequences into the internal codes and stores them in the sequence memory.

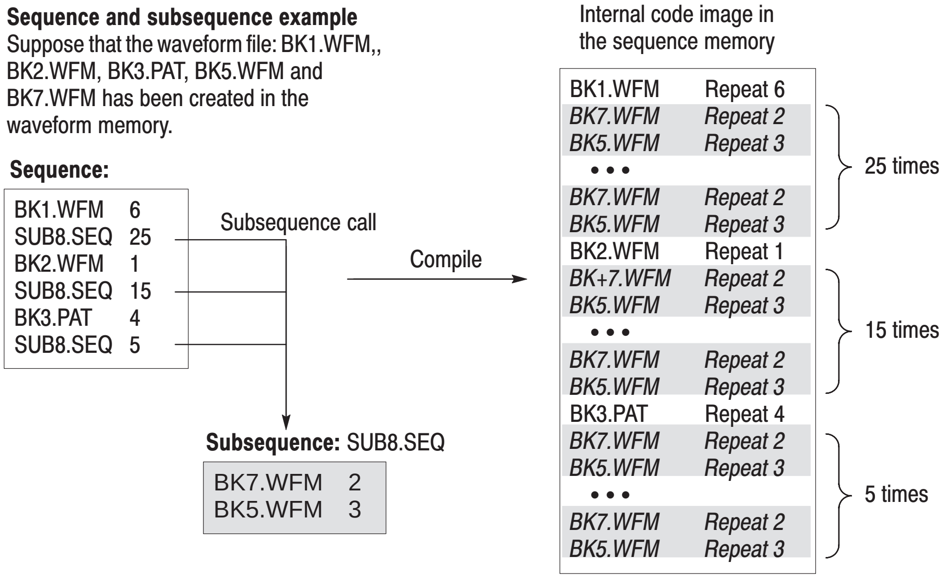


Figure 3–31: Compiling and storing sequences and subsequences

Defining subsequence calls with large repeat counts can generate internal code that consumes a large amount of sequence memory. This can result in insufficient memory errors. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator does not check for sequence memory availability errors. If you load a sequence and the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator displays a memory error message, you need to reduce the number of subsequence calls, the number of repeat counts, and/or the number of lines in the subsequences.

The APPL Menu

The following applications are in the APPL menu:

- Disk application
- Network application
- Jitter composer
- Digital Modulation

These applications are used like an editor to generate a waveform for specific purposes.

Disk Application

Using this application, you can easily create test signals for reading test signal data from the hard disk media.

Signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Convert the input pattern and estimate the positions of the generated pulse and polarity.
- Superpose an isolated pulse in the position estimated above. The pulses shift during superpose.

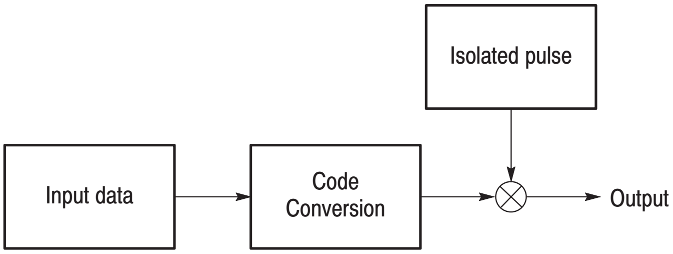
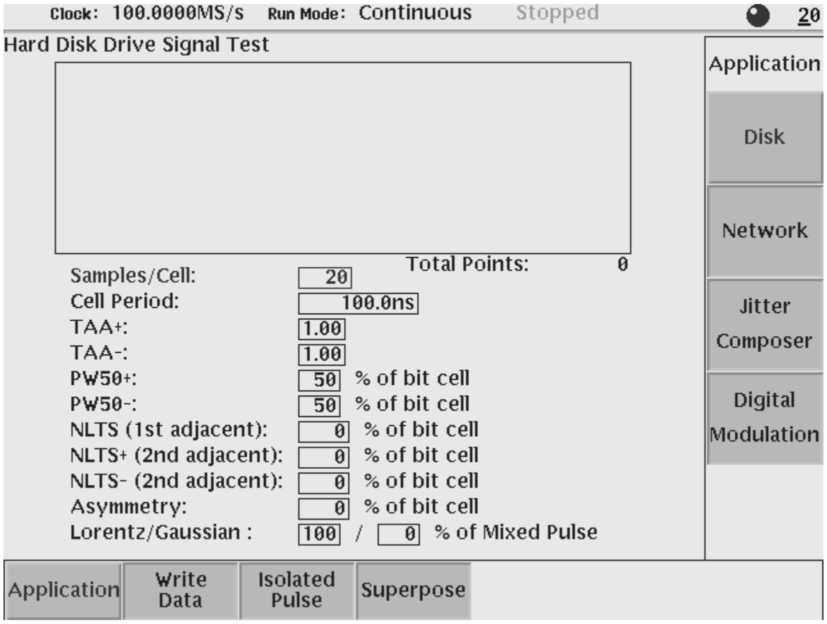


Figure 3–32: Outline flow for producing HDD reading test signal

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front-panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Disk** (side) to display the Disk Application screen. See Figure 3–33.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 20

Hard Disk Drive Signal Test

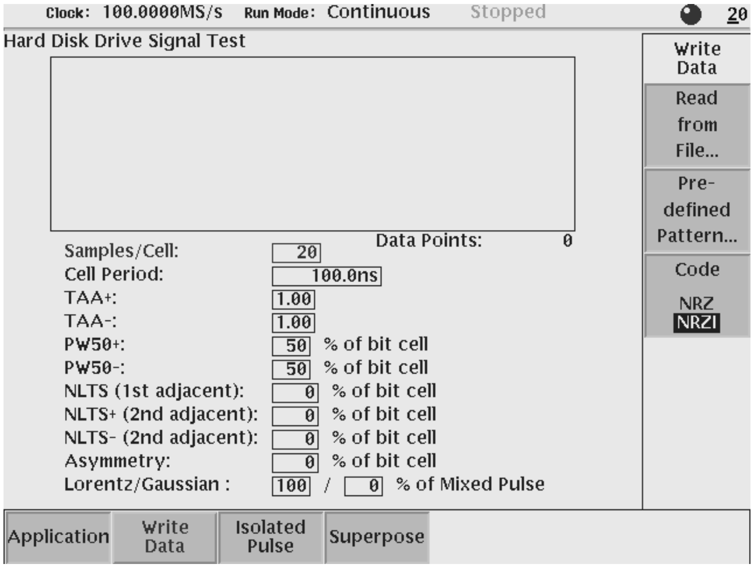
Total Points: 0

Samples/Cell: 20
Cell Period: 100.0ns
TAA+: 1.00
TAA-: 1.00
PW50+: 50 % of bit cell
PW50-: 50 % of bit cell
NLTS (1st adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS+ (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS- (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
Asymmetry: 0 % of bit cell
Lorentz/Gaussian : 100 / 0 % of Mixed Pulse

Figure 3–33: Disk application initial screen

2. Select **Write Data** (bottom)→**Read from File...** (side) or →**Pre-defined Pattern** (side) to display the dialog box for input data selection.

3. Select a file or pre-defined pattern.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 20

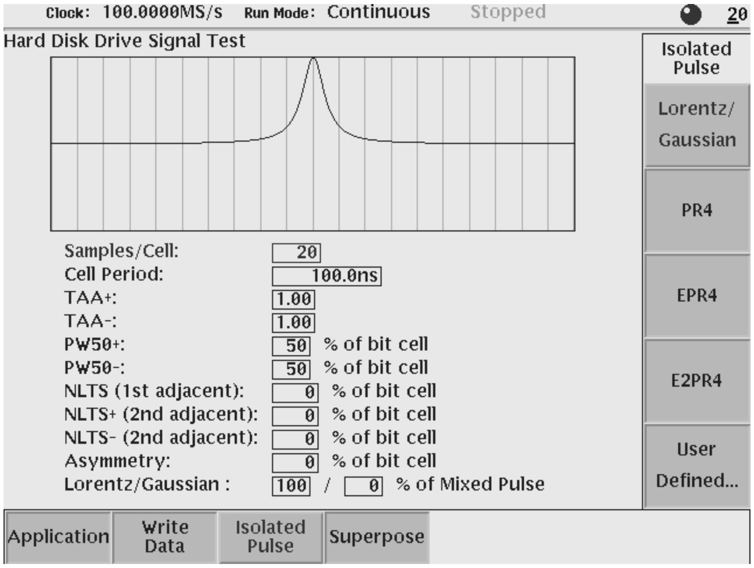
Hard Disk Drive Signal Test

Data Points: 0

Samples/Cell: 20
Cell Period: 100.0ns
TAA+: 1.00
TAA-: 1.00
PW50+: 50 % of bit cell
PW50-: 50 % of bit cell
NLTS (1st adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS+ (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS- (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
Asymmetry: 0 % of bit cell
Lorentz/Gaussian : 100 / 0 % of Mixed Pulse

Figure 3–34: Writer Data menu

4. Press **Isolated Pulse** bottom button, and select an isolated pulse from the side menu.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 20

Hard Disk Drive Signal Test

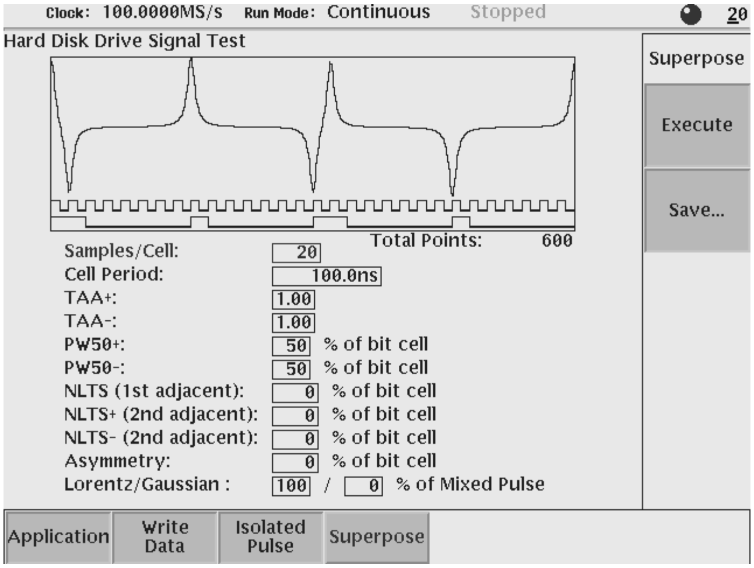
Samples/Cell: 20
Cell Period: 100.0ns
TAA+: 1.00
TAA-: 1.00
PW50+: 50 % of bit cell
PW50-: 50 % of bit cell
NLTS (1st adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS+ (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS- (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
Asymmetry: 0 % of bit cell
Lorentz/Gaussian : 100 / 0 % of Mixed Pulse

Figure 3–35: Isolated Pulse menu

5. Set the parameters displayed on the menu screen.

6. Select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side) to execute superposing.

   The generated waveform is displayed in the menu screen window.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 20

Hard Disk Drive Signal Test

Total Points: 600

Samples/Cell: 20
Cell Period: 100.0ns
TAA+: 1.00
TAA-: 1.00
PW50+: 50 % of bit cell
PW50-: 50 % of bit cell
NLTS (1st adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS+ (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
NLTS- (2nd adjacent): 0 % of bit cell
Asymmetry: 0 % of bit cell
Lorentz/Gaussian : 100 / 0 % of Mixed Pulse

Figure 3–36: Execution of superpose

7. If needed, you can repeat adjusting the superpose parameters in this screen and generate new output waveform.

8. Select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Save...** (side) to save the generated waveform to a file.

Input Data

The specified pattern or waveform file is used as input data. When a pattern data file is specified for input, the application reads only the MSB bits (DATA15). When a waveform file is specified, this process converts the values equal to or greater than 0.5 to a logic 1, and the values less than 0.5 to a logic 0.

NOTE. *One restriction is applied to the number of input data points;*

input data points > isolated pulse data points / (Samples/Cell)

The predefined patterns shown in Table 3–35 are incorporated in the application:

Table 3–35: Pre-defined patterns

Pattern items	Descriptions
X^15 + X + 1	15-bit M-series pseudo random pulse
X^9 + X^5 + 1	9-bit M-series pseudo random pulse
X^7 + X^3 + 1	7-bit M-series pseudo random pulse
32'1's	32-bit wide data in which all bits are set to 1
Harmonic Elimination Pattern	The pattern's 5th harmonic component is set to 0. 11000000100000001100000001000000

Code Conversion

This part inputs the binary bit pattern and converts the transition from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 to a series of positive and negative pulse. Table 3–36 lists the available code conversion types:

Table 3–36: Code Conversion

Code conversion	Descriptions
NRZ	Converts a transition from 0 to 1 to a positive pulse, and from 1 to 0 to a negative pulse. This conversion considers the input data as representing a direction of magnetization.
NRZI	Generates a pulse when the input data is 1. The first pulse is always positive, and after this, the pulse polarity toggles for every input data value of 1. This conversion considers the input data as representing the disk writing data.

Isolated Pulse

Isolated pulse lets you superpose a pulse onto the converted code. You can select from the following five pulse types:

- Lorentz/Gaussian pulse

  Isolated pulse is created by the mixture of two types waveforms; Lorentz and Gaussian. You can adjust mixture rate through Lorentz/Gaussian: parameters displayed in the lower part of the screen.
  When you adopt complete Lorentz waveform as an isolated pulse, set the parameter to [100] / [0]%. When you adopt Gaussian waveform as an isolated pulse, set the parameter to [0] / [100]%.

  Mixed waveform is acquired by adding two formulas which have same PW50 and normalizing the calculated value. Each formula is set to L(x) and G(x), and the mixture rate is set to a and b respectively.

  Isolated pulse: Normalize (a*L(x) + b*G(x))
  (a + b = 1.0)

- PR4 pulse
- EPR4 pulse
- E2PR4 pulse
- User defined pulse

  You can define isolated pulse. Create user–defined waveform on the internal disk. There are two options for creating user-defined file; using editor or using signals acquired by oscilloscope.

Creating Isolated Pulse

Two parameters are important to create an isolated pulse.

- Number of points for 1 bit

  Samples/Cell parameter is displayed on the Disk application screen. This represents the number of points for one bit of disk waveform. Isolated pulse must correspond to this parameter value.

- Total points of the isolated pulse

  The total number of points that make up the isolated pulse should be set to four times the values given by the Samples/Cell parameter. The maximum number of points is smaller than the value calculated by the two parameters: multiple of the number of data points specified by Write Data(bottom)→ Predefined Pattern... or Read From File... and the value specified by Samples/ Cell parameter. In other words, the maximum number of points is smaller than the number of points after the application performs superposition.

Using formula

Use the following formula to specify the values when the waveform is acquired from calculation.

```
Peak value:                Center (Except for shifting the valu
e
intentionally)
PW50:                      (Samples/cell)/2
Waveform size:
(Samples/cell)*4
```

For example, you use Lorentz waveform, specify the formula as follows;

```
cells = 10                 'Samples/cell ==> 10
size = cells * 4           'Number of total waveform points
pw = cells / 2             'Pulse width at half level
clock = 1e9                'AWG clock that needs to calculate

ppw = pw / clock           'Pulse width for calc.
pposit = size / 2 / clock  'Peak position for calc.

"Lorentz.wfm" = 1/(1+(2*(time - pposit)/ppw)^2)
```

Using acquired waveform file

You can create isolated waveform from signals acquired through oscilloscope or other equipments by using the waveform editor.

When acquiring the signals, it is not necessary to observe the number of points or PW50. However, it is required to set the pulse edge to 0 (zero). When you use the waveforms from oscilloscope, it is recommended to adjust the edge to zero level.

Use the following steps to extract the pulse and modify the waveform:

1. Open the acquired waveform by waveform editor.
2. Locate the pulse which you want to extract, then move the left-cursor to the center of pulse.
3. Expand the display by using Zoom function as necessary.
4. Specify the range of pulse you want to extract.

After specifying the range, check the number of points that make up the PW50. Set the total number of points to eight times of PW50 (in this case, the PW50 is set to 50%).

5. Locate the left–cursor to 0, the right-cursor to 1 point left of the pulse you want to extract. Then, delete unnecessary data on the left side of the pulse by using **Operation** (bottom) → **Cut** (pop-up).
6. Locate the right-cursor to the maximum point of the waveform, the left-cursor to 1 point right of the pulse you want to extract. Then, delete unnecessary data on the right side of the pulse by using **Operation** (bottom) → **Cu**t (pop-up).

This completes the extraction of pulse you want to create.

Next, you need to adjust the total number of points.

7. Check the number of points that make up the PW50 you extracted(acq_pw).
8. Check the total number of points that make up the extracted pulse(acq_size).
9. Check the value given by Samples/Cell parameter(cells).
10. Specify the total number of points that make up the isolated waveform you want to create(size).

    Use the following formula when PW50 is 50%.
    pw = cells/2
    size = (pw/acq_pw) * acq_size
11. Press **Tools** (bottom) → **Re-Sampling** (pop-up) to open menu.
12. Specify the value of size calculated by New Points and press **OK** (side) button.
    Now you have got the isolated waveform.
13. Save the isolated waveform you created by using appropriate name.

This completes the creation of user-defined isolated waveform.

Superpose Parameters

The superpose parameters are used to define an isolated pulse waveform and a quantity for shift. Table 3–37 lists the superpose parameters.

Table 3–37: Superpose parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Samples/Cell	Specifies the number of waveform points to be generated for each point of the input data.
Cell Period	Specifies the cell period.
TAA+ and TAA–	Specifies the pulse width of the positive and negative isolated pulse. The setting range is from 0 to 1.0 in steps of 0.01. The maximum amplitude is 1.0.
PW50+ and PW50–	Specifies the half-width of the pulse as a percentage of the cell. The setting range is from 0 to 200 in step 1. This parameter cannot be set for the PR4, EPR4 and E2PR4.
NLTS	When the pulse is generated continuously, this parameter shifts the pulses from the second one onward. Set the quantity of the shift to this parameter in the percentage of the cell. The setting range is from –100 to 100 in step 1.
NLTS+ and NLTS–	Shifts the current pulse depending on whether the pulse existed or not in two data position advance. The setting range is from –100 to 100 in step 1. When the current pulse has the same polarity as the pulse in two data position advance, the current pulse is shifted backward by the value represented by this parameter (NLTS–). When the current pulse has the different polarity, it is shifted forward by this parameter (NLTS+). The total quantity of shift can be calculated by mixing the value of NLTS+, NLTS– and NLTS.
Asymmetry	Shift the positive pulse forward and the negative pulse backward by the value specified by this parameter. The setting range is from –100 to 100 in step 1.
Lorentz/Gaussian	Specifies the mixture ratio of Lorentz and Gaussian pulse by unit of % as an isolated pulse. Sum of two values within the boxes is always equal to 100. Setting one value to 100 specifies complete the Lorentz or Gaussian pulse. This parameter can be performed only when you select Lorentz/Gaussian as an isolated pulse.

Generating Waveform

The magnetic disk reading waveform is generated based on the input data, isolated pulse, and superpose parameters. To generate a waveform, select **Superpose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side).

The square pattern with the period of one cell is set in Marker 1. The input data is set in Marker 2.

Isolated pattern is calculated for only 20 cells, and the other part is considered to be 0.

For the isolated pulse, wraparound is included in the calculation in superposition, assuming that this waveform repeats. However, the calculation is not made for the second and subsequent cycles of wraparound. Therefore, the correct calculation is not made for input data shorter than the isolated pulse length (20 cells).

NOTE. *One restriction is applied to the number of input data points;*
input data points > isolated puls data points / (Samples/Cell)

The NLTS calculation requires the position of the previous pulse, which cannot be obtained from the initial part of input data. Also for this problem, information is obtained with wraparound by using the last part of input data.

Saving to File

You can save the generated waveform to a file. If the waveform length does not satisfy the instrument file length conventions, the instrument repeats the data several times and regenerates the waveform to create a valid file.

Network Application

This application creates a network test signal to analyze the various standard network signals.

The signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Convert the input pattern using the standard-defined code and estimate the positions where pulse will be generated and its polarity.
- Superpose a standard-defined isolated pulse in the position estimated above.

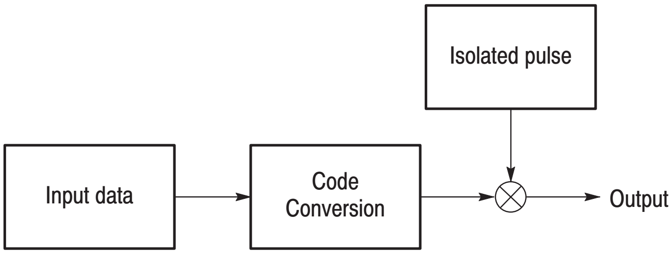
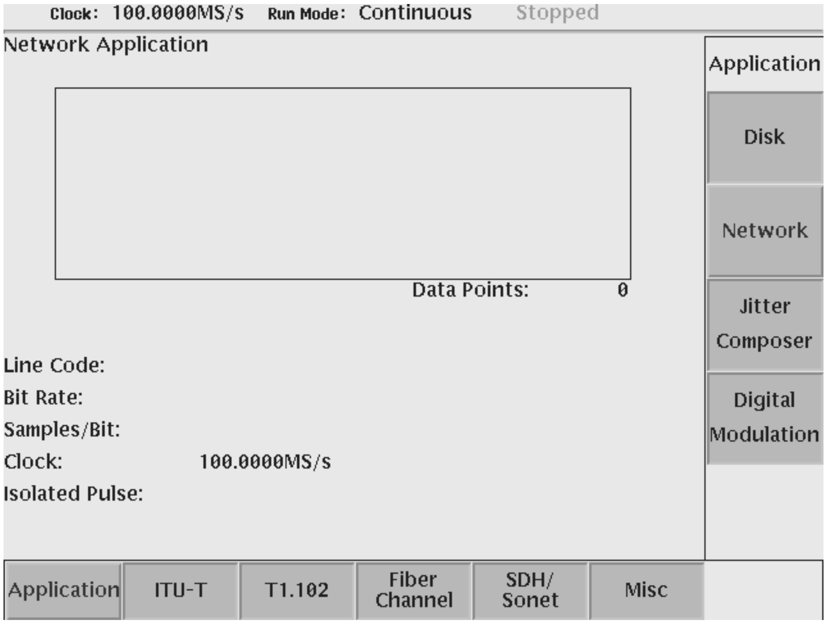


Figure 3–37: Outline flow for producing network test read signal

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front-panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Digital Modulation** (side) to display the Digital Modulation. See Figure 3–38.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Network Application

Data Points: 0

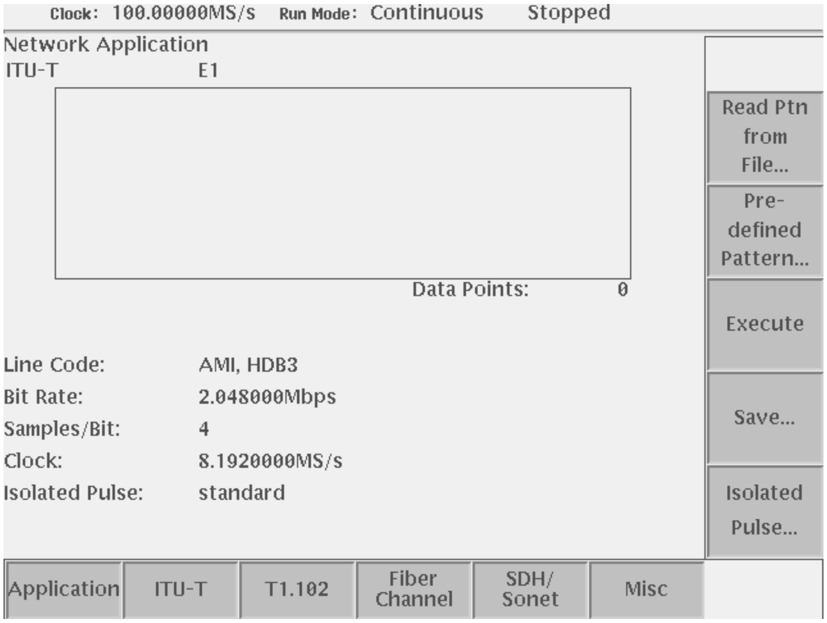
Line Code:
Bit Rate:
Samples/Bit:
Clock: 100.0000MS/s
Isolated Pulse:

Figure 3–38: Network application initial screen

2. Select a standard network signal by pressing either bottom button, selecting subordinate standard item from the pop-up menu, and press the **OK** side button.

The side menu will change. See Figure 3–39.

3. Select a file or predefined pattern as a input data by pressing **Read Ptn from File...** (side) or **Pre-defined Pattern...** (side).



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Network Application

ITU-T E1

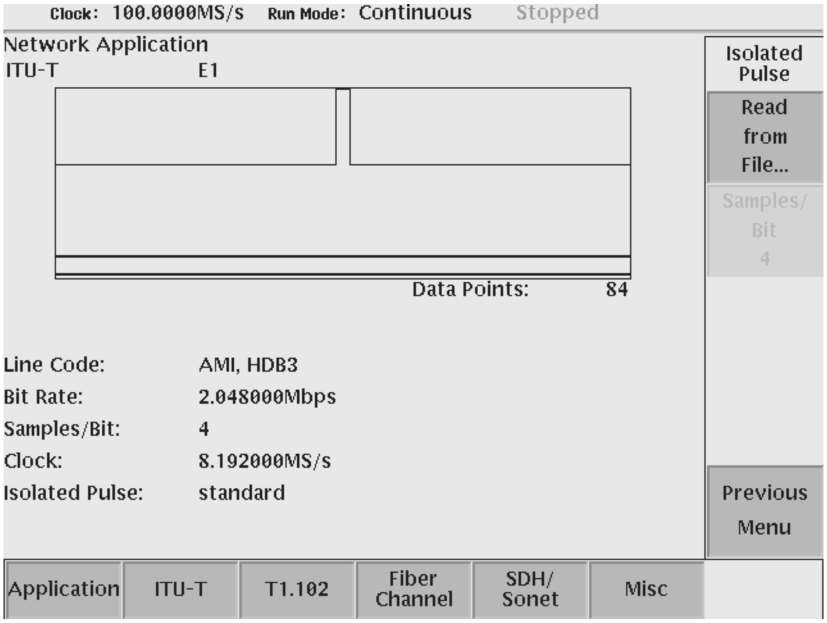
Data Points: 0

Line Code: AMI, HDB3
Bit Rate: 2.048000Mbps
Samples/Bit: 4
Clock: 8.1920000MS/s
Isolated Pulse: standard

Figure 3–39: Side menu will change after selecting a standard

When you select one of ITU–T E1, E2, E3, T1.102 DS1, DS1A, or DS1C, as a standard, you can use user defined isolated pulse.

4. Press **Isolated Pulse...** side button. The side menu will change.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Network Application

ITU-T E1

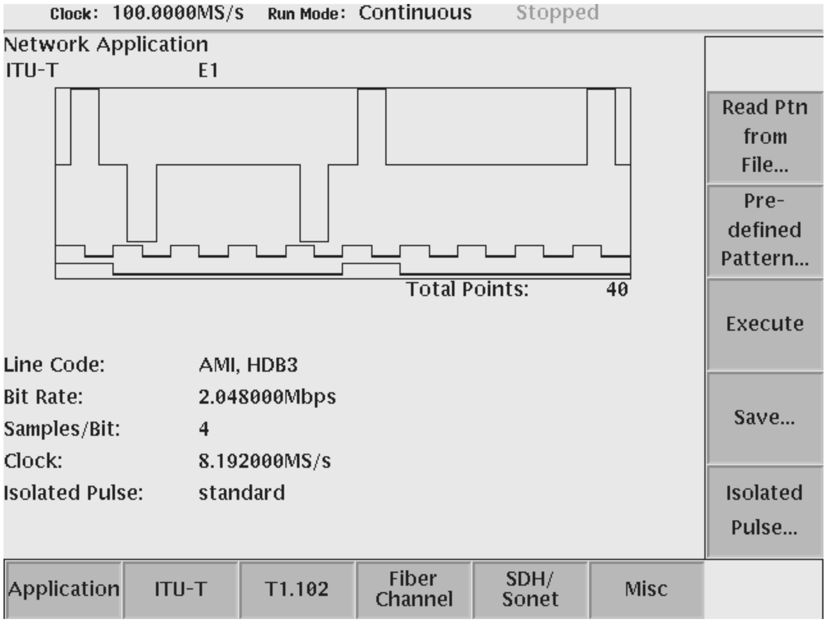
Data Points: 84

Line Code: AMI, HDB3
Bit Rate: 2.048000Mbps
Samples/Bit: 4
Clock: 8.192000MS/s
Isolated Pulse: standard

Figure 3–40: Side menu for selecting the Isolated pulse

5. Press **Read from File...** side button. The side menu will change.
6. Select a waveform file from the file list as a isolated pulse.
7. **Samples/Bit** side button will be enabled. Select a value from 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, or 64 .
8. Press **Previous Menu** side button to return Figure 3–39.
9. Press **Execute** side button to execute superposing.

   The generated waveform is displayed in the menu screen window.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Network Application

ITU-T E1

Total Points: 40

Line Code: AMI, HDB3

Bit Rate: 2.048000Mbps

Samples/Bit: 4

Clock: 8.192000MS/s

Isolated Pulse: standard

Figure 3–41: Execution of superposing

10. Select **Save...** (side) to save the generated waveform to a file.

Input data

Pattern data file or waveform file is used as input data. When a pattern data file is specified for input, the application reads only the MSB bits (DATA15). When a waveform file is specified, this process converts the values equal to or greater than 0.5 to a logic 1, and the values less than 0.5 to a logic 0.

The pattern data or waveform data to be input must have the number of points equal to or more than 20 points.

The predefined patterns shown in Table 3–38 are incorporated in the application.

Table 3–38: Predefined patterns

Pattern items	Descriptions
PN9	9-bits M-series pseudo random pulse
PN15	15-bits M-series pseudo random pulse
0000	
1111	
100100	
10001000	
1000010000	
100000100000	
1000000010000000	
1111100000	

Line Code Conversion

Line code conversion inputs the binary bit pattern and converts the transition from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 to a positive or negative pulse. Table 3–39 lists the standard defined code conversions.

Table 3–39: Code conversion

Code conversion	Descriptions
CMI (Code Mark Inversion)	Last level: Low Level of the last binary 1: High
B6ZS, B8ZS (Bipolar with Eight Zero Substitution)	Polarity of the last pulse: Negative Number of successive 0: 0
B3ZS, HDB3 (High Density Bipolar 3)	Polarity of the last pulse: Negative Number of successive 0: 0 Number of B pulse: 1
MLT-3 (High Density Bipolar 3)	Initial level: 0, First output nonzero level: 1

Isolated Pulse

The standard-defined isolated pulse is used. You do not need to set a pulse.

When the Line Code is a AMI standard (ITU–T E1, E2, E3, T1.102 DS1, DS1A, DS1C), an user defined waveform file can be used as an isolated pulse. The length of isolated pulse has no restriction.

Superpose Parameters

Table 3–40 lists the standard defined superpose network parameters.

Table 3–40: Network parameters

Standard		Line code	Bit rate	Samples/ bit	Clock
ITU-T	E3	AMI, HDB3	34.368000 Mbps	4	137.47200 MS/s
	E2	AMI, HDB3	8.448000 Mbps	4	33.79200 MS/s
	E1	AMI, HDB3	2.048000 Mbps	4	8.19200 MS/s
T1.102	DS1C	AMI, B8ZS	3.152000 Mbps	4	12.60800 MS/s
	DS1A	AMI, HDB3	2.084000 Mbps	32	66.68800 MS/s
	DS1	AMI, B8ZS	1.544000 Mbps	32	49.40800 MS/s
Fiber Channel	FC133E	NRZ	132.8000 Mbps	1	132.8000 MS/s
SDH/Sonet	OC3/STM1	NRZ	155.5200 Mbps	1	155.5200 MS/s
	OC1/STM0	NRZ	51.8400 Mbps	1	51.840 MS/s
Misc	100 Base-TX	MLT-3	125.0000 Mbps	1	125.0000 MS/s
	D2	NRZ	143.1800 Mbps	1	143.180 MS/s

Generating Waveform

The network test reading waveform is generated based on the input data, isolated pulse, and superpose parameters. To generate a waveform, press the **Execute** side button.

The clock frequency is the same as the bit rate is set in the Marker 1. When the sample rate is 1, the clock frequency that is half the bit rate is set in Marker 1. The input data is set in Marker 2.

***NOTE**. The clock attribute of a generated waveform is the one defined in the standard.*

Saving to File

You can save the generated waveform to a file. If the waveform length does not satisfy the instrument waveform file length conventions, the instrument repeats the data several times and regenerates the waveform to create a valid file.

Jitter Composer Application

This application creates signals with jitter and Spread Spectrum Clock (SSC) relative to bit-pattern.

Signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Create data for one period by sorting bit pattern in the direction of time base using parameters.
- Deviate the data for one period in the direction of time base along Jitter Profile.

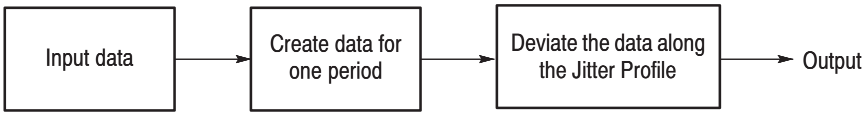
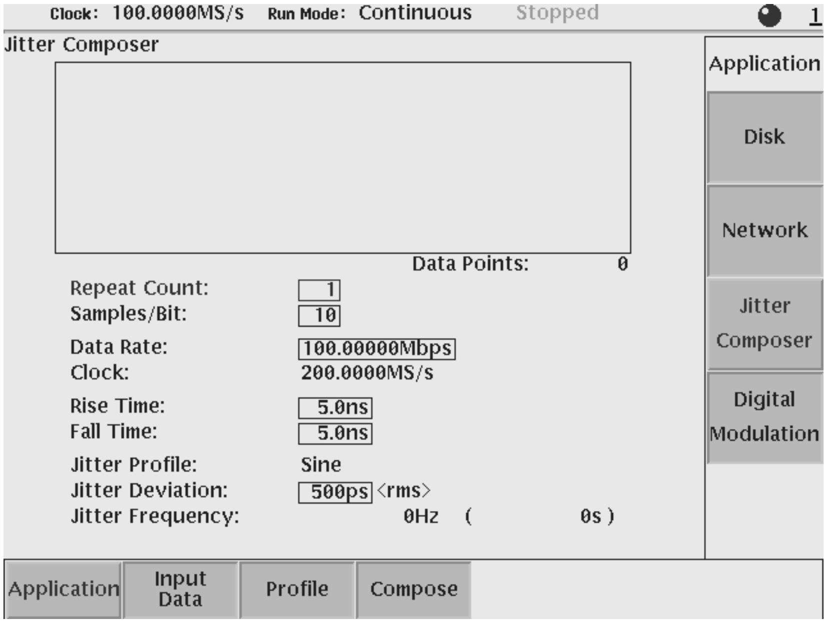


Figure 3–42: Outline flow for Jitter waveform creation

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front–panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Jitter Composer** (side) to display the Jitter Composer. See Figure 3–45.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 1

Jitter Composer

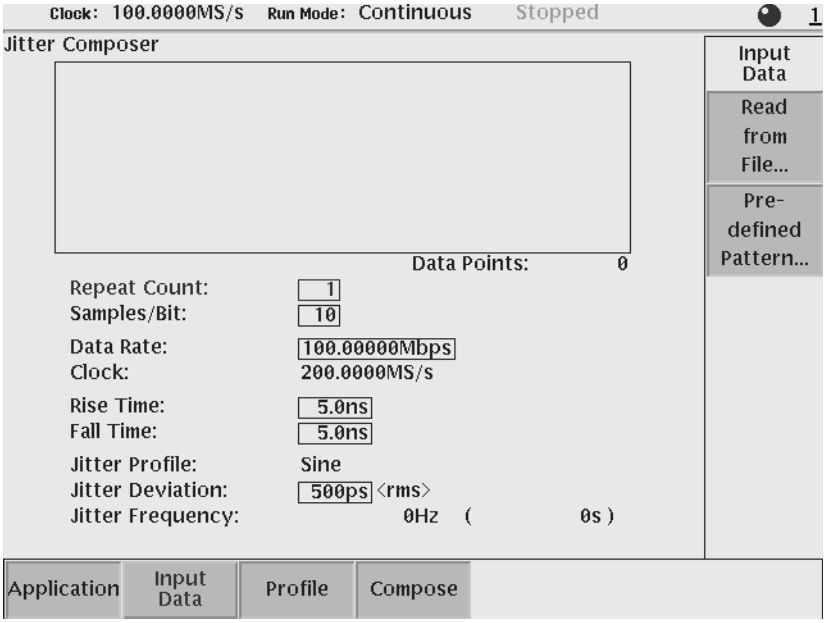
Data Points: 0

Repeat Count: 1
Samples/Bit: 10
Data Rate: 100.00000Mbps
Clock: 200.0000MS/s
Rise Time: 5.0ns
Fall Time: 5.0ns
Jitter Profile: Sine
Jitter Deviation: 500ps <rms>
Jitter Frequency: 0Hz (0s)

Figure 3–43: Jitter composer application initial screen

Specify input data. Load waveform/pattern files or use a pre-defined pattern.

2. Select **Input Data** (bottom)→**Read from File...** (side) or →**Pre-defined Pattern** (side) to select input data.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 1

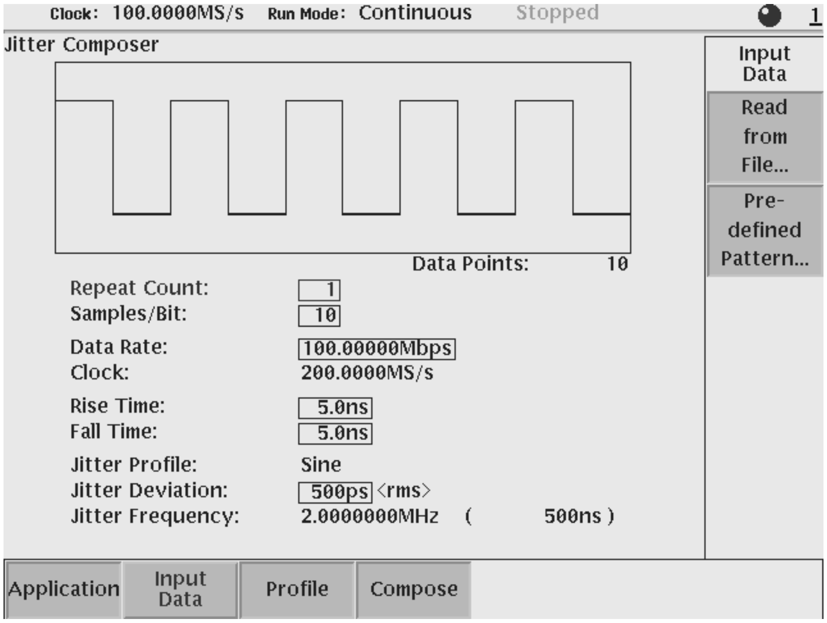
Jitter Composer

Data Points: 0

Repeat Count: 1
Samples/Bit: 10
Data Rate: 100.00000Mbps
Clock: 200.0000MS/s
Rise Time: 5.0ns
Fall Time: 5.0ns
Jitter Profile: Sine
Jitter Deviation: 500ps <rms>
Jitter Frequency: 0Hz (0s)

Figure 3–44: Input Data menu

3. Select a waveform/pattern file from the file list to load the waveform/pattern file, or select a predefined pattern from the pattern list to load the pre-defined pattern.



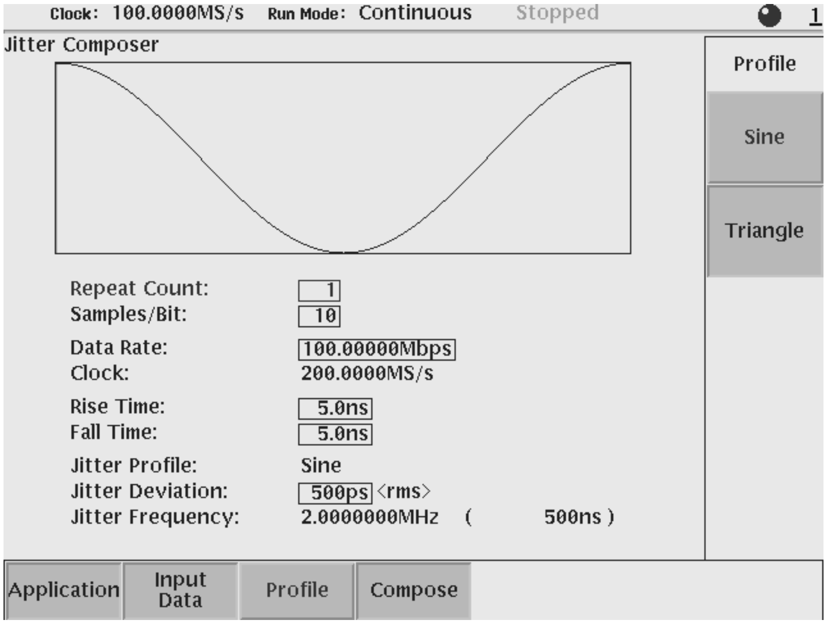
Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Data Points: 10

Repeat Count: 1
Samples/Bit: 10
Data Rate: 100.00000Mbps
Clock: 200.0000MS/s
Rise Time: 5.0ns
Fall Time: 5.0ns
Jitter Profile: Sine
Jitter Deviation: 500ps <rms>
Jitter Frequency: 2.0000000MHz (500ns)

Figure 3-45: A pre-defined pattern was selected as an input data

4. Set the parameters displayed on the menu screen.
5. Press **Profile** (bottom) → **Sine**, or **Triangle** (side) button to select the jitter profile.

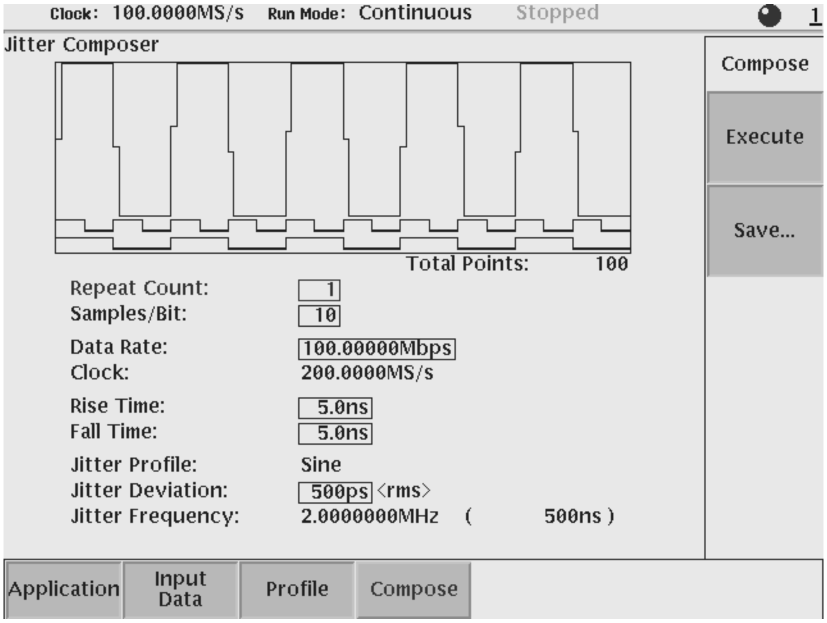


Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Repeat Count: 1
Samples/Bit: 10
Data Rate: 100.00000Mbps
Clock: 200.0000MS/s
Rise Time: 5.0ns
Fall Time: 5.0ns
Jitter Profile: Sine
Jitter Deviation: 500ps <rms>
Jitter Frequency: 2.0000000MHz (500ns)

Figure 3-46: Jitter profile menu

6. Select **Compose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side) to generate the jitter waveform. The generated waveform is displayed in the menu screen window.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Jitter Composer

Total Points: 100

Repeat Count: 1
Samples/Bit: 10

Data Rate: 100.00000Mbps
Clock: 200.0000MS/s

Rise Time: 5.0ns
Fall Time: 5.0ns

Jitter Profile: Sine
Jitter Deviation: 500ps <rms>
Jitter Frequency: 2.0000000MHz (500ns)

Figure 3–47: Execution of jitter composer

7. Change each parameter and press Execute (side) menu button to generate new output jitter waveform.

8. Select **Compose** (bottom)→**Save...** (side) to save the generated waveform in a file.

Input data

The specified pattern or waveform file is used as input data. When a pattern data file is specified for input, the application reads only the MSB bits (DATA15). When a waveform file is specified, this process converts the values equal to or greater than 0.5 to a logic 1, and the values less than 0.5 to a logic 0.

The Predefined patterns shown in Table 3–41 are incorporated in the application:

Table 3–41: Predefined patterns

Pattern items	Descriptions
PN9	9-bits M-series pseudo random pulse.
PN15	15-bits M-series pseudo random pulse.
100100	
10001000	
1000010000	
1010101010	
100000100000	
1000000010000000	

Jitter composer parameters

The following parameters are provided to be specified when you generate a jitter waveform.

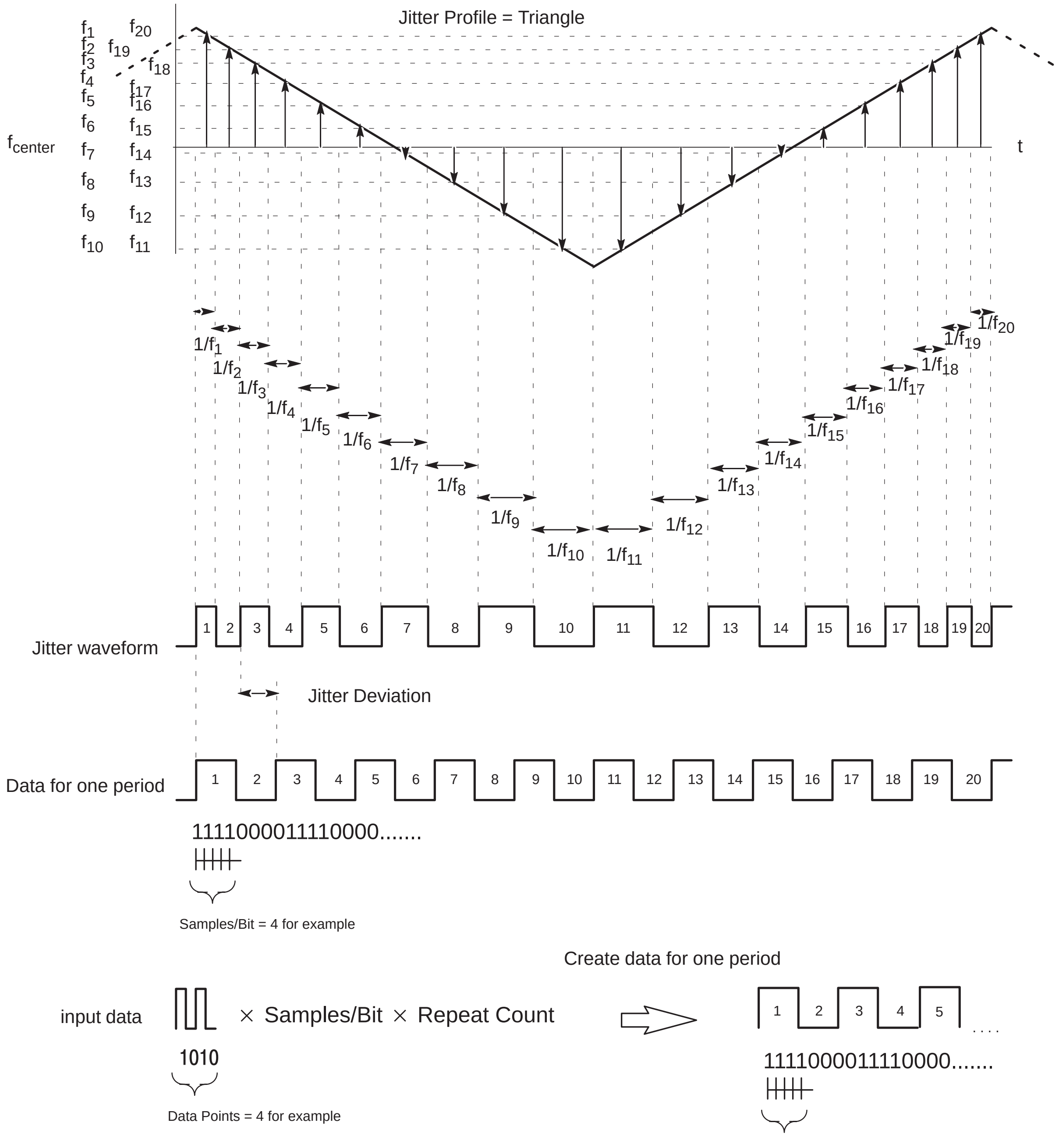
Some parameters such as Clock and Jitter Frequency, are uniquely defined by other parameters, and only displayed on the screen. You can not address these parameters directly.

You can change any other parameter whenever it is displayed on the screen regardless of selected bottom menu.

Table 3-42: Jitter composer parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Repeat Count	Specifies the repetition number of original waveform points that makes up one period for jitter waveform.
Samples/Bit	Specifies the number of points to be generated for each point of the input data. The value is larger than 2 because the input data needs rise time and fall time.
Data Rate [bps]	Specifies the data rate for jitter waveform. This value is prior to Samples/Bit, Rise Time, and Fall Time.
Clock [Samples/s]	Display clock rate (display only). The clock rate is automatically set by Data Rate × Samples/Bit.
Rise Time	Specifies rise time of pulse (time between points of10% and 90% level of amplitude). You can select 0(zero). One restriction is applied to Rise Time parameter; Rise Time + Fall Time $\leq$ 1/Data Rate $\times 2 \times 4/5$.
Fall Time	Specifies fall time of pulse (time between points of10% and 90% level of amplitude). You can select 0(zero). One restriction is applied to Fall Time parameter; Rise Time + Fall Time $\leq$ 1/Data Rate $\times 2 \times 4/5$.
Jitter Profile	Specifies the deviation of each point for one period in the direction of time base. Use Profile(bottom) → Sine, Triangle (side) menu to select among sine wave and triangle wave.
Jitter Deviation	Specifies the deviation of jitter waveform. Suppose 10101010......repetitive pattern as an input data, and one 1,0 pair as one period of pattern, this value represents the equivalent deviation for one 1,0 pair.[1]
Jitter Frequency	Display repeated frequency of jitter waveform. This value is automatically set by Clock / Total Points.
Data Points	Display the number of points for input data (display only).
Total Points	Display the number of points for jitter waveform (display only). This value is automatically set by Data Points × Repeat Count × Samples/Bit.

[1] **Jitter deviation on peak-to-peak is ;**
profile = sine : about 2.83 times of jitter deviation on rms.
profile = triangle : about 3.46 times of jitter deviation on rms.



Clock = Data Rate × Samples/Bit

Total Points = Data Points × Samples/Bit × RepeatCount

Jitter Frequency = Clock / Total Points

Figure 3–48: Jitter parameters and jitter waveform

Generating Waveform

The jitter waveform is generated based on the input data and jitter parameters described above. To generate a waveform, select **Compose** (bottom)→**Execute** (side).

The clock whose frequency is the same as the Bit Rate is set in Marker 1. The input data is set in Marker 2.

Saving to File

You can save the generated waveform to a file. If the waveform length does not satisfy the instrument file length conventions, the instrument repeats the data several times and regenerates the waveform to create a valid file.

Digital Modulation

Digital Modulation application creates various Modulation type I and Q signal by the bit pattern of an input signal.

Signals are created using the following process:

- Input binary bit pattern expressed by 0 and 1.
- Convert to in-phase component (I signal) and quadrature component (Q signal) of the binary input data by mapping to IQ coordinates plane according to modulation type of an input data bit pattern.
- Shape in time domain and frequency domain of the I and Q signal by the baseband filter and the window function block.

  Spectrum of a signal carries out substantially change with a filter. A window function performs the role of an auxiliary filter.
- Addition of a signal distortion equivalent to transmission path in Impairments block.
- The check by various displays of change of the signal by the baseband filter, the window function, and Impairments parameter.
- Creation of I and Q signal influenced of the baseband filter, the window function, and Impairments parameter.

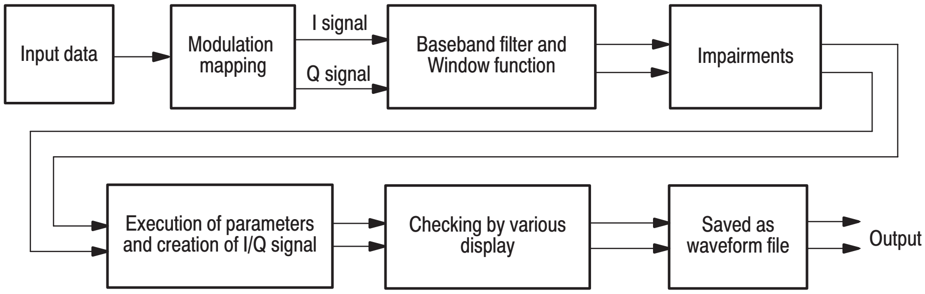
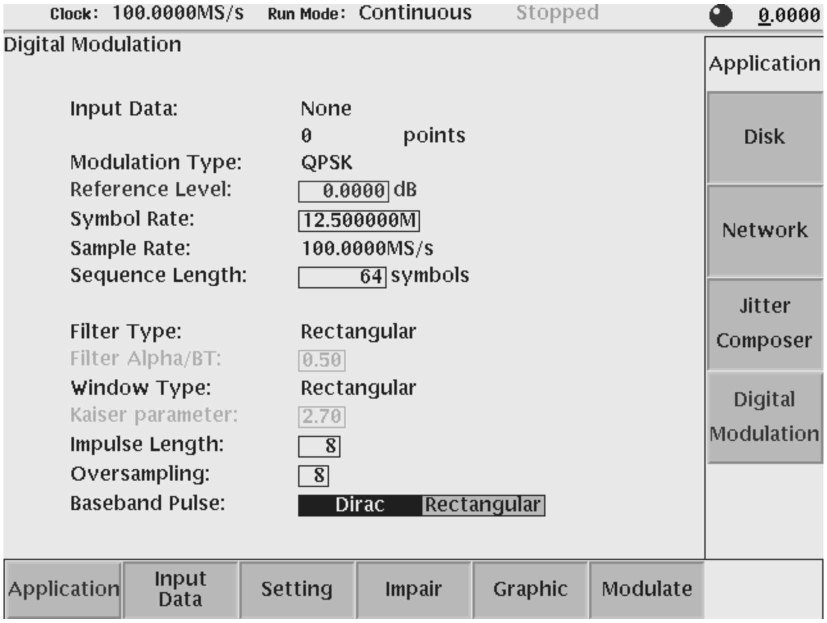


Figure 3–49: Outline flow for producing digital modulation waveform

Operation Flow

1. Select **APPL** (front–panel)→**Application** (bottom)→**Digital Modulation** (side) to display the Digital Modulation. See Figure 3–50.



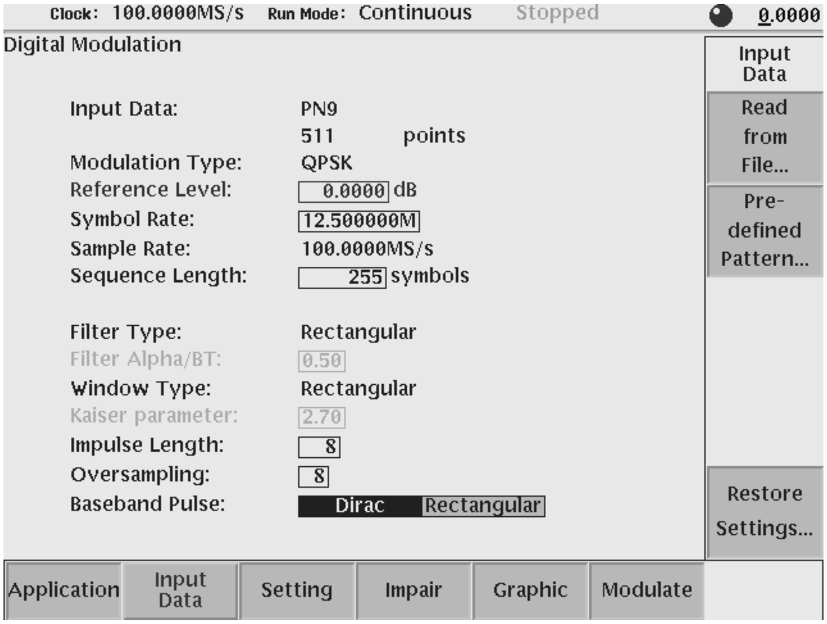
Digital Modulation

Input Data: None
0 points
Modulation Type: QPSK
Reference Level: 0.0000 dB
Symbol Rate: 12.500000M
Sample Rate: 100.0000MS/s
Sequence Length: 64 symbols
Filter Type: Rectangular
Filter Alpha/BT: 0.50
Window Type: Rectangular
Kaiser parameter: 2.70
Impulse Length: 8
Oversampling: 8
Baseband Pulse: Dirac Rectangular

Figure 3–50: Digital Modulation application initial screen

Specify input data. Load waveform/pattern files or use a pre-defined pattern.

2. Select **Input Data** (bottom)→**Read from File...** (side) or →**Pre-defined Pattern** (side) to select input data.

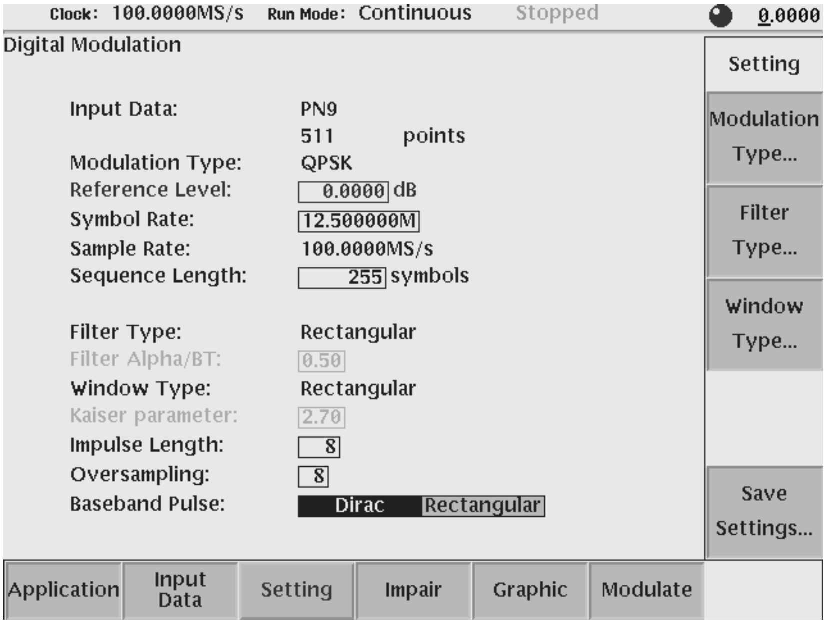


Digital Modulation

Input Data: PN9
511 points
Modulation Type: QPSK
Reference Level: 0.0000 dB
Symbol Rate: 12.500000M
Sample Rate: 100.0000MS/s
Sequence Length: 255 symbols
Filter Type: Rectangular
Filter Alpha/BT: 0.50
Window Type: Rectangular
Kaiser parameter: 2.70
Impulse Length: 8
Oversampling: 8
Baseband Pulse: Dirac Rectangular

Figure 3–51: Input Data menu

3. Press **Setting** (bottom) → **Modulation Type...** (side) button to select a modulation type from a pop–up emu.
4. Select a filter type from the **Filter Type...** (side) menu, a window function type from the **Window Type...** (side) menu.
5. Use ⬇ ⬆button to select the other parameters displayed on the menu screen.
6. Use the general purpose knob or the numeric button to set parameter.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0.0000

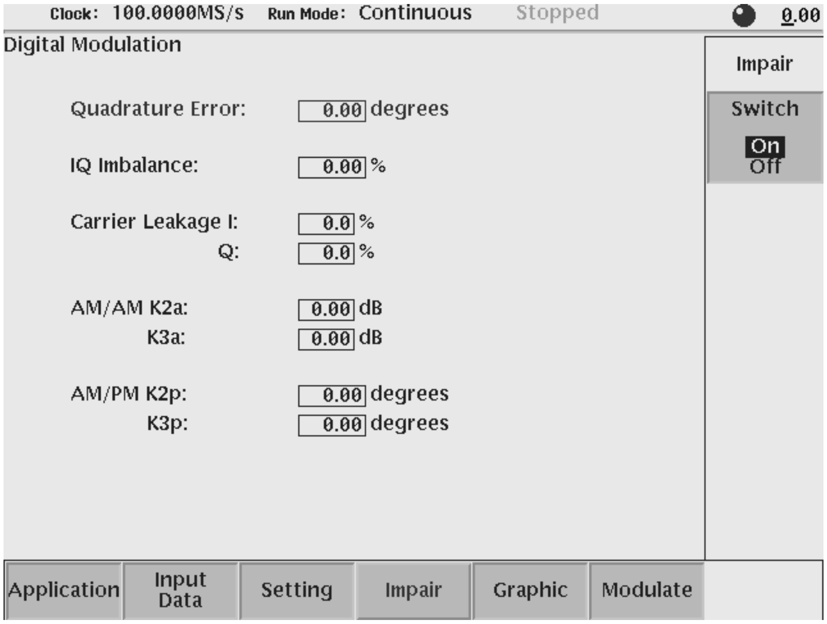
Digital Modulation

Input Data: PN9
511 points
Modulation Type: QPSK
Reference Level: 0.0000 dB
Symbol Rate: 12.500000M
Sample Rate: 100.0000MS/s
Sequence Length: 255 symbols

Filter Type: Rectangular
Filter Alpha/BT: 0.50
Window Type: Rectangular
Kaiser parameter: 2.70
Impulse Length: 8
Oversampling: 8
Baseband Pulse: Dirac Rectangular

Figure 3–52: Setting menu

7. When you set impairments, press **Impair** (bottom) button to display the Impairments screen.
8. Use ▼ ▲button to select the impairments parameter and use the general purpose knob or the numeric button to set parameter.
9. Press the **Switch** (side) button to toggle the state **On**. When you select Off, all the impairments parameters are calculated as 0.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0.00

Digital Modulation

Quadrature Error: 0.00 degrees

IQ Imbalance: 0.00 %

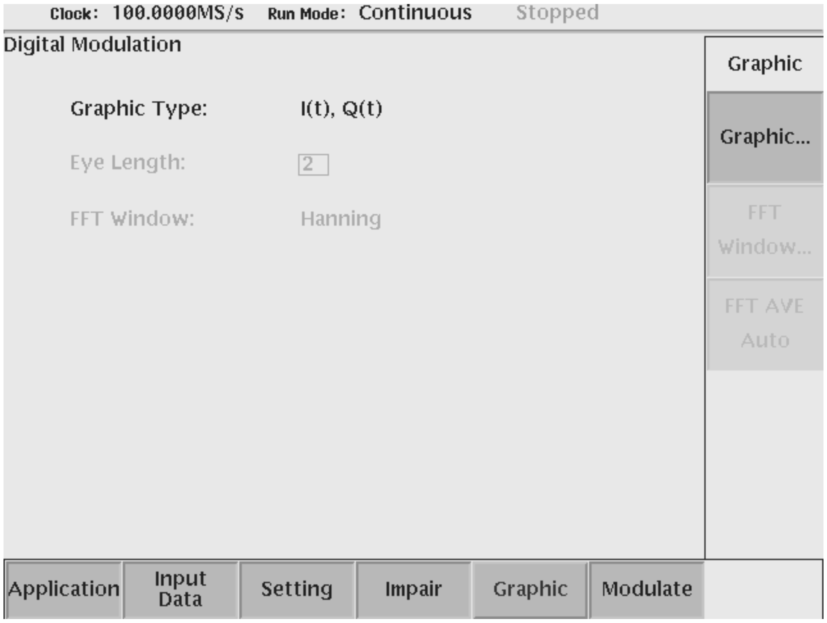
Carrier Leakage I: 0.0 %
Q: 0.0 %

AM/AM K2a: 0.00 dB
K3a: 0.00 dB

AM/PM K2p: 0.00 degrees
K3p: 0.00 degrees

Figure 3-53: Impairments menu

10. Select **Graphic** (bottom)→**Graphic...** (side) to select the display type for the generated IQ signal.
    - **Eye Length:** is enabled when you select Eye Diagram I or Eye Diagram Q. Eye Length range is from 1 to 10.
    - **FFT Window...** (side) and **FFT AVE** (side) menu is enabled when you select Magnitude Spectrum or Phase Spectrum. Set the window function and number of averaging points for FFT calculation.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Digital Modulation

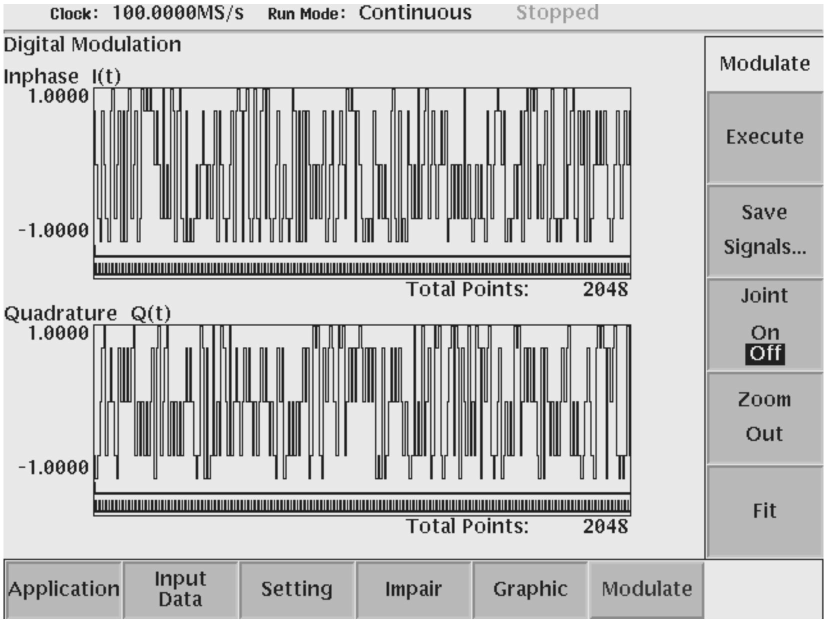
Graphic Type: I(t), Q(t)

Eye Length: 2

FFT Window: Hanning

Figure 3–54: Graphic menu

11. Select **Modulation** (bottom)→**Execute** (side) to generate the IQ signal. The generated waveform is displayed on the screen.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Digital Modulation

Figure 3–55: Execution of digital modulation

12. Change each parameter and press Execute (side) menu button to generate new IQ signal.

13. Select **Modulate** (bottom)→**Save Signals...** (side) to save the generated waveform in files. When you named ABC.wfm as a file name, a file of I signal named ABC_I.wfm and a file of Q signal named ABC_Q.wfm are created.

Input Data

A pattern file (.pat file) or a waveform file (.wfm file) is used for input data. If the pattern file is used as input data, the value of MSB bit (most significant bit Data15) of data is read. If the waveform file is used as input data, digital data is created, assuming a data value of 0.5 or higher as 1 and a value less than 0.5 as 0.

When using the data created by an external computer or external instrument as input data, the data is first created as a text file. The text file is read into AWG400 series, and it changes into a waveform file by **Tools** (bottom)→**Convert File Format...** (side) of **EDIT** menu.

The following four patterns are available as predefined patterns:

Table 3–43: Predefined Pattern

Pattern	Descriptions
PN9	9–bit M series pseudo random pulse
PN15	15–bit M series pseudo random pulse
PN17	17–bit M series pseudo random pulse
PN23	23–bit M series pseudo random pulse

Modulation type

As modulation type, a group of phase shift keying (PSK), a group of quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM), and user definition are available.

Table 3–44: Modulation Type parameters

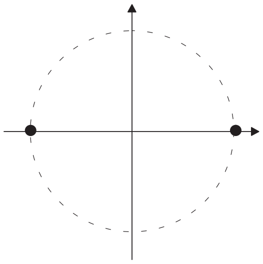
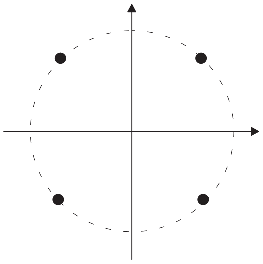
Parameters	Descriptions
BPSK	Binary Phase Shift Keying. Modulation method that transmits “0” and “1” of 1 bit, making them correspond to two phases of a carrier wave. Modulation level is 1. Data Symbol Phase 0 0° 1 180° 
QPSK	Quadrature Phase Shift Keying. Modulation method that transmits 2 input bits of ”0” and ”1”, making them correspond to four phases of a carrier wave. Modulation level is 2. Data Symbol Phase 00 45° 01 135° 10 225° 11 315° 

Table 3-44: Modulation Type parameters (Cont.)

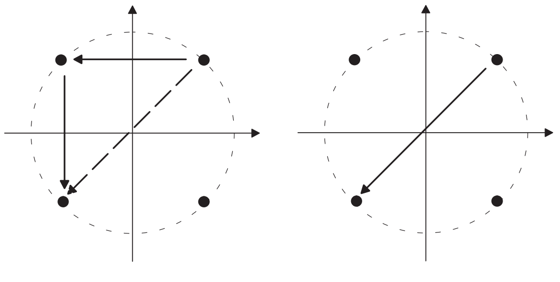
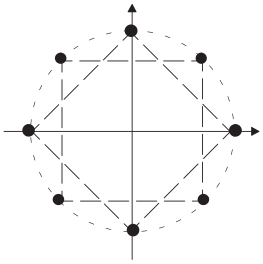
<table>
<tr><th>Parameters</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>OQPSK</td><td>Offset QPSK. Mapping is the same as QPSK. The difference from QPSK is that the element of I is moved first and then the element of Q is moved if the status changes from one to another. These two steps are carried out within time of one step of QPSK. By shifting the movement of the Q element, the status can be changed without going through the origin even if a change of 180° takes place. Because one symbol period is calculated in two steps, an even value must be used for oversampling. Modulation level is 2.

OQPSK QPSK</td></tr>
<tr><td>PI/4DQPSK</td><td>π/4-shifted Differentially encoded QPSK. The symbol is located at the position where the phase is shifted from the current symbol position, by the value show in the table below, by the value of the next data symbol. The first symbol position is defined by QPSK. While QPSK uses a four-point table, π/4DQPSK also alternately uses another table that is the four-point table rotated 45°. Modulation level is 2.
<table>
<tr><th>Data Symbol</th><th>Phase shift</th></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>45°</td></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>135°</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>225°</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>315°</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Table 3-44: Modulation Type parameters (Cont.)

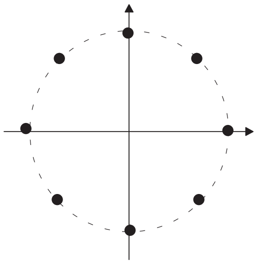
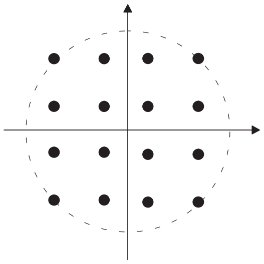
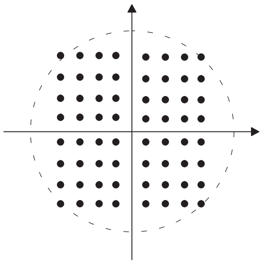
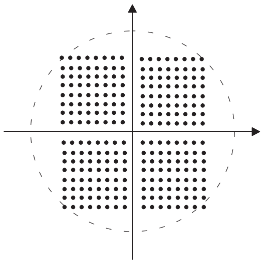
Parameters	Descriptions
8PSK	8-phase Phase Shift Keying. Expresses eight phase statuses with 3 bits. Modulation level is 3. Data Symbol Phase 000 0° 001 45° 010 90° 011 135° 100 180° 101 225° 110 270° 011 315° 
16QAM	16 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation. 4-level modulation method that uses 16 phases/amplitude statuses. The first 2 bits defines at which event of the IQ plane the phase exists (00: upper right, 01: upper left, 10: lower left, 11: lower right), and the rest of the 2 bits defines the position of the symbol in each event. Data Symbol I Q 0000 0.707 0.707 0001 0.236 0.707 0010 0.236 0.236 0011 0.707 0.236 0100 −0.236 0.707 0101 −0.707 0.707 0110 −0.707 0.236 0111 −0.236 0.236 1000 −0.236 −0.236 1001 −0.707 −0.236 1010 −0.707 −0.707 1011 −0.236 −0.707 1100 0.707 −0.236 1101 0.236 −0.236 1110 0.236 −0.707 1111 0.707 −0.707 

Table 3-44: Modulation Type parameters (Cont.)

Parameters	Descriptions
64QAM	64 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation. 6-level modulation method using 64 phases/amplitude statuses. The first 2 bits defines at which event of the IQ plane the phase exists (00: upper right, 01: upper left, 10: lower left, 11: lower right), and the rest of the 4 bits defines the position of the symbol in each event by location of 16QAM. 
256QAM	256 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation. 8-level modulation method using 256 phases/amplitude statuses. The first 2 bits defines at which event of the IQ plane the phase exists (00: upper right, 01: upper left, 10: lower left, 11: lower right), and the rest of the 6 bits defines the position of the symbol in each event by location of 16QAM. 
User Modulation	When using a modulation method other than PSK and QAM available as modulation type, create a user-defined file that defines mapping of the symbol in the following format, and read that file. Line Contents 1 0 (without phase offset) or 1 (with phase offset) 2 Number of states 3 Value of I, value of Q 4 Value of I, value of Q 5 ... The vector of a pair of I and Q values must be 1 or less.

Modulation level

Modulation level means the number of bits in input data that define a modulation status. In the case of 8-state phase shift keying (8PSK), a signal is always in one of the eight statuses. These eight statuses can be expressed with 3 bits. In other words, 3 bits are used per symbol, and the modulation level of 8PSK is 3.

User Modulation

When using a modulation method other than PSK and QAM available as modulation types, create a user-defined file that defines mapping of the symbol in the following format:

Line	Contents
1	0 (without phase offset) or 1 (with phase offset)
2	Number of states
3	Value of I, value of Q
4	Value of I, value of Q
5	...

The vector of a pair of I and Q values must be 1 or less.

$$\sqrt{i^2 + q^2} \leqq 1$$

Reference Level

Set the maximum signal level used for PSK and QAM. The reference level can be set in a range of –10 dB to 3 dB.

The value of each I and Q in the mapping table is expanded or reduced at a rate of $10^{\frac{referencelevel}{20}}$.

Symbol Rate

Transfer rate of symbol. This rate depends on the clock at which the signal is actually output, and can be set in the following range:

10 kS/s $\leqq$ Symbol Rate × Oversampling = Sample Rate $\leqq$ 200MS/s

Sequence Length

Set the number of symbols of the IQ signals. The default value is

(the number of points of input data) ÷ (value of modulation level).

The sequence length can be set in the following range:

512 $\leqq$ Sequence Length × Oversampling $\leqq$ 4050000 (16200000 with Option 01)

Filter Type

Set the type of the baseband filter. The baseband filter plays an important role in creating signals in the frequency domain and time domain. It clips the signal spectrum or suppresses cross talk by combining a Gaussian filter with an appropriate window function.

As the length of the impulse response of the filter, the value set in the Impulse Length field is used (unit: ⁄ number of symbols). When Cosine or Square Root Cosine is selected, α parameter can be set in a range of 0.01 to 0.99; when Gaussian is selected, β parameter can be set in a range of 1.0 to 10.0.

Table 3–45: Filter Type parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
sine(x)/x	$h(t) = \frac{sin(2\pi t/T)}{2\pi t/T} ememfor \quad 0 \leq t < T$ T:Impulse Length
Rectangular	$h(t) = 1 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq t < T$ T:Impulse Length $h(t) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad T \leq t$
Root_cosine	$h(t) = \frac{\sin(\pi\ (1-\alpha)\ t/T) + 4\alpha t/Tcos(\pi\ (1+\alpha)\ t/T)}{\pi\ t/T\ (1-(4\alpha\ t/T)^2)}$ $\text{for} \quad 0 \leq t < T$ T:Impulse Length α parameter can be set in a range of 0.01 to 0.99.
Cosine	$h(t) = \frac{\sin(\pi\ t/T)\ cos-(\pi\alpha\ t/T)}{\pi\ t/T(1-(4\alpha\ t/T)^2)} \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq t < T$ T:Impulse Length α parameter can be set in a range of 0.01 to 0.99.
Gaussian	$h(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\,\sigma T}\exp(-t^2/(2\sigma^2T^2)) \quad with \quad \sigma = \frac{\sqrt{ln(2)}}{2\pi\beta}$ $\text{for} \quad 0 \leq t < T$ T:Impulse Length β parameter can be set in a range of 1.0 to 10.0.
User_filter	A user–defined filter other than the filters prepared is used. Define the filter in text format. The format is as follows: Line Contents 1 Oversampling 2 Impulse Length 3 Filter coefficient 1 (coefficient 1 of ,q filter) 4 Filter coefficient 2 (coefficient 2 of ,q filter) 5 Filter coefficient 3 (coefficient 3 of ,q filter) ... . n+2 Filter coefficient n (coefficient n of ,q filter) n = Oversampling × Inpulse Length + 1
None	Filter is not used.

Window Type

Impulse response to the data symbol of the filter spreads to the symbol zone defined by Impulse Length. Window Type specifies a window function that is an auxiliary filter that brings about an impulse response in this zone. This window function acts as a weighing factor for the coefficient of the baseband filter. Four window functions, Rectangular, Hanning, Kaiser, and Hamming, can be selected.

Table 3–46: File Type parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Rectangular	The outer part of the window is 0 and the inner part remains as is in response to the impulse response of the filter. $w(t) = 1 \quad \text{for } 0 \le t < T$ T:Impulse Length $w(t) = 0 \quad otherwise$
Hanning	$w(t) = 0.5–0.5 \times cos\ (2\pi t/T) \quad \text{for } 0 \le t < T$ T:Impulse Length
Kaiser	$w(t) = \frac{Bessel(\beta\sqrt{1–4\ (t/T)^2}}{Bessel\ (\beta)} \quad \text{for } 0 \le t < T$ T:Impulse Length Bessel is Bessel function. β is Kaiser parameter. When the Kaiser window is selected, Kaiser parameter β can be set. This parameter can be set in a range of 0.01 to 10.0 in 0.01 step.
Hamming	$w(t) = 0.54–0.46 \times cosfigure\ \ (2\pi t/T) \quad \text{for } 0 \le t < T$ T:Impulse Length

Impulse Length

The impulse response to the data symbol of the filter spreads over ranges of several symbol periods. Impulse Length specifies over how many symbols the impulse response spreads (unit: number of symbols). The impulse length determines the number of symbols that is used to calculate the impulse response of the filter. The impulse length has a substantial influence on modulation accuracy. To improve the accuracy of a signal, a considerably long length (20 or more) must be selected. The value of 1 to 128 symbols can be set.

Oversampling

Define how many points of data are used to express a symbol. This value has an effect of suppressing occurrence of aliasing when DA conversion is carried out. On the other hand, however, if the value is too great, the calculation time and the data quantity of the IQ signals increase.

The relations of oversampling with the other parameters are as follows:

512 ≦ Total points of IQ signals = Sequence Length × Oversampling ≦
4050000 (16200000 with Option 01) points
and,

Sample Rate = Symbol Rate × Oversampling ≦ 200 MS/s

Baseband Pulse

Select the shape of the baseband pulse that executes a filter operation. Dirac and Rectangular are selectable.

Dirac:
Pulse in a shape of Kronecker’s delta (n) = { 1 ; (when n = 0),0 ; other }
at each point in the symbol zone.

Rectangular:
Pulse in a shape where
value of each point = value of IQ point ⁄ value of oversampling
is arranged at each point in the symbol zone.

Save and Load

Save Settings.... Saves the information of the parameters that have been set on the main menu screen as a text file (with a .txt suffix) when creating a modulated waveform. The saved file can be edited with a text editor. A waveform which is the same as that created before can be also created by reading the file with the Restore Setting... (side). Saving setup parameters are as shown in Table 3–47. Note that the Impairments parameter and Graphic parameter are not saved.

Table 3–47: Saving setup parameters

Parameters	Descriptions
Input data	File name read with Read from File... (with full path of directory), or pattern name read with Pre–defined Pattern...
ModulationType	Modulation type
UserModulationFile	Modulation definition file name used as user modulation (with full path of directory)

Table 3–47: Saving setup parameters (Cont.)

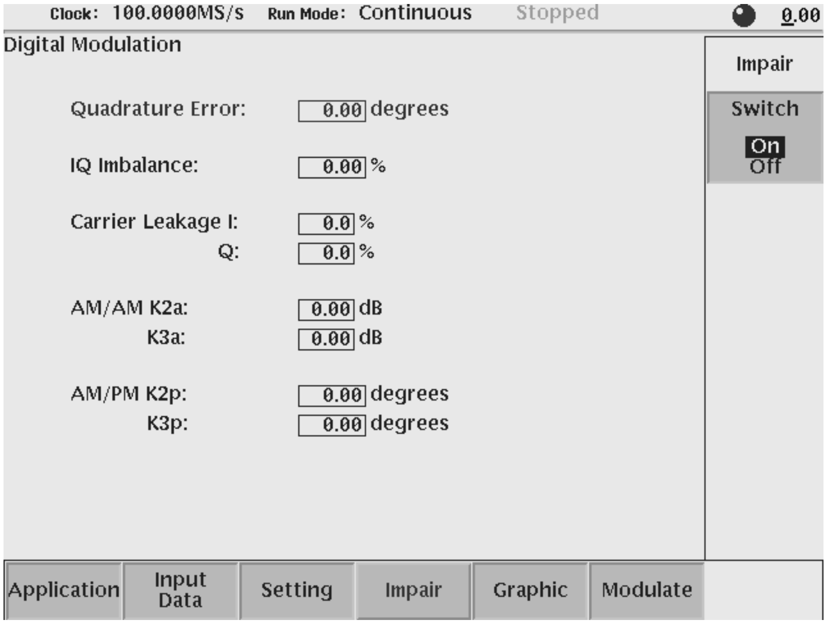
Parameters	Descriptions
SymbolRate	Symbol rate. 10,000 to 200,000,000 (symbols/s)
SequenceLength	Sequence length. 64 to 4,050,000 (16,200,000 with Option 01) (symbols/s)
FileType	Filter type
UserFilterType	Filter definition file name used as user filter (with full path of directory)
FilterAlpha/BT	α and β parameters of filter. 0.01 to 3.00
WindowType	Window function name
KaiserParameter	Kaiser parameter when Kaiser window is used. 0.01 to 10.0
ImpulseLength	Impulse length. 1 to 128 (symbol periods)
Oversampling	Oversampling. 1 to 32
BasebandPulse	Baseband pulse type

Restotre Settings.... Reads the set parameter file saved with Save Settings...

***NOTE**. A setting file does not include the entity of a file such as InputData, UserModulationFile, or UserFilterFile. It only has a file name and information on the location of that file. If the entity of a file does not exist when a setting file has been read, a waveform is not created.*

Impairments

In the actual communication environment, a signal is interfered by various factors until it reaches the receiver. Consequently, the signal may deviate from the ideal status and distorted. Impairments has functions that creates interference and distortion on purpose to simulate such a signal.


Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0.00

Digital Modulation

Quadrature Error: 0.00 degrees

IQ Imbalance: 0.00 %

Carrier Leakage I: 0.0 %
Q: 0.0 %

AM/AM K2a: 0.00 dB
K3a: 0.00 dB

AM/PM K2p: 0.00 degrees
K3p: 0.00 degrees

Figure 3-56: Impairments setup screen

Table 3-48: Impairments parameters

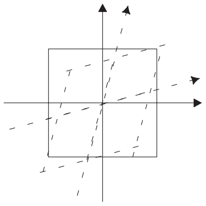
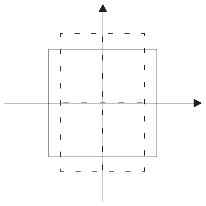
Parameters	Descriptions
Quadrature Error	This parameter sets a shift in quadrature of phase on the IQ axes in a range of –30° to +30°. 90° + Quadrature Error = angle of I axis and Q axis 
IQ Imbalance	The gains of I and Q signals of an ideal IQ modulator are equal. The status where the gains are not equal is set by this IQ Imbalance parameter. This parameter can be set in a range of –30% to 30%. Where IQ Imbalance > 0, gain of I vector > gain of Q vector. 

Table 3–48: Impairments parameters (Cont.)

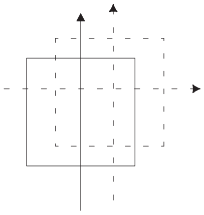
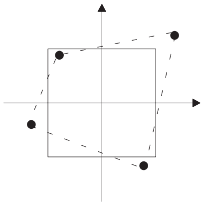
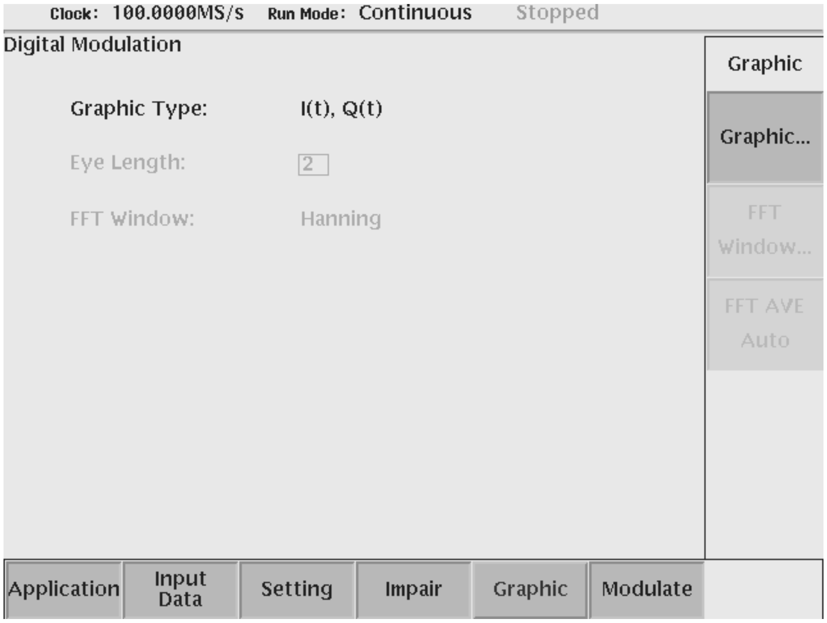
Parameters	Descriptions
Carrier Leakage I Carrier Leakage Q	These parameters set the leakage of the I and Q signals in the IQ modulator. The signal moves in parallel toward the I direction, depending on the value of Leakage I. Depending on the value of Leakage Q, the signal moves in parallel toward the Q direction. Each of these parameters can be set in a range of –50% to 50%. 
AM/AM K2a AM/AM K3a AM/PM K2p AM/PM K3p	These parameters simulate distortion from the ideal signal due to amplifier of the IQ modulator and non–linearity of the transducer. The ideal signal for the IQ modulator can be expressed as follows: $s(t) = a(t) \cdot e^{j\phi(t)}$ a(t):Amplitude,ϕ(t):Phase On the other hand, the signal distorted by non–linearity of the IQ modulator can be expressed: $s'(t) = a'(t) \cdot e^{j\phi'(t)}$ $a'(t) = a(t) + k_{2a} \cdot a(t)^2 + k_{3a} \cdot a(t)^3$ $\phi'(t) = f(t) + k_{2p} \cdot a(t) + k_{3p} \cdot a(t)^2$ At this time, the amplitude error of the I and Q signals can be calculated as follows: $\Delta i = k_{2a} \cdot i(t)^2 + k_{3a} \cdot i(t)^3$ $\Delta q = k_{2a} \cdot q(t)^2 + k_{3a} \cdot q(t)^3$ The phase error of the I and Q signals can be calculated by this expression: $\Delta\phi i = k_{2p} \cdot i(t) + k_{3p} \cdot i(t)^2$ $\Delta\phi q = k_{2p} \cdot q(t) + k_{3p} \cdot q(t)^2$ Deviation in amplitude from the amplitude of the ideal signal is called AM/AM conversion. This deviation can be controlled by coefficients k_{2a} and k_{3p} in the above polynomial. These coefficients can be set in a range of ± 3.00 dB.

Table 3–48: Impairments parameters (Cont.)

Parameters	Descriptions
	AM modulation due to non–linearity of the IQ modulator also causes changes in phase. Deviation in phase from the amplitude of the ideal signal is called AM/PM conversion. This deviation can be also controlled by coefficients k2p and k3p in the above polynomial. These coefficients can be set in a range of ± 3.00 dB. 
Switch	This parameter specifies whether the above setting of impairments is valid or invalid.

Graphic screen A function to display the created IQ signals in various ways is available.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Digital Modulation

Graphic Type: I(t), Q(t)

Eye Length: 2

FFT Window: Hanning

Figure 3–57: Graphic setup screen

Graphic Type Select a display format by using the Graphic... (side) menu button. The following eight formats are selectable:

I(t), Q(t). The I and Q signals are displayed on time axis when the modulation signal is expressed by I/Q quadrature coordinates. When **Modulate** (bottom) → **Joint** (side) buttons are turned **On**, the joint between the end of one waveform and the start of the next waveform is expanded and displayed when a signal is repeatedly output as waveform data.

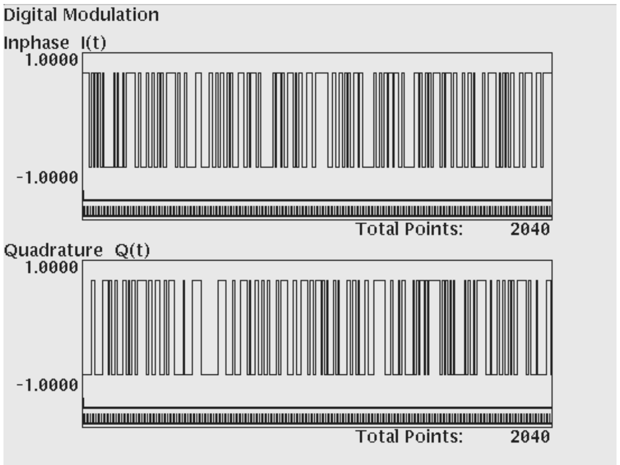


Figure 3–58: I(t), Q(t) display screen

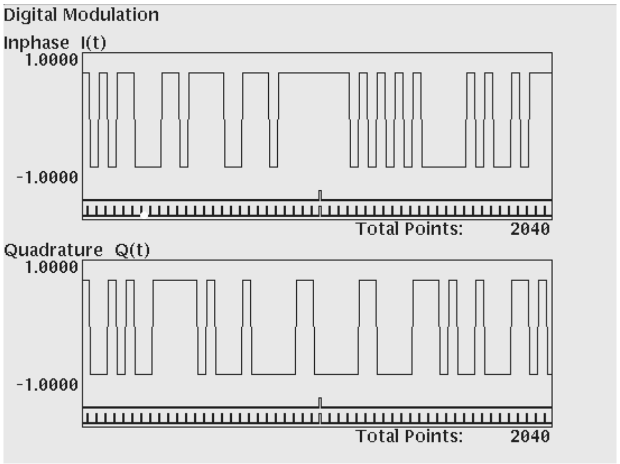


Figure 3–59: I(t), Q(t) display screen when joint on

R(t), Phi(t). The amplitude and phase are displayed on time axis when the modulation signal is expressed on a polar coordinate diagram. When **Modulate** (bottom) → **Joint** (side) buttons are turned **On**, the joint between the end of one waveform and the start of the next waveform is expanded and displayed when a signal is repeatedly output as waveform data.

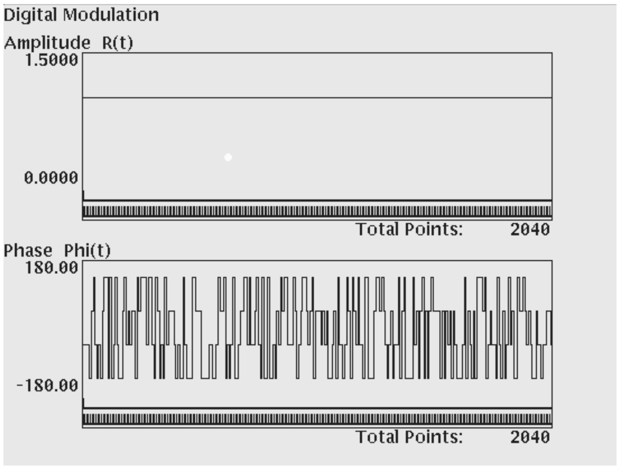


Figure 3–60: R(t), Phi(t) display screen

Eye Diagram I. The I signal is displayed on an eye diagram. An eye diagram sequentially extracts the I signal in units of the number of symbols specified as Eye Length and overlaps these symbols on a plane for display. As Eye Length, a value of 1 to 10 can be specified.

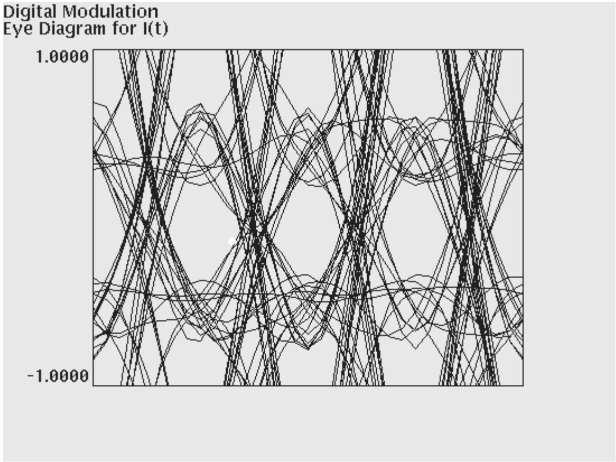


Figure 3–61: Eye Diagram I display screen

Eye Diagram Q. The Q signal is displayed on an eye diagram. As Eye Length, a value of 1 to 10 can be specified.

Vector diagram. Each symbol is plotted and displayed on the I/Q plane. The Vector diagram also displays the trace of transition of adjacent symbols.

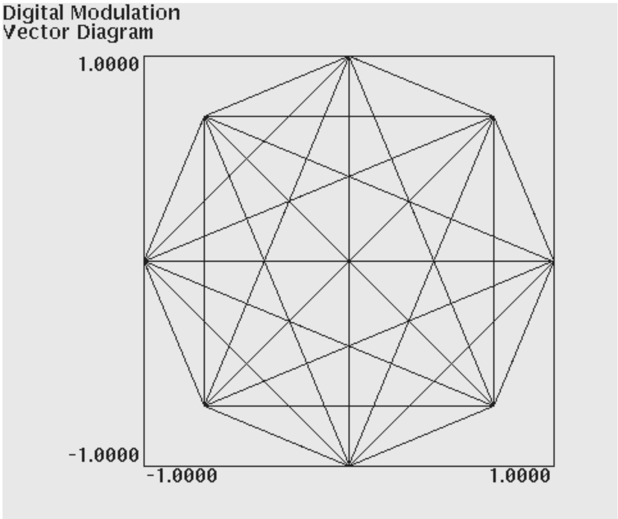
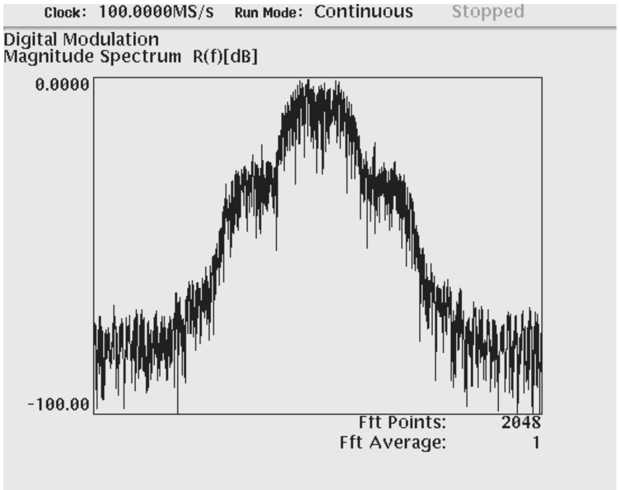


Figure 3–62: Vector diagram display screen

Constellation. Each symbol is plotted and displayed on the I/Q plane. In Constellation display, only symbol is expressed as a point.

Magnitude Spectrum. FFT is executed based on the created I/Q signals and an amplitude spectrum is displayed. Calculation of FFT is executed with a minimum of 2^n points ($2^9 = 512$ to $2^{13} = 8192$) including the total points of the signal (Sequence Length × Oversampling). The number of 2^n points is called FFT Points. If the total number of points $<$ FFT Points, the deficiency is filled with points of 0.
If the total number of points $>$ FFT Points, calculation is executed by repeatedly using an area whose size is equal to FFT Points. How many times this area is used is specified by FFT AVE. As FFT AVE, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, or AUTO can be selected.



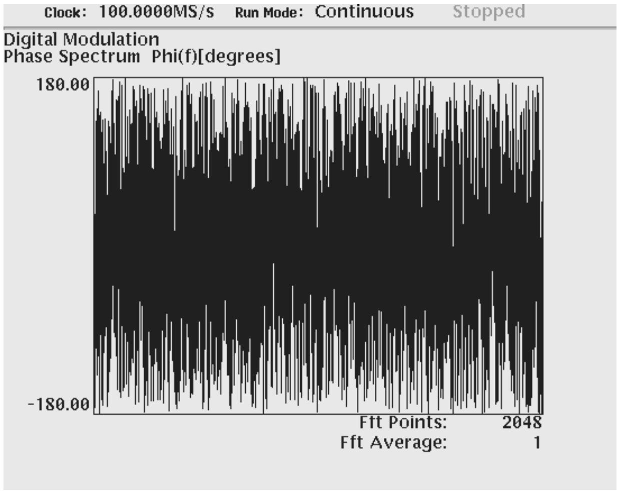
Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Digital Modulation
Magnitude Spectrum R(f)[dB]

Fft Points: 2048
Fft Average: 1

Figure 3–63: Magnitude Spectrum display screen

Phase Spectrum. A phase spectrum is displayed based on the created I/Q signals.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Digital Modulation
Phase Spectrum Phi(f)[degrees]

Fft Points: 2048
Fft Average: 1

Figure 3–64: Phase Spectrum display screen

FFT Window

Select a Window function used for calculation of FFT for Magnitude Spectrum and Phase Spectrum display. The following seven Windows are selectable:

Hanning

Hamming

Welch

Gaussian

Blackman

Triangle

Rectangular

FFT Average

Depending on the selected modulation type, unnecessary spectrum may be created. For FFT calculation 2^n points called FFT Points (2^9 = 512 to 2^{13} = 8192) are used. Usually, the minimum 2^n or 2^{13} points greater than the total number of data points (Total Points) are used as FFT Points. If a value of FFT Average is set, FFT Points are decreased, and the data points are divided by the FFT Average value, and FFT calculation is repeatedly executed. By specifying Average, a smooth spectrum is displayed.

Execute screen

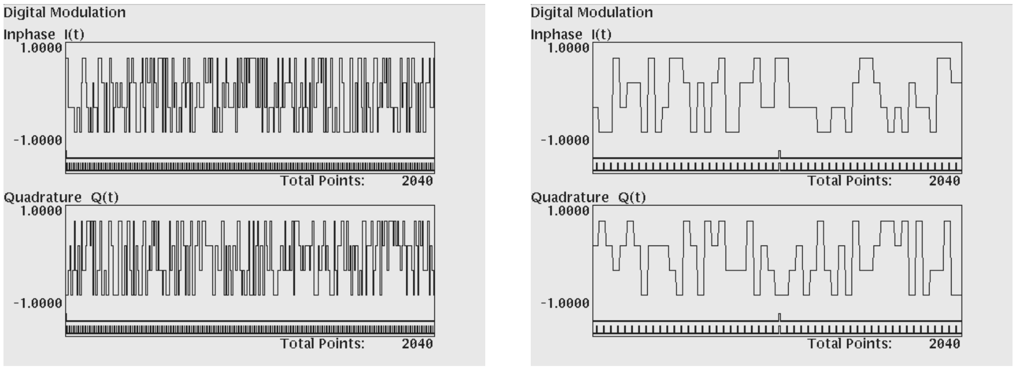
Execute. Pressing this button executes creation of a waveform, and the created waveform is displayed in the format specified by Graphic Type.

As for the marker 1, 1 is set to the starting point of waveform.
As for the marker 2, a clock of the same frequency as Bit Rate is used.

Save Signals.... Save the created I/Q signals to a file. If name ABC.wfm is given in the Input Filename dialog, two files, a file of the I signal named ABC_I.wfm and a file of the Q signal named ABC_Q.wfm, are created.

Joint. If this button is turned On, data of 420 points are displayed with the end point of modulated waveform and the next start point at the center of the screen. The point at which the value of marker 1 is 1 is the start point of a waveform. This button is used to check the joint of waveforms when the created modulated waveform is repeatedly output.

It can be used when Graphic Type is I(t), Q(t) display or R(t), Phi(t) display.



Joint Off

Joint On

Figure 3–65: Joint On/Off

Zoom Out, Fit. Depending on the setting of the filter type and Impairments, the waveform created is too big to display within the display frame. The Zoom Out function is used to reduce such a waveform to fit in the display frame.

The waveform is zoomed out in the vertical axis direction for I(t), Q(t) display, R(t), Phi(t) display, and Eye Diagram display. And, In Constellation display, the waveform is zoomed out in both vertical and horizontal direction. To return the size of the waveform, press **Fit** (side) button.

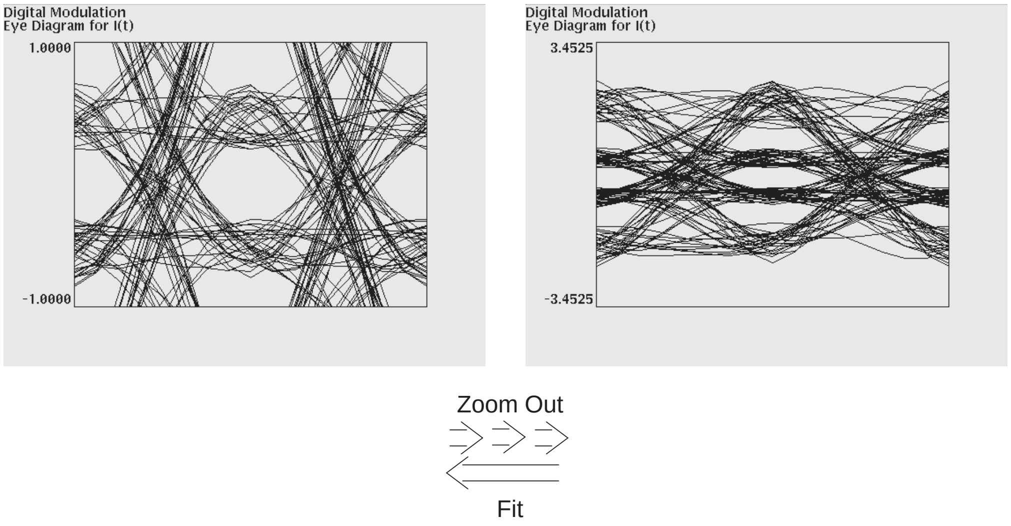


Figure 3–66: Zoom Out and Fit

The UTILITY Window

This section describes the utility settings that can be made to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

- Using external keyboards
- Setting general purpose knob direction
- Formatting floppy disk
- Displaying disk usage
- Setting screen display to Enable/Disable
- Setting the Highlight Color
- Displaying instrument status
- Setting the Internal clock (date and time)
- Resetting the instrument
- Connecting to GPIB network
- Connecting to Ethernet
- Setting up hardcopies
- Running calibration and diagnostics
- Upgrading the system software

External Keyboards

You can connect either an ASCII 101-key keyboard or a JIS (Japanese) 106-key keyboard to the keyboard connector on the rear panel. Do the following steps to let the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator know the type of keyboard being used:

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom).
2. Select **Keyboard Type** using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.
3. Select **ASCII** or **JIS** using the general purpose knob or use the ◀ or ▶ buttons.

The changes take effect immediately.

About Key Operation

You can use the PC keyboard for menu operations rather than using the instrument front panel keys or buttons. Use the keyboard to input the file name, directory name, and text in the Text/Equation editors. The PC keyboard character keys, ten keys, arrow keys, space key and shift key can be used in place of the front panel keys, buttons, and some menu operation commands. Table 3–49 lists other edit operations you can perform from the PC keyboard.

Table 3–49: External keyboard edit operations

Control keys	Descriptions
Character and numeric keys	Characters found in the character palette can be input from the corresponding keys on the keyboard.
◀ and ▶ keys	Corresponds to the front-panel ◀ and ▶ keys. The caret moves horizontally when using the equation editor.
▲ and ▼ keys	Corresponds to the front-panel ▲ and ▼ keys. The caret moves vertically when using the equation editor.
Delete	Deletes a character to the right of the caret.
Backspace	Deletes a character to the left of the cursor.
Ctrl-C	Copy
Ctrl-X	Cut
Ctrl-V	Paste
Ctrl-Z	Undo
Ctrl-S	Toggles the selection on and off.

Setting General Purpose Knob Direction

Use the general purpose knob to highlight items in the pop-up menu or file list. The default setting for the knob rotation is clockwise for down (backward) and counterclockwise for up (forwards).

- Forward: Turning the knob clockwise causes the highlight bar to move down.
- Backward:Turning the knob counterclockwise causes the highlight bar to move up.

You can change the default setting for the general purpose knob by following the steps below:

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom).
2. Select **Knob Direction** by using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.
3. Select **Forward** or **Backward** using the general purpose knob.

The changes take effect immediately.

Formatting a Floppy Disk

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator provides the function to quickly format a 2HD 1.44 MB floppy disk into Windows 9x (FAT16/VFAT compatible) format. Note that you cannot define a disk label for the floppy disk.

***NOTE**. Formatting a floppy disk destroys any data on that disk. Before formatting a disk, make sure it does not contain needed data.*

Do the following steps to format a floppy disk:

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Disk** (bottom).
2. Push the **Quick Format** side button to begin formatting.

While the formatting is being executed, the clock icon is displayed in the screen. When formatting is complete, the clock icon disappears and the floppy disk drive LED goes off.

Displaying Disk Usage

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator displays the information regarding the disk usage and free space on the hard disk and floppy disk.

1. Push the **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Disk** (bottom).
2. Push the **Main** side button for the hard disk or **Floppy** side button for the floppy disk.

The volume label, free space, and total capacity for the selected storage drive is displayed.

Free space for the currently selected storage drive is displayed in the file list on the EDIT menu screen.

***NOTE**. The internal hard disk free space that the user can use is restricted to 90% of the hard disk space. You can transfer files over the limitation using ftp, however, keep this restriction to maintain the instrument performance.*

Screen Display Enable/Disable

In some instances, such as having the AWG400 installed in a rack mount, you may not want to have the LCD back light turned on.

Do the following steps to turn off the LCD Back Light:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**LCD Back Light** (screen)
2. Turn the general purpose knob or ◀ ▶ buttons to Enable or Disable the Screen Display.

Push CLEAR MENU (front-panel) twice to turn on the LCD Back Light.

Highlight Color

Do the following steps a highlight color:

1. Repeatedly press the ▼ button until Hilight Color: is highlighted.
2. Turn the general purpose knob clockwise or counterclockwise until you get the color what you want.

The changes take effect immediately. You can display the system utility screen and set the highlight color at any time without exiting current tasks.

Displaying Instrument Status

Do the following steps to display the instrument software version and status of the SCPI registers.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Status** (bottom)→**SCPI Registers** (side) to display the current status of the SCPI registers.
2. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Status** (bottom)→**Network** (side) to display the DHCP and NFS information.

Refer to the *AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator Programmer Manual* for the SCPI registers.

Internal Clock (Date and Time)

Do the following steps to set the date and time in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom).
2. Set the current year, month and day in the **Year**, **Month** and **Day** fields.

3. Set the current hour, minutes and seconds in the **Hour**, **Min** and **Sec** fields.

The changes are effective immediately.

Resetting the Instrument

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator uses the Factory Reset and Secure commands to reset the instrument.

Factory Reset

Factory Reset resets the instrument to the factory settings at the time of shipment. Some settings that are set in the UTILITY menu such as Network and GPIB settings, are not reset when **Factory Reset** is initiated.

To perform the factory reset, do the following steps:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

NOTE. *Before pushing the OK side button, confirm that the data in the editor has been saved to a file.*

Secure

Secure is a function that removes the settings and all data files stored in the instrument hard disk. This is sometimes useful when you are storing data that is confidential and when you must transport the instrument for servicing or demonstrations.

CAUTION. *Executing Secure removes all settings and data files in the hard disk. Make sure you want to remove all data before execution. You cannot recover the removed files.*

Do the following steps to execute the Secure function:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Secure** (side).

   The following message is displayed in the message box:

   ```
   Secure destroys settings, and ALL DATA FILES
   ```

2. Make sure that you want to remove all the settings and data.
3. Push the **OK** side button.

   All files, including the files used in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator system, are removed, and the instrument settings are replaced with the factory settings.

Connecting to a GPIB Network

The GPIB Interface can be used for remotely controlling the instrument from an external device (such as a PC) and for capturing waveform data from an external device (such as a Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscope). This section describes how to set up the instrument GPIB interface.

Refer to the *AWG400-Series Programmer Manual* (Tektronix part number 070-A810-XX) for information regarding remote control commands. Refer to *Capturing Waveforms* on page 3–203 for procedures and information regarding how to transfer waveforms from an external device.

Setting GPIB Parameters

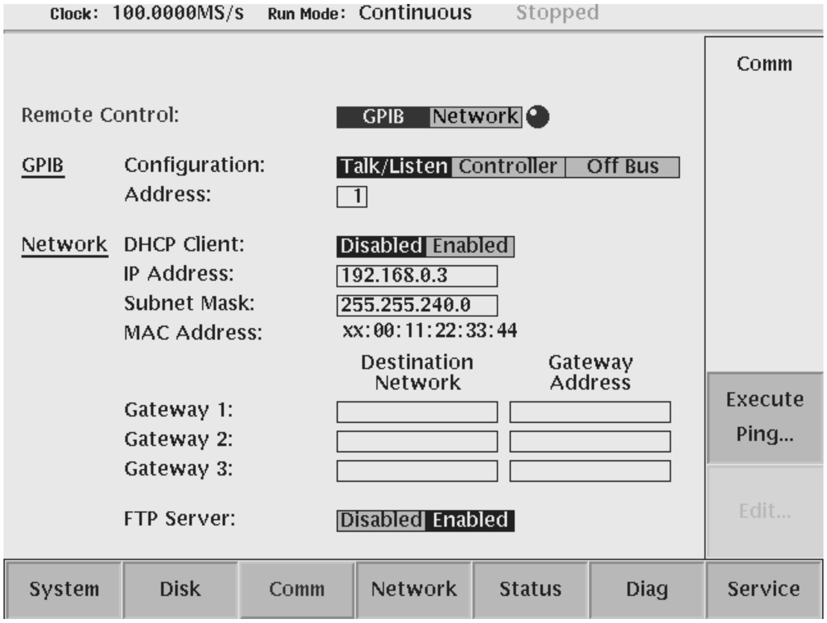
Configuration and Address are two GPIB parameters that you must set. The GPIB Configuration contains three parameters:

- Talk/Listen: Select this mode to remotely control the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator from an external host computer.
- Controller: Select this mode to use the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator as a controller to transfer waveform data to or from another device connected to the GPIB bus.
- Off Bus: Select this mode to electronically disconnect the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator from the GPIB bus.

The GPIB address defines a unique address for the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator. Each device connected to the GPIB bus must have a unique GPIB address. The GPIB address must be from 0 to 30.

Do the following steps to set the GPIB parameters:

1. Select **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Comm** (bottom). The screen as shown in Figure 3–67 appears.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Remote Control: GPIB Network

GPIB Configuration: Talk/Listen Controller Off Bus

Address: 1

Network DHCP Client: Disabled Enabled

IP Address: 192.168.0.3

Subnet Mask: 255.255.240.0

MAC Address: xx:00:11:22:33:44

	Destination Network	Gateway Address
Gateway 1:		
Gateway 2:		
Gateway 3:		

FTP Server: Disabled Enabled

GPIB setup parameters

Figure 3-67: GPIB setup screen menu

2. Select **GPIB** for remote control.

  a. Select Remote control using ▲ and ▼ buttons.

  b. Select **GPIB**.

3. Set the GPIB bus connection parameter:

  a. Select the GPIB Configuration using ▲ and ▼ buttons.

  b. Select a configuration mode: **Talk/Listen**, **Controller**, or **Off Bus**.

4. Set the instrument GPIB address:

  a. Select the GPIB Address using ▲ and ▼ buttons.

  b. Set the GPIB address using the general purpose knob.

  Make sure that the value you enter is unique for this GPIB bus.

The changes take effect immediately.

Ethernet Networking

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can be connected to a network to access hard disk file systems in the remote computers that use Network File System (NFS) protocol. You can also log into the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator from the remote computer to transfer files by using FTP link software.

You can set up to three remote computers with the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator and mount their file systems at the same time. You select the remote files the same way that you select the internal hard disk or floppy disk.

This subsection describes the following network operations:

- Connecting to Ethernet
- Testing the network connection
- Network Parameter
- Mounting remote file systems
- Setting a FTP link

Refer to the *AWG400-Series Programmer Manual* for more information on Ethernet networking.

Connecting to the Ethernet

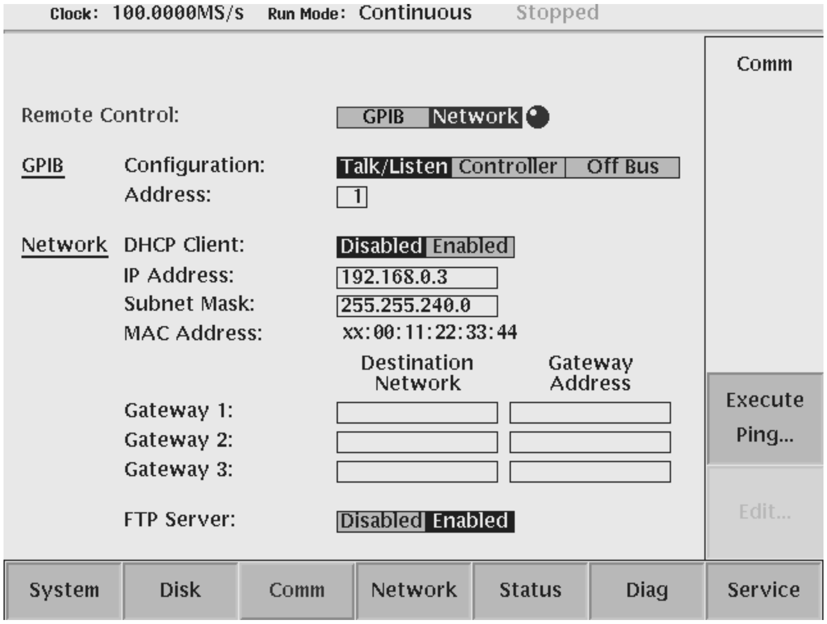
You can connect the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator to a 10/100 BASE-T Ethernet network. To mount a remote file system or to control the instrument from an external computer, you must set the following parameters in the instrument:

- IP address and Subnet Mask for the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator
- Up to three gateway addresses (if necessary)

Figure 3–68 shows the setup screen menu that you can use to set the network parameters to your AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Set the three previous parameters to remote-control the instrument. Set at least the last two parameters to use FTP or NFS for file transfer.

***NOTE**. To connect the instrument to the Ethernet, you need to connect the cables before you power on the instrument.*



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Remote Control: GPIB **Network**

GPIB Configuration: **Talk/Listen** Controller Off Bus

Address: 1

Network DHCP Client: **Disabled** Enabled

IP Address: 192.168.0.3

Subnet Mask: 255.255.240.0

MAC Address: xx:00:11:22:33:44

	Destination Network	Gateway Address
Gateway 1:		
Gateway 2:		
Gateway 3:		

FTP Server: Disabled **Enabled**

Network setup parameters

Figure 3–68: Network setup screen menu

To let the network recognize the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator, set the IP address and Subnet Mask. If necessary, also set the Gateway address by following the steps below:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Comm** (bottom) to display the network setup screen menu.

Select Network for remote control.

2. Select **Remote Control** using ▲ and ▼ buttons.
3. Select **Network** using ◀ and ▶ buttons.

Set the IP address. You can set the IP address manually or using DHCP. If you set it using DHCP, skip to the step 9.

Do the following steps to set the IP address manually:

4. Move to the **DHCP Client** field using ▲ and ▼ buttons, and select **Disabled** using ◀ and ▶ buttons.
5. Move to the **IP Address** field using ▲ and ▼ buttons, and select **Edit...**.
6. Set the IP address in the IP Address setup dialog box.
7. Set the subnet mask in the **Subnet Mask** field if necessary.
8. Skip to the step 10.

Do the following steps to set the IP address using DHCP.

9. Move to the **DHCP Client** field using ⬆ and ⬇ buttons, and select **Enabled** using ⬅ and ➡ buttons.

   IP address will be displayed in the IP Address field.

10. Set the Gateway Address in the **Destination Network** and **Gateway Address** field, if necessary.

11. Set the FTP server Enabled or Disabled in the **FTP Server** field.

The changes take effect immediately. If you are not familiar with the network setup, consult with your network administrator.

***NOTE**. The port number is fixed to 4000. This port number must be assigned to the application software or the Ethernet driver on the external controller.*
The MAC Address is displayed on the network setup screen menu.

Testing the Network Connection

Complete the physical connection and settings. Verify that the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can recognize the network and the remote computers, and whether the network can recognize the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Do the following steps to use the ping command to verify that the instrument can communicate with the network:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Network** (bottom) or
   UTILITY (front-panel)→**Comm** (bottom).

2. Push the **Execute Ping** side button to display a dialog box.

3. Enter the IP address of the remote computer in the dialog box.

4. Push the **OK** side button.

   The ping command sends a packet to the remote computer specified by the IP address. When the computer receives the packet, it sends the packet back to the sender (your AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator).

   When the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can communicate with the remote computer through the network, the message as shown in Figure 3–69 is displayed. If it failed to establish the communication, the message box displaying an error message such as *Unknown error* is displayed.

5. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for all the remote computers to which you desire to verify the connection through the network.

192.168.0.3 is alive

Figure 3-69: Message box to indicate the establishment of communication

Network Parameters

Status Display. Select either **Comm** bottom button to display Communication screen or **Status** (bottom) → **Network** (side) buttons to display Status screen that show setting parameters for the network.

DHCP
Server:
Default Gateway:
Lease Time: 24:00:00
Renewal Timer:

NFS
Timeout: 0:05:00
UID: 2001
GID: 500

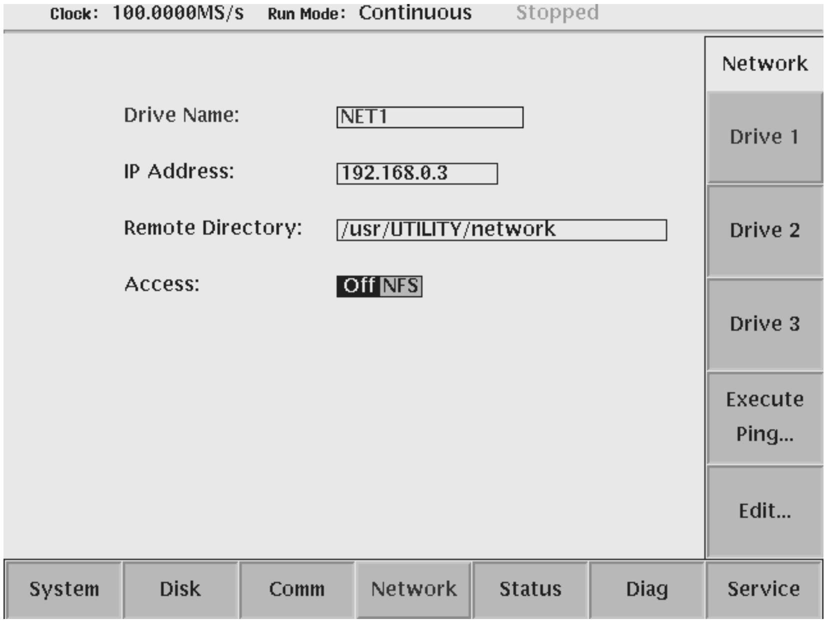
Figure 3-70: Network Status screen

Optional Parameters. You can set the DHCP Lease Time, NFS Timeout time and FTP sever version. Do the following steps to set these parameters.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Service** (bottom)→**Tweak AWG1** (pop-up)→**OK** (side).
2. Push **DHCP Lease Time** (side) and set the DHCP Lease time using the general purpose knob or the numeric keypads. The time range is from 30 to 86400 seconds (24 hours).
3. Push **NFS Timeout** (side) and set the NFS Timeout time using the general purpose knob or the numeric keypads. The time range is from 25 to 300 seconds.
4. Push **FTP Version** (side) button to toggle between **Standard** and **Obsolete**. Usually, set Standard.

Mounting Remote File Systems

Figure 3–71 shows the screen menu in which you can set the parameters to mount a remote file system on the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator, using the NFS protocol. Refer to the documentation about the NFS, for the details on the remote file system, the NFS protocol and/or how to set the NFS in the computers.


Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive Name: NET1

IP Address: 192.168.0.3

Remote Directory: /usr/UTILITY/network

Access: Off NFS

Figure 3–71: UTILITY screen mounting remote file system

Do the following steps to mount the remote file system:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Network** (bottom).
2. Push the **Drive1** side button for setting a remote file system as a drive 1.

   Do the following substeps to set the remote file system for the Drive 1:

***NOTE**. You cannot select the Access field unless you set an IP address and remote directory.*

   a. Select the Drive Name: field using ⏶ and ⏷ buttons.
   b. Push the **Edit...** side button.

      The Drive Name dialog is displayed.
   c. Input a drive name using the Key pad and the General Purpose knob. (Push the Shift key to change the characters in the dialog box to upper case.)
   d. Push the **OK** side button to enter the drive name.

The drive name set here is displayed as one of the drive selections. Figure 3–72 shows an example of the drive selections. In this case, the drive name of Drive 1 is changed with NET1 to UNIX02.

Set the remote computers IP address in the IP Address field:

e. Select the IP Address: field using ⬆ and ⬇ buttons.

f. Push the **Edit...** side button.

Network Drive Address dialog is displayed.

g. Input a IP Address using the Key pad and the General Purpose knob.

h. Push the **OK** side button to enter the IP Address.

Set the remote computers directory in the Remote Directory field:

i. Select the Remote Directory: field using ⬆ and ⬇ buttons.

j. Push the **Edit...** side button.

Network Drive Directory dialog is displayed.

k. Input a remote computers directory name using the Key pad and the General Purpose knob. (A push on the Shift key changes characters in the dialog box to a capital letter.)

l. Push the **OK** side button to enter the remote computers directory name.

Specify a remote file system node in the Remote Directory field:

m. Select the Access: field using ⬆ and ⬇ buttons.

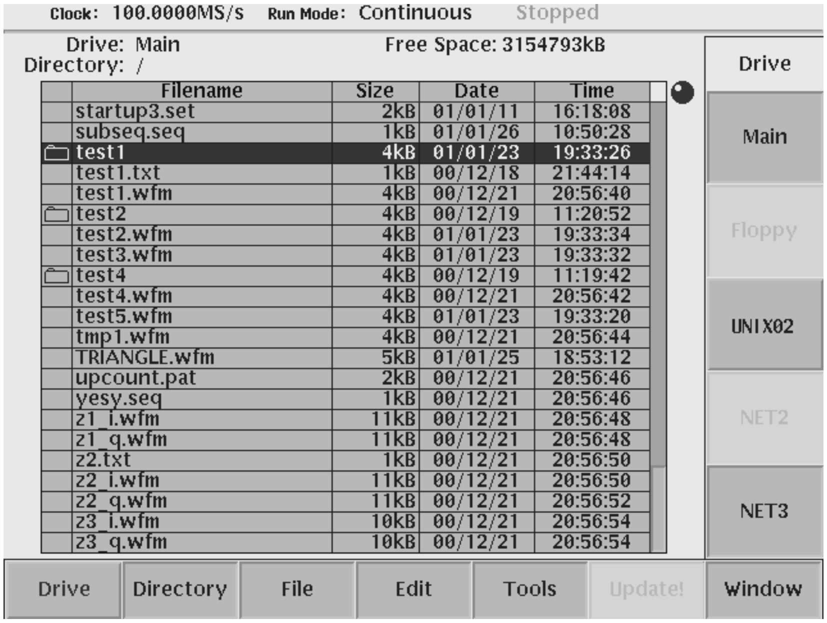
n. Select Off or NFS using ⬅, ➡, or the General Purpose knob.

You can connect or disconnect to/from the network logically while connecting physically. Select Off to disconnect, and NFS to connect.

You can use all the file system existing under the node you specified here through the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

3. Repeat substeps a through n to set the remote file systems for Drive 2 and Drive 3, if necessary.

The changes take effect immediately. You can use the remote file system defined in above procedures by selecting a storage media.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154793kB
Directory: /

	Filename	Size	Date	Time
	startup3.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:18:08
	subseq.seq	1kB	01/01/26	10:50:28
🗀	test1	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:26
	test1.txt	1kB	00/12/18	21:44:14
	test1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:40
🗀	test2	4kB	00/12/19	11:20:52
	test2.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:34
	test3.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:32
🗀	test4	4kB	00/12/19	11:19:42
	test4.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:42
	test5.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:20
	tmp1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:44
	TRIANGLE.wfm	5kB	01/01/25	18:53:12
	upcount.pat	2kB	00/12/21	20:56:46
	yesy.seq	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:46
	z1_i.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:48
	z1_q.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:48
	z2.txt	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:50
	z2_i.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:50
	z2_q.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:52
	z3_i.wfm	10kB	00/12/21	20:56:54
	z3_q.wfm	10kB	00/12/21	20:56:54

Figure 3–72: Drive selections in EDIT menu

NOTE. *The UID (User Identification) and GID (Group Identification) number for the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator is 2001 and 500.*

FTP Link

Set the FTP Server to enable you to enter into the hard disk or floppy disk file system of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator from a remote computer.

Type the following command on your computer keyboard:

```
ftp <IP address>
```

Press Return on the keyboard.

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator prompts you to enter a login name and password. Press the Return or Enter key on your keyboard. The message

```
'User log in'
```

and the prompt

```
'ftp>'
```

appears when you are successfully logged in.

At the prompt, you can use the commands as listed in Table 3–50. These are the only available FTP commands for use with the instrument.

Table 3–50: Available FTP commands

Commands	Descriptions
ascii	Sets the file transfer mode to ascii.
binary	Sets the file transfer mode to binary. Use this mode when you transfer a file other than the text file.
bye	Terminate the FTP session and exit the FTP.
cd *xxxx*	Changes the current working directory on the instrument. Specify a directory at *xxxx*. To change the drive, specify "/<*drive-name*>/". For example, to move into the floppy disk, type the following: `cd "/floppy/"` Type `"/main/"` for the hard disk drive and `"/NET1/"` for remote file system NET1, and so on.
dir	Lists all the files in the current directory in the instrument.
get *xxxx [local-file]*	Receives the file *xxxx* in the instrument and stores it in the local file. The *xxxx* name is used if the local file is not specified.
hash	Toggles the hash-sign on and off. The hash-sign is printed for each data block transferred when the hash-sign (#) is set to on.
ls	Lists the all files in the current working directory in the instrument.
put *xxxx [remote-file]*	Transfers the file *xxxx* in your local computer and stores it in the instrument file. The same *xxxx* name is used for a instrument file if the remote file is not specified.
pwd	Print the path to the current directory in the instrument
quit	Terminates the FTP session and exits the FTP.

***NOTE**. The FTP server in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator does not support mget commands, or meta characters. For example, when you use the* put *command with meta characters as follows:*

```
put ABS.WFM *.*
```

*a file named *.* may be created in the internal disk of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.*

*This *.* file is not displayed on the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator file list. Access to a file created in this manner is not possible through the front panel. Use GPIB commands to access such files.*

In some FTP client software, you may not be able to use these commands.

Hardcopy

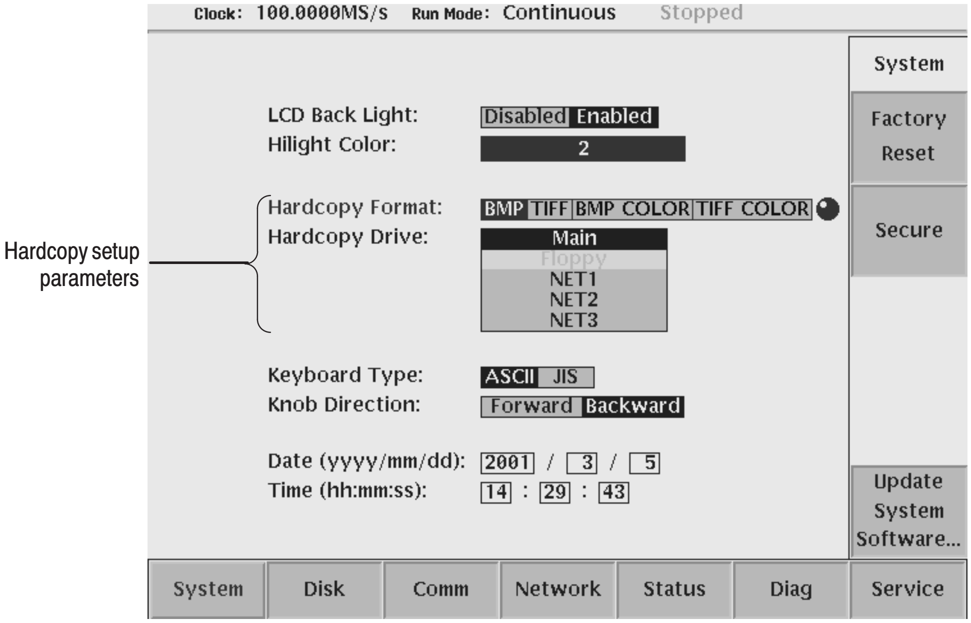
The image on the screen can be output to a file. Use a hardcopy file to make reports with a desktop publishing (DTP) application software running on PC, or output those files to a printer using a PC. You cannot connect a printer directly to the instrument.

Initiate the hardcopy function by pushing the HARDCOPY button on the front-panel or entering the GPIB or remote command. You can select either BMP, TIFF, BMP COLOR or TIFF COLOR for the file formats. Select the internal hard disk, floppy disk, or a remote computer file system for the file output destination. The file size is approximately 150 Kbytes for TIFF formats and 300 Kbytes for other formats.

Hardcopy Settings

Specify the hardcopy format and the output destination you needed before running a hardcopy.

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom) to display the hardcopy setup screen. See Figure 3–73.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

LCD Back Light: Disabled Enabled

Hilight Color: 2

Hardcopy Format: BMP TIFF BMP COLOR TIFF COLOR

Hardcopy Drive: Main Floppy NET1 NET2 NET3

Keyboard Type: ASCII JIS

Knob Direction: Forward Backward

Date (yyyy/mm/dd): 2001 / 3 / 5

Time (hh:mm:ss): 14 : 29 : 43

Figure 3–73: Hardcopy setup screen

2. Select **Hard Copy Format** using the ▲ or ▼ button.

3. Select either **BMP**, **TIFF**, **BMP COLOR** or **TIFF COLOR** using the general purpose knob or the ◀ or ▶ button.

4. Select the **Hard Copy Drive** where the files are stored using the ▲ or ▼ button.

5. Select **Main**, **Floppy**, or **NETx** using the general purpose knob.

   The **NETx** refers to the remote computer file system that you defined. By default, they are **NET1**, **NET2** and **NET3**. For defining the remote file system, refer to page 3–188.

Running Hardcopy

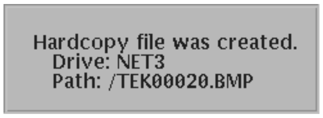
When you push the HARDCOPY button on the front panel, the currently displayed image on the screen is output to an image file. The file format and output destination drive are as specified in the **UTILITY** menu. The destination directory is the current one.

Follow the steps below to make a hardcopy.

1. Display the view on the screen that you want hardcopied.

2. Push the **HARDCOPY** button on the front panel.

   A message box displaying the output destination and file name appear when the hardcopy function terminates. See Figure 3–74.



```
Hardcopy file was created.
  Drive: NET3
  Path: /TEK00020.BMP
```

Figure 3–74: Hardcopy complete message box

3. Push the **OK** side button.

Use the EDIT menu to rename a created file or move it to another directory.

Saving Hardcopy to a File

If you use the HARDCOPY button to produce a hardcopy file, a file name such as *TEK00000.BMP* is automatically assigned as the file name. The “TEK” substring is fixed. The “00000” substring indicates the counter value, which is reset to 0 each time you power on the instrument. Hereafter, it is incremented by 1 each time a hardcopy is produced. The suffix is either ‘BMP’ or ‘TIF’, depending on the specified format. The output destination drive will be as specified in the UTILITY menu. The drive and path are the current drive and directory of the GPIB that are set when the **Hardcopy** command is received from the GPIB.

If you use the GPIB command to produce a hardcopy, you must specify the output filename using the filename only. Refer to the *AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator* Programmer Manual for more details.

Calibration and Diagnostics

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can perform calibration and tests on the internal hardware. This function requires minimal time to perform, requires no additional equipment, and tests the internal hardware of the instrument. They can be used to quickly determine if the instrument is suitable for service.

The calibration and diagnostics can be performed in the screen that appears when you push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Diag** (bottom).

Calibration

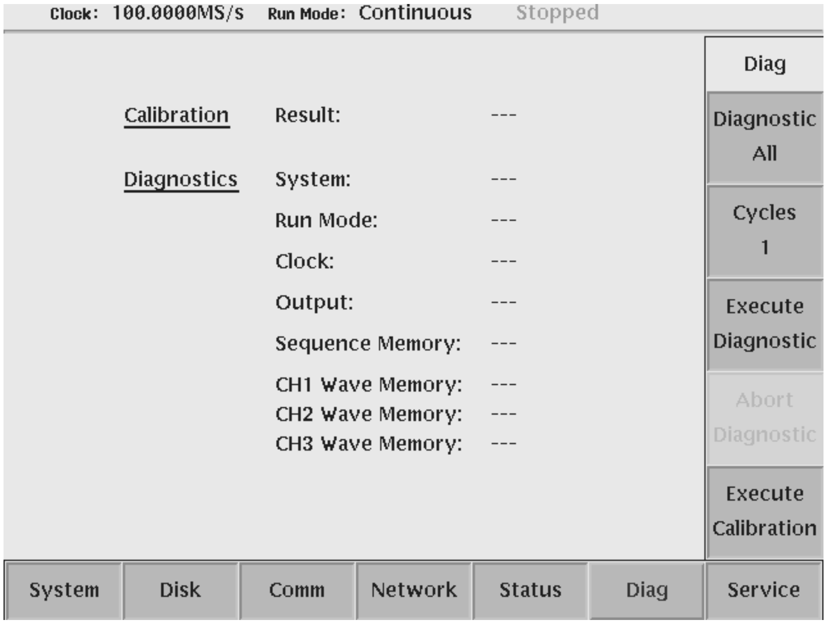
The calibration updates the internal constants so that the instrument outputs waveforms within the specified accuracy. See Figure 3–76 for the calibration items and possible error codes.

The calibration must be performed in the following cases:

- After a 20-minute warm up period
- Prior to high precision waveform output
- When the ambient temperature has changed more than +5 ˚C or less than –5 ˚C from the previous calibration

Refer to the calibration and diagnostic screen to see if calibration has recently been performed on the instrument. See Figure 3–76.

The calibration has completed when Done is displayed in the Calibration result field. No calibration has been performed if the - - - is displayed. The factory reset also causes the - - - to be displayed.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Calibration Result: ---

Diagnostics System: ---

Run Mode: ---

Clock: ---

Output: ---

Sequence Memory: ---

CH1 Wave Memory: ---

CH2 Wave Memory: ---

CH3 Wave Memory: ---

Figure 3–75: Calibration and diagnostic screen

***NOTE**. Do not power off while the calibrations are running. The calibration data in the memory may be lost if the instrument is powered off while the calibrations are running.*

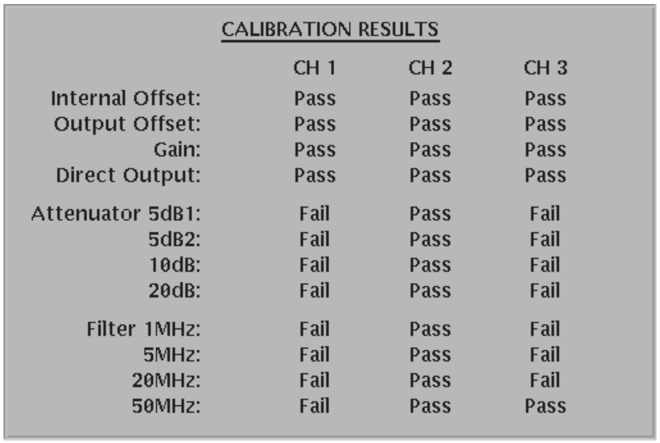
Do the following steps to execute the calibration:

1. Push the **RUN** button to turn the output off if a waveform is being output.

   The RUN LED is off.

2. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Diag** (bottom)→**Execute Calibration** (side). The internal calibration routine runs immediately. The calibration time will be between 10 and 30 seconds depending on the instrument you are using.

The status message box appears when calibration has been terminated. See Figure 3–76.



CALIBRATION RESULTS

	CH 1	CH 2	CH 3
Internal Offset:	Pass	Pass	Pass
Output Offset:	Pass	Pass	Pass
Gain:	Pass	Pass	Pass
Direct Output:	Pass	Pass	Pass
Attenuator 5dB1:	Fail	Pass	Fail
5dB2:	Fail	Pass	Fail
10dB:	Fail	Pass	Fail
20dB:	Fail	Pass	Fail
Filter 1MHz:	Fail	Pass	Fail
5MHz:	Fail	Pass	Fail
20MHz:	Fail	Pass	Fail
50MHz:	Fail	Pass	Pass

Figure 3–76: Status message box

Pass is displayed in the message box if the calibration successfully terminates. Fail is displayed if calibration encounters a problem.

Push the **OK** side button or **CLEAR MENU** button to erase the status message box and return to the screen shown in Figure 3–75.

Power-on Diagnostics

At power on, a limited set of hardware tests for all the test categories are performed and the results are displayed on the screen. The instrument displays the following message when an error is detected:

Press any key to go to the SETUP menu screen.

See Table 3–51 for the test categories and error codes.

Manual Diagnostics

The manual diagnostics routines can execute a full set of hardware tests for all the test categories or only for the specified category except for the DAC. You can also specify a test cycle of 1 to infinite times.

Do the following steps to execute the diagnostics:

1. Push the **RUN** button to turn the output off if a waveform is being output.

   The RUN LED turns off.

2. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Diag** (bottom).

   The screen shown in Figure 3–75 appears.

3. Push the **Diagnostic *xxxx*** side button and select a test category by using the general purpose knob.

   The *xxxx* represents currently selected test category. You can select a test category from All, System, Run Mode, Clock, Output, Seq Mem and Wave Mem. If you select All, the diagnostic routines of all categories are executed.

4. Push the **Cycle *n*** side button and select a test cycle by using the general purpose knob.

   The *n* represents a currently selected test cycle. You can select a test cycle from 1, 3, 10, 100 or Infinite. If you select Infinite, the diagnostic tests are repeated infinitely. Push the **Abort Diagnostic** side button to stop the execution.

5. Push the **Execute Diagnostic** side button to start the diagnostic tests.

The **- - -** is displayed at each test category on the screen either at the beginning or after the factory reset. The mark **- - -** is also displayed while the diagnostic test is executing. See Figure 3–76. When the diagnostic test terminates without error, Pass is displayed instead of the **- - -**. The test routine displays the error code and skips to the next test if an error is detected.

See Table 3–51 for the test categories and error codes.

Table 3–51: Diagnostic categories and error codes

Categories	Error codes	Descriptions
Calibration	1101 to 1106	Internal offset calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1201 to 1206	Output offset calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1301 to 1306	Gain calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1401 to 1406	Gain difference calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1501 to 1506	Directly out calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1601 to 1606	Attenuator calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1611 to 1616	5 dB attenuator calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1621 to 1626	10 dB attenuator 1 calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1631 to 1636	10 dB attenuator 2 calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1641 to 1646	20 dB attenuator calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1701 to 1706	Filter calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1711 to 1716	1 MHz filter calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1721 to 1726	5 MHz filter calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1731 to 1736	20 MHz filter calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
	1741 to 1746	50 MHz filter calibration error (CH1 to CH3)
System	2100	System test error
	2101	Real-time clock power test error
	2102	Configuration record, checksum error
	2103	Incorrect configuration
	2104	Memory size test error
	2105	Fixed-Disk drive initialization status error
	2106	Time status error
	2110 to 2116	Front panel test error
	2700 to 2703	Calibration data test error
Run mode	3000	Run mode test error
	3100	Run mode control register test error
	3101 to 3132	Run mode control register test error (bit 0 to bit 31)

Table 3–51: Diagnostic categories and error codes (cont.)

Categories	Error codes	Descriptions
Clock	4000	Clock test error
	4100	PLL lock/unlock test error
Sequence memory	5000	Sequence memory test error
	5100	Data bus test error
	5101 to 5132	Data bus test error (bit 0 to bit 31)
	5200	Address bus test error
	5201 to 5224	Address bus test error (bit 0 to bit 23)
	5300	Chip cell test error
	5301 to 5302	Chip test error (chip 0 to chip 1)
	5350	Chip select test error
	5351 to 5352	Chip select test error (chip select 0 to chip select 1)
Event Table	5600	Data bus test error
	5601 to 5632	Data bus test error (bit 0 to bit 31)
	5700	Address bus test error
	5701 to 5704	Address bus test error (bit 0 to bit 3)
	5800	Chip cell test error
	5801 to 5802	Chip cell test error (chip 0 to chip 1)
Waveform memory (CH1)	6000	Waveform memory test error
	6100	Data bus test error
	6101 to 6132	Data bus test error (bit 0 to bit 31)
	6200	Address bus test error
	6201 to 6224	Address bus test error (bit 0 to bit 23)
	6300	Chip cell test error
	6301 to 6332	Chip cell test error (chip 0 to chip 31)
	6350	Chip select test error
	6351 to 6382	Chip select test error (chip select o to chip select 31)

Table 3–51: Diagnostic categories and error codes (cont.)

Categories	Error codes	Descriptions
Waveform memory (CH2)	6400	Data bus test error
	6401 to 6432	Data bus test error (bit 0 to bit 31)
	6500	Address bus test error
	6501 to 6524	Address bus test error (bit 0 to bit 23)
	6600	Chip cell test error
	6601 to 6632	Chip cell test error (chip 0 to chip 31)
	6650	Chip select test error
	6651 to 6682	Chip select test error (chip select o to chip select 31)
Waveform memory (CH3)	6700	Data bus test error
	6701 to 6732	Data bus test error (bit 0 to bit 31)
	6800	Address bus test error
	6801 to 6824	Address bus test error (bit 0 to bit 23)
	6900	Chip cell test error
	6901 to 6932	Chip cell test error (chip 0 to chip 31)
	6950	Chip select test error
	6951 to 6982	Chip select test error (chip select o to chip select 31)
Output	7000	Output test error
	7100	Internal offset device test error
	7101 to 7106	Internal offset device test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7200	Output offset device test error
	7201 to 7206	Output offset device test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7300	ARB gain test error
	7301 to 7306	ARB gain test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7400	Direct gain test error
	7401 to 7406	Direct gain test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7510	5 dB attenuator test error
	7511 to 7516	5 dB attenuator test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7520	10 dB attenuator 1 test error
	7521 to 7526	10 dB attenuator 1 test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7530	10 dB attenuator 2 test error

Table 3–51: Diagnostic categories and error codes (cont.)

Categories	Error codes	Descriptions
	7531 to 7536	10 dB attenuator 2 test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7540	20 dB attenuator test error
	7541 to 7546	20 dB attenuator test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7610	1 MHz filter test error
	7611 to 7616	1 MHz filter test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7620	5 MHz filter test error
	7621 to 7626	5 MHz filter test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7630	20 MHz filter test error
	7631 to 7636	20 MHz filter test error (CH1 to CH3)
	7640	50 MHz filter test error
	7641 to 7646	50 MHz filter test error (CH1 to CH3)
Waveform / Sequence	9111	Load error, waveform memory full
	9112	Load error, invalid memory length
	9113	Load error, short memory length
	9114	Load error, changed memory length
Sequence	9121	Load error, invalid file name in the sequence
	9122	Load error, invalid nest level
	9123	Load error, infinity loop in the sub sequence
	9124	Load error, infinity sub sequence loop
	9125	Load error, over the limit line number
	9126	Load error, invalid jump destination
	9127	Load error, sequence memory full
	9128	Load error, infinity loop, not available goto one
Waveform	9151	Load Caution, some output disable channel
Waveform / Sequence	9152	Output caution, output disable

Upgrading the System Software

The system software in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can be updated by using the utility menu. The System software consists of both the user program and the operating system. The upgrades can be done independent of each other. Refer to page 3–180 for information regarding the current system software versions.

Preparation

Do the following prior to performing the system software upgrade procedure:

- Read the Instruction documents included in the upgrade kit carefully.
- Refer to the instruction documents included in the upgrade kit for more information.

CAUTION. *To avoid damage to the instrument, follow the instruction documentation included in the upgrade kit.*

Upgrade Procedure

Follow the steps below to upgrade system software:

1. Copy the system software in the upgrade kit to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator internal hard disk.
2. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel) → **System** (bottom) → **Update System Software...** (side) → **Update Program...** or **Update OS...** (side).
3. Before executing the update, a caution dialog appears. Push the **OK** (side) button to continue, or the **Cancel** (side) button to abort.

   The Select File dialog box appears.
4. Select the file for upgrade that was copied in step 1, then press the **OK** (side) button.

   The file confirmation dialog box appears.
5. Press the **OK** (side) button.

   The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator checks the selected file properties. The “Illegal file format” message appears if you select an invalid file. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator updates the system software.
6. After the updating procedure has completed, power off, then power on the instrument. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator starts up with updated system software.

Capturing Waveforms

This section explains how to transfer waveforms from the instruments to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator using the GPIB interfaces.

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator captures the waveform data acquired in oscilloscopes and/or generated in generators over the GPIB interface without control by an external controller. The waveforms captured are automatically converted to waveforms that the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can handle.

When you use this function, set the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator GPIB configuration to controller.

Possible Instruments

The Waveform Generator captures waveforms from following instruments:

- Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscopes
- LeCroy DSO oscilloscope

Basic Concept on Communication for Capturing

Waveform data is transferred over the GPIB network. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must be the controller and the other instrument(s) must be in the Talk/Listen mode. All instruments including the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must have a unique GPIB address.

When you execute this function, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator starts addressing the instruments that are connecting to the same GPIB network from the lower to the higher GPIB address. When an addressed instrument responds, the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator stops addressing and starts the negotiation for waveform data transfer.

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator communicates with the first instrument that responds (possibly the one that has the lowest GPIB address in the same network) and the type that you specified.

You must set the GPIB address and Talk/Listen mode, but you do not need the other settings in the source instrument. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator performs all settings to the source instrument necessary for waveform transfer during negotiation.

Procedures for Capturing Waveforms

Do the following steps to capture a waveform:

1. Set the GPIB parameters in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

   The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must be set to the controller. Refer to *Connecting to a GPIB Network* on page 3–182 for setting the GPIB parameters.

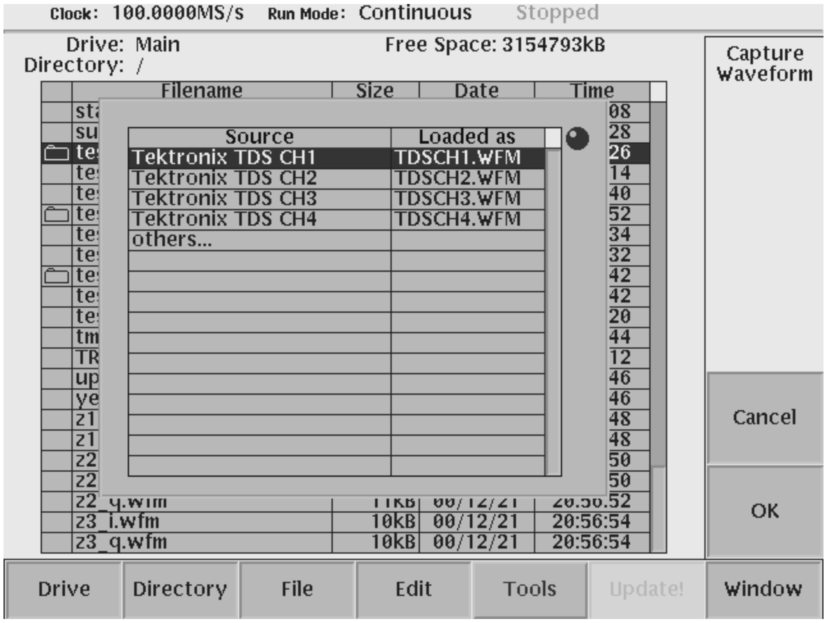
2. Set the GPIB address and Talk/Listen mode in the source instrument.

3. Start acquisition in the source instrument.

Do the following steps to capture the waveform:

1. Push **EDIT** (front-panel)→**Tools** (bottom)→**Capture Waveform** (side).

   The dialog box listing the instruments appears as shown in Figure 3–77.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154793kB

Directory: /

Source	Loaded as
Tektronix TDS CH1	TDSCH1.WFM
Tektronix TDS CH2	TDSCH2.WFM
Tektronix TDS CH3	TDSCH3.WFM
Tektronix TDS CH4	TDSCH4.WFM
others...	

Figure 3–77: Source instrument selection dialog box

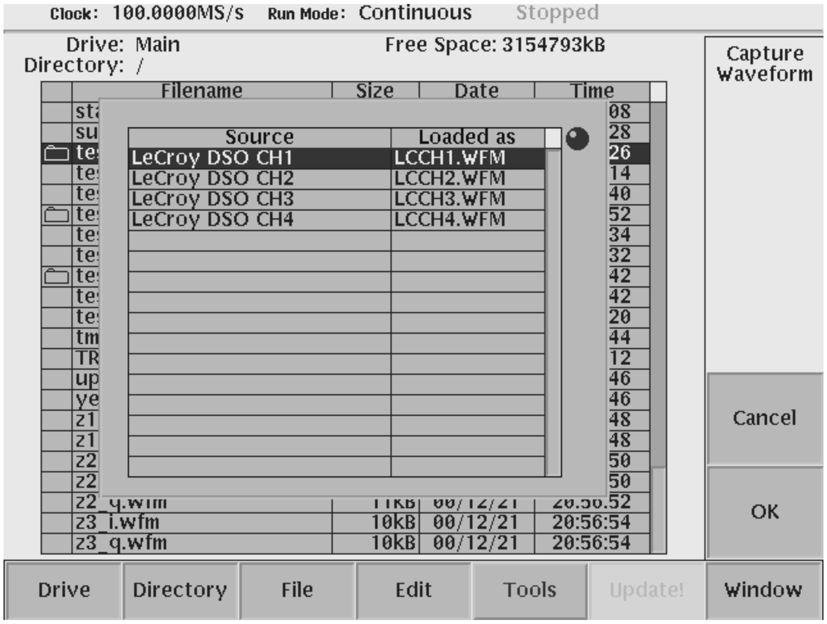
   a. If necessary, select **Others...** to open the other source instrument list.

      The dialog box listing the instruments appears as shown in Figure 3–78.

   b. Select a source instrument from the list.

c. Push the **OK** side button.

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator starts transferring the waveform from the selected source instrument. The file transferred to the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator is automatically converted and saved in the file specified in the column of the line you selected. If needed, change the file name and perform another waveform data transfer.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main
Directory: /
Free Space: 3154793kB

Source	Loaded as
LeCroy DSO CH1	LCCH1.WFM
LeCroy DSO CH2	LCCH2.WFM
LeCroy DSO CH3	LCCH3.WFM
LeCroy DSO CH4	LCCH4.WFM

Filename	Size	Date	Time
z3_i.wfm	10kB	00/12/21	20:56:54
z3_q.wfm	10kB	00/12/21	20:56:54

Figure 3-78: Source instrument selection under Others...

About Transferred Files

When you capture a waveform from a selected instrument, the corresponding waveform file is created in the current directory of the current drive. At the same time, the set file is also created to save the setup information of the selected instrument such as amplitude and offset.

Use the set file to output the waveform file with the same settings as those captured in the instrument.

Waveform Programming Language

This section describes the Waveform Programming Language (WPL) syntax, rules, and command descriptions. There are also a number of programming examples at the end of this section.

Command Syntax

This manual uses the Backus-Naur Form (BNF) notation, shown in Table 3–52, to describe commands.

Table 3–52: BNF symbols and meanings

Symbol	Meaning
< >	Defined element
[ ]	Optional; can be omitted
…	Previous element(s) may be repeated

General Syntax Rules

Following are the general syntax rules for writing an equation file:

- All spaces, line feeds, and tab codes are ignored unless in a string.
- The concept of a line does not exist.
- All data from a single quote (') to the end of a line is regarded as a comment.
- Alphabetical characters are case-insensitive unless in a string.
- The concept of cursor does not exist. You always work with the whole waveform.
- File attribute functions are unavailable in a waveform expression.
- The maximum length of a string is 256 characters, including spaces. Even if two or more strings are linked by colons (:) in a string expression, the whole length of the linked strings must not exceed 256 characters or an error will occur.
- The total length of strings in the whole equation program can be up to 1,000. (The length is the sum of the number of characters of the string(s) plus a character used as the internal terminal code.)

User-Defined Variables

All user-defined variable names must satisfy the following requirements:

- The first character must be an alphabetical character.
- The rest of the name must consist of an alphabetical character(s), digit(s), and/or an underscore(s) (_).
- The maximum number of characters is 16. All characters in excess of 16 are ignored. Variables that have the same first 16 characters will be regarded as identical.
- Alphabetical characters are case-insensitive. For example, FooBar and foobar are handled as the same variable name.
- You can use user-defined variables in the program without first declaring them.
- User-defined variables are 64-bit floating-point decimal numbers.
- A maximum of 256 variables may be included in a program; this includes the reserved variables, such as clock.
- There are no string variables; all variables require a numeric value.
- Initial variable values are undefined.

The following are unavailable for user-defined variables.

- Reserved word variable names
- Constant names
- Function names
- Keywords (for example, if and marker1)

Waveform Files

Some commands accept a waveform file name enclosed in double quotes. For example: ”sinewave.wfm” . Observe the following rules when using waveform expressions in equations:

- A quoted string can include any character defined in the 7-bit ASCII character set.
- A numeric value can be embedded in a string in the following format:

  “AA”:i:“.WFM”

  If the value of i equals 10, the string “AA10.WFM” will result. Before conversion into the string, the value is rounded to the nearest integer.
- One waveform expression can include a maximum of 10 input files. If the same file name appears more than once in a single waveform expression, that file is considered as one file. An exception to this is that “A.WFM” and “A.WFM”.marker1 are two different files.
- Signal names, as well as variables, are permitted in a waveform expression. Waveform expressions enable you to specify calculation between waveforms in a similar manner as ordinary expressions. For example, if you code the following:

  “A.WFM” = sin(2*pi*scale) + “B.WFM”

  A.WFM is produced as the sum of the sinewave equation and B.WFM waveforms.

Waveform Expression

The output name, placed to the left of an ‘=’, and the name used in the expression to the right of an ‘=’ is a <signal-name>. The marker data may be specified as follows in addition to the name of an ordinary waveform file:

“A.WFM”.marker2 = “A.WFM” > “B.WFM”

In this example, 1 is set as the A.WFM marker 2 value if the A.WFM value is larger than the B.WFM value; 0 is set otherwise. (This is the same as for the compare function of the editor.) The A.WFM analog data is unchanged.

“B.WFM”.marker1 = “A.WFM”.marker1 + “A.WFM”.marker2

In this example, B.WFM’s marker1 is set if either marker 1 or 2 of A.WFM is 1.

In a waveform expression, the data length of the file created and the clock information are determined as follows.

If <output-signal-name> is a marker:

If the output file does not already exist, an error will occur. Attributes such as the data length (output file size) and clock information are unchanged. The analog data section does not change. Neither the size or the close variable value is used. If the waveform expression includes a <signal-name>, then a file shorter than the output file would cause an error. If the input file is longer in this case, the data around the tail will not be used.

If <output-signal-name> is analog data:

A new file is always created without using the output file. Since the same file name may be specified for the input, the new file is tentatively created under another file name; then renamed.

All output file marker values will be 0. The output file data length and clock information will be as indicated on the screen.

If the waveform expression includes one or more <signal-name>s:

The output waveform length will equal to that of the shortest waveforms included in the <waveform-expression>. The clock information will match the one appearing first (that is, the one coded at the leftmost) out of those used in the waveform expression.

If the waveform expression includes no <signal-name>:

The output waveform length depends on the size variable value. The clock value depends on the clock variable value.

Command Descriptions

The WPL commands are listed in alphabetical order. Mathematical functions and operators are described under the headings *Math Functions* on page 3–222 and *Math Operators* on page *3–224*.

Bpf( )

The bpf() statement creates a new waveform file by passing the specified waveform file through a band-pass filter.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
"output_filename" = bpf("filename1", cutoff_freq_lo,
                            cutoff_freq_hi, taps, atten)
```

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file that contains the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` is the name of the source file for the band-pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`cutoff_freq_lo` is the band-pass filter low-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

`cutoff_freq_hi` is the band-pass filter high-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

`taps` is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

`atten` is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example

```
"filtered.wfm" = bpf("sine.wfm", 3.0e6, 5.0e6, 101, 35)
```

Brf( )

The brf() statement creates a new waveform file by passing the specified waveform file through a band-rejection filter.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
"output_filename" = brf("filename1", cutoff_freq_lo,
                         cutoff_freq_hi, taps, atten)
```

Arguments

`"output_filename"` is the complete file name (file name and suffix) to contain the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` is the complete (file name and suffix) name of the source file for the band-pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`cutoff_freq_lo` is the band-reject filter low-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

`cutoff_freq_hi` is the band-reject filter high-frequency cutoff value. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number or as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

`taps` is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

`atten` is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example

```
"filtered.wfm" = brf("sine.wfm", 3.0e6, 5.0e6, 101, 45)
```

Code( )

The code() statement executes code conversion.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = code("filename1", "code-conversion-table")`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name (file name and suffix) to contain the code-converted waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` is the complete (file name and suffix) name of the source file for the code conversion operation. The file is 0 1 pattern data. If the file is an analog waveform file, this function reads as 1 if the data value is equal to or larger than 0.5, and 0 if the value is less than 0.5. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"code-conversion-table"` is the text file containing a code conversion table in text form. You can use the files that are saved with the Code Conversion Table in the waveform or pattern editor. You can also create those text file each line of which composes of the following five fields delimited by comma (,):

PAST source, Current source, Next source, Past output, Output code

Refer to *The Tools Menu* on page 3–87 for the meaning of each field, and to the *Code Conversion Table Text Files* on page G–12. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example `"C1.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "nrz.txt")`

Conv( )

The conv() statement executes convolution between the waveform data of two specified files. All marker values in the output file are set to 0.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = conv("filename1", "filename2")`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name that contains the resultant convolution waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` and `"filename2"` are the names of the files on which you are performing the convolution. Both files must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose each file name within double quotation marks.

Example

```
"newsine.wfm" = conv("sine.wfm", "sine2x.wfm")
```

Copy( )

The copy() statement copies the specified file name to a new file name and/or location on the current drive.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
copy("source_file", "target_file")
```

Arguments `"source_file"` is the complete file name of the file that you want to copy. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"target_file"` is the complete file name for the location to which you are copying the source file. The target file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example

```
copy("sine.wfm", "/test_dir/sine2.wfm")
```

Corr( )

The corr() statement executes correlation between the waveform data of two specified files. All marker values in the output file are set to 0. There are no restrictions on the data lengths of the two waveforms. For markers, the value of the first point is 1, and those of all the others are 0. Refer to *Correlation* on page G–5 for more information.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = corr("filename1", "filename2")`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name that contains the resultant correlation waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` and `"filename2"` are the names of the files on which you are performing the correlation. Both files must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose each file name within double quotation marks.

Example `"corrwave.wfm" = corr("sine.wfm", "sine2x.wfm")`

Data( )

The data() statement writes the defined data points to the specified file. The number of <expression>s specified must equal the number of points. All marker values will be 0. At least one <expression> must be included.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = data(data_defn, data_defn, ...)`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name (file name and suffix) to contain the expanded waveform and marker data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

data_defn is a value that defines the data point value. The first data point value starts at point 0. You must include at least one data definition expression. Separate each definition with a comma.

***NOTE**. This command lets you create a waveform file that does not meet the instrument waveform minimum data requirement (minimum of 64 points). If you create such a file, open it in a waveform editor, and then attempt to save it, the instrument displays a dialog box asking you to correct the problem. If you attempt to load the waveform in the Setup screen, the instrument displays an error message stating that the file does not have enough data points.*

Example `"foo.wfm" = data(1, 0, .2, .4, .5)`

Delete( )

The delete() statement deletes the specified file name from the current drive.

Group Waveform

Syntax `delete("filename")`

Arguments `"filename"` is the complete file name to the file that you want to delete. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example `delete("/test_dir/wvfrms/sine2x.wfm")`

Diff( )

The diff() statement performs a differentiation operation on a specified file. The output file retains all marker values of the input file. Refer to *Differentiation* on page G–1 for information about the differentiation algorithm.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = diff("filename")`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name that contains the resultant waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename"` is the complete name of the file on which you are performing the differentiation operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example `"diffwave.wfm" = diff("log_swp.wfm")`

Expand( )

The Expand() statement horizontally expands (scales) the waveform and marker data of the specified waveform file and writes it to a new file.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = expand("filename", expand_multiplier)`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name that contains the expanded waveform and marker data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename"` is the name of the file on which you are performing the expand operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`expand_multiplier` is an integer value specifying how much to expand the waveform data. The value must be greater than one. Values less than or equal to one result in the output waveform being the same as the input waveform.

Example `"longswp.wfm" = expand("lin_swp.wfm", 2)`

Extract( )

The extract statement extracts the specified portion of a waveform file and writes it to a new file. The marker data is also extracted. Specify the start and end points to extract the data. Waveform data starts at point 0.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = extract("filename", start_point, end_point)`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name that contains the extracted waveform and marker data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename"` is the name of the source file for the extract operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`start_point` is the location of the first data point to extract from the input file. This is an integer value. The starting point value must be less than or equal to the ending point value or an error occurs during compilation.

`end_point` is the location of the last data point to extract from the input file. This is an integer value. The ending point value must be greater than or equal to the starting point value or an error occurs during compilation.

***NOTE**. This command lets you create a waveform file that does not meet the instrument waveform minimum data requirement (minimum of 64 points). If you create such a file, open it in a waveform editor, and then attempt to save it, the instrument displays a dialog box asking you to correct the problem. If you attempt to load the waveform in the Setup screen, the instrument displays an error message stating that the file does not have enough data points.*

Example

```
"shortsin.wfm" = extract("sine.wfm", 0, 511)
```

For (Control Statement)

The for (control statement) provides a structure for executing one or more equation expressions a defined number of times.

Group

Control

Syntax

```
for <var> = <start> to <end> <expr> next
for <var> = <start> to <end> step <incr> <expr> next
```

Arguments

`var` is a variable name that contains the for loop count value. A common variable name used for this purpose is i. As long as the value of var is true (between the start and end values, inclusive), the program executes the expression(s) in the for loop. When var is false (var > end for incr > 0, and var < end for incr > 0), program flow jumps to the line immediately following next.

`start` is a value or expression that defines the starting number (integer or real) of the for statement loop count.

`end` is a value or expression that defines the end number (integer or real) of the for statement loop count.

`incr` is a value or expression used with the optional step keyword to define the size of the loop count increment steps. By default the loop counter increments in steps of 1. The incr can be a negative value in which the loop count decrements steps. The increment value is a real or integer number.

***NOTE**. Although the start, end, and incr arguments accept real numbers, their values are rounded off to the nearest integer value.*

`expr` is one or more equation expressions that are executed when the for loop condition is true.

Example

```
for i = nsht to (size - nsht -1) step 1
    sp = i - nsht
    ep = i + nsht
    "TEMP1.WFM" = extract("NOISE.WFM", sp, ep)
    "TEMP2.WFM" = "TEMP2.WFM" / nump
next
```

Hpf( )

The hpf() statement creates a new file by passing the specified waveform file through a high-pass filter.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
"output_filename" = hpf("filename1", cutoff_freq, taps, atten)
```

Arguments

`"output_filename"` is the complete file name (file name and suffix) to contain the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` is the name of the source file for the high-pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`cutoff_freq` is the high-pass filter cutoff frequency. You can enter the value as a real or scientific notation number. You can also enter the value as an expression that resolves to a valid number.

`taps` is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

`atten` is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example

```
"filtered.wfm" = hpf("sine.wfm", 3.25e5, 2, 25)
```

If (Control Statement)

The if(control statement) provides control statements to execute expressions when a condition resolves to true or false.

Group

Control

Syntax

```
if <condition> then <expr1> endif
if <condition> then <expr1> else <expr2> endif
```

Arguments

`condition` is a conditional expression that resolves to a logical true or false. True equals any nonzero value; false equals zero. When the condition is true, the expression statement is run.

`expr1` is an equation expression you want to execute when condition is true.

`expr2` is an equation expression you want to execute when condition is false. This argument is only valid as part of the else statement of an if/then/else/endif control construct.

Example

```
if cc = 1 then
        "SMOOTH.WFM" = "TEMP2.WFM"
    else
        "SMOOTH.WFM" = join("SMOOTH.WFM", "TEMP2.WFM")
    endif
```

Integ( )

The integ() statement performs an integration operation on a specified file. The output file retains all marker values of the input file. Refer to *Integration* on page G–3 for information about the integration algorithm.

Group

Waveform

Syntax

```
"output_filename" = integ("filename")
```

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the file name that contains the resultant waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename"` is the name of the source file for the integration operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example

```
"intwave.wfm" = integ("sineswp.wfm")
```

Join( )

The join() statement joins (concatenates) two waveform files (waveform and marker data) into a single file. The clock sample rate in first file sets the clock sample rate for the output file waveform. You can only concatenate waveform files.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
"output_filename" = join("filename1", "filename2")
```

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the file name that contains the concatenated files. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` and `"filename2"` are the names of the files that you are concatenating. Both files must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose each file name within double quotation marks.

Example

```
"newsine.wfm" = join("sine.wfm", sine2.wfm")
```

Lpf( )

The lpf() statement creates a new file by passing the specified waveform file through a low pass filter.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
"output_filename" = lpf("filename1", cutoff_freq, taps, atten)
```

Arguments

`"output_filename"` is the file name that contains the filtered waveform data. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` is the name of the source file for the low pass filter operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`cutoff_freq` is the low pass filter cutoff frequency. You can enter the integer value.

`taps` is the number of delay elements that composes the digital filter. The range of taps is 3 to 101. You must enter the integer value as an odd number.

`atten` is the inhibit zone attenuation factor, in dB. The range of attenuation is 21 dB to 100 dB. You can enter the integer value.

Example

```
"filtered.wfm" = lpf("sine.wfm", 10.454e2, 2, 30)
```

Math Functions

Table 3–53 lists the programming language math functions that you can use as part of a waveform equation expression.

Table 3–53: Programming language math functions

Function	Description
abs(*a*)	Absolute value of *a*.
acos(*a*)	Arc cosine of *a*.
asin(*a*)	Arc sine of *a*.
atan(*a*)	Arc tangent of *a*.
ceil(*a*)	Minimum integer greater than or equal to *a*.
cos(*a*)	Cosine of *a*.
cosh(*a*)	Hyperbolic cosine of *a*.
exp(*a*)	Exponential function of base of natural logarithm for *a*.
floor(*a*)	Maximum integer less than or equal to *a.*
int(*a*)	Truncation (Same as floor(*a*) if *a* >= 0; same as ceil(*a*) if *a* < 0).
log(*a*)	Natural logarithm of *a*.
log10(*a*)	Base 10 logarithm of *a*.
max(*a, b*)	Returns larger (maximum) value of *a* and *b*.

Table 3–53: Programming language math functions (cont.)

Function	Description
min(*a, b*)	Returns smaller (minimum) value of *a* and *b*.
noise()	Generates pseudo Gaussian distribution white noise signal with a standard deviation (= RMS) of 1.
pow(*a*,*b*)	Exponentiation (*b*th power of *a*, or *a*^*b*) A negative value may be specified for *a* only if *b* is an integer. Otherwise, NaN will result. The pow function returns one of the following values: If $b = 0$: Always 1 If $b \neq 0$ and $a = 0$: Always 0 If $b \neq 0$ and $a < 0$ and b is a positive integer: a*b If $b \neq 0$ and $a < 0$ and b is a negative integer: Reciprocal of a*(–b) If $b \neq 0$ and $a < 0$, NaN (Not a Number)
rnd()	Returns a random number in the 0 to 1 range. Generated base seed = (253 * seed + 1)% 16777216, return seed/16777216. Seed is a 32-bit unsigned integer.
round(*a*)	Rounds off the value of *a* to an integer.
saw(*a*)	Saw tooth wave with a cycle of 2π and an amplitude ±1. If $a = -2\pi, 0, 2\pi, 4\pi$, or 6π, etc., the value is –1. The value approaches 1 at points immediately before these. (This function will not take the value 1.0.)
sign(*a*)	Sign of *a* (1 if $a > 0$; -1 if $a < 0$; 0 if $a = 0$).
sin(*a*)	Sine value of *a*.
sinc(*a*)	Same as sin(*a*)/*a*, except that 1 results if *a*=0.
sinh(*a*)	Hyperbolic sine value of *a*.
sqr(*a*)	Rectangular wave with a cycle of 2π and an amplitude ±1. If k is an even: For $a = k\pi$ to $(k+1)\pi$, sqr returns –1, except +1.0 when *a* equals $(k+1)\pi$. If k is an odd: For $a = k\pi$ to $(k+1)\pi$, sqr returns +1, except –1.0 when $a = (k+1)\pi$.
sqrt(*a*)	Square root value of *a*.
srnd(*seed*)	Sets the random number generator seed value. Seed is 0 to $2^{31}-1$. Default value is 0.
tan(*a*)	Tangent value of *a*.
tanh(*a*)	Hyperbolic tangent value of *a*.
tri(*a*)	Triangular wave with a cycle of 2π and an amplitude ±1. If $a = 0$, the value is 0. If $a = 0.5\pi$, it is 1.0. If $a = \pi$, it is 0.0. If $a = 1.5\pi$, it is –1.

Math Operators

Table 3–54 lists the programming language math operators that you can use as part of waveform equation expressions.

Table 3–54: Math operators

Operators	Description
Unary Arithmetic Operations	
–	Inverts the sign.
+	Does nothing.
Binary Operations	
+	Addition
–	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Division
^	Exponentiation
Binary Relational Operations	
=	If both side values are equal, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
<>	If both side values are not equal, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
>	If the left side value is larger than the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
>=	If the left side value is larger than or equal to the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
<	If the left side value is smaller than the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
<=	If the left side value is smaller than or equal to the right side value, 1 results. Otherwise, 0 results.
Binary Conditional Operator	
and	If both side values are not 0, 1 results. Otherwise 0 results.
or	If both side values are 0, 0 results. Otherwise 1 results.

The operator priorities are as follows, starting with higher priority at the top of the list. Operators on the same line have equal priority.

^
– (unary), + (unary)
*, /
=, <>, >, >=, <, <=
and, or

***NOTE**. Exponentiation executes the same calculation as for the pow() function. Zero (0) divided by 0 is 1.*

Norm( )

The norm() statement performs a normalization operation on a specified file waveform data. Normalization scales the waveform values to a ±1.0 range, centered on 0. The output file retains all marker values of the input file.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = norm("filename1")`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name (file name and suffix) to contain the resultant waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"filename1"` is the complete (file name and suffix) name of the file on which you are performing the normalization operation. The file must be on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example `"intwave.wfm" = norm("sineswp.wfm")`

Pn( )

The pn() statement creates a pseudo-random waveform using a shift register. You can specify the register size (1 to 32) and XOR feedback tap position. The initial values of the registers are set to one. If you omit the tap position specifier, a default maximum data length tap setting is used.

Group Waveform

Syntax `"output_filename" = pn(reg_size [, tap_position ...])`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the complete file name (file name and suffix) to contain the pseudo-random waveform. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`reg_size` specifies the number of registers in the pseudo-random generator. This is an integer value from 1 to 32.

`tap_position` specifies the register positions to ‘tap’ for XOR feedback to the register input. A tap does an XOR operation on the output signal and the specified register and passes the result to the next-lower tap position or the register input (register 1), whichever it encounters first. Refer to *Shift Register Generator..* on page 3–65 for more information.

Example

```
"random.wfm" = pn(12, 3, 6, 8)
```

Rename( )

The rename statement renames the specified file name to a new file name and/or location on the current drive.

Group Waveform

Syntax

```
rename("source_file", "target_file")
```

Arguments `"source_file"` is the file name of the file that you want to rename. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

`"target_file"` is the file name for the location to which you are renaming the source file. The target file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name within double quotation marks.

Example

```
rename("/test_dir/sine.wfm", "/test_dir/old_sine.wfm")
```

Variables (predefined)

The following table lists predefined programming language variables that you can use as part of a waveform equation expression (except where noted).

Table 3–55: Predefined variables

Function	Description
clock	Sets the current instrument sample clock rate.
fname.clock	Returns the sample clock rate of the specified file name. You cannot use this variable in a waveform expression.
pi	The Ludolphian number π.
point	Current data point number value, starting at 0. Read only. Only useable within an equation expression.
scale	Returns the current scale value that increase 0 to 1. Read only. Only useable within an equation expression.
size	Sets the current waveform record length.
fname.size	Returns the number of waveform data points of the specified file name. You cannot use this variable in a waveform expression.
time	Current data time value, starting at 0. Read only. Only useable within an equation expression.

Write( )

The write() statement writes the specified text to a new file name and/or location on the current drive. If an output file already exists, the source file contents are appended to the end of the existing file.

Group Waveform

Syntax `write("output_filename", "text" [,"text" ...])`

Arguments `"output_filename"` is the file name for the file that you want to write. The file must be located on the active drive. The argument can include a relative or absolute path name. Enclose the file name in double quotation marks.

`"text"` is the text string enclosed in double quotation marks. If you need to use a double quotation mark as part of the text, precede each double quotation character with a slash character (\). For example:

```
"This function writes a text to a \"ABC.TXT\" in text form."
```

In a similar way, the following codes can be used in text strings:

\n — LF
\r — CR
\t — Tab
\\ — Backslash
\” — Double-quote

Example `write ("sine.wfm", "This is comment line.")`

Programming Examples

The following eight equation programming examples are described below.

Examples	Key points to be learned
Example 1	Describes how to create waveform file, and how to read and write waveform files.
Example 2	Describes how to use *for* loop and *if* conditional branch statements.
Example 3	Describes how to put comments, and how to create sequence file.
Example 4	Describes how to use marker data and how to use the binary relational operations in the assignment statement.
Example 5	Describes how to use digital filter functions.
Example 6	Describes how to use *data()* and *code()* functions.
Example 7	Describes how to handle specific point data in the waveform file using the *extract()*, *join()* and *integ()* function, and also the *for* and *if* statement.
Example 8	Creates the equation file to generate the four waveforms and two sequence files used in the Sequence editor tutorial in the *Getting Started* section.
Others	Refer to *Appendix D*:*Sample Waveforms* for more equation examples. Most of the waveforms in the appendix were created by the listed equations.

Example 1 The example below creates three waveform files: *a.wfm*, *b.wfm* and *c.wfm*.

```
size = 2000
"a.wfm" = cos (2 * pi * scale)

size = 1512
"b.wfm" = cos (2 * pi * scale)
"c.wfm" = "a.wfm" * "b.wfm"
```

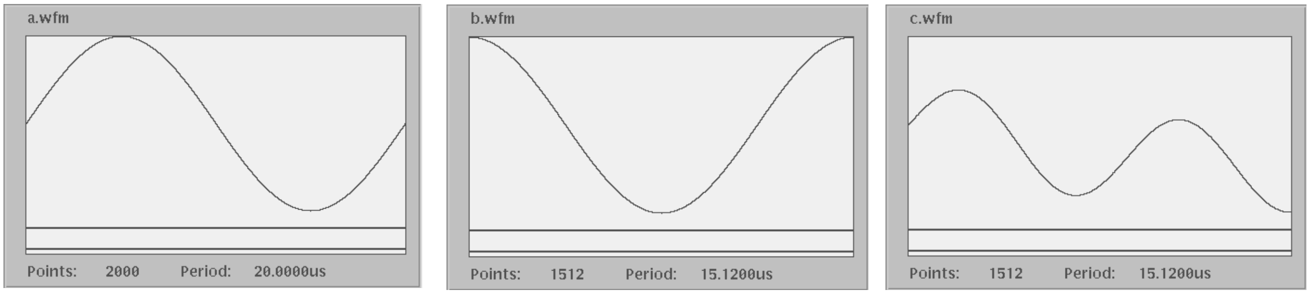
The first and third lines define the waveform record length (in points). You can change the record length any time within an equation; all created files use the last-set size value. When you do not define the waveform record length, the instrument uses the default length of 1000.

The second line generates the waveform *a.wfm* with 2000 data points. The *scale* is the system-used variable to fit the generated waveform within the ±1.0 vertical scale range.

The waveform *c.wfm* has the point size of 1512 and is generated by multiplying the *a.wfm* and *b.wfm* waveforms.

When you perform the operation between the waveforms which have a different point size, the lowest point size among them is used. Therefore the c.wfm will have the point size of 1500.

Figure 3–79 shows the waveforms to be generated by the above example.



Points: 2000 Period: 20.0000us

Points: 1512 Period: 15.1200us

Points: 1512 Period: 15.1200us

a.wfm b.wfm c.wfm

Figure 3–79: Waveforms generated from the Example 1 equation

Example 2 Below is an example in which the *for* and *if* statements are used.

```
num = 30

for i = 1 to num
        if i = 1 then
                "t.wfm"=cos(2*pi*scale)
        else
                "t.wfm"="t.wfm"+cos(2*pi*i*scale)
        endif
next

"t.wfm"="t.wfm"/num
```

Num and *i* are user-defined variables. *I* is used as part of the *for* loop parameter. The statements placed between the *for* and *next* keywords repeat 30 times while the *i* increments by 1 for each loop.

The conditional branch statement must start with the *if* keyword and end with the *endif* keyword. In the above example, if *i* = 1, the equation creates the waveform *t.wfm*. When $i \neq 1$, the newly created waveform and the one created in the previous loop are added, and the result is stored in the waveform *t.wfm*. The resultant waveform is then normalized.

Figure 3–80 shows the waveform generated by the previous example.

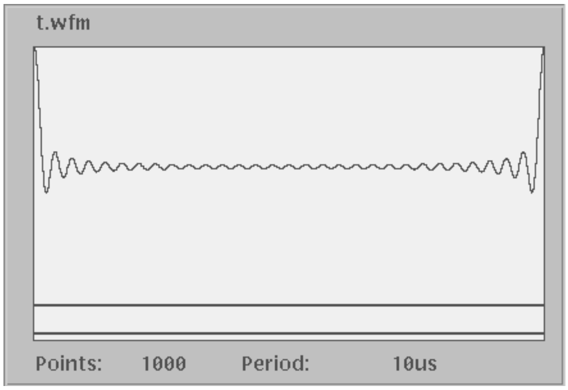


Figure 3–80: Waveform generated by the Example 2 equation

Example 3 The following example creates one sequence file and four waveforms.

```
delete("test.seq")

size=512
clock=200e6
num=4

'write sequence file header

write("test.seq","MAGIC 3003\n")
write("test.seq","LINES ":num:"\n")

for i = 1 to num

    'create a waveform file
    "test":i:".wfm" = sin(2 * pi * i * scale)

    'add line to sequence file
    rep = num * i
    write("test.seq","\"test":i:".wfm\",\"\",\"\",":rep:"\n")
next
```

The first line is the statement for deleting the existing waveform. If that file does not exist, then no action is taken.

The *size* and *clock* keywords are the system valuables representing the waveform record length, in points, and the sampling clock frequency. They are set to 512 points and 200 MS/s in the above example.

The comment text on line 5 starts with a single quotation (’) character. Comment text is effective until the end of the line containing the single-quote character.

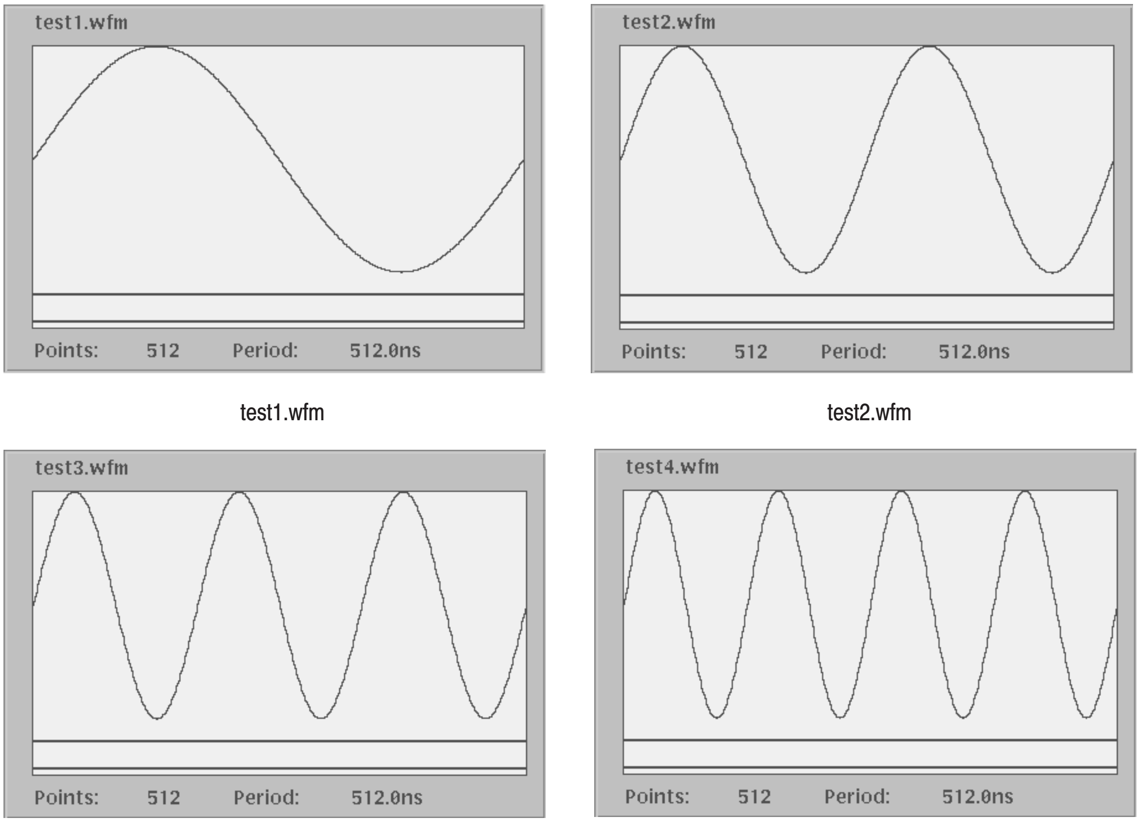
The *write* command writes the specified text to the specified file. If the file being written to exists, the write command appends the specified string to the end of the file. The first argument is the file to which the strings specified as the second argument and after will be written. The string must be enclosed in double quotation marks. If you desire to use a variable as a string, you must place the colon (:) before and after the variable. For example:

```
"text":i:".wfm"
```

In the above example, if the variable *i* is currently 5, the value of the string will be *text5.wfm*. The slash is used as an escape character, and precedes the double quotation marks in a string. The ”\n” inserts an end of line (EOL) character in the file.

The sequence file is a text file which has the magic number 3003 on the first line of the text and the number of lines (for example LINES 4) on the second line.

Figure 3–81 shows the four waveforms generated by example 3. Figure 3–82 shows the sequence table created by example 3.



test1.wfm

Points: 512 Period: 512.0ns

test2.wfm

Points: 512 Period: 512.0ns

test3.wfm

Points: 512 Period: 512.0ns

test4.wfm

Points: 512 Period: 512.0ns

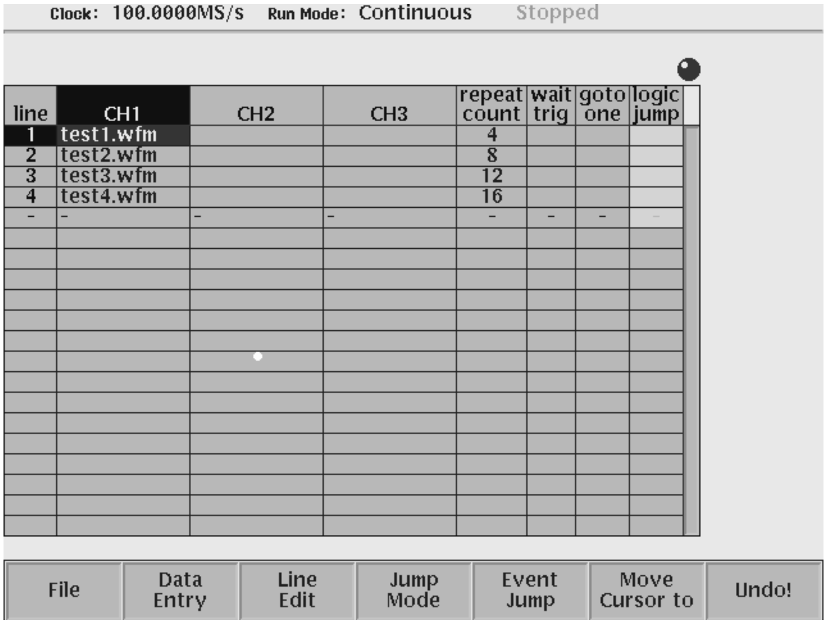
test1.wfm

test2.wfm

test3.wfm

test4.wfm

Figure 3-81: Waveforms generated by the Example 3 equation



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

line	CH1	CH2	CH3	repeat count	wait trig	goto one	logic jump
1	test1.wfm			4			
2	test2.wfm			8			
3	test3.wfm			12			
4	test4.wfm			16			
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Figure 3-82: Sequence generated by the Example 3 equation

NOTE*. The equation/text editor has a viewer that displays the waveforms after the compile has been performed. However, this viewer cannot display the sequence. Use the sequence editor to confirm the results.*

Example 4

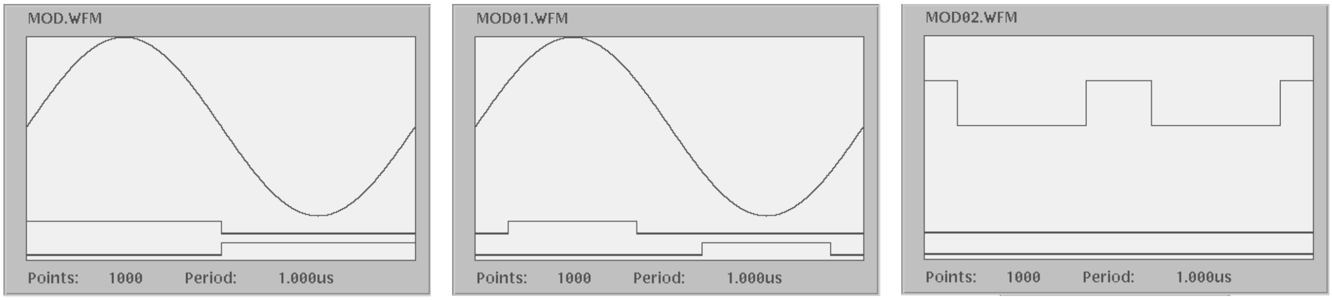
The following example shows how to use boolean relational operations between a waveform and its marker data.

```
delete("MOD01.WFM")
delete("MOD02.WFM")

"Mod.wfm" = sin (2 * π * scale)

"MOD01.WFM" = "MOD.WFM"

"MOD01.WFM".marker1 = "MOD01.WFM" >= 0.5
"MOD01.WFM".marker2 = "MOD01.WFM" <= -0.5

"MOD02.WFM" = ("MOD01.WFM".marker1 = "MOD01.WFM".marker2) / 2
```

The boolean relational operation results in a 1 value if the condition is true, and a 0 value if the condition is false. Therefore the MOD01.wfm marker1 signal is 1 if the waveform data is greater than or equal to 0.5, and 0 for all other values. Likewise, the marker2 signal is 1 if the waveform data is less than or equal to –0.5, and 0 for all other values.

The MOD02.wfm signal is 0.5 if the marker1 signal of the MOD01.wfm is equal to the marker2 signal, otherwise the signal value is 0.

The results are shown in Figure 3–83.



MOD.wfm MOD01.wfm MOD02.wfm

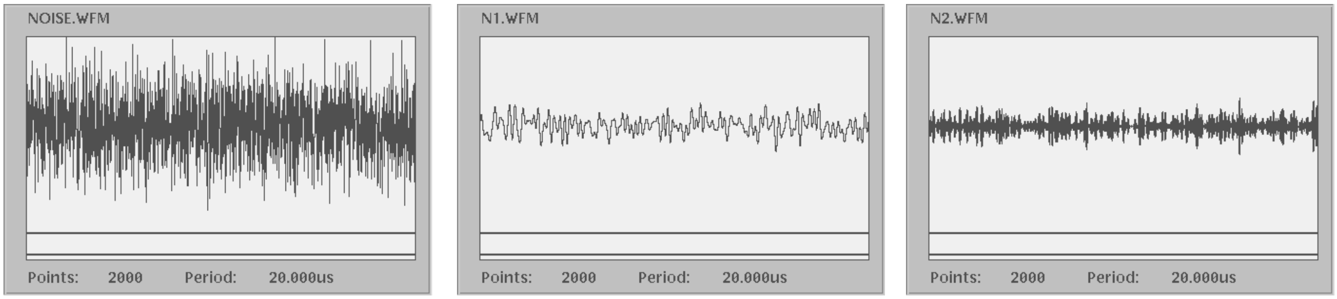
Figure 3–83: Source waveform and those generated by the Example 4 equation

Example 5

The following example shows how to use filter functions. There are four digital filter functions: lpf(), hpf(), bpf() and brf(), which are the same as those provided in the digital filter dialog box of the waveform editor. Refer to *Digital Filter...* on page 3–77 for more information on the filter arguments and the digital filter characteristics.

```
size = 2000

hf = 45e6       ' Cutoff frequency High: 1 Hz to 50 MHz
lf = 5e6        ' Cutoff frequency Low: 1 Hz to 5 MHz
taps = 97       ' Taps: 3 to 101
att = 30        ' Attenuation: 21 dB to 100 dB

"NOISE.WFM" = noise()
"NOISE.WFM" = norm("NOISE.WFM")

"N1.WFM" = lpf("NOISE.WFM", lf, taps, att)
"N2.WFM" = hpf("NOISE.WFM", hf, taps, att)
"N3.WFM" = bpf("NOISE.WFM", lf, hf, taps, att)
"N4.WFM" = brf("NOISE.WFM", lf, hf, taps, att)
```

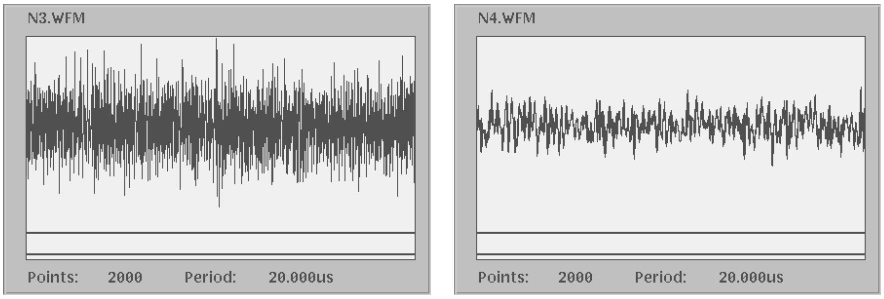
The results are shown in Figure 3–84.



NOISE.wfm

N1.wfm-(after LPF)

N2.wfm-(after HPF)



N3.wfm-(after BPF)

N4.wfm-(after BRF)

Figure 3–84: Noise waveforms after filtering

Example 6

The following example shows a code conversion. In this example, two kinds of data are created with *data()* function. You need to prepare the code conversion tables which can be created with the text editor or Code Convert Table dialog box. The Code Convert Table dialog box is brought up by pushing **Tools** (bottom)→**Code Convert...** (pop-up)→
OK (side)→**Edit...** (side) from the waveform or pattern editor.

```
"C0.WFM" = data(0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0)

"C1.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "nrz.txt")
"C2.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "nrzi.txt")
"C3.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "nrzi-2.txt")
"C4.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "fm.txt")
"C5.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "bi-phase.txt")
"C6.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "rz.txt")
"C7.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "special.txt")

"C0.WFM" = data(0,1,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,1,0,
0,0,1,0,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,0,0)
"C8.WFM" = code("C0.WFM", "1-7rill.txt")
```

The waveforms generated by the previous equation file are composed of 0 and 1. It is convenient to use the waveform editor in table mode to look at the results. Refer to *Code Conversion* on page G–7 for the input patterns, output patterns and code conversion tables.

Example 7 The following example applies a 7-point smoothing operation to a noise waveform. This equation uses the *extract()*, *integ()* and *join()* functions, and also *for* and *if* control statements. Although you do not have any other method to perform smoothing with the instrument, this is not a preferable way to apply a smoothing operation. Refer to this example for learning how to use these functions and control statements.

You can change the number of smoothing points by changing the value of the variable nump. The greater the value of nump, the faster the instrument can finish the compile. However, this kind of program frequently accesses the hard disk and takes more than 20 minutes to complete.

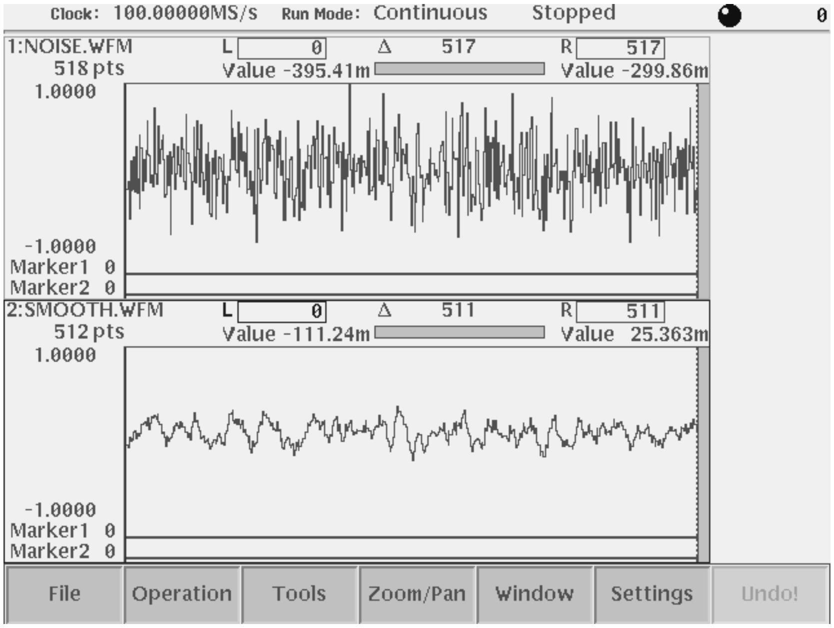
```
' Simple smoothing (7 points)

nump = 7
extp = nump – 1
nsht = extp / 2
size = 518

"NOISE.WFM" = noise()
"NOISE.WFM" = norm("NOISE.WFM")

cc = 1
for i = nsht to (size – nsht –1) step 1
    sp = i – nsht
    ep = i + nsht
    "TEMP1.WFM" = extract("NOISE.WFM", sp, ep)
    "TEMP1.WFM" = integ("TEMP1.WFM")
    "TEMP2.WFM" = extract("TEMP1.WFM", extp, extp)
    "TEMP2.WFM" = "TEMP2.WFM" / nump
    if cc = 1 then
        "SMOOTH.WFM" = "TEMP2.WFM"
    else
        "SMOOTH.WFM" = join("SMOOTH.WFM", "TEMP2.WFM")
    endif
    cc = cc + 1
next

delete("TEMP1.WFM")
delete("TEMP2.WFM")
```

The following text describes what happens in this example:

1. The *noise()* function generates a noise waveform into the file NOISE.wfm, in which the waveform data are normalized using the norm() function.
2. The *extract()* function extracts the 7 data and stores them into the file TEPM1.wfm.

3. The *integ()* function integrates the 7 data. The data of last point is the amount of 7 point data. This last data is divided by 7 and then concatenated to the file SMOOTH.wfm.
4. The *for* statement shifts the points to be read by one point for each loop and repeats these procedures.

The results are shown in Figure 3–85.



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped 0

1:NOISE.WFM 518 pts L 0 Δ 517 R 517 Value -395.41m Value -299.86m

2:SMOOTH.WFM 512 pts L 0 Δ 511 R 511 Value -111.24m Value 25.363m

Figure 3–85: Noise waveforms before (upper) and after (lower) 7-point smoothing

Example 8

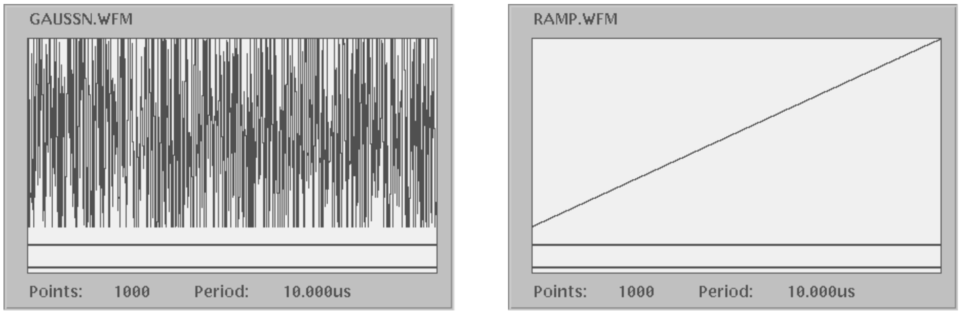
The following example creates two sequence files and five waveform files. These files are the same as those used in the *Tutorial 6: Creating and Running Waveform Sequences* beginning on page 2–78.

```
' Tutorial 6

delete("MAINSEQ.SEQ")
delete("SUBSEQ.SEQ")

size = 1000
clock = 1e8
num = 4

' Sub-sequence
write("SUBSEQ.SEQ", "MAGIC 3003\n")
write("SUBSEQ.SEQ", "LINES ":num:"\n")
write("SUBSEQ.SEQ", "\"SQUARE.WFM\",\"\",\"\",40000\n")
```

```
write("SUBSEQ.SEQ", "\"RAMP.WFM\",\"\",\"\",60000\n")
write("SUBSEQ.SEQ", "\"TRIANGLE.WFM\",\"\",\"\",60000\n")
write("SUBSEQ.SEQ", "\"SINE.WFM\",\"\",\"\",30000\n")

' Main sequence
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "MAGIC 3003\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "LINES ":num:"\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "\"SUBSEQ.SEQ\",\"\",\"\",2,1,-1\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "\"RAMP.WFM\",\"\",\"\",0,0,0,0\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ",
"\"TRIANGLE.WFM\",\"\",\"\",40000,0,1,4\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "\"SINE.WFM\",\"\",\"\",60000,0,0,0\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "TABLE_JUMP
0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "LOGIC_JUMP -1,-1,-1,-1,\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "JUMP_MODE LOGIC\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "JUMP_TIMING ASYNC\n")
write("MAINSEQ.SEQ", "STROBE 0\n")

' Standard functions
"GAUSSN.WFM"   = noise()
"SINE.WFM"     = sin(2 * pi * scale)
"RAMP.WFM"     = 2 * scale -1
"TRIANGLE.WFM" = tri(2 * pi * scale)
"SQUARE.WFM"   = sqr(2 * pi * scale)
```

See Figure 2–50 on page 2–83 to see the contents of the *subseq.seq* file, and Figure 2–53 on page 2–87 to see the contents of the *mainseq.seq* file. Figure 3–86 on page 3–240 shows the *gaussn.wfm* and *ramp.wfm* waveforms created in above equation.

Refer to *Appendix F: Sequence File Text Format* for more information.



Points: 1000 Period: 10.000us

Points: 1000 Period: 10.000us

Figure 3–86: Gaussian noise and ramp waveforms

File Conversion

The Waveform Generator has the ability to import and export various formats of waveform data. Import converts waveform files created with other instruments into files the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator can use. Export converts AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform files into text files.

Each AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform file contains the clock rate information, waveform data, and marker information. Import uses default values for the information unavailable through the external file.

Import

The following files can be converted into AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator compatible waveform files (*.wfm* files):

- AWG20xx.WFM to Waveform

  An AWG2000 Series *.wfm* file is converted into an AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform file. The marker data and clock rates are inherited.

- AWG20xx.WFM to Pattern

  An AWG2000 Series *.wfm* file is converted into an AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator pattern file. The marker data and clock rates are inherited.

  Note that in the AWG2021 or AWG2005 waveform file, 12-bit data is imported into the upper data bits: Data 4 to Data 15, and in the AWG2041 waveform file, 8-bit data is imported into the upper data bits: Data 8 to Data 15 in the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator pattern file.

- TDS.WFM to Waveform

  A waveform file generated with a Tektronix TDS-Series oscilloscope is converted into an AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform file. The clock rate and position information are inherited. The offset information is neglected in this conversion.

- TDS.ISF to Waveform

  A waveform file generated with a Tektronix TDS3000 series oscilloscope Internal File Format is converted into an AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform file. The clock rate and position information are inherited. The offset information is neglected in this conversion.

- EASYWAVE.WAV to Waveform

  A data file (.*wav*) generated with LeCroy EASYWAVE software is converted into the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform file. No attributes are inherited.

- Text file to Waveform

  An ASCII-form text file is converted into the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform file. Numeric values separated by separators are loaded. Headers or similar codes are not defined. The separator can be a space, comma, tab, or <CR><LF>.

  An exponential notation (for example, –.1E-2) may be used as a numeric value. A unit prefix (for example, m, u, n, p, k, M) may not be used. If you use a numeric value followed by an alphabetical character (such as, 1.2 V), the value will be interpreted properly, ignoring the alphabetical character.

  If you use a sequence of consecutive separators, it will be interpreted as a single separator.

Therefore, the meaning of the following line:

```
1,2,3,4<CR> <LF>
```

is the same as:

```
1  ,  2,  ,  3,,,  4  ,,,  <CR> <LF>
```

If an alphabetical character (such as A, B, C, and/or D) is placed instead of a numeric value, the value 0 will result. (This is not handled as an error.)

The actual input file formats are as follows:

Format 1: Numeric values that are listed horizontally

```
0,0.1,0.2,0.3,0.4
```

The respective values are converted into the analog data. The marker value is converted into 0.

Format 2: Repetitions of three numeric values listed on a line:

```
0.1,1,0
0.2,0,1
0.3,0,0
```

One line corresponds to 1 point. The first value is the analog data, and the subsequent two are markers 1 and 2. For marker data, values larger than 0.5 are regarded as 1, and the others as 0.

Export

AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform files can be converted into the following files. You may use a format including marker data and one not including it.

- Waveform to text file
- Waveform to text file with marker

For both file types, 1-point data is written on a line. The return code is CR/LF.

If no marker is included:

```
1.0
0.5
–0.9
0.1
```

If markers are included:

```
1.0,1,1
0.5,0,1
–0.9,1,0
0.1,0,0
```

Convert between Waveform and Pattern

AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator waveform files and pattern files (*.pat* files) can be converted from one form to the other.

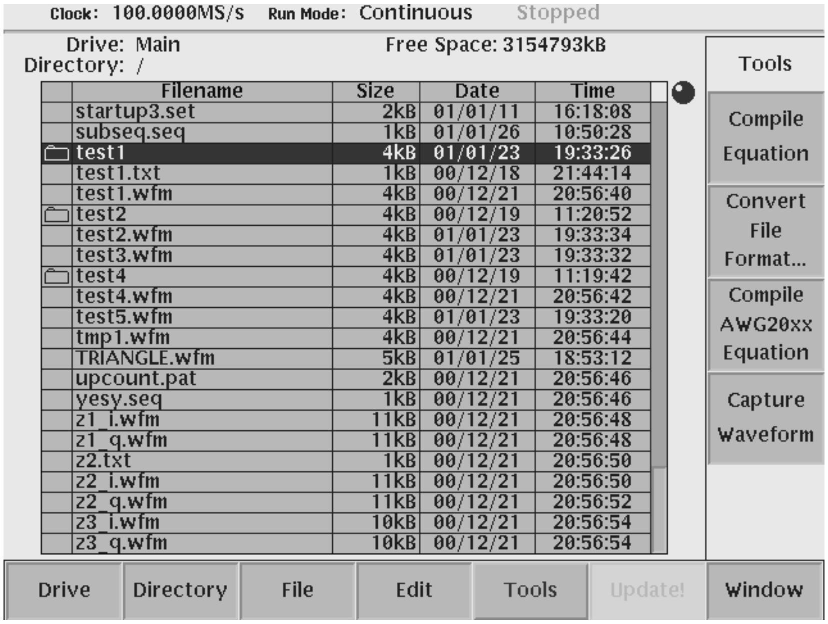
- Waveform to Pattern
- Pattern to Waveform

In this conversion, the marker data is always inherited.

Executing File Conversion

This command converts the file you selected in the **EDIT** menu. It is available for any file residing on the hard or floppy disk or a remote file system.

1. Push the **EDIT** button on the front panel.



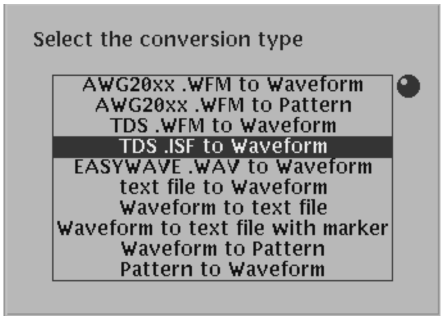
Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3154793kB
Directory: /

Filename	Size	Date	Time
startup3.set	2kB	01/01/11	16:18:08
subseq.seq	1kB	01/01/26	10:50:28
test1	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:26
test1.txt	1kB	00/12/18	21:44:14
test1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:40
test2	4kB	00/12/19	11:20:52
test2.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:34
test3.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:32
test4	4kB	00/12/19	11:19:42
test4.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:42
test5.wfm	4kB	01/01/23	19:33:20
tmp1.wfm	4kB	00/12/21	20:56:44
TRIANGLE.wfm	5kB	01/01/25	18:53:12
upcount.pat	2kB	00/12/21	20:56:46
yesy.seq	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:46
z1_i.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:48
z1_q.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:48
z2.txt	1kB	00/12/21	20:56:50
z2_i.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:50
z2_q.wfm	11kB	00/12/21	20:56:52
z3_i.wfm	10kB	00/12/21	20:56:54
z3_q.wfm	10kB	00/12/21	20:56:54

Figure 3–87: Screen and side menu buttons for importing and exporting

2. Select the file you want to convert from the file listing on the screen.
3. Push **Tools** (bottom)→**Convert File Format...** (side). A dialog box appears that lets you select the conversion type. See Figure 3–88.



Select the conversion type

Figure 3–88: Select the conversion type dialog box

4. Select a conversion type using the general purpose knob or the ▲ or ▼ button.
5. Push the **OK** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears that lets you specify the converted file name and the destination.
6. Enter a file name and then press the **OK** side button.

File Management

This section describes the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator file management commands and conventions.

Command Summary

Table 3–56 lists the available file management commands.

Table 3–56: File utility commands

Commands	Descriptions
Copy	Copies a file
Rename	Renames a file or directory
Delete	Deletes a file or directory
Delete All	Deletes all files and directories containing files in the current directory
Attribute	Assigns Read/Write or Read Only attribute to a file
Make Directory	Creates an empty directory
Up Level	Moves to the upper level directory
Down Level	Moves down to a selected directory
Drive	Selects a storage drive

Path Name

You can specify a file or directory location using the absolute path or relative path expression. The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator uses the same file expression as used in the UNIX file system. Table 3–57 shows the characters available for specifying direct or indirect path names.

Table 3–57: Special symbols used for expressing file path

Symbols	Descriptions
.	Represents current directory
..	Represents higher level directory
/	Represents top level directory (root directory) or delimiter. If the slash appears at the most-left position in a path, the path represents an absolute path. If the slash appears in the middle of a path, the path represents a relative path.

NOTE. *You cannot specify the storage drive as part of a file path name. You must use the menu Drive buttons to specify a drive.*

File Operations

For file operations, you can select Single Window or Double Windows.

In the Double Windows, you can copy or move a file or all files from the currently selected window to the destination specified by the other window. You cannot rename, delete, or assign attribute operations in the Double Windows.

The following text describes how to perform file management tasks in the Single Window. The explanations for file management tasks in the Double Windows follows the Single Window's explanations.

Selecting a Drive

Drives include the instrument hard disk drive, the instrument floppy disk drive, and up to three drives accessible from the instrument over the Ethernet connection. Do the following steps to select a new source or target drive.

1. Push **EDIT** (front-panel)→**Drive** (bottom).
2. Select a storage drive from the side menu.

NOTE. *The floppy disk file list displayed on the screen does not automatically update when you replace the diskette with another one. Select the floppy disk drive once again to update the file list.*

Moving Directories

Do the following steps to move to a different directory:

1. Push the **EDIT** button.
2. Select a drive.

3. Push the **Directory** bottom button.

   Push the **Up Level** side button to move a directory up by one level.

   To move a directory down by one level, select the directory from the file listing on the screen, and then push the **Down Level** side button.

   Repeat step 3 until you reach the destination directory.

Making Directory

Do the following steps to create a new directory:

1. Push the **EDIT** button.
2. Select a drive and/or directory.
3. Push **Directory** (bottom)→**Make Directory** (side).

   The Input Filename dialog box appears.

4. Use the Input Filename dialog box to specify the new directory name and/or destination.

Selecting Files

Do the following steps to select a file:

1. Push the **EDIT** button.
2. Select a file from the file listing on the screen using the ▲ or ▼ buttons or the general purpose knob.

Copying Files

Do the following steps to copy or paste a file:

1. Select a file.
2. Push the **Copy** side button. The Input Filename dialog box appears.
3. Use the Input Filename dialog box to specify the duplication’s file name and destination. The copied file destination must be on the current drive but can be a different directory.

Renaming Files

Do the following steps to rename a file:

1. Select a file or directory to rename.
2. Push the **Rename** side button.

   The Input Filename dialog box appears.

3. Use the Input Filename dialog box to specify the new file name and the destination.

Deleting One or All Files

Delete removes the selected file. Delete All removes all files and empties directories contained in the current directory. These commands do not delete any directories that contain files. When you delete files or directories, the instrument displays a dialog box asking you to confirm the file/directory deletion. Do the following steps to delete one or more files and/or empty directories:

1. Select a file or directory to delete.
2. Push the **Delete** or **Delete All** side button.
3. Push **OK** or **Cancel** (side), depending on the message to confirm deletion.

Moving Files

To move a file between directories or drives, use the Move or Move All command in the double windows. Refer to *Operation in Double Windows* on page 3–249.

Assigning Attribute to Files

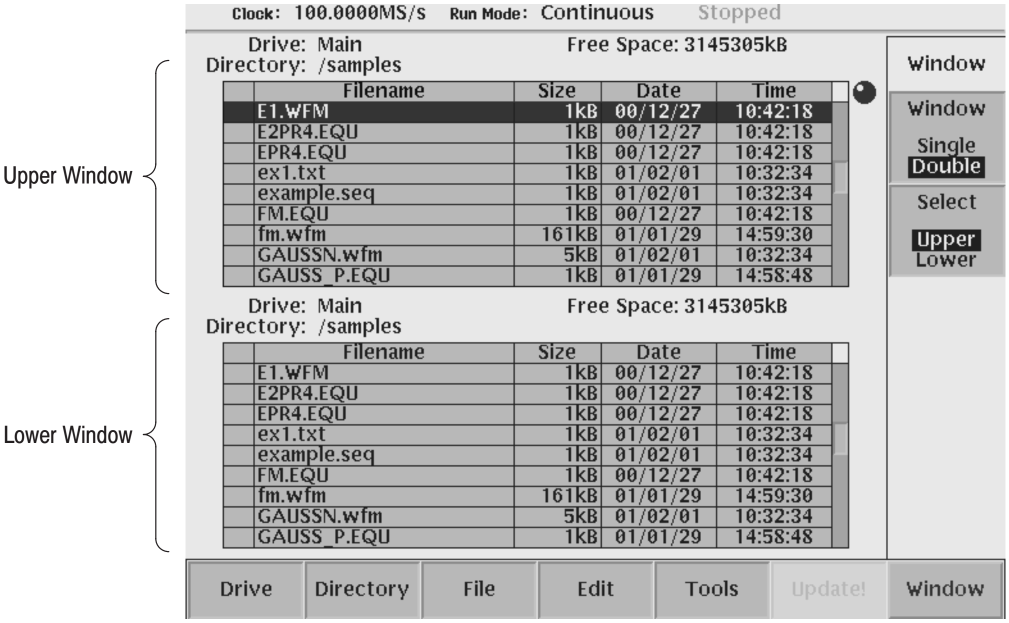
Attribute prevents a file or directory from unconditional modifications or deletion. This is made by assigning the Read Only or Read/Write attribute to the file. After you assign the Read Only attribute to the file, a key mark appears on the left of the file listing.

1. Select a file to which you want to assign or change an attribute status. All files are assigned read/write status by default.
2. Push the **Attribute** side button to toggle between Read/Write and Read Only, as necessary.

File Operation in Double Windows

When the Window bottom button is displayed, you can divide the file list in the Edit Screen into two windows as shown in Figure 3–89. This function is called Double Windows.

In the Double Windows, you can also perform drive and directory operations to the currently selected window using the same procedures as those in Single Windows. Refer to *File Operations* on page 3–246 for the procedures.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3145305kB
Directory: /samples

Filename	Size	Date	Time
E1.WFM	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
E2PR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
EPR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
ex1.txt	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
example.seq	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
FM.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
fm.wfm	161kB	01/01/29	14:59:30
GAUSSN.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
GAUSS_P.EQU	1kB	01/01/29	14:58:48

Drive: Main Free Space: 3145305kB
Directory: /samples

Filename	Size	Date	Time
E1.WFM	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
E2PR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
EPR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
ex1.txt	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
example.seq	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
FM.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
fm.wfm	161kB	01/01/29	14:59:30
GAUSSN.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
GAUSS_P.EQU	1kB	01/01/29	14:58:48

Figure 3–89: Double Windows

In Double Windows, for example, you can display the file list of the hard disk and the one of the floppy disk, or the file list of a directory and the one of an another directory. All of the functions that are invoked from the bottom buttons are available except for the File function.

The most important functions used in two file lists displayed at the same time are the Copy and Move file operations. Refer to *Window Operation* on page 3–249.

Window Operation

The windows are named as Upper and Lower windows as indicated in Figure 3–89. Select a window for operation.

Push **EDIT** (front) → **Window** (bottom) to display the Window side button. Push the **Window** side button again to select Double for double windows. Push the **Window** side button again to select Single and to return the display back into the signal file list.

When you display the double windows, the Select side button will be available. Push the **Select** side button to select Upper for file operation in the upper file list window. Push the **Select** side button again to select Lower for file operation in the lower file list window.

Operation in Double Windows

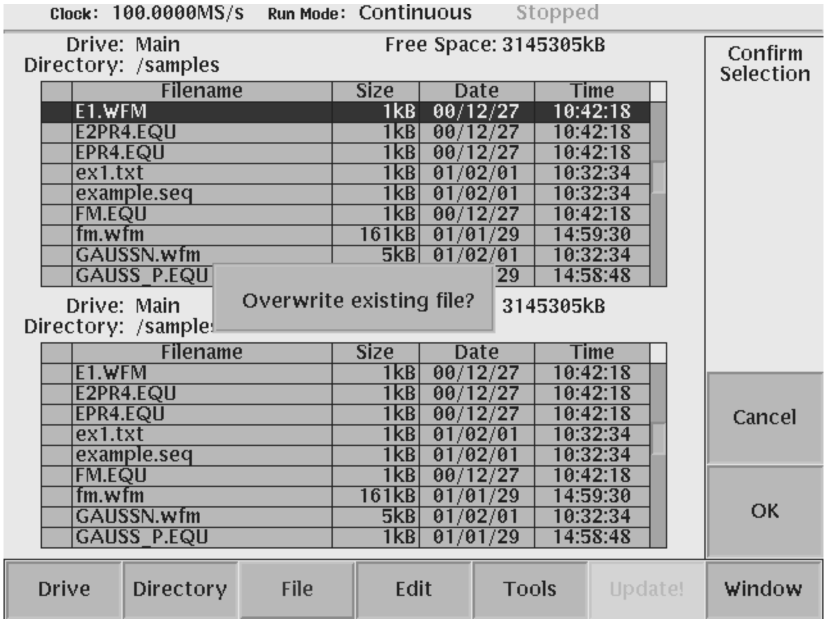
The most useful functions to be used in the double windows may be those invoked from the File bottom button. The functions available in the File bottom button are described in Table 3–58.

Table 3–58: File operation in double windows

Operation	Description
Copy	Copies a file from a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Copy All	Copies all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot copy the directory or directory structure.
Move	Moves a file selected in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot select the directory.
Move All	Moves all files in a selected file list window into the destination specified in the other file list window. You cannot move the directory or directory structure.

***NOTE**. You cannot use the Rename, Delete, Delete All, and Attribute side buttons unless you display the single file list window.*

In copy or move operation, when the files with the same file name exist in the destination, the message *Overwrite existing file <filename>* appears. At the same time, the **Cancel**, **No**, **Yes to All**, and **Yes** side buttons appear. Press any of these side buttons to proceed.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main Free Space: 3145305kB
Directory: /samples

Filename	Size	Date	Time
E1.WFM	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
E2PR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
EPR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
ex1.txt	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
example.seq	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
FM.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
fm.wfm	161kB	01/01/29	14:59:30
GAUSSN.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
GAUSS_P.EQU		29	14:58:48

Overwrite existing file?

Drive: Main 3145305kB
Directory: /sample

Filename	Size	Date	Time
E1.WFM	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
E2PR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
EPR4.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
ex1.txt	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
example.seq	1kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
FM.EQU	1kB	00/12/27	10:42:18
fm.wfm	161kB	01/01/29	14:59:30
GAUSSN.wfm	5kB	01/02/01	10:32:34
GAUSS_P.EQU	1kB	01/01/29	14:58:48

Figure 3–90: Overwrite confirmation

Table 3–59: Confirmation selection for copy-all and move-all operations

Side menu	Description
Cancel	Cancels and stops copy or move operation.
No	Skips the copy or move operation for the file indicated in the message.
Yes to All	Overwrites all the files without displaying any messages until the operation is finished.
Yes	Overwrites the file indicated in the message and proceeds with the operation.

You cannot copy or move a directory. In the copy-all or move-all operation, the message *Directory cannot be copied* appears when you are trying to move or copy a directory. Press the **OK** side button to confirm and proceed with the operation.

FG Mode

The AWG400-Series provides the Function Generator (FG) mode to output standard function waveforms. This section describes the FG mode.

FG mode signals are created and output using the following process:

- Select the output channel (for multiple output channel models), Select the waveform type.
- Set the output parameters such as frequency and amplitude.
- Turn the OUTPUT button to ON.

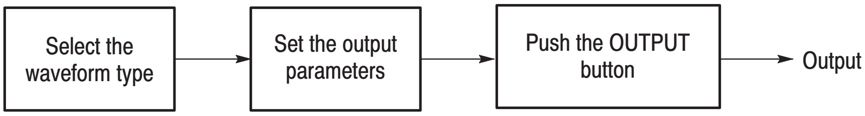
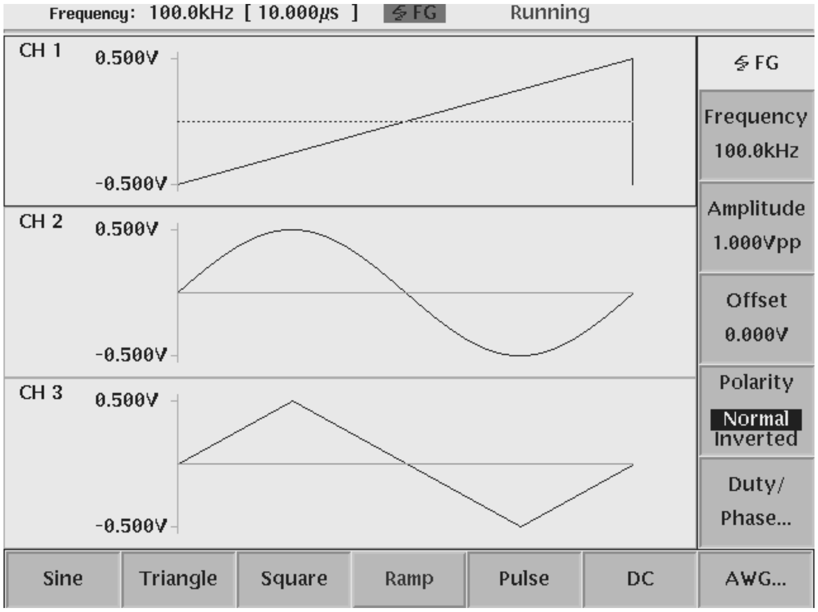


Figure 3–91: Outline flow for producing Function Generator signal



Frequency: 100.0kHz [10.000µs] FG Running

Frequency 100.0kHz

Amplitude 1.000Vpp

Offset 0.000V

Polarity Normal Inverted

Figure 3–92: FG mode screen (AWG430)

Change the generator mode

AWG mode to FG mode

The instrument initializes in the AWG mode when powered on.

Do the following to change the generator mode from AWG to FG :

1. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→ **Ez FG...** (side) button.

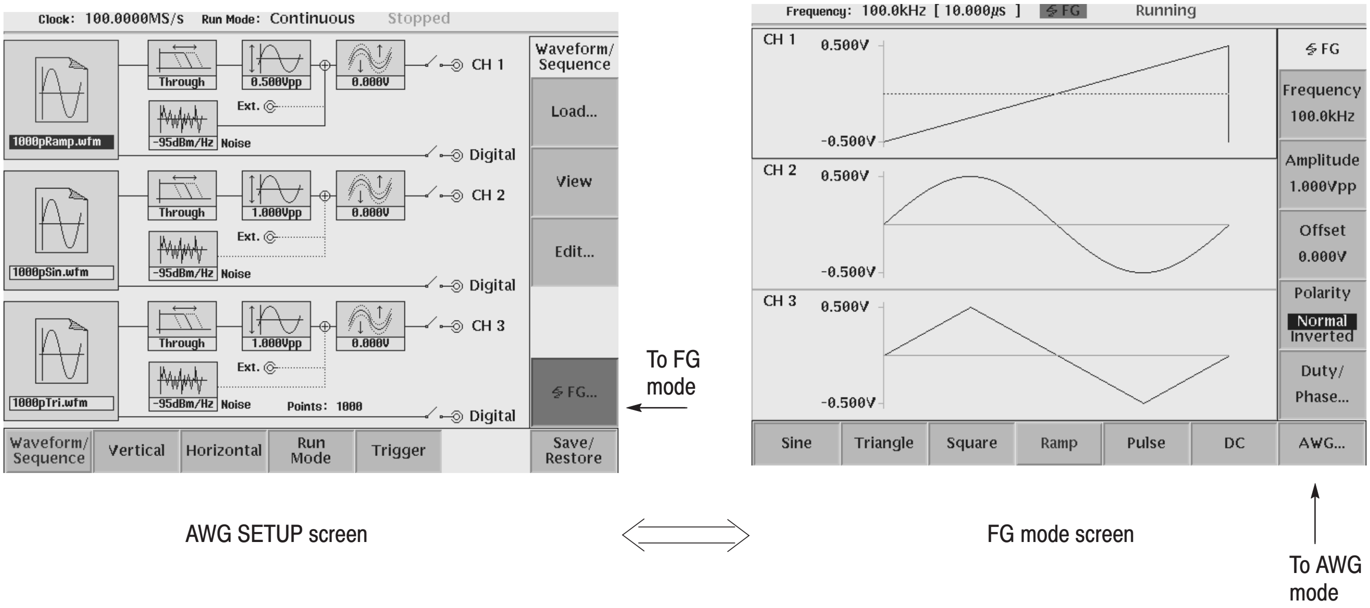
The instrument displays the FG mode screen.

FG mode to AWG mode

Do the following to change the generator mode from FG to AWG :

1. Push **AWG...** (bottom) button.

The instrument returns to the AWG mode.



To FG mode

AWG SETUP screen

FG mode screen

To AWG mode

Figure 3–93: Change the generator mode (AWG430)

***NOTE**. All the parameters on the FG mode menu are independent of the AWG mode parameters. Therefore, the output parameters, such as frequency, amplitude and offset, have no effect on the parameters set with the SETUP menu while in the other mode.*
In FG mode, the AWG 400 runs CONTINUOUS mode only.

Waveform type

Select the Channel

In the case of multiple channel models, AWG420 and AWG430, select the output channel first. The selected channel area is displayed enclosed in a frame. AWG410 displays only CH 1 waveform.

1. Push **CH1, CH2** or **CH3** (front) button to select the output channel.

Select the Waveform type

You can select Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, Pulse and DC waveform.

1. Push **Sine**, **Triangle**, **Square**, **Ramp**, **Pulse** or **DC** (bottom) button to select the desired waveform type.

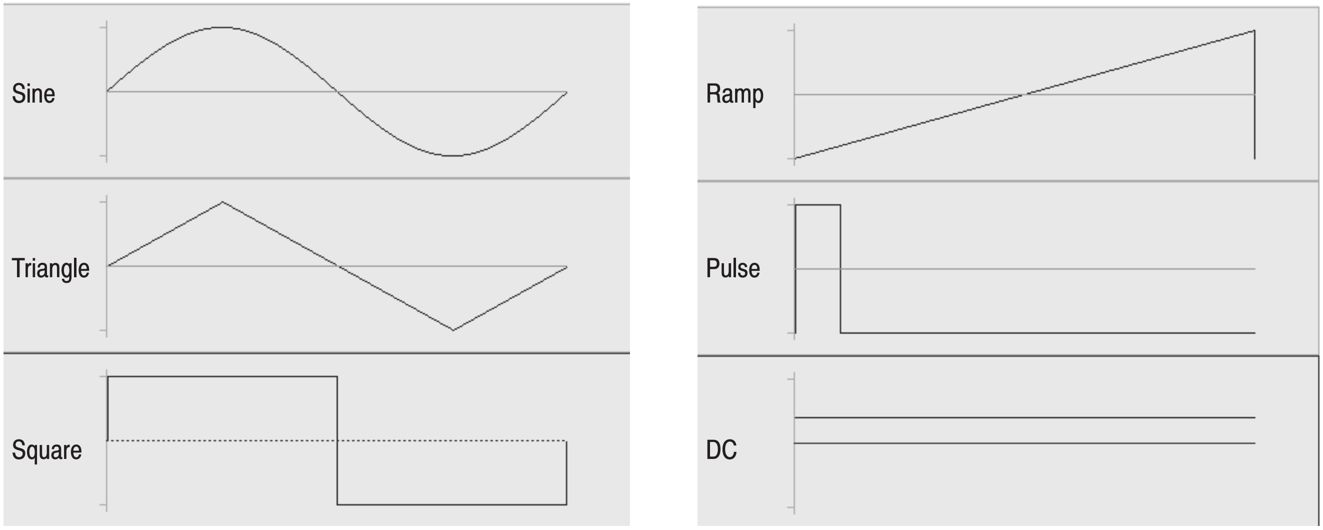


Figure 3–94: Waveform type

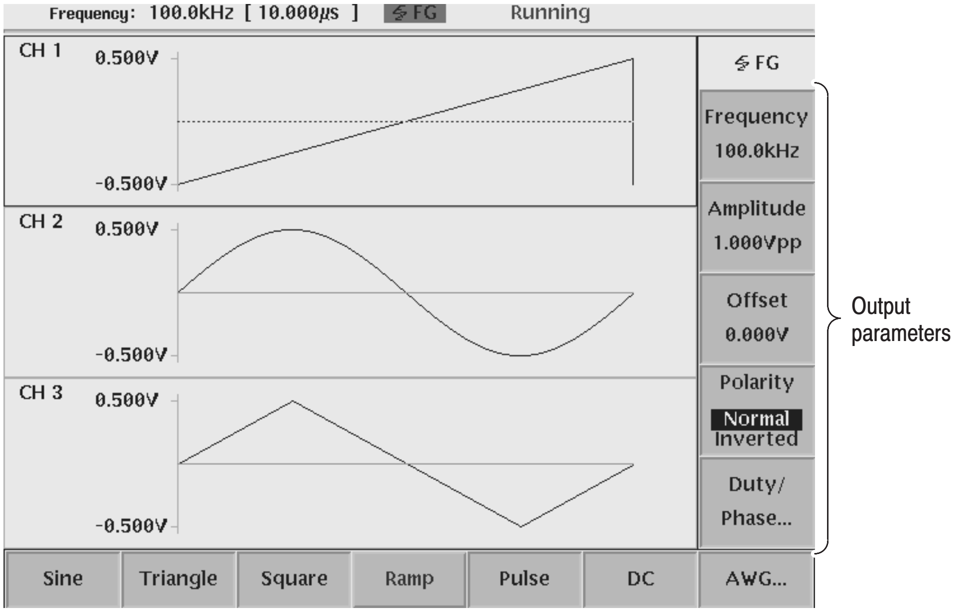
Parameters

Output parameters

The output parameter menu selections are the same for each waveform except Pulse and DC. Pulse has one extra side menu item (Duty), and DC has only one side menu item (Offset).

A Multiple channel model, AWG420 and AWG430, includes Phase side menu selection that allows you to phaseshift each channel's output.

***NOTE**. Frequency is the same for all channels. Amplitude, Offset and Polarity are set separately for each channel.*



Frequency: 100.0kHz [10.000µs]

Frequency 100.0kHz

Amplitude 1.000Vpp

Offset 0.000V

Polarity Normal

Figure 3–95: Output parameters (AWG430)

Frequency

The frequency is set with a 4-digit number from 1.000 Hz to 10.00 MHz using the SAMPLE RATE / SCALE knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.

The internal cut-off filter used is determined by the waveform type and the frequency selected. The cut-off frequencies are as follows;

Table 3–60: Output frequency and filter cut-off frequency

Waveform type	Output Frequency	Filter Cut–off Frequency
Sine	1.000 Hz to 4.000 MHz	20 MHz
	4.001 MHz to 10.00 MHz	50 MHz
Ramp, Triangle	1.000 Hz to 10.00 MHz	50 MHz

***NOTE**. In case of the waveform which passed through the filter, there exists timing delay between the start points of waveform and marker.*

Amplitude

The amplitude output voltage range is from 0.020 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ to 2.000 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ (0.020 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ to 5.000 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ with Option 05), in 1 mV increments, terminated into 50 Ω. Set the waveform amplitude using the LEVEL / SCALE knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob.

Offset

The offset range is from –1.00 V to +1.000 V (–2.500 V to +2.500 V with Option 05), in 1 mV increments. Use the VERTICAL OFFSET knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob to set the waveform offset level.

Offset is also used for setup of DC level.

Polarity

This menu sets the output waveform polarity. Pushing the Polarity menu button toggles polarity between Normal and Inverted.

Duty

When you select Pulse waveform, Duty...(AWG410) or Duty/Phase... (AWG420 and AWG430) side menu is added. The Duty cycle is set from 0.1% to 99.9% using the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob. Incremental step size depends on the output frequency. Refer to Table 3–62 on page 3–259.

Phase (AWG420 and AWG430 only)

AWG420 and AWG430 have a phase shift function that allows you to shift the waveform horizontally. The Phase is set from –360 degrees to +360 degrees using the HORIZONTAL OFFSET knob, the numeric buttons or the general purpose knob. Incremental step size depends on the output frequency. Refer to Table 3–62 on page 3–259.

Marker signal Marker1 and Marker2 signals are generated and output from MARKER OUT1 and OUT2 rear connectors. The waveform marker signal has the same form as a pulse waveform. The level and width of the markers are fixed and cannot be changed. Table 3–61 describes the marker specification. Marker width depends on the output frequency. Refer to Table 3–62 on page 3–259.

Table 3–61: Predefined Marker signal

Waveform	Hi	Low	Level
Marker1	0 (phase = 0 deg.) to 20 % of one period of waveform	20 to 100 % of one period of waveform	TTL level
Marker2	0 (phase = 0 deg.) to 50 % of one period of waveform	50 to 100 % of one period of waveform	TTL level
	Frequency: 5.0001MHz to 8.000MHz 0 (phase = 0 deg.) to 52 % of one period of waveform	52 to 100 % of one period of waveform	

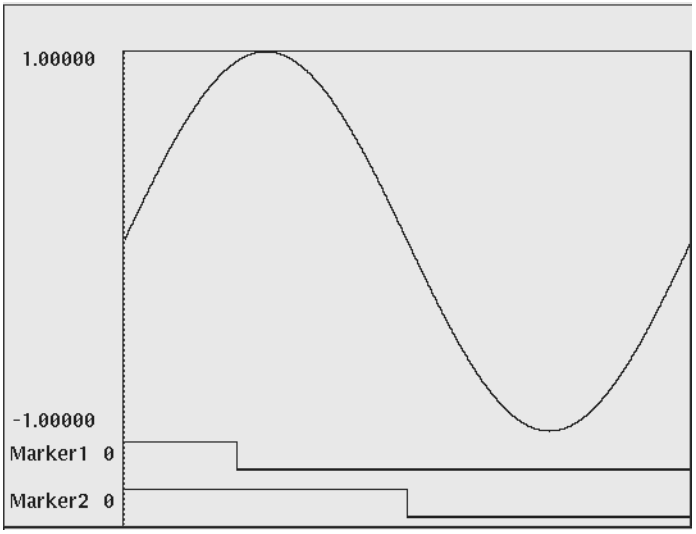


Figure 3–96: Marker pattern

Frequency and Resolution

While operating in FG mode, the output frequency determines the number of data points used to generate the waveform data and the marker data for one period. The resolution of Phase and Pulse Duty ratio and the width of Marker position corresponding to the number of data points are shown in the following table.

Table 3–62: Output Frequency and Waveform Length

Frequency	Number of Data Points	Phase Resolution (degree)	Duty Ratio Resolution (%)	Marker1 position[1]	Marker2 position[2]
1.000Hz to 20.00kHz	10000	0.036	0.1	2000	5000
20.01Hz to 200.0kHz	1000	0.36	0.1	200	500
200.1kHz to 2.000MHz	100	3.6	1	20	50
2.001MHz to 4.000MHz	50	7.2	2	10	25
4.001MHz to 5.000MHz	40	9	2.5	8	20
5.001MHz to 8.000MHz	25	14.4	4	5	13[3]
8.001MHz to 10.00MHz	20	18	5	4	10

1: 20% position of 1 waveform period
2: 50% position of 1 waveform period
3: 52% position of 1 waveform period because of number of data points.

Save/Restore Setup

You can save and restore the instrument output setup information on FG mode to a setup file. Setup file includes waveform type, marker signals and all the output setup parameters. Save/Restore operation is executed on the Save/Restore menu of the SETUP screen in AWG mode. A saved setup file contains the setting information on both AWG mode and FG mode. Refer to *The Save/Restore Menu* on page 3–48.

Operation Flow

When the AWG400 is in AWG mode, change to FG mode. Reference page 3–254.

1. Push **CH1**, **CH2** or **CH3** (front–panel) button to select the output channel. (AWG420 and AWG430 only)
2. Push **Sine**, **Triangle**, **Square**, **Ramp**, **Pulse** or **DC** (bottom) button to select the waveform.
3. Set the output parameters according to the waveform selected.
   - Duty is added to the side menu for Pulse mode.
   - Offset is only used for setup of DC level. Offset is selected on the DC side menu.

AWG420 and AWG430 only

- Frequency is common to all channels.
- Phase is added on the side menu.
- Amplitude, Offset, Polarity and Phase can be set for each channel

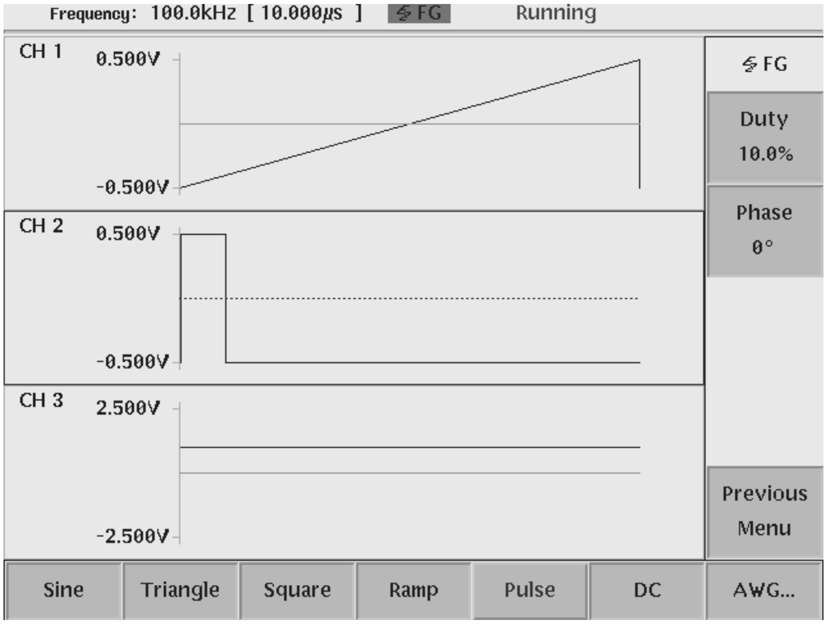


Figure 3–97: Pulse sub-side menu (AWG430)

4. Push the **RUN** (front) button to turn on the RUN LED. Usually, when it switches to FG mode from AWG mode, it automatically changes to the run state (the RUN LED is on).
5. Push the **CH**(**1**, **2** or **3**) **OUT** button to output the signal at the corresponding output connector.

Appendix A: Specifications

This section contains the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator specifications. All specifications are guaranteed unless labeled “typical”. Typical specifications are provided for your convenience but are not guaranteed.

Specifications that are marked with the ✓ symbol in the column Characteristics are checked in *Appendix B: Performance Verification* and the page number referenced to the corresponding performance verification procedures can be found in the column PV reference page.

The characteristics in the specifications are listed in tables that are divided into categories. In these tables, the subcategories may also appear in boldface under the column Characteristics.

Performance Conditions

The performance limits in this specification are valid with these conditions:

- The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must have been calibrated/adjusted at an ambient temperature between +20° C and +30° C.
- The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must be in an environment with temperature, altitude, humidity, and vibration within the operating limits described in these specifications.
- The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must have had a warm-up period of at least 20 minutes.
- The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must be operating at an ambient temperature between +10° C and +40° C.

Warranted characteristics are described in terms of quantifiable performance limits which are warranted.

Electrical Specification

Table A–1: Operation modes

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
✓Continuous	Waveform is continuously output in this mode. When a sequence is defined, waveforms are sequentially or repeatedly output in the order defined by the sequence. The extended sequence functions such as trigger input, event jump, and so on are neglected in this mode.	Page B–19
✓Triggered	Waveform is output only once when a trigger event is created. A trigger signal is created by the external trigger input signal, GPIB trigger command, and/or pressing the front-panel FORCE TRIGGER button. The extended sequence functions such as trigger input, event jump, and so on are neglected in this mode.	Page B–23
✓Gated	The waveform is output in the same way as in the continuous mode only when the gate is opened. The gate is opened by the gated signal. Note that the output is made from the top of the first waveform for every gate period. The clock signal continuously outputs from the connector outside the gate period.	Page B–29
✓Enhanced	The waveforms are sequentially or repeatedly output according to the procedures defined in the sequence. All extended functions such as trigger input, event jump, and so on are effective and waveforms are controlled for output by this functions in this mode.	Page B–67

Table A–2: Arbitrary waveforms

Characteristics	Description
Waveform length	64 to 4 050 000 points
Waveform length (Option 01 16 M memory)	64 to 16 200 000 points
Sequence length	1 to 8 000 steps (All CH1, CH2 and CH3 operate same sequence.)
Sequence repeat counter	1 to 65 536 or infinite
Storage	
Hard Disk	Up to 4.0 Gbytes
Flash Disk (Option 10)	128 Mbytes (delete Hard Disk)
Floppy Disk	1.44 Mbytes

Table A–3: Clock generator

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Sampling frequency	10.00000 kHz to 200.0000 MHz	
Resolution	7 digits	
Internal clock [1]	(When using Internal Reference Oscillator)	
✓ Accuracy	± 0.0002 % (10 °C to 40 °C), during 1 year after calibration	Page B–35
Phase noise, Typical	–84 dBc / Hz (at 100 MHz with 10 kHz offset)	
Jitter, Typical		
Period	Refer to Table xxx, Measured by TDS7104 with TDSJIT2	
Cycle to Cycle	Refer to Table xxx, Measured by TDS7104 with TDSJIT2	

[1] **The internal reference oscillator is used.**

Table A–4: Period Jitter

Clock Frequency	200 MS/s		100 MS/s	
Measurement method	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
	7 ps	45 ps	8 ps	50 ps

Table A–5: Cycle to Cycle jitter

Clock Frequency	200 MS/s		100 MS/s	
Measurement method	StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
	12 ps	80 ps	15 ps	85 ps

Table A–6: Internal trigger generator

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Internal trigger rate [2]	(When using Internal Reference Oscillator)	
Range	1.0 μs to 10.0 s	
Resolution	3 digits, 0.1 μs minimum	
✓ Accuracy	± 0.1 %	Page B–60

[2] **The internal reference oscillator is used.**

Table A–7: Main output (Specified at the end of BNC cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Output connector	BNC connectors	
Output signal		
AWG410 (AWG410 Option 05)	Complementary; CH1 and $\overline{CH1}$ Single–ended: CH1	
AWG420 (AWG420 Option 05)	Complementary; CH1 and $\overline{CH1}$ Complementary; CH2 and $\overline{CH2}$ Single–ended: CH1 and CH2	
AWG430 (AWG430 Option 05)	Complementary; CH1 and $\overline{CH1}$ Complementary; CH2 and $\overline{CH2}$ Complementary; CH3 and $\overline{CH3}$ Single–ended: CH1, CH2 and CH3	
DA converter		
Resolution	16 bits	
Differential nonlinearity, Typical	Within ±3 LSB at 25 °C	
Integral nonlinearity, Typical	Within ±4 LSB at 25 °C	
Glitch energy, Typical	50 $_{p}V_{-s}$, at 1 V_{p-p} 200 MSps	
Output Impedance	50 Ω	
✓**Variable Delay**		Page B–84
Range	–2.5 ns to +2.5 ns	
Resolution	70 ps	
Accuracy, Typical	± 70 ps at 25 °C, ± 120 ps from 10 °C to 20 °C	
Skew time between channels to CH1	(At variable delay set to 0 ns.)	
CH2(AWG420), Typical	≦ ± 100 ps	
Ch2 & CH3 (AWG430), Typical	≦ ± 100 ps	

Table A–8: Complementary Normal Out (Specified at the end of BNC cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Output voltage	–2.0 V to +2.0 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Amplitude		
Range	20 mV_{p-p} to 2 V_{p-p}, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
✓ DC accuracy	±(1.5 % of amplitude + 2 mV), offset: 0 V	Page B–37

Table A–8: Complementary Normal Out (Cont.) (Specified at the end of BNC cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Offset		
Range	–1.00 V to 1.00 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
✓Accuracy	± (1 % of offset + 10 mV), (at 20 mV amplitude setting, waveform data: 0)	Page B–37
✓ **Step response**	(Waveform data: –1 and 1, offset: 0 V, filter: through)	Page B–54
Rise time	≦ 4 ns (at 10% to 90% of amplitude)	
Fall time	≦ 4 ns (at 10% to 90% of amplitude)	
Aberration , Typical	(Measured by TDS784D, Filter: Through) ± 10 % (amplitude > 1.0 V) ± 7 % (amplitude ≦ 1.0 V)	
Settling time , Typical	± 3 % (after 50 ns from rise and fall edges)	
SFDR , Typical	(Signal Frequency: 1.00 MHz, Amplitude: 1.0 Vp–p, Offset: 0 V, Filter: Through, DC to 5 MHz, Measured by WCA 330) ≦ –74 dBc (50 MHz) ≦ –74 dBc (100 MHz) ≦ –62 dBc (150 MHz)	
Filter		
Type	Bessel low pass filter (5 order), 1 MHz, 5 MHz, 20 MHz, and 50 MHz	
Rise time, Typical	(at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)	
1 MHz	350 ns	
5 MHz	70 ns	
20 MHz	18 ns	
50 MHz	7 ns	
Group Delay, Typical		
1 MHz	350 ns	
5 MHz	70 ns	
20 MHz	18 ns	
50 MHz	7 ns	

Table A–8: Complementary Normal Out (Cont.) (Specified at the end of BNC cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Noise	Ch1, Ch2, Ch3 Independently	
Level		
Range	–140 dBm/Hz to –95 dBm/Hz	
Resolution	1 dBm/Hz	
Accuracy, Typical		
Complementary	± 2.5 dB at (–95 dBm/Hz to –130 dBm/Hz at 10 MHz) +4/–1 dB at (–131 dBm/Hz to –140 dBm/Hz at 10 MHz)	
Flatness	± 2.5 dB (1 MHz to 100 MHz, at –95 dBm/Hz reference 50 MHz)	
Type	Gaussian	
Connector	Output is from CH1 / CH2 / CH3 analog output connector	

Table A–9: Single Ended Normal Out (Option 05) (Specified at the end of cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Output Voltage	–5.0 V to +5.0 V into a 50 Ω load	
Range	20 mV$_{p-p}$ to 5 V$_{p-p}$, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
✓ DC Accuracy	± (1.5 % of Amplitude + 2 mV) at offset = 0 V	Page B–40
Offset		
Range	–2.500 V to 2.500 V into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
✓ Accuracy	± (1 % of offset + 10 mV) at 20 mV Amplitude (waveform data : 0)	Page B–44
Step Response	(Waveform data: –1 and 1, offset: 0 V, Filter: Through)	Page B–57
Rise time	≦ 5 ns (at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)	
Fall time	≦ 5 ns (at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)	
Aberration , Typical	(at Filter Through, Measured by TDS784D) ± 10 % (Amplitude > 1.0 V) ± 7 % (Amplitude ≦ 1.0 V)	
Settling time , Typical	± 3 % (After 50 ns from rise/fall edges.)	

Table A–9: Single Ended Normal Out (Option 05) (Cont.) (Specified at the end of cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
SFDR, Typical	(Signal Frequency: 1.00 MHz, Amplitude: 1.0 V_{p-p}, Offset: 0V, Filter: Through, DC to 5 MHz, Measured by WCA 330) ≦ –72 dBc, (at 50 MHz) ≦ –70 dBc, (at 100 MHz) ≦ –60 dBc, (at 150 MHz)	
Filter		
Type	Bessel low pass filter (5 order), 1 MHz, 5 MHz, 20 MHz, and 50 MHz	
Rise time, Typical (at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)		
	1 MHz 350 ns	
	5 MHz 70 ns	
	20 MHz 18 ns	
	50 MHz 7 ns	
Group Delay, Typical		
	1 MHz 350 ns	
	5 MHz 70 ns	
	20 MHz 18 ns	
	50 MHz 7 ns	
Noise	Ch1, Ch2, Ch3 Independently	
Level		
Range	–130 dBm/Hz to –95 dBm/Hz	
Resolution	1 dBm/Hz	
Accuracy, Typical		
Complementary	± 2.5 dB at (–95 dBm/Hz to –120 dBm/Hz at 10 MHz) +4/–1 dB at (–121 dBm/Hz to –130 dBm/Hz at 10 MHz)	
Flatness	± 2.5 dB (1 MHz to 100 MHz, at –95 dBm/Hz reference 50 MHz)	
Type	Gaussian	
Connector	Output is from CH1 / CH2 / CH3 analog output connector	

Table A–10: Dirct DA Out (Specified at the end of cable (P/N 012–0482–00) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Output Voltage	–0.25 to +0.25 V, into a 50 Ω load	
Amplitude		
Range	20 mVp–p to 0.5 Vp–p, into a 50 Ω load	
Resolution	1 mV	
DC Accuracy	± (1.5 % of Amplitude + 2 mV)	
Offset	≦ 10 mV (after calibration)	
✓ **Step response**	(Filter: Through)	Page B–46
Rise time	≦ 3 ns (at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)	
Fall time	≦ 3 ns (at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)	

Table A–11: Auxiliary Outputs (Specified at the end of cable (P/N 012–0057–01) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Marker		
Number of Marker		
AWG410	2	
AWG420	4 (2/ch)	
AWG430	6 (2/ch)	
Maximum Data Rate	10 kbps to 200 Mbps	
✓Level	74LVC541A Output Driver	Page B–81
Hi	2.4 V min into a 50 Ω load / 4.8 V min into a 1 MΩ load	
Lo	0.1 V max into a 50 Ω load / 0.2 V max into a 1 MΩ load	
Rise/Fall time	4ns max (at 10 % to 90 % of amplitude)	
Marker Skew, Typical	≦ 100 ps	
Skew , Typical		
Between Marker 1 to Marker 2	≦ 100 ps	
Between Analog Output to Marker Output	4 ns (Complimentary Output) 6 ns (Option 05, Single Ended)	
Maximum Output Current	±100 mA	
Master Clock Out		Page B–87
Frequency	100 MHz to 200 MHz decided by Sampling Frequency	
✓Amplitude	1 Vp–p into a 50 Ω load ±0.3 V	
Impedance	50 Ω	
Connector	BNC, Rear Panel	

Table A–11: Auxiliary Outputs (Cont.) (Specified at the end of cable (P/N 012–0057–01) used.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
10MHz Reference Out		Page B–89
✓Amplitude	1 V_{p-p} minimum into a 50 Ω load 3 V_{p-p} maximum into a 1 MΩ load	
Impedance	50 Ω, AC Couple	
Connector	BNC, Rear Panel	
Display Monitor Out		
Format	VGA	
Connector	Dsub 9 pin, Rear Panel	

Table A–12: Digital Data Out (Option 03) (Specified at the P4116 output connector)

Characteristics	Description
Output Signals	D0 to D15 (16 bits), Clock (Refer to Figure A–2 and Table A–13)
Output Connector	34 Pin Header–Pin
Maximum Data rate	10 kbps to 100 Mbps
✓**Level**	74LVC541A Output Driver Page B–91
Hi	2.3 V min into a 50 Ω load / 4.6 V min into a 1 MΩ load
Lo	0.1 V max into a 50 Ω load / 0.2 Vmax into a 1 MΩ load
Rise/Fall time	3 ns max (at 10% to 90% of amplitude)
Skew, Typical	1 ns
CH1 Marker Output to Clock	6.5 ns (Refer Figure A–3, Td3)
Clock to Data	2.5 ns (Refer Figure A–3, Td4)
Maximum Output Current	± 70 mA

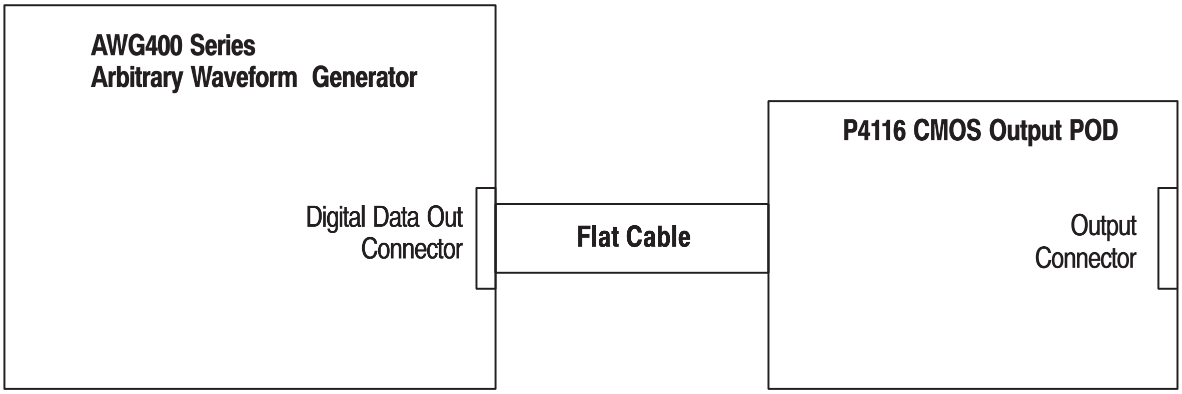


Figure A–1: Connection method for Digital Data Out

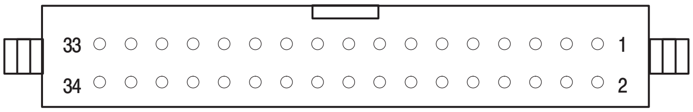


Figure A–2: Pin Assignment of Digital Data Out

Table A–13: Pin Assignment of Digital Data Out

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal
1	CLOCK	2	GND
3	D15 (MSB)	4	GND
5	D14	6	GND
7	D13	8	GND
9	D12	10	GND
11	D11	12	GND
13	D10	14	GND
15	D9	16	GND
17	D8	18	GND
19	D7	20	GND
21	D6	22	GND
23	D5	24	GND
25	D4	26	GND
27	D3	28	GND
29	D2	30	GND
31	D1	32	GND
33	D0 (LSB)	34	GND

Note: The pin assignment is common in CH1, CH2, and CH3.

Table A–14: Auxiliary Inputs

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
Trigger In		
Connector	BNC, Rear Panel	
Impedance	1 kΩ or 50 Ω 50 Ω ± 2 Ω 1 kΩ ± 100 Ω	
Polarity	POS or NEG	
Input Voltage Range	± 10 V, 1 kΩ selected ± 5 V, 50 Ω selected	
✓Threshold		Page B–62
Level	–5.0 V to 5.0 V	
Resolution	0.1 V	
Accuracy	± (5 % of Level + 0.1 V)	
Pulse Width	10 ns minimum, 0.2 V amplitude	
Trigger Dead–time	≦ 65 Clock + 200 ns maximum	
Delay to Analog Output, Typical	50 ns + 1 clock Refer Figure A–3, Td1	
Event In		
Input Signals	4 Event Bits, Strobe	
Number of Event	4 Bits	
Threshold	TTL Level	
Pulse Width	≧ 100 ns (Refer Figure A–3, Td6)	
✓Minimum Input	0 V to +5 V (DC + peak–AC)	Page B–67
Impedance	2.2 kΩ, Pull–up to + 5 V	
Delay to Analog out	≦ 130 Sequence Clock + 400 ns	
Connector	9 pin, Dsub, Rear Panel	
ADD In	Ch1/Ch2/Ch3 Independent Input	
Input Voltage Range	–1 V to +1 V (DC + peak–AC)	
Impedance	50 Ω	
Bandwidth	≧ 50 MHz (–3 dB) at 1 V_{p-p} Input	
✓Amplitude Accuracy	± 5 % Note: Output can not exceed ± 5 V (into a 50 Ω)	Page B–78
Connector	BNC, Rear Panel	

Table A–14: Auxiliary Inputs (Cont.)

Characteristics	Description	PV reference page
10MHz Reference In		
Input voltage range	0.2 V_{p-p} to 3.0 V_{p-p} ± 10 V max	
Impedance	50 Ω, AC Couple	
✓Frequency Range	10 MHz ± 0.1 MHz	Page B–74
Connector	BNC, Rear Panel	
Master Clock In		
Threshold Voltage	0.5 V	
Impedance	50 Ω	
✓Input Sensitive Amplitude	≧ 0.4 V_{p-p} (Threshold Voltage : 0.5 V_{DC})	Page B–76
Minimum Pulse Width	2 ns	
Maximum Input Voltage	± 2 V_{DC}	
Frequency Range	DC to 200 MHz	
Connector	BNC, Rear Panel	

Table A–15: Funcion Generator (FG)

Characteristics	Description
Operation Mode	Continuous mode only
Waveform Shape	Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, Pulse, DC
Frequency	1.000 Hz to 10.00 MHz
Amplitude	
Range	0.020 V_{p-p} to 2.000 V_{p-p}, into a 50 Ω load 0.020 V_{p-p} to 5.000 V_{p-p}, into a 50 Ω load (Option 05)
Resolution	1 mV
Offset	
Range	–1.000 V to +1.000 V, into a 50 Ω load –2.500 V to +2.500 V, into a 50 Ω load (Option 05)
Resolution	1 mV
DC Level	DC waveform only
Range	–1.000 V to +1.000 V, into a 50 Ω load –2.500 V to +2.500 V, into a 50 Ω load (Option 05)
Resolution	1 mV

Table A–15: Funcion Generator (FG) (Cont.)

Characteristics	Description	
Phase	AWG420 and AWG430 only	
Range	–360 degree to +360 degree	
Resolution	Frequency 1.000 Hz to 20.00 kHz 20.01 kHz to 200.0 kHz 200.1 kHz to 2.000 MHz 2.001 MHz to 4.000 MHz 4.001 MHz to 5.000 MHz 5.001 MHz to 8.000 MHz 8.001 MHz to 10.00 MHz	Resolution 0.036 degree 0.36 degree 3.6 degree 7.2 degree 9.0 degree 14.4 degree 18.0 degree
Polarity	Normal, Inverted	
Duty		
Range	0.1 % to 99.9 %	
Resolution	Frequency 1.000 Hz to 200.0 kHz 200.1 kHz to 2.000 MHz 2.001 MHz to 4.000 MHz 4.001 MHz to 5.000 MHz 5.001 MHz to 8.000 MHz 8.001 MHz to 10.00 MHz	Resolution 0.1 % 1.0 % 2.0 % 2.5 % 4.0 % 5.0 %
Marker Out		
Pulse Width		
Mrker1	Hi : 0 % to 20 % of 1 waveform period Lo : 20% to 100 % of 1 waveform period	
Marker2	Hi : 0 % to 50 % of 1 waveform period Lo : 50 % to 100 % of 1 waveform period Hi : 0 % to 52 % of 1 waveform period Lo : 52 % to 100 % of 1 waveform period at frequency range is 5.001MHz to 8.000MHz	
Level	74LVC541A Output Driver	
Hi	2.4 V min into a 50 Ω load / 4.8 V min into a 1 MΩ load	
Lo	0.1 V max into a 50 Ω load / 0.2 V max into a 1 MΩ load	

Table A–16: Display

Characteristics	Description
Display	
Display area	Horizontal: 130.6 mm (5.14 in)
	Vertical: 97.0 mm (3.81 in)
Resolution	640 (H) × 480 (V) pixels

Table A–17: Power Supply

Characteristics	Description
Power Supply	
Rating voltage	100 V_{AC} to 240 V_{AC}
Voltage range	90 V_{AC} to 250 V_{AC}
Frequency range	48 Hz to 63 Hz
Maximum power	340 VAmax
Fuse rating	10 A fast, 250 V, UL 198G (3 AG) 5 A (T), 250 V, IEC 127

Table A–18: Timer

Characteristics	Description
Timer	
Operation life	6 years
Type	Li 3 V, 190 mAh

Table A–19: Interface connectors

Characteristics	Description
Interface	
GPIB	24-pin, IEEE 488.1 connector on the rear panel
Ethernet	100/10 BASE-T, RJ-45 connector on the rear panel
Keyboard connector	6-pin, mini-DIN connector on the rear panel
Optional port connector	9-pin, Dsub connector on the rear panel This connector will be used in the future optional function. Usually, it is equipped with the dust cap.

CH 1

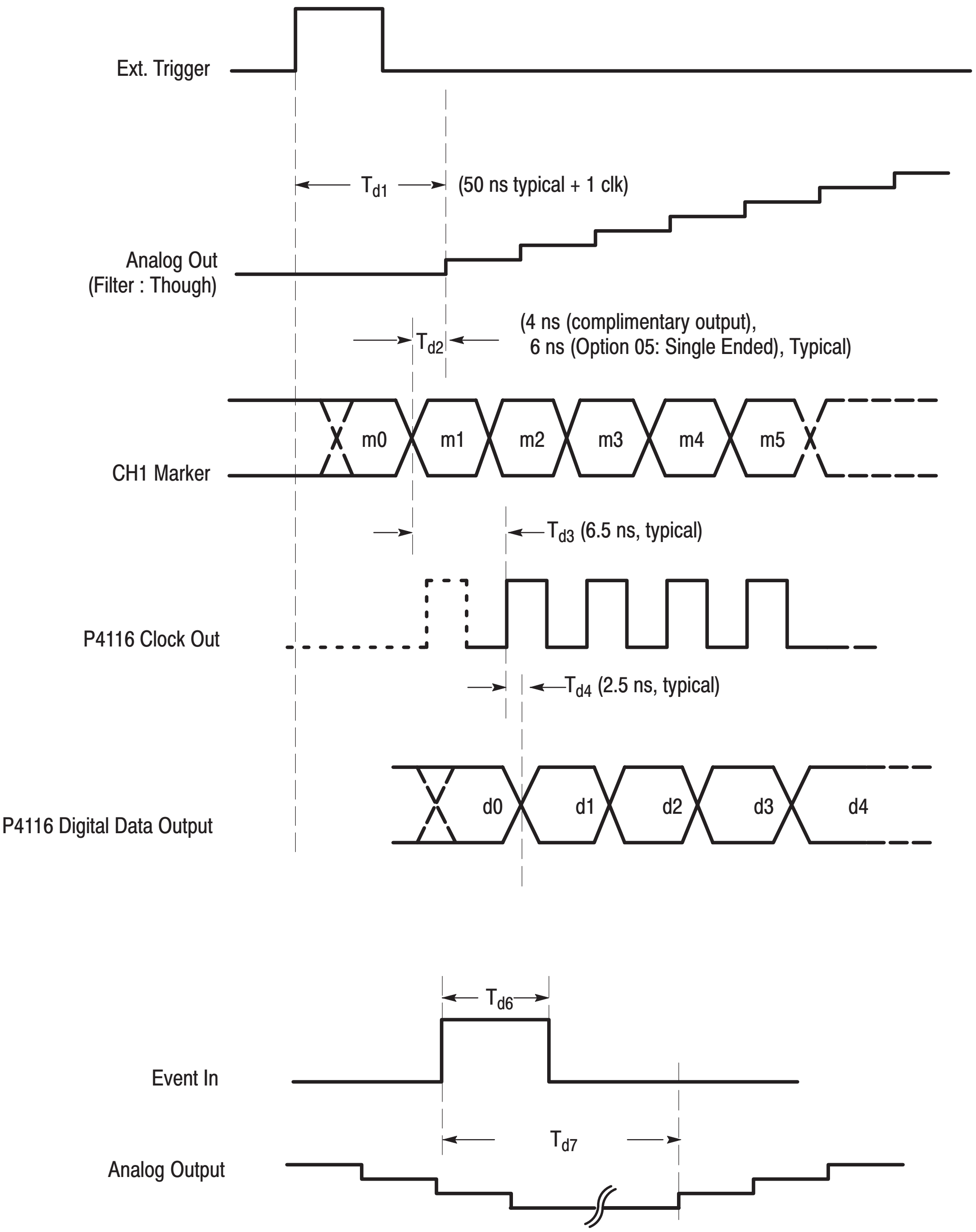


Figure A–3: Signal timing

Table A–20: Installation requirement

Characteristics	Description	
Heat dissipation		
Maximum power Dissipation (Fully loaded)	310 W maximum (maximum line current: 4 A_{rms} at 50 Hz, 90 V line, with 5 % clipping.)	
Surge current	30 A peak (25 °C) for equal to or less than 5 line cycles, after the instrument has been turned off for at least 30s.	
Cooling clearance	Top and Bottom	2 cm (0.8 in) ***NOTE:*** *The feet on the bottom provide the required clearance when set on a flat surface.*
	Sides	15 cm (6 in)
	Rear	7.5 cm (3 in)

Table A–21: Environmental

Characteristics	Description
Atmospherics	
Temperature	
Operating	+10 °C to +40 °C
Nonoperating	–20 °C to +60 °C
Relative humidity	
Operating	20 % to 80 % (no condensation) Maximum wet-bulb temperature 29.4 °C
Nonoperating	5 % to 90 % (no condensation) Maximum wet-bulb temperature 40.0 °C
Altitude	(Hard disk drive restriction)
Operating	Up to 3 km (10,000 ft) Maximum operating temperature decreases 1 °C each 300 m (1,000 ft) above 1.5 km (5,000 ft)
Nonoperating	Up to 12 km (50,000 ft)
Dynamics	
Random vibration	
Operating	2.65 m/s^2rms (0.27Grms), from 5 Hz to 500 Hz, 10 minutes
Nonoperating	22.36 m/s^2rms (2.28Grms), from 5 Hz to 500 Hz, 10 minutes
Shock	
Nonoperating	294 m/s^2 (30 G), half-sine, 11 ms duration.

Table A–22: Mechanical

Characteristics	Description	
Net weight (without package)		
AWG410 (Standard)	approx. 13.7kg (30.2 lb)	
AWG420 (Standard)	approx. 14.1kg (31.1 lb)	
AWG430 (Standard)	approx. 14.4kg (31.7 lb)	
Dimensions (without package)	Height	177 mm (6.97 in) without feet
		193 mm (7.60 in) including feet
	Width	424 mm (16.69 in) without handle
		433 mm (17.05 in) including handle
	Length	470 mm (18.50 in) without back feet
		508 mm (20.00 in) including back feet
Net weight (with package)	approx. 22.3 kg (49.12 lb), AWG430 (Standard)	
Dimensions (with package)	Height	400 mm (15.75 in)
	Width	550 mm (21.65 in)
	Length	700 mm (27.56 in)

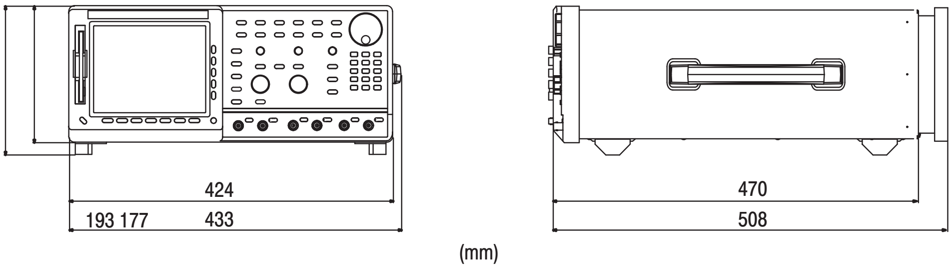


Figure A–4: Dimensions

Certification and Compliances

The certification and compliances for the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator are listed in Table A–23.

Table A–23: Certifications and compliances

Characteristics	Description	
EC declaration of conformity	Meets intent of Directive 89/336/EEC for Electromagnetic Compatibility. Compliance was demonstrated to the following specifications as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities:	
	EN 61326	EMC requirements for Class A electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use.[1]
	EN 61000-3-2	AC Power Line Harmonic Emissions
	EN 61000-4-2	Electrostatic Discharge Immunity
	EN 61000-4-3	RF Electromagnetic Field Immunity
	EN 61000-4-4	Electrical Fast Transient Immunity
	EN 61000-4-5	Surge Immunity
	EN 61000-4-6[2]	Conducted Disturbances Induced by RF Fields
	EN 61000-4-11	Power Line Interruption Immunity
	Compliance was demonstrated to the following specification as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities:	
	Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC	
	EN 61010-1/A2:1995	Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use
**Australian declaration of conformity – EMC **	Conforms with the following standards in accordance with the Electromagnetic Compatibility Framework:	
	AS/NZS 2064.1/2	Class A radiated and Conducted Emissions
Safety	UL3111-1 – Standard for electrical measuring and test equipment	
Third party certification	CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 1010.1 – Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use	
Self declaration	IEC 61010-1/A2:1995 – Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use	
Installation category	Power input — Installation Category II (as defined in IEC 61010-1, Annex J)	
Pollution degree	Pollution Degree 2 (as defined in IEC 61010-1)	

Table A–24: Installation category and Pollution degree Descriptions

Characteristics	Description	
Installation category	Terminals on this product may have different installation category designations. The installation categories are:	
	Category	*Descriptions*
	CAT III	Distribution-level mains (usually permanently connected). Equipment at this level is typically in a fixed industrial location
	CAT II	Local-level mains (wall sockets). Equipment at this level includes appliances, portable tools, and similar products. Equipment is usually cord-connected
	CAT I	Secondary (signal level) or battery operated circuits of electronic equipment
Pollution degree	A measure of the contarminates that could occur in the environment around and within a product. Typically the internal environment inside a product is considered to be the same as the external. Products should be used only in the environment for which they are rated.	
	Category	*Descriptions*
	Pollution Degree 1	No pollution or only dry, nonconductive pollution occurs. Products in this category are generally encapsulated, hermetically sealed, or located in clean rooms.
	Pollution Degree 2	Normally only dry, nonconductive pollution occurs. Occasionally a temporary conductivity that is caused by condensation must be expected. This location is a typical office/home environment. Temporary condensation occurs only when the product is out of service.
	Pollution Degree 3	Conductive pollution, or dry, nonconductive pollution that becomes conductive due to condensation. These are sheltered locations where neither temperature nor humidity is controlled. The area is protected from direct sunshine, rain, or direct wind.
	Pollution Degree 4	Pollution that generates persistent conductivity through conductive dust, rain, or snow. Typical outdoor locations.

[1] **Emissions which exceed the levels required by this standard may occur when this equipment is connected to a test object.**

[2] **Up to 200 $\text{mV}_{\text{p-p}}$ noise is allowed on the output during this test.**

Appendix B: Performance Verification

Two types of Performance Verification procedures can be performed on this product: *Self Tests* and *Performance Tests*. You may not need to perform all of these procedures, depending on what you want to accomplish.

- Verify that the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator is operating correctly by running the self tests which begin on page B–3.

  Advantages: These procedures require minimal time to perform, require no additional equipment, and test the internal hardware of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

- If a more extensive confirmation of performance is desired, complete the self test, and then do the performance test beginning on page B–7.

  Advantages: These procedures add direct checking of warranted specifications. They require more time to perform and suitable test equipment is required. (Refer to *Equipment Required* on page B–8).

Conventions

Throughout these procedures the following conventions apply:

- Each test procedure uses the following general format:

  Title of Test

  Equipment Required

  Test hookup

  Prerequisites

  Procedure

- Each procedure consists of as many steps, substeps, and subparts as required to do the test. Steps, substeps, and subparts are sequenced as follows:

  1. First Step

    a. First Substep

      - First Subpart

      - Second Subpart

    b. Second Substep

2. Second Step

- Instructions for menu selection use the following format: **front-panel BUTTON→Main Menu Button→Side Menu Button**. For example, Push **UTILITY→System→Reset to Factory→OK**
- The name of the button or knob appears in boldface type:

  Push **EDIT**; then **Drive...**, push **Floppy** side button and use the knob to select SINE.WFM from the Performance Check/Adjustments disk.

Self Tests

The *Self Tests* use internal routines to confirm basic functionality and proper adjustment. No test equipment is required to do these test procedures.

The self tests include internal diagnostics to verify that the instrument passes the internal circuit tests, and calibration routines to check and adjust the instrument internal calibration constants.

Diagnostics

This procedure uses internal routines to verify that the instrument is operating correctly. No test equipment or hookups are required.

The instrument automatically performs the internal diagnostics when powered on; you can also run the internal diagnostics using the menu selections described in this procedure. The difference between these two methods of initiating the diagnostics is that the menu method does a more detailed memory check than the power-on method.

Equipment required	None
Prerequisites	Power on the instrument and allow a twenty-minute warmup period before doing this procedure.

Confirm that there is no signal output by verifying that the RUN LED is not on. If the LED is on, push the **RUN** button to turn it off.

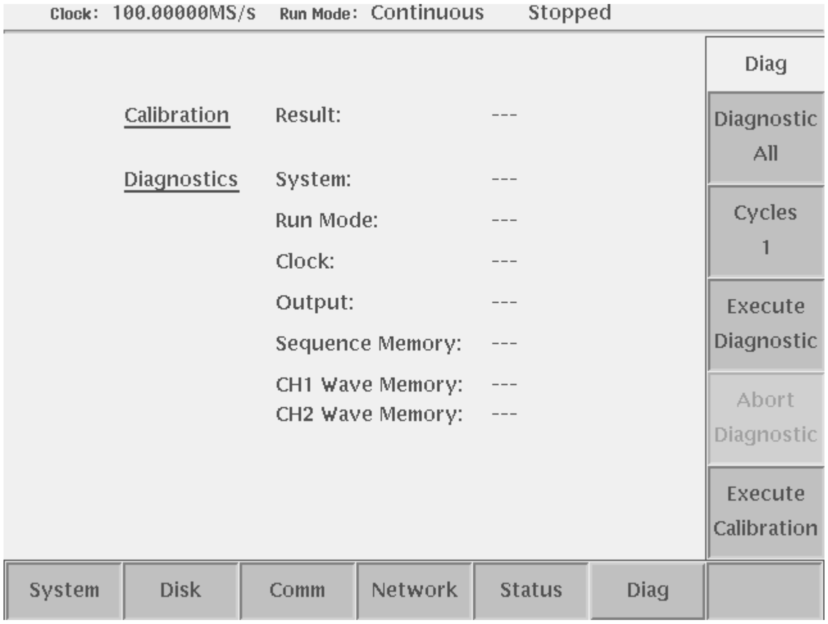
Do the following to verify that the instrument passes the internal circuit tests:

Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Diag** (bottom)→**Diagnostic All** (side).

The diagnostic menu is displayed and all tests are selected. Refer to Figure B–1. If All is not displayed, select All using the general purpose knob.

The list on the screen shows the test items and results in the calibration and diagnostics previously made. Select all of the test items shown on the screen or use the general purpose knob to select a single test item that you want to run. The result of the diagnostics are shown as error code. Pass means that the tests have been made without error. If an error is detected, an error code is displayed.

You can also specify how many times the diagnostic tests are performed. Push the **Cycle** side button and then turn the general purpose knob to select the cycle from 1, 3, 10, 100 or Infinite. When you select Infinite, the tests are repeatedly performed, and are not terminated until you push the Abort Diagnostic side button.


Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Calibration Result: ---

Diagnostics System: ---

Run Mode: ---

Clock: ---

Output: ---

Sequence Memory: ---

CH1 Wave Memory: ---

CH2 Wave Memory: ---

Figure B-1: Diagnostic menu

Do the following to execute all of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator diagnostics automatically:

Push the **Execute Diagnostic** side button.

NOTE. *Push the Abort Diagnostic button (side menu) to stop a selected diagnostic after it is completed. This button does not stop the diagnostic while it is processing. The Abort button stops any further diagnostics from operating.*

The internal diagnostics do an extensive verification of AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator functions. While this verification progresses, the screen displays the clock icon. When finished, the resulting status appears on the screen.

Verify that no failures are found and reported on-screen. If the diagnostics terminates without error, Pass is displayed instead of the - - -. If a value is displayed, meaning an error is detected, consult a qualified service technician for further assistance.

Push any bottom or menu button (other than **UTILITY**) to exit the diagnostic screen.

Calibration

The instrument includes internal calibration routines that check electrical characteristics such as offset, attenuations and filters. Perform calibration to adjust internal calibration constants as necessary. This procedure describes how to do the internal calibration.

Equipment required	None
Prerequisites	Power on the instrument and allow a 20 minute warmup period at an ambient temperature between +20° C and +30° C before doing this procedure.

Confirm that there is no signal output by verifying that the RUN LED is not on. If the LED is on, push the **RUN** button to turn it off.

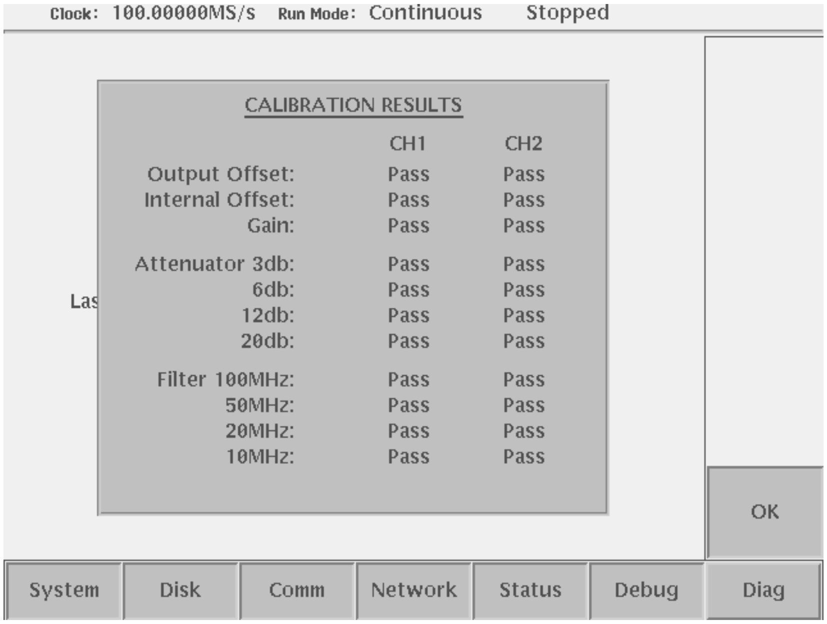
NOTE. *Some calibration items may fail if you start calibration while output is being performed.*

Do the following steps to verify that the internal adjustments have passed:

1. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**Diag** (bottom)→ **Execute Calibration** (side).

This executes the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator calibration routines automatically.

While this internal calibration progresses, the message box displaying *Executing Calibration* appear on screen. When finished, the resulting status will appear in the message box as shown in Figure B–2.



Clock: 100.00000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

CALIBRATION RESULTS

	CH1	CH2
Output Offset:	Pass	Pass
Internal Offset:	Pass	Pass
Gain:	Pass	Pass
Attenuator 3db:	Pass	Pass
6db:	Pass	Pass
12db:	Pass	Pass
20db:	Pass	Pass
Filter 100MHz:	Pass	Pass
50MHz:	Pass	Pass
20MHz:	Pass	Pass
10MHz:	Pass	Pass

Figure B–2: Calibration result message box

Verify that no failures are found and reported in the message box. If the calibration displays Fail as the result, consult a qualified service technician for further assistance.

2. Push the **OK** side button and then any bottom or menu button (other than the **UTILITY**) to exit the dialog screen.

***NOTE**. The calibration data in the memory may be lost if the instrument is powered off while the calibration is executing.*

Performance Tests

This section contains a collection of procedures for checking that the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator performs as warranted.

The procedures are arranged in thirteen logical groupings, presented in the following order:

Table B–1: Performance test items

Titles	See (performance verification)	Test items	See (specifications)
Operating mode tests	Page B–19	Continuous, Triggered, and Gated mode	Page A–2
Clock frequency tests	Page B–35	Clock frequency accuracy	Page A–3
Amplitude and offset accuracy tests (normal out)	Page B–37	Amplitude accuracy, and DC offset accuracy	Page A–4 & A–6
Amplitude, DC offset and rise time accuracy tests (direct DA out)	Page B–46	Amplitude accuracy, DC offset accuracy and Rise time accuracy	Page A–8
Step response tests (normal out)	Page B–54	Rise time accuracy	Page A–6
Internal trigger tests	Page B–60	Trigger interval normality	Page A–3
Trigger input tests	Page B–62	Trigger level accuracy, and Trigger function normality	Page A–12
Event input and enhanced mode tests	Page B–67	External event input function normality, and Event mode normality	Page A–12
10 MHz reference input and Master clock tests	Page B–74 & B–76	10 MHz reference input and Master clock output frequency accuracy	Page A–13
ADD IN input tests	Page B–78	ADD IN input normality, and input level accuracy	Page A–12
Marker output tests	Page B–81	Marker output level accuracy	Page A–8
Variable Delay tests	Page B–84	Delay between channels function	Page A–4
Master clock output tests	Page B–87	Master clock output normally	Page A–8
10 MHz Reference output tests	Page B–89	10 MHz Reference Clock output normally	Page A–9
Digital data output tests	Page B–91	Digital data output normally	Page A–9

The performance tests check all of the characteristics that are designated as checked in *Appendix A:Specifications.* (The characteristic items that must be checked are listed with the check mark (✓) in *Appendix A: Specifications*).

***NOTE**. These procedures extend the confidence level provided by the basic procedures described on page B–3. The basic procedures should be done first, and then these procedures performed if desired.*

Prerequisites

The tests in this section comprise an extensive, valid confirmation of performance and functionality when the following requirements are met:

- The cabinet must be installed on the instrument.
- Power on the instrument and allow a 20 minute warm-up before doing this procedure.
- You must have performed and passed the procedures under *Self Tests*, found on page B–3.
- The waveform generator must have been recently calibrated at an ambient temperature between +20° C and +30° C, performance test must be executed an ambient temperature between +10° C and +40° C.

Refer to *Conventions* on page B–1 for more information.

Equipment Required

These procedures use external, traceable signal sources to directly check warranted characteristics. Table B–2 lists the required equipment used to complete the performance tests.

Table B–2: Test equipments

Item number and description	Minimum requirements	Example (recommended)	Purpose
1. Frequency Counter	1 MHz to 200 MHz, Accuracy: < 0.2 ppm	Anritsu MF1603A	Used to check reference input test.
2. Digital multimeter	DC volts range: 0.05 V to 10 V, Accuracy: ± 0.1 %	Fluke 8842A	Used to check to measure voltage.
3. Oscilloscope	Bandwidth: > 500 MHz, 1 MΩ and 50 Ω inputs	Tektronix TDS7104	Checks output signals. Used in many procedures.
4. Function Generator	Output voltage: –5 V to +5 V, Frequency accuracy: < 0.01 %	Sony/Tektronix AFG310	Generates external input signals. Used in many input signal test procedures.
5. BNC Coaxial Cable (3 required)	50 Ω, male to male BNC connectors	Tektronix part number 012-0482-00	Signal interconnection
6. Dual-Banana Connector	BNC (female) to dual banana	Tektronix part number 103-0090-00	Signal interconnection
7. BNC-T Connector	BNC (male) to BNC (female) to BNC (female)	Tektronix part number 103-0030-00	Signal interconnection

Table B–2: Test equipments (cont.)

Item number and description	Minimum requirements	Example (recommended)	Purpose
8. Precision Terminator	50 Ω, 0.1 %, BNC	Tektronix part number 011-0129-00	Signal termination
9. Performance check disk	Must use example listed	Supplied with the product, Tektronix part number 063-A259-XX	Used to provide waveform files
10. Ground closure (loop-back cable) with 9-pin, D-type connector		Custom, See Figure B–3.	Used for event mode test
11. Flat cable	RF Cable assembly 120 cm (47 in)	Tektronix part number 174-3548-00	Signal interconnection
12. Pin header–SMB cable		Tektronix part number 015-1503-00	Signal interconnection
13. SMB–BNC Connector		Tektronix part number 015-0671-00	Signal interconnection
14. P4116 for Option 3		P4116	Signal termination

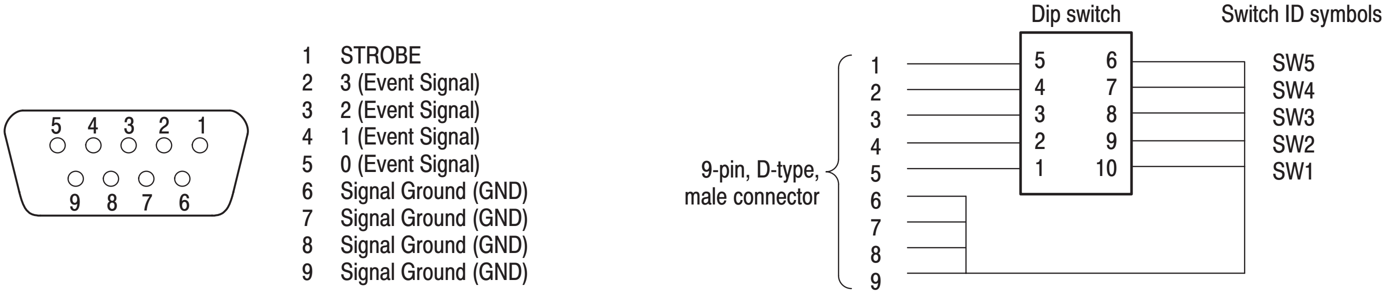


Figure B–3: EVENT IN connector pins and signals and ground closure connector

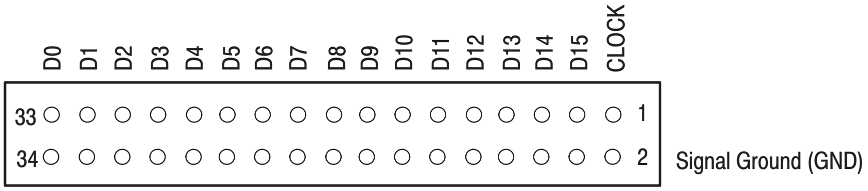


Figure B–4: P4116 Pod Output pins and signals

Loading Files

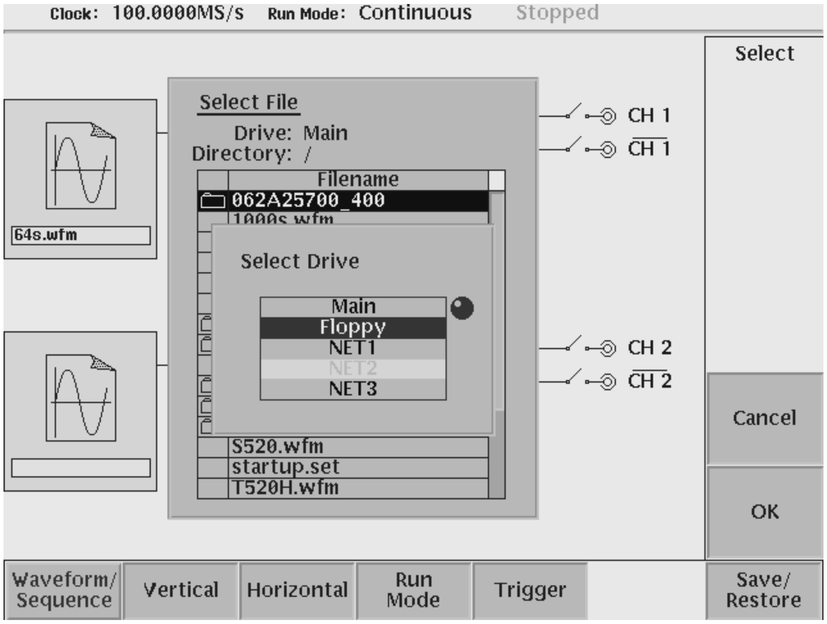
The following steps explain how to load files from the Performance Check/Adjustment disk into waveform memory and/or sequence memory.

1. Insert the AWG400-Series Performance check/ Adjustment disk (P/N: 062-A259-00) into the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator floppy disk drive.
2. Push **CH1**, **CH2**, or **CH3** front button to select the channel to be loaded.
3. Select **SETUP** (front)→**Waveform/Sequence** (bottom)→**Load...** (side)→ **Drive...** (side).

   The Select Drive dialog box appears as show in Figure B–5.
4. Select **Floppy** from the dialog box with the general purpose knob, and then push the **OK** side button.

   The Select Drive dialog box disappears, and the files in the floppy disk are listed on the Select File dialog box.
5. Use the general purpose knob to select a file to be loaded from the dialog box, and then push the **OK** side button.

   The waveform or sequence you selected is loaded into the instrument, and the instrument is also setup with the parameters stored in that file.
6. Remove the floppy disk from the floppy drive if the floppy disk is no longer needed.
7. Push any bottom button or menu button to exit the menu.



Clock: 100.0000MS/s Run Mode: Continuous Stopped

Drive: Main

Directory: /

Figure B–5: Loading file; selecting storage drive

Performance Check/Adjustment Files

Table B–3 lists the sequence and waveform files on the Performance Check/Adjustment disk that are used in the performance test. These files are loaded when you perform each check item. The file also includes test pattern data and setup information.

Table B–3: Waveforms and sequences in performance check disk

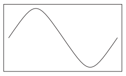
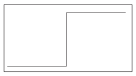
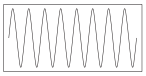
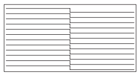
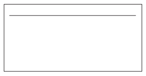
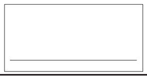
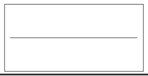
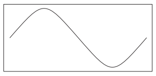
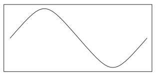
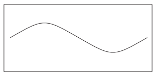
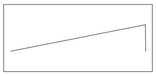
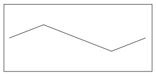
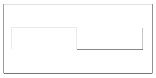
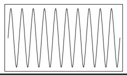
No.	File name	EDIT menu		SETUP menu				Marker setup	Usage
		Form	Points	Clock	Filter	Ampl	Offset		
1	MODE.WFM		1000	200 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V	Marker1,2: 0 to 499: High, 500 to 999: Low	Run mode,Trigger level, Marker, External clock input
2	PULSE.WFM		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Pulse amplitude, Internal trigger accuracy
3	SINE.WFM		256	200 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Sine characteristics
4	DOUT.PAT		512	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Digital data out
5	AMP1.SEQ								Amplitude accuracy (Normal out)
6	AMP2.SEQ								Amplitude accuracy (Direct out)
7	DC_P.WFM (AMPx.SEQ) [1]		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Amplitude accuracy
8	DC_M.WFM (AMPx.SEQ) [1]		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Amplitude accuracy
9	DC0.WFM (AMP2.SEQ)		1000	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Amplitude accuracy
10	OFFSET.WFM		1000	100 MHz	Through	20 mV	0 V		Offset accuracy
11	TRIG.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Trigger input
12	PT_EVENT.SEQ								Event input
13	PT_STROB.SEQ								Event input

Table B–3: Waveforms and sequences in performance check disk (cont.)

No.	File name	EDIT menu		SETUP menu				Marker setup	Usage
		Form	Points	Clock	Filter	Ampl	Offset		
14	S260.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ)[2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
15	S260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ)[2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
16	R260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ)[2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
17	T260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ)[2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
18	Q260H.WFM (PT_xxxxx.SEQ)[2]		260	100 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Event input
19	HSIN.WFM		999	99.9 MHz	Through	1 V	0 V		Sine characteristics

[1] **The AMPx.SEQ represents AMP1.SEQ and AMP2.SEQ.**

[2] **The PT_xxxx.SEQ represents PT_EVENT.SEQ and PT_STROB.SEQ**

AWG400–Series Test Record

Photocopy this test record and use to record the performance test results for your AWG400-Series.

AWG400-Series Test Record

Instrument Serial Number: ________________________________
Temperature: ________________________________
Date of Calibration: ________________________________
Certificate Number: ________________________________
RH %: ________________________________
Technician: ________________________________

AWG400-Series Performance Test		**Minimum**	**Incoming**	**Outgoing**	**Maximum**
Operating Mode					
Check Cont Mode		Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
Check Triggered Mode (when the FORCE TRIGGER button is pushed)		Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
Check Triggered Mode (with external triggering)		Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
Check Gated Mode (when the FORCE TRIGGER button is pushed)		Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
Check Gated Mode (with the gate signal when the AWG trigger polarity is set to positive)		Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
Check Gated Mode (with the gate signal when the AWG trigger polarity is set to negative)		Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
Amplitude and Offset Accuracy (Normal Out)					
CH1 Amplitude	20 mV	17.70 mV	__________	__________	22.30 mV
	200 mV	195.0 mV	__________	__________	205.0 mV
	2 V	1.9680 V	__________	__________	2.0320 V
	5 V (Opt 5 only)	4.923 V	__________	__________	5.077 V
CH2 Amplitude	20 mV	17.70 mV	__________	__________	22.30 mV
	200 mV	195.0 mV	__________	__________	205.0 mV
	2 V	1.9680 V	__________	__________	2.0320 V
	5 V (Opt 5 only)	4.923 V	__________	__________	5.077 V
CH3 Amplitude	20 mV	17.70 mV	__________	__________	22.30 mV
	200 mV	195.0 mV	__________	__________	205.0 mV
	2 V	1.9680 V	__________	__________	2.0320 V
	5 V (Opt 5 only)	4.923 V	__________	__________	5.077 V

AWG400-Series Test Record (cont.)

Instrument Serial Number: ______________________ Certificate Number: ______________________
Temperature: ______________________ RH %: ______________________
Date of Calibration: ______________________ Technician: ______________________

AWG400-Series Performance Test		Minimum	Incoming	Outgoing	Maximum
$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ Amplitude	20 mV	17.70 mV	________	________	22.30 mV
	200 mV	195.0 mV	________	________	205.0 mV
	2 V	1.9680 V	________	________	2.0320 V
$\overline{\text{CH2}}$ Amplitude	20 mV	17.70 mV	________	________	22.30 mV
	200 mV	195.0 mV	________	________	205.0 mV
	2 V	1.9680 V	________	________	2.0320 V
$\overline{\text{CH3}}$ Amplitude	20 mV	17.70 mV	________	________	22.30 mV
	200 mV	195.0 mV	________	________	205.0 mV
	2 V	1.9680 V	________	________	2.0320 V
CH1 Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	________	________	+ 10.0 mV
	+1 V	+ 0.980 V	________	________	+ 1.020 V
	–1 V	– 0.980 V	________	________	– 1.020 V
	+2.5 V (Opt 5 only)	+2.465 V	________	________	+2.535 V
	–2.5 V (Opt 5 only)	–2.465 V	________	________	–2.535 V
CH2 Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	________	________	+ 10.0 mV
	+1 V	+ 0.980 V	________	________	+ 1.020 V
	–1 V	– 0.980 V	________	________	– 1.020 V
	+2.5 V (Opt 5 only)	+2.465 V			+2.535 V
	–2.5 V (Opt 5 only)	–2.465 V			–2.535 V
CH3 Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	________	________	+ 10.0 mV
	+1 V	+ 0.980 V	________	________	+ 1.020 V
	–1 V	– 0.980 V	________	________	– 1.020 V
	+2.5 V (Opt 5 only)	+2.465 V	________	________	+2.535 V
	–2.5 V (Opt 5 only)	–2.465 V	________	________	–2.535 V
$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	________	________	+ 10.0 mV
	+1 V	+ 0.980 V	________	________	+ 1.020 V
	–1 V	– 0.980 V	________	________	– 1.020 V
$\overline{\text{CH2}}$ Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	________	________	+ 10.0 mV
	+1 V	+ 0.980 V	________	________	+ 1.020 V
	–1 V	– 0.980 V	________	________	– 1.020 V
$\overline{\text{CH3}}$ Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	________	________	+ 10.0 mV
	+1 V	+ 0.980 V	________	________	+ 1.020 V
	–1 V	– 0.980 V	________	________	– 1.020 V

AWG400-Series Test Record (cont.)

Instrument Serial Number: ______________________________
Certificate Number: ______________________________
Temperature: ______________________________
RH %: ______________________________
Date of Calibration: ______________________________
Technician: ______________________________

AWG400-Series Performance Test		**Minimum**	**Incoming**	**Outgoing**	**Maximum**
Amplitude, DC Offset Accuracy and Rise Time (Direct DA Out)					
CH1 Amplitude	500 mV	490.5 mV	__________	__________	509.5 mV
CH2 Amplitude	500 mV	490.5 mV	__________	__________	509.5 mV
CH3 Amplitude	500 mV	490.5 mV	__________	__________	509.5 mV
$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ Amplitude	500 mV	490.5 mV	__________	__________	509.5 mV
$\overline{\text{CH2}}$ Amplitude	500 mV	490.5 mV	__________	__________	509.5 mV
$\overline{\text{CH3}}$ Amplitude	500 mV	490.5 mV	__________	__________	509.5 mV
CH1 DC Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	__________	__________	+ 10.0 mV
CH2 DC Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	__________	__________	+ 10.0 mV
CH3 DC Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	__________	__________	+ 10.0 mV
$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ DC Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	__________	__________	+ 10.0 mV
$\overline{\text{CH2}}$ DC Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	__________	__________	+ 10.0 mV
$\overline{\text{CH3}}$ DC Offset	0 V	– 10.0 mV	__________	__________	+ 10.0 mV
CH1 Rise Time	0.5 V Amplitude	N/A	__________	__________	3.0 ns
CH2 Rise Time	0.5 V Amplitude	N/A	__________	__________	3.0 ns
CH3 Rise Time	0.5 V Amplitude	N/A	__________	__________	3.0 ns
$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ Rise Time	0.5 V Amplitude	N/A	__________	__________	3.0 ns
$\overline{\text{CH2}}$ Rise Time	0.5 V Amplitude	N/A	__________	__________	3.0 ns
$\overline{\text{CH3}}$ Rise Time	0.5 V Amplitude	N/A	__________	__________	3.0 ns
Pulse Response					
CH1 Rise Time	1 V Amplitude (10 to 90 % point)	N/A	__________	__________	4.0 ns (Standard) 5.0 ns (Opt. 5)
CH2 Rise Time	1 V Amplitude (10 to 90 % point)	N/A	__________	__________	4.0 ns (Standard) 5.0 ns (Opt. 5)
CH3 Rise Time	1 V Amplitude (10 to 90 % point)	N/A	__________	__________	4.0 ns (Standard) 5.0 ns (Opt. 5)

AWG400-Series Test Record (cont.)

Instrument Serial Number: ____________________ Certificate Number: ____________________
Temperature: ____________________ RH %: ____________________
Date of Calibration: ____________________ Technician: ____________________

AWG400-Series Performance Test	**Minimum**	**Incoming**	**Outgoing**	**Maximum**
$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ Rise Time 1 V Amplitude (10 to 90 % point)	N/A	________	________	4.0 ns (Standard) 5.0 ns (Opt. 5)
$\overline{\text{CH2}}$ Rise Time 1 V Amplitude (10 to 90 % point)	N/A	________	________	4.0 ns (Standard) 5.0 ns (Opt. 5)
$\overline{\text{CH3}}$ Rise Time 1 V Amplitude (10 to 90 % point)	N/A	________	________	4.0 ns (Standard) 5.0 ns (Opt. 5)
Internal Trigger				
Internal Trigger function (at the trigger interval to 1 ms)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Internal Trigger function (at the trigger interval to 2 ms)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Trigger Input				
Positive Threshold (set the triggering level to 5 V) No trigger when input voltage vary from 0 V to 4.65 V.	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Trigger when input voltage vary from 4.65 V to 5.35 V.	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Negative Threshold (set the triggering level to −5 V) No trigger when input voltage vary from 0 V to −4.65 V.	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Trigger when input voltage vary from −5.35 V to −4.65 V.	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Event Input and Enhanced Mode				
Check Event Input with Strobe Off pin 0 (when SW1 of the ground closure is closed)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
pin 1 (when SW2 of the ground closure is closed)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
pin 2 (when SW3 of the ground closure is closed)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
pin 3 (when SW4 of the ground closure is closed)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail
Check Strobe Input (when SW5 of the ground closure is on and off)	Pass/Fail	________	________	Pass/Fail

AWG400-Series Test Record (cont.)

Instrument Serial Number: ______________________ Certificate Number: ______________________

Temperature: ______________________ RH %: ______________________

Date of Calibration: ______________________ Technician: ______________________

AWG400-Series Performance Test	**Minimum**	**Incoming**	**Outgoing**	**Maximum**
Master Clock Frequency and 10 MHz Reference Input				
Check Master Clock Out Frequency Internal Clock = 100 MHz	99,980,000 Hz	__________	__________	100,020,000 Hz
Check output with 10 MHz Reference Input 10 MHz Ref In = 10 MHz	99,995,000 Hz	__________	__________	100,005,000 Hz
Check output with 10.1 MHz Reference Input 10 MHz Ref In = 10.1 MHz	100,995,000 Hz	__________	__________	101,005,000 Hz
Master Clock Output Level				
Check Master Clock Amplitude	0.7 V	__________	__________	1.3 V
10 MHz Reference Output Level				
Check 10 MHz Clock Amplitude	1.0 V	__________	__________	N/A
Marker Output				
MARKER1 Low level	0.0 V	__________	__________	0.1 V
MARKER1 High level	2.4 V	__________	__________	2.5 V
MARKER2 Low level	0.0 V	__________	__________	0.1 V
MARKER2 High level	2.4 V	__________	__________	2.5 V
MARKER3 Low level	0.0 V	__________	__________	0.1 V
MARKER3 High level	2.4 V	__________	__________	2.5 V
Channel Skew				
CH 2 Skew Range (–2.52 ns to +2.52 ns)	Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail
CH 3 Skew Range (–2.52 ns to +2.52 ns)	Pass/Fail	__________	__________	Pass/Fail

Operating Mode Tests

The following procedures verify the operation of the Continuous, Triggered and Gated modes.

***NOTE**. You need to verify CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ outputs for AWG410, CH1, $\overline{\text{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs for AWG420, CH1, $\overline{\text{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$, CH3 and $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs for AWG430. If you have option 05 you do not have to verify $\overline{\text{CHx}}$.*

When you verify one of the outputs, turn off the other output of the OUTPUT LED.

Check Continuous Mode (Instrument other than option 05)

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use two 50 Ω coaxial cables to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector, and the AWG400-Series $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector to the oscilloscope CH2 input connector. (see Figure B–6).

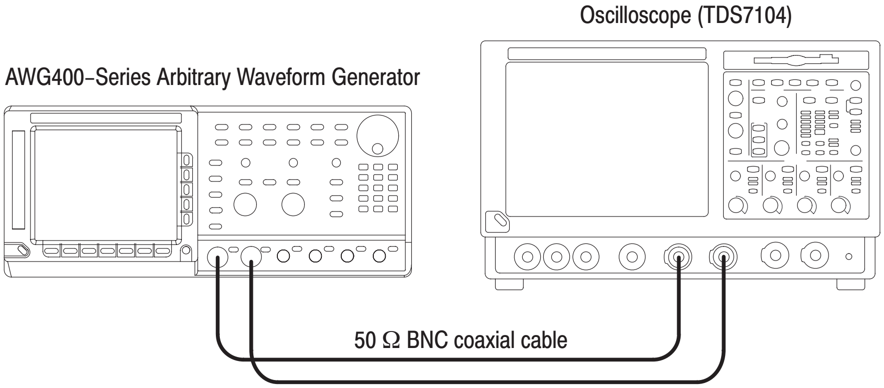


Figure B–6: Continuous mode initial test hookup (Instrument other than option 05)

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical . . . . CH1 & CH2
    CH1 coupling . . . . DC

CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 coupling	DC
CH2 scale	0.2 V/div
CH2 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	2 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

  a. Reset the AWG400-Series:
  Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

  b. Select the channel:
  Push the desired channel select button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) that you want to verify.

  c. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH1.

  Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** front panel buttons.

  The LEDs above the RUN button, CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connectors are on.

4. Verify that the amplitude of the sine wave displayed on the oscilloscope is 5 vertical divisions (1 V) and that a waveform of approximately one cycle per 2.5 horizontal divisions (5 μs) is displayed.
  Also verify that the inverse of CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output waveform plus/minus.

5. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** front panel buttons to disable the output.

  The LEDs above the RUN button, CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connectors turn off.

6. Disconnect the cables connected to CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connectors, and connect them to next channel.

7. Repeat steps 2 through step 6 for CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs and CH3, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs (if applicable).

8. Disconnect the cables from the oscilloscope.

Check Continuous Mode (Instrument with option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

a. Use a 50 Ω coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector. (see Figure B–7).

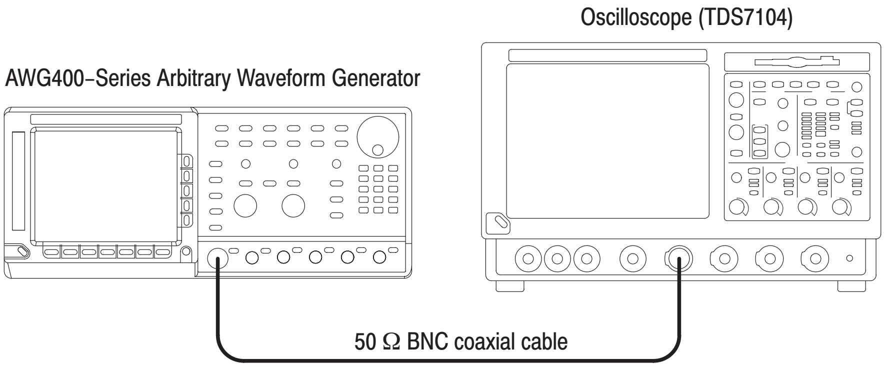


Figure B–7: Continuous mode initial test hookup (Instrument with option 05)

b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	2 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

   a. Reset the AWG400-Series:
   Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Select the channel:
   Push the desired channel select button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

   c. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH1.

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel buttons.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors are on.

4. Verify that the amplitude of the sine wave displayed on the oscilloscope is 5 vertical divisions (1 V) and that a waveform of approximately one cycle per 2.5 horizontal divisions(5 μs) is displayed.

5. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel buttons to disable the output.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors turn off.

6. Disconnect the cables connected to CH1 output connector, and connect them to next channel.

7. Repeat the step 2 through step 6 for CH2 and CH3 outputs.

8. Disconnect the cable from oscilloscope.

Check Triggered Mode (Instrument other than option 05)

The following table lists the equipment and prerequisites required to verify the Triggered mode.

Equipment required	Four 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, a BNC-T (male to 2 females) adapter, a function generator (AFG310), and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use two 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector, and the AWG400-Series $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector to the oscilloscope CH2 input connector. Connect a BNC–T adapter to the TRIG IN connector of AWG400-Series, and connect a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable from the BNC–T adapter to the oscilloscope CH3 input connector. (Refer to Figure B–8).

   b. Connect the fourth 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the BNC-T adapter. Connect the opposite end of the coaxial cable to the function generator output. (Refer to Figure B–8).

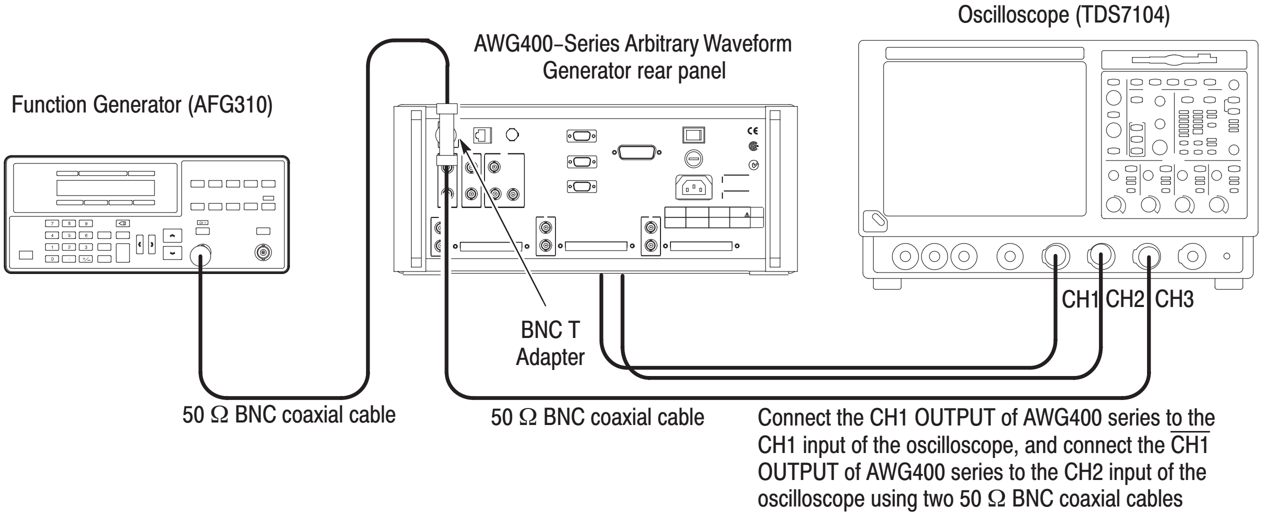


Figure B–8: Triggered mode initial test hookup (Instrument other than option 05)

c. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Push the Fast ACQ button on the front panel.

Vertical	CH1, CH2, and CH3
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	500 mV/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 coupling	DC
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH2 input impedance	50 Ω
CH3 scale	2 V/div
CH3 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	2 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

d. Set the function generator (AFG310) controls as follows:

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	100 kHz
Amplitude	2.0 V into 50 Ω (4.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Offset	1.0 V into 50 Ω (2.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Output	Off

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

a. Reset the AWG400-Series:
Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Select the channel:
Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

c. Select trigger mode:
Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side).

d. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH1.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** front panel buttons.

   The LEDs above the RUN button, CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connectors are on.

4. Push the **FORCE TRIGGER** front panel button on the AWG.

   Verify that the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave when the FORCE TRIGGER front panel button is pushed and held down. You may need to adjust the horizontal position control to see the signal.

5. Follow the substeps below to verify the triggered mode with external triggering:

   a. Turn on the function generator output.

   b. Verify that the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave for each trigger supplied by the function generator. See Figure B–9.

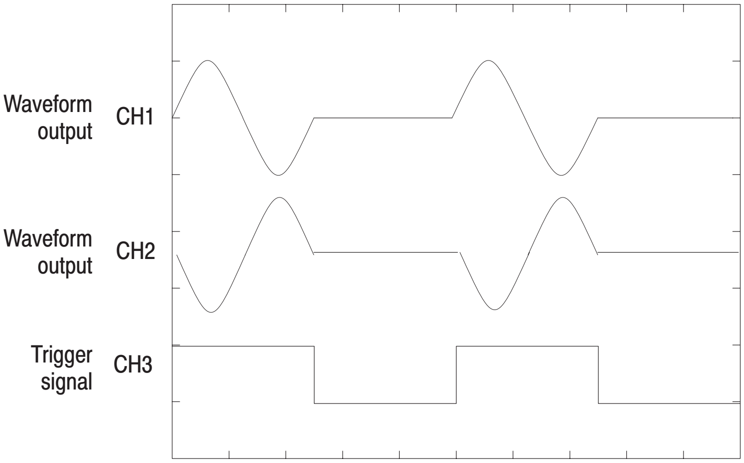


Figure B–9: Relationship between trigger signal and waveform output (Instrument other than option 05)

6. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** front panel buttons to disable the output.

   The LEDs above the RUN button, CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connectors turn off.

7. Disconnect the cables connected to CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ outputs, and connect them to next channel.

8. Repeat the step 2 through step 7 for CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs and CH3, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs.

9. Stop the function generator output.

Check Triggered Mode (Instrument with option 05)

The following table lists the equipment and prerequisites required to verify the Triggered mode.

Equipment required	Three 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, a BNC-T (male to 2 females) adapter, a function generator (AFG310), and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector. Next, BNC–T adapter to TRIG IN connector of AWG400-Series, and connect a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable from BNC-T adapter to oscilloscope CH2 input connector. (Refer to Figure B–10).

   b. Connect the third 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the BNC-T adapter. Connect the opposite end of the coaxial cable to the function generator output. (Refer to Figure B–10).

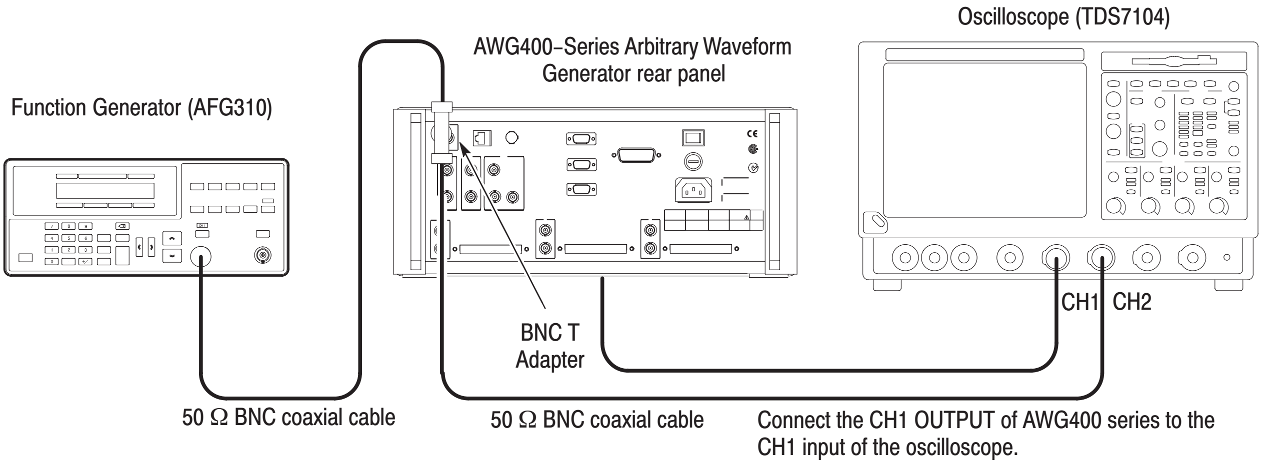


Figure B–10: Triggered mode initial test hookup (Instrument with option 05)

c. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Push the Fast Acq button on the front panel.

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	500 mV/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH2 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	2 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

d. Set the function generator (AFG310) controls as follows:

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	100 kHz
Amplitude	2.0 V into 50 Ω (4.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Offset	1.0 V into 50 Ω (2.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Output	Off

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file.

a. Reset the AWG400-Series:
Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Select the channel:
Push the desired channel button **(CHx)** (left side of the front-panel) that you want to verify.

c. Select trigger mode:
Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side).

d. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH1.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel buttons.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors are on.

4. Push the **FORCE TRIGGER** front panel button.

   Verify that the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave when the FORCE TRIGGER front panel button is pushed. You may need to adjust the horizontal position control to see the signal.

5. Follow the substeps below to verify the triggered mode with external triggering:

   a. Turn on the function generator output.

   b. Verify that the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave for each trigger supplied by the function generator. See Figure B–11.

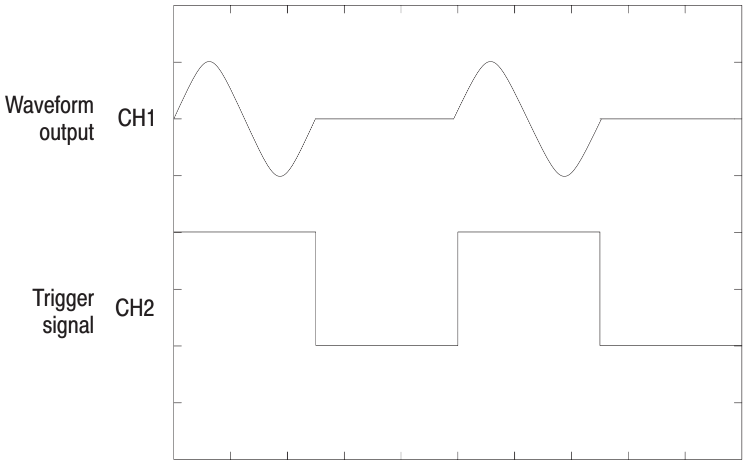


Figure B–11: Relationship between trigger signal and waveform output (Instrument with option 05)

6. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel buttons to disable the output.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors turn off.

7. Disconnect the cables connected to CH1 output, and connect them to next channel.

8. Repeat the step 2 through step 7 for CH2 and CH3 outputs.

9. Stop the function generator output.

Verify Gated Mode (Instrument other than option 05)

Equipment required	Four 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, a BNC-T (male to 2 females) adapter, a function generator, and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Use the same test hookup as the verify Triggered Mode (Instrument other than option 05). Refer to page B–23.
2. Do the following substeps to set the test equipment controls:
   a. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1, CH2 and CH3
CH1, CH2 and CH3 coupling	DC
CH1 and CH2 scale	0.5 V/div
CH3 scale	2 V/div
CH1 and CH2 input impedance	50 Ω
CH3 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

   b. Set the function generator (AFG310) controls as follows:

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	10 kHz
Amplitude	2.0 V into 50 Ω (4.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Offset	1.0 V into 50 Ω (2.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Output	Off

3. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:
   a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Select the channel:
Push the desired channel button **(CHx)** (left side of the front-panel) that you want to verify.

c. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Gated** (side).

d. Load the MODE.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

4. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT** and $\overline{\textbf{CH1}}$ **OUTPUT** front panel buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button, CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector are on.

5. Push and hold down the **FORCE TRIGGER** front panel button.

Verify that the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave when the FORCE TRIGGER front panel button is pushed. You may need to adjust the horizontal position control to see the signal.

6. Verify Gated Mode with gate signal:

a. Change horizontal setup of oscilloscope to 20 μs/div.

b. Change the oscilloscope trigger source to CH3.

c. Gated signal output:
Turn on the function generator output.

d. Verify gated mode with positive gate signal:
Verify that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal amplitude is High level. See Figure B–12.

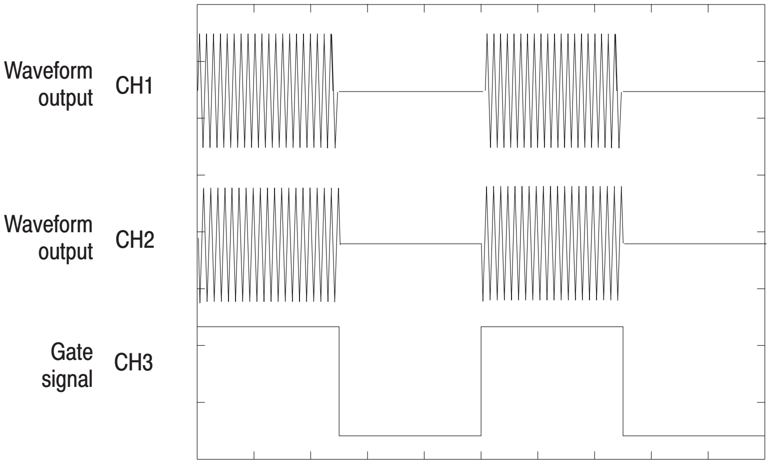


Figure B–12: Relationship between gate signal and waveform output (Instrument other than option 05)

   e. Verify gated mode with negative gate signal:
   Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Negative** (side).

   This changes the AWG400-Series trigger polarity to negative.

   f. Verify that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal amplitude is Low level.

7. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** front panel buttons to disable the output.

   The LEDs above the RUN button, CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connectors turn off.

8. Disconnect the cables connected to CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ outputs, and connect them to next channel.

9. Repeat steps 2 through step 7 for CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs and CH3, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs.

10. Turn off the function generator output and disconnect from the oscilloscope.

Check Gated Mode (Instrument with option 05)

Equipment required	Three 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, a 50 Ω SMA coaxial cable, a BNC-T (male to 2 females) adapter, a function generator, and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Use the same test hookup as the Check Triggered Mode (Instrument with option 05). Refer to page B–26.

2. Do the following substeps to set the test equipment controls:

a. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 and CH2 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

b. Set the function generator (AFG310) controls as follows:

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	10 kHz
Amplitude	2.0 V into 50 Ω (4.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Offset	1.0 V into 50 Ω (2.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Output	Off

3. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

- **b.** Select the channel:
  Push the desired channel button **(CHx)** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.
- **c.** Set the gated mode:
  Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Gated** (side).
- **d.** Load the MODE.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

4. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

5. Push the **FORCE TRIGGER** front panel button.

Verify that the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sinewave when the FORCE TRIGGER front panel button is pushed. You may need to adjust the horizontal position control to see the signal.

6. Verify Gated Mode with gate signal:

- **a.** Change horizontal setup of oscilloscope to 20 μs/div.
- **b.** Change the oscilloscope trigger source to CH2.
- **c.** Gated signal output:
  Turn on the function generator output.
- **d.** Verify gated mode with positive gate signal:
  Verify that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal amplitude is High level. See Figure B–13.

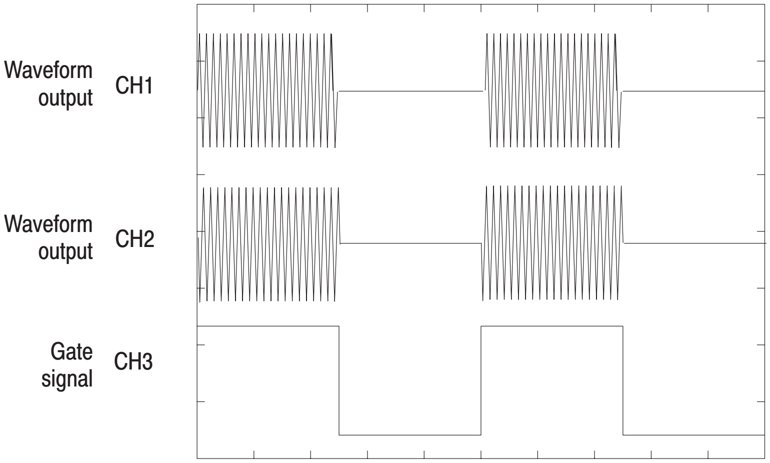


Figure B–13: Relationship between gate signal and waveform output (Instrument with option 05)

   e. Verify gated mode with negative gate signal:
      Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Negative** (side).

   This changes the AWG400-Series trigger polarity to negative.

   f. Verify that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal amplitude is Low level.

7. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel buttons to disable the output.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors turn off.

8. Disconnect the cables connected to CH1 output, and connect them to next channel.

9. Repeat steps 2 through step 8 for CH2 and CH3 outputs.

10. Turn off the function generator output and disconnect from the oscilloscope.

Internal Clock Frequency Tests

These procedures verify the accuracy of the internal clock frequency of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and a frequency counter.
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Connect the frequency counter to the AWG.
   Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the MASTER CLOCK OUT of the AWG400-Series rear panel to A input connector on the frequency counter. (see Figure B–14).

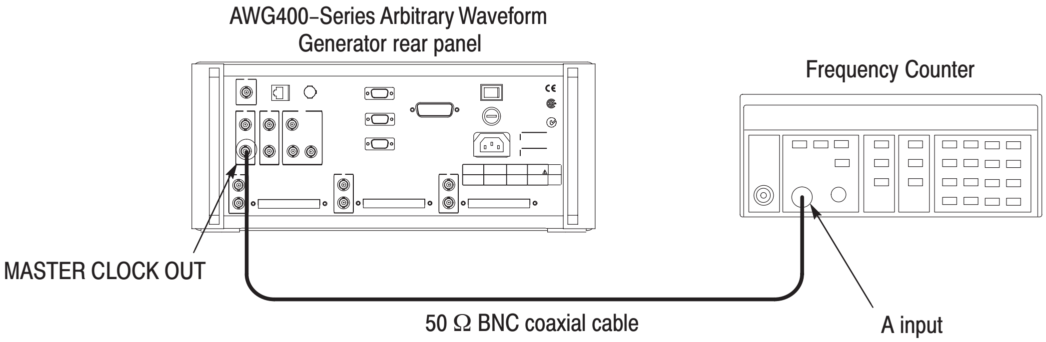


Figure B–14: Clock frequency and 10 MHz reference input initial test hookup

   b. Set the frequency counter controls as follows:

INPUT A	
Slope	↑
Coupling	AC
FUNCTION	A FREQ
Gate time	0.2 s
Trigger Level	0 V

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:
   - **a.** Reset the AWG400-Series:
     Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).
   - **b.** Load the MODE.WFM file.

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   - **c.** Select clock frequency:
     Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side).
   - **d.** Set frequency:
     Push **1, 0**, **0** and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the internal clock frequency to 100 MHz.
3. Verify that the reading on the frequency counter is 100 MHz ±200 Hz (2 ppm).
4. Remove test hookup:
5. Disconnect the cable connected to the frequency counter.

Amplitude and Offset Accuracy Tests (Normal Out)

These procedures verify the accuracy of the amplitude and offset outputs of the AWG400-Series.

***NOTE**. You need to verify CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ outputs for AWG410, CH1, $\overline{\text{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs for AWG420, CH1, $\overline{\text{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$, CH3 and $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs for AWG430. If you have option 05 you do not have to verify $\overline{\text{CHx}}$.*

When you verify one of the output, turn off the other output of OUTPUT LED.

***NOTE**. The amplitude and offset accuracy verifications are performed as a continuous test. The offset accuracy test uses the same control settings as the amplitude test.*

Check Amplitude Accuracy (Instrument other than option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, BNC (female)-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

a. DMM hookup:
Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and a BNC-to-dual banana adapter to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–15).

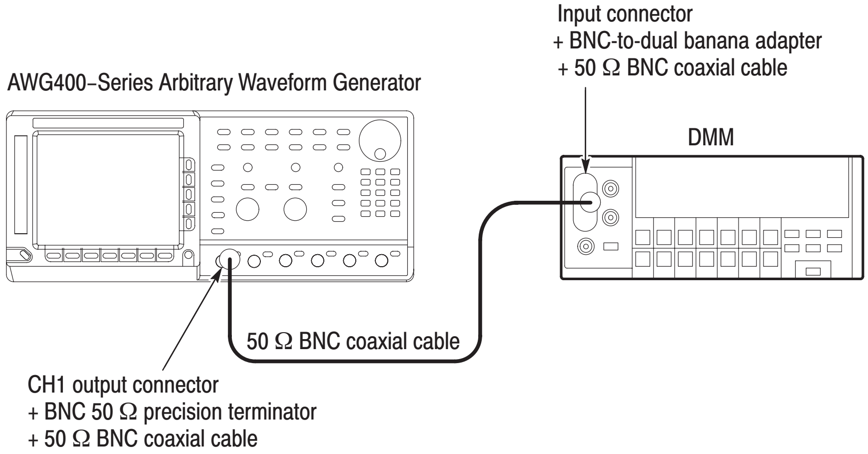


Figure B–15: Amplitude accuracy initial test hookup

b. Set the DMM controls as follows:

Mode	VDC
Range	Auto
Input	Front

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Select the channel:
Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

c. Set the enhanced mode:
Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side).

d. Load the AMP1.SEQ file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

4. Verify amplitude accuracy:

a. Do the following substeps to set the AWG400-Series amplitude and confirm the offset setting:

- Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front-panel)→**Amplitude** (side).
- Push **0, ., 0, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.020 V.
- Verify that the offset setting display on the Offset side button is 0.000 V by pushing the offset side button.

  If the offset display is not set correctly, push the **Offset** side button, and push **0** and then **ENTER** key.
- Verify that CH1 output is off:
  If the CH1 output is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** button to turn it off.

b. Do the following substeps to verify the amplitude accuracy of a 20 mV amplitude setting:

- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 20 mV ± 2.3 mV.

c. Push **0, ., 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.200 V.

d. Do the following to verify the amplitude accuracy of 200 mV amplitude setting:

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 200 mV ± 5 mV.

e. Push the **2** and the **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 2 V.

f. Do the following substeps to verify the amplitude accuracy of a 2 V amplitude setting:

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 2 V ± 0.032 V.

5. Do the following substeps to change the connection to $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$:

- Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

  The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.
- Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$ output connector.

6. Repeat steps 3 through step 5 for $\overline{\mathrm{CH1}}$ output.

7. Repeat steps 2 through step 6 for CH2, $\overline{\mathrm{CH2}}$ and CH3, $\overline{\mathrm{CH3}}$ outputs.

8. Remove test hookup:

a. Push $\overline{\textbf{CHx}}$ **OUTPUT** button you have just verified to turn the $\overline{\mathrm{CHx}}$ LED off.

b. Push the **RUN** (front) button to turn the output off.

The LEDs above RUN button are off.

Check Amplitude Accuracy (Instrument with option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, BNC (female)-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

a. DMM hookup:
Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and a BNC-to-dual banana adapter to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–15).

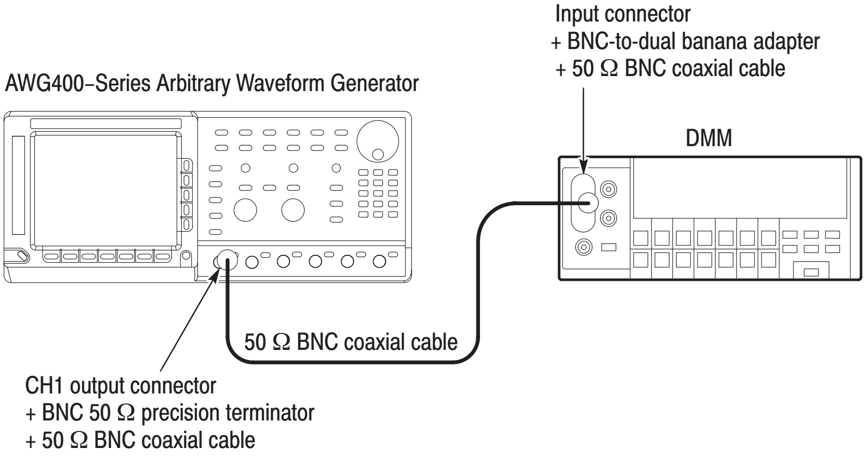


Figure B–16: Amplitude accuracy initial test hookup

b. Set the DMM controls as follows:

Mode	VDC
Range	Auto
Input	Front

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Select the channel:
Push the desired channel button **(CHx)** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

c. Set the enhanced mode:
Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side).

d. Load the AMP1.SEQ file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1** output buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

4. Verify amplitude accuracy:

a. Do the following substeps to set the AWG400-Series amplitude and confirm the offset setting:

- Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front-panel)→**Amplitude** (side).
- Push **0, ., 0, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.02 V.
- Verify that the offset setting display on the Offset side button is 0.000 V by pushing offset side button.

If the offset display is not set correctly, push the **Offset** side button, and push **0** and then **ENTER** key.

b. Do the following substeps to verify the amplitude accuracy of a 20 mV amplitude setting:

- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 20 mV ± 2.3 mV.

c. Push **0, ., 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.200 V.

d. Do the following to verify the amplitude accuracy of 200 mV amplitude setting:

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.

- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 200 mV ± 5 mV.

e. Push the **2** and the **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 2 V.

f. Do the following substeps to verify the amplitude accuracy of a 2 V amplitude setting:

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 2 V ± 0.032 V.

g. Push the **5** and the **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 5 V.

h. Do the following substeps to verify the amplitude accuracy of a 5 V amplitude setting:

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write down the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 5 V ± 0.077 V.

5. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify CH2:

- Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

  The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.

- Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the CH2 output connector.

6. Repeat the step 2 through step 5 for CH2 and CH3 outputs.

7. Push CHx OUTPUT button you have just verified to turn the CHx LED off.

Check Offset Accuracy (Instrument other than option 05)

The following procedure verifies the Offset Accuracy.

1. Use the test hookup and settings from previous verify on page B–37 & B–37.
2. Follow the substeps to set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file.
   - **a.** Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).
   - **b.** Select the channel:
     Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.
   - **c.** Load the OFFSET.WFM file.

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.
3. Push the **RUN** (front-panel) and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel) buttons.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.
   - Verify that $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output is off:
     If the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output is on, push **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** button to turn it off.
4. Do the following substeps to set the *AWG400-Series* offset:
   - **a.** Set offset to 0 V:
     - Push the **Vertical Menu** (front-panel)→ **Offset** (side button).
     - Push **0** and **ENTER** keys in this order.
   - **b.** Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within 0 V ± 10 mV.
   - **c.** Push **1** and **ENTER** keys in this order to change the AWG400-Series offset to 1 V.
   - **d.** Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within 1 V ± 0.020 V.
   - **e.** Push **-**, **1** and **ENTER** keys in this order to change the AWG400-Series offset to -1 V.
   - **f.** Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within -1 V ± 0.020 V.
5. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify $\overline{\text{CH1}}$:
   - Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

     The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.
   - Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector.

6. Repeat the step 3 through step 5 for $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output.
7. Repeat the step 2 through step 6 for CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ and CH3, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs.
8. Push $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ OUTPUT button you have just verified to turn the $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ LED off.

Check Offset Accuracy (Instrument with option 05)

The following procedure verifies the Offset Accuracy.

1. Use the test hookup and settings from previous verify on page B–37 & B–37.
2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:
    a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

    b. Select the channel:
    Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

    c. Load the OFFSET.WFM file.

    Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.
3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1** output buttons.

    The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.
4. Do the following substeps to set the AWG400-Series offset:

    a. Set offset to 0 V:

    - Push the **Vertical Menu** (front-panel)→ **Offset** (side button).
    - Push **0** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

    b. Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within 0 V ± 10 mV.

    c. Push **1** and **ENTER** keys in this order to change the AWG400-Series offset to 1 V.

    d. Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within 1 V ± 0.020 V.

    e. Push **-**, **1** and **ENTER** keys in this order to change the AWG400-Series offset to -1 V.

    f. Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within -1 V ± 0.020 V.

    g. Push **2**, **.**, **5** and **ENTER** keys in this order to change the AWG400-Series offset to 2.5 V.

   h. Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within 2.5 V ± 0.035 V.

   i. Push **-**, **2**, **.**, **5** and **ENTER** keys in this order to change the AWG400-Series offset to -2.5 V.

   j. Verify that the reading on the DMM falls within -2.5 V ± 0.035 V.

5. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the CH2:

- Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

  The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.

- Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the CH2 output connector.

6. Repeat the step 3 through step 5 for CH2 and CH3 outputs.

7. Push CHx OUTPUT button you have just verified to turn the CHx LED off.

Amplitude, Offset Accuracy and Rise Time Tests (Direct DA Out)

These procedures verify the accuracy of the AWG400-Series direct waveform outputs; amplitude and offset.

***NOTE**. You need to verify CH1 and $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ outputs for AWG410, CH1, $\overline{\text{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs for AWG420, CH1, $\overline{\text{CH1}}$, CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$, CH3 and $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs for AWG430. If you have option 05 you do not have to verify $\overline{\text{CHx}}$.*

When you verify one of the output, turn off the other output of OUTPUT LED.

***NOTE**. The amplitude and offset accuracy verifications are performed as a continuous test. The offset accuracy test uses the same control settings as the amplitude test.*

Check Amplitude and DC Offset (Instrument other than option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, BNC (female)-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls (same hookup used by the Amplitude and Offset Accuracy Test (Normal Out) beginning on page B–37:

  a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and a BNC-to-dual banana adapter to connect the AWG400-Series **CH1** output to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–17).

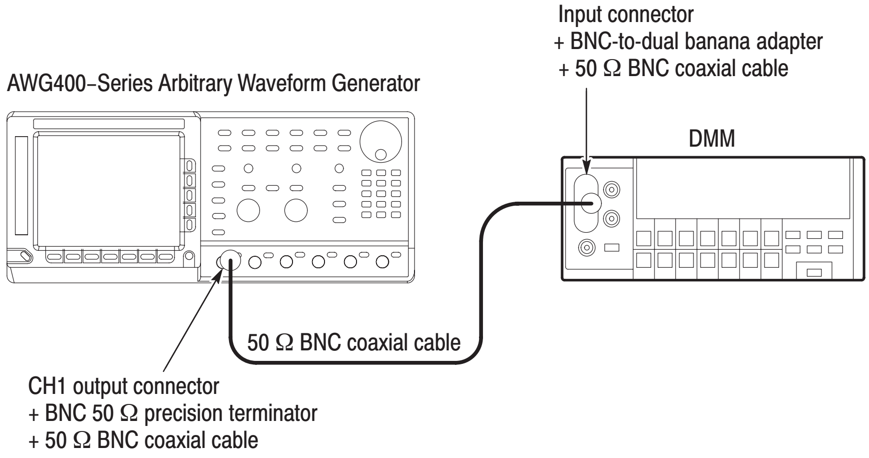


Figure B–17: Direct DA output amplitude accuracy initial test hookup

b. Set the DMM controls as follows:

Mode	VDC
Range	Auto
Input	Front

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Set the enhanced mode:
Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side).

c. Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front-panel)→**Output** (side)→**Direct** (side).

d. Load the AMP2.SEQ file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1** output buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

- Verify that $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output is off:
  If the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output is on, push **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** button to turn it off.

4. Do the following substeps to verify the direct DA amplitude accuracy of a 0.5 V amplitude setting:

a. Verify amplitude accuracy:

- Write the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Write the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
- Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 500 mV ± 9.5 mV.

b. Follow the substeps below to verify the DC offset:

- Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
- Verify that the reading from the oscilloscope display is about 0 V ±10 mV.

5. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$:

- Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

  The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.

- Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector.

6. Repeat the step 3 through step 5 for $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output.

7. Repeat the step 2 through step 6 for CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ and CH3, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs.

8. Push $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ OUTPUT button you have just verified to turn the $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ LED off.

Check Amplitude and DC Offset (Instrument with option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, BNC (female)-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls (same hookup used by the Amplitude and Offset Accuracy Test (Normal Out) beginning on page B–37:

a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a 50 Ω precision terminator, and a BNC-to-dual banana adapter to connect the AWG400-Series **CH1** output to the DMM input connector (see Figure B–18).

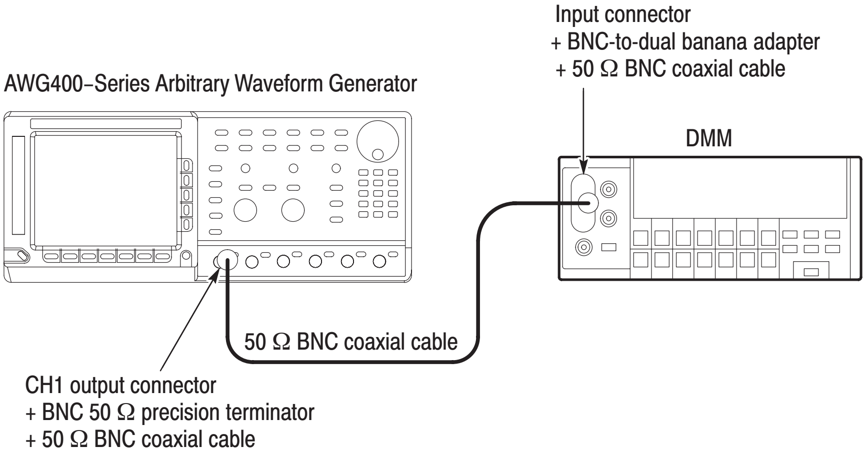


Figure B–18: Direct DA output amplitude accuracy initial test hookup

b. Set the DMM controls as follows:

Mode . . . . VDC
Range . . . . Auto
Input . . . . Front

2. Setting of the AWG400-Series and waveform file load:

   a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Select the channel:
   Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

   c. Set the enhanced mode:
   Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side).

   d. Push **VERTICAL MENU** (front-panel)→**Output** (side)→**Direct** (side).

   e. Load the AMP2.SEQ file.

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUTPUT** buttons.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

4. Do the following substeps to verify the direct DA amplitude accuracy of a 0.5 V amplitude setting:

   a. Verify amplitude accuracy:

      - Write the DMM reading as a positive voltage.
      - Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
      - Write the DMM reading as a negative voltage.
      - Verify that the positive minus negative voltages fall within 500 mV ± 9.5 mV.

   b. Follow the substeps below to verify the DC offset:

      - Push the **FORCE EVENT** button.
      - Verify that the reading from the oscilloscope display is about 0 V ±10 mV.

5. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the CH2:

   - Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

     The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.

   - Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the CH2 output connector.

6. Repeat the step 3 through step 5 for CH2 and CH3 output.

7. Push CHx OUTPUT button you have just verified to turn the CHx LED off.

Check Pulse Rise Time (Instrument other than option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–19).

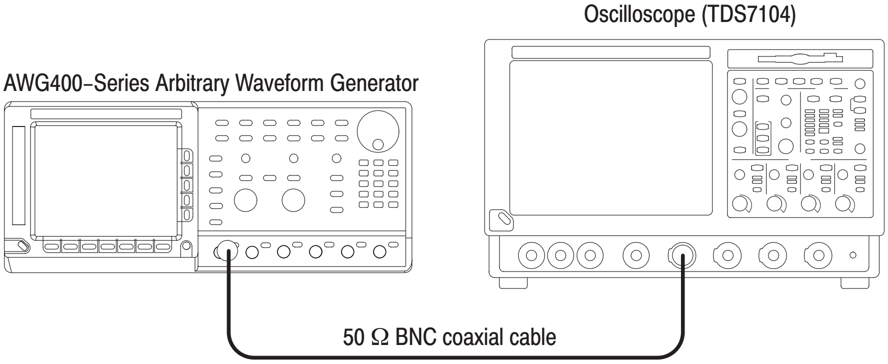


Figure B–19: Direct DA output pulse rise time initial test hookup

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical CH1
    CH1 scale . . . . 100 mV/div

Horizontal
    Sweep . . . . 1 ns/div

Trigger
    Source CH1
    Slope . . . . Positive
    Level . . . . 0 V
    Mode . . . . Auto

***NOTE**. The pulse rise time tests use the AWG400-Seriess control settings that have been used in the amplitude and DC offset tests. You do not need to initialize the AWG400-Series controls.*

---

2. Follow the steps to set the AWG400-Series and to load the waveform file.

   a. Select the channel:
   Push the desired channel button **(CHx)** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

b. Load the PULSE.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

c. Set the continuous mode:
Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Continuous** (side).

d. Change the AWG400-Series controls as follows:

- Push **VERTICAL MENU** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side).
- Push **0, ., 5** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.5 V.
- Verify that the Direct DA out is selected.
  If not, push **Output** (side)→**Direct** (side).

e. Push the **RUN** and **CH1** output buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors are on.

3. Verify that the rise time of the pulse waveform displayed on the oscilloscope is equal to or less than 3 ns.

4. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$:

a. Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.

b. Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector.

5. Repeat the step 2–e through step 4 for $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output.

6. Repeat the step 2 through step 5 for CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ and CH3, $\overline{\text{CH3}}$ outputs.

7. Remove test hookup:

8. Push $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ OUTPUT button you have just verified to turn the CHx LED off.

9. Push the **RUN** (front) button to turn the output off.

The LEDs above RUN button are off.

Check Pulse Rise Time (Instrument with option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–20).

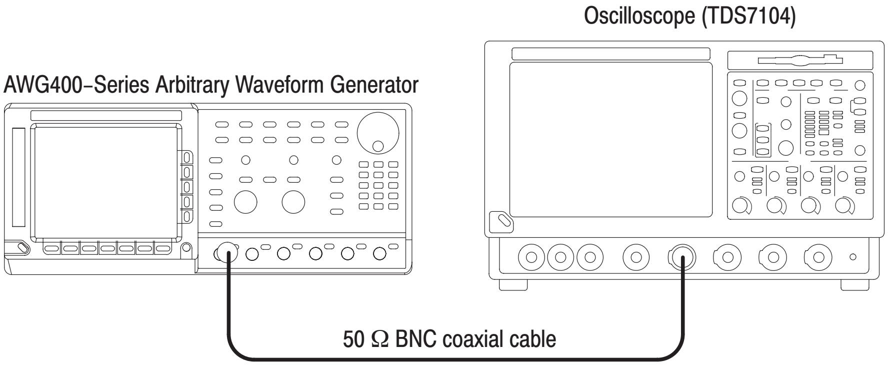


Figure B–20: Direct DA output pulse rise time initial test hookup

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 scale	100 mV/div
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 ns/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

***NOTE**. The pulse rise time tests use the AWG400-Seriess control settings that have been used in the amplitude and DC offset tests. You do not need to initialize the AWG400-Series controls.*

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

   a. Select the channel:
   Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

  - **b.** Load the PULSE.WFM file.

    Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

  - **c.** Set the continuous mode:
    Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Continuous** (side).

  - **d.** Change the AWG400-Series controls as follows:

    - Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side).
    - Push **0, ., 5** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.5 V.
    - Verify that the Direct DA out is selected.
      If not, push **Output** (side)→**Direct** (side).

  - **e.** Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to make the output on.

    The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors are on.

3. Verify that the rise time of the pulse waveform displayed on the oscilloscope is equal to or less than 3 ns.

4. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the CH2:

  - **a.** Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn the output off.

    The LEDs above RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT button are off.

  - **b.** Disconnect the terminator and cable from the CH1 output connector, and connect to the CH2 output connector.

5. Repeat the step 2 through step 4 for CH2 and CH3 output.

6. Remove test hookup:

  - **a.** Push **CHx OUTPUT** (front) button you have just verified to turn the CHx LED off.

  - **b.** Push the **RUN** (front) button to turn the output off.

    The LEDs above RUN button are off.

Step Response Tests (normal out)

This procedure verifies the pulse response characteristics of the AWG400-Series output waveforms at amplitudes of 1 V and 2 V.

NOTE. *You need to verify CH1 and $\overline{CH1}$ outputs for AWG410, CH1, $\overline{CH1}$, CH2, $\overline{CH2}$ outputs for AWG420, CH1, $\overline{CH1}$, CH2, $\overline{CH2}$, CH3 and $\overline{CH3}$ outputs for AWG430. If you have option 05 you do not have to verify $\overline{CHx}$.*

When you verify one of the output, turn off the other output of OUTPUT LED.

Check Step Response (Instrument other than option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–21).

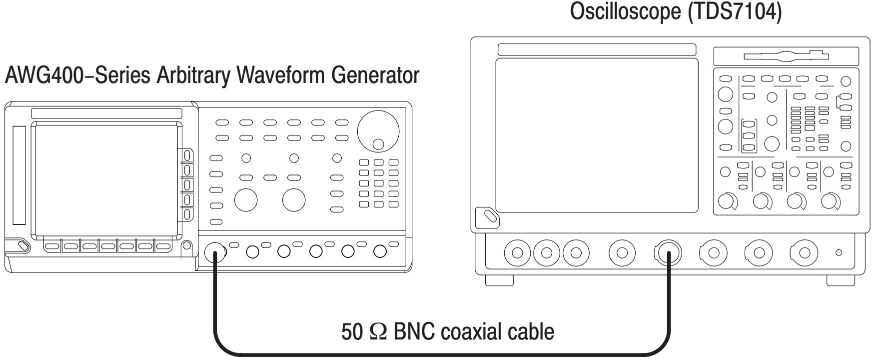


Figure B–21: Step response initial test hookup

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 ns/div

Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

   a. Reset the instrument:
   Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Select the channel:
   Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

   c. Load the PULSE.WFM file.

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   d. Set the continuous mode:
   Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run** (bottom)→**Continuous** (side).

   - Push **VERTICAL** (bottom).
   - Verify the Output mode is Normal:
     If Normal is not selected in Output (side) menu, push **Vertical Menu**→**Output** (side) to select Normal.

3. Set the CH1 output to enable:
   Push the **RUN Mode** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn on the LEDs of RUN and CH1.

   - Verify that the CH1 output is off:
     If the CH1 LED is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) to turn the LED off.

4. Verify the step response at 1 V amplitude.

   - Verify that the rise time of the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope from 10% to 90% point is equal to or less than 4 ns.

5. Verify the step response at 2 V amplitude by following the substeps below:

   a. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div

b. Set the AWG400-Series control as follows:

- Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side).
- Push **2** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 2 V.

c. Verify the step response at 2 V amplitude.

- Risetime 4 ns maximum

6. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$:

a. Push **Run→CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn off the CH1 LED.

b. Disconnect the 50 Ω BNC cable from the CH1 output connector and connect it to the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ output connector.

7. Repeat step 3 and step 6 to verify $\overline{\text{CH1}}$.

8. Repeat the procedure from step 2 to step 7 to verify CH2, $\overline{\text{CH2}}$, CH3 and $\overline{\text{CH3}}$.

9. Push $\overline{\textbf{CHx}}$ **OUTPUT** to turn off the $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ LED.

10. Push **RUN** (front) to turn off the RUN LED.

a. Disconnect all the cables.

Check Step Response (Instrument with option 05)

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–22).

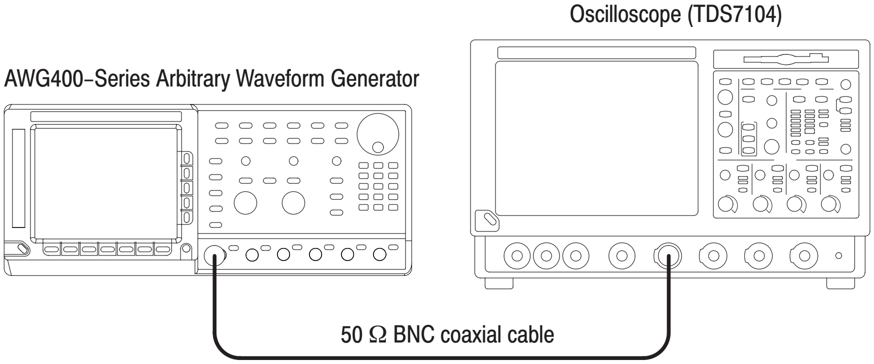


Figure B–22: Step response initial test hookup

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical CH1
    CH1 coupling . . . . DC
    CH1 scale . . . . 0.2 V/div
    CH1 input impedance . . . . . 50 Ω

Horizontal
    Sweep . . . . 1 ns/div

Trigger
    Source CH1
    Coupling . . . . DC
    Slope . . . . Positive
    Level . . . . 0 V
    Mode . . . . Auto

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file:

   a. Reset the instrument:
   Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Select the channel:
   Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

   c. Load the PULSE.WFM file:

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   d. Set the continuous mode:
   Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Continuous** (side).

   - Push the **VERTICAL** (bottom) button.
   - Verify that the Output mode is Normal:
     If Normal is not selected in the **Output** (side) menu, push **Vertical Menu**→**Output** (side) to select Normal.

3. Set the CH1 output to enable:
   Push the **RUN** (front) button and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn on the LEDs of RUN and CH1.

   - Verify that the CH1 output is off:
     If the CH1 LED is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) to turn the LED off.

4. Verify the step response at 1 V amplitude.

   - Verify that the rise time of the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope from 10% to 90% point is equal to or less than 5 ns.

5. Verify the step response at 5 V amplitude by following the substeps below:

   a. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 scale	1 V/div

   b. Set the AWG400-Series control as follows:

   - Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side).
   - Push **5** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 5 V.

   c. Verify the step response at 5 V amplitude.

   - Risetime   5 ns maximum

6. Do the following substeps to change the connection to verify the CH2:

   a. Push the **CH1 OUTPUT** (front) button to turn off the CH1 LED.

   b. Disconnect the 50 Ω BNC cable from the CH1 output connector and connect it to the CH2 output connector.

7. Repeat step 2 and step 6 through verify the CH2 and CH3.

8. End the procedure:

9. Push **$\overline{\textbf{CHx}}$ OUTPUT** to turn off the $\overline{\text{CHx}}$ LED.

10. Push **RUN** (front) to turn off the RUN LED.

Internal Trigger Tests

These procedures verify internal trigger function of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope (TDS7104).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

1. Test hookup and setting.

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator **CH1** output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–23).

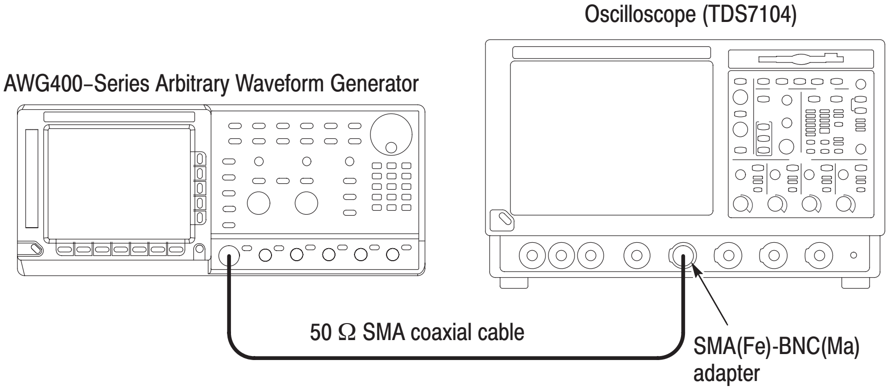


Figure B–23: Internal trigger initial test hookup

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 ms/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC

Slope	Positive
Level	0.2 V
Mode	Auto

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file.

   a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→ **System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Load the MODE.WFM file**.**

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   c. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side).

   d. Push **Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side)→**1**, **0**, **0**, **M** (SHIFT+7).

   The clock is set to 100.0 MS/s.

   e. Follow the substeps to set the trigger interval:

   - Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Source** (side)→ **Internal** (side).
   - Push the **Interval** side button.
   - Push **1** and **m** (SHIFT+9) keys in this order to set the trigger interval to 1 ms.

     The numeric value of 1m is entered.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connectors are on. If the CH1 LED is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** to turn it off.

4. Verify that there is a single sinewave cycle displayed at 1 ms intervals.

5. Push **2** and **m** (SHIFT+9) keys in this order to set the trigger interval to 2 ms.

The trigger interval is changed to a value of 2 ms.

6. Verify that the period between the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope is two horizontal divisions.

7. Push the **CH1 OUT** button to turn off the CH1 LED.

8. Push the **RUN** button to turn off the RUN LED.

9. Disconnect all the cable.

Trigger Input Tests

These procedures verify the trigger level accuracy of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	A BNC T adapter, three 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B-8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector.

   b. Connect a BNC T adapter to the TRIG IN connector and then use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the BNC T adapter to the oscilloscope CH2 input connector.

   c. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the function generator output to the other end of the BNC T adapter.

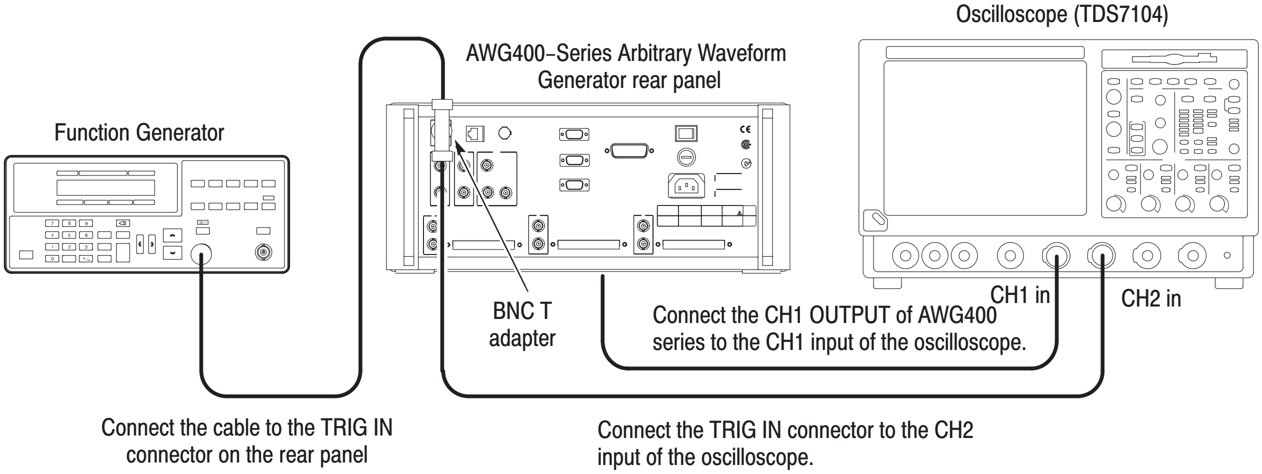


Figure B–24: Trigger input initial test hookup

d. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Push the **Default Setup** (front).

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	500 mV/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH2 scale	2 V/div
CH2 input impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	2 ms/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

e. Set the function generator as follows:

Function	Pulse
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	100 Hz
Amplitude	1.0 V (2 V in open circuit)
Offset	(Adjust such as a pulse 4.65 V in amplitude referenced to ground)
Output	Off

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file.

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Triggered** (side).

c. Load the TRIG.WFM file**.**

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

- Verify that the CH1 OUTPUT is off.
  If the CH1 LED is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel) to turn the LED off.

4. Set the trigger level to 5 V by following the substeps below:

a. Set the trigger level.

- Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Trigger** (bottom)→**Level** (side).
- Push **5** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

b. Set the offset level of generator.

- Push generator output **ON**.
- Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the high level of a pulse to be set to 4.65V.

c. Verify that no waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.

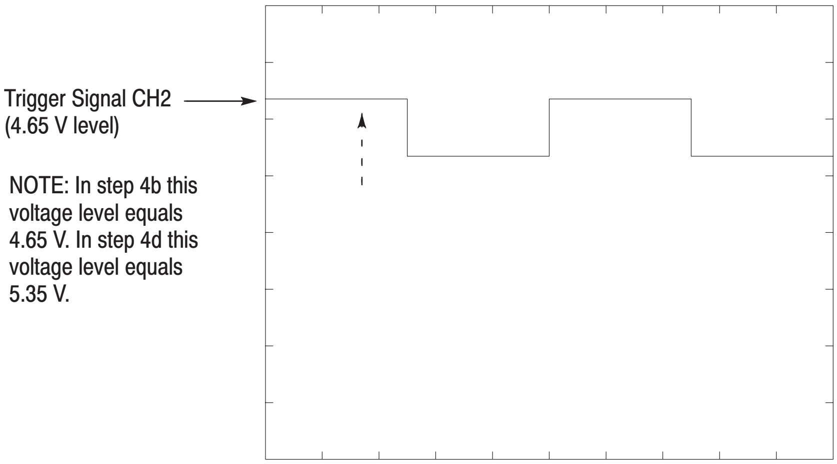


Figure B–25: Trigger Signal (+5V check1)

d. Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the high level of a pulse to be set to 5.35V.

e. Verify that a sine wave is displayed on the oscilloscope.

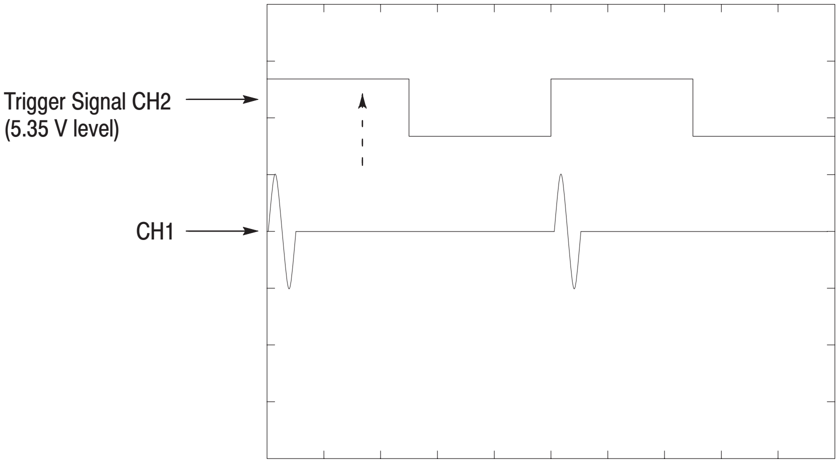


Figure B–26: Trigger Signal (+5V check2)

5. **5.** Verify the Trigger level accuracy at –5V by following the substeps below:

   a. Set the trigger level of AWG400.

   - Push **Level** (side).
   - Push **–, 5** and **ENTER** keys in this order.

   b. Set the offset level of generator.

   - Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the low level of a pulse to be set to –4.65V.

   c. Verify that no waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.

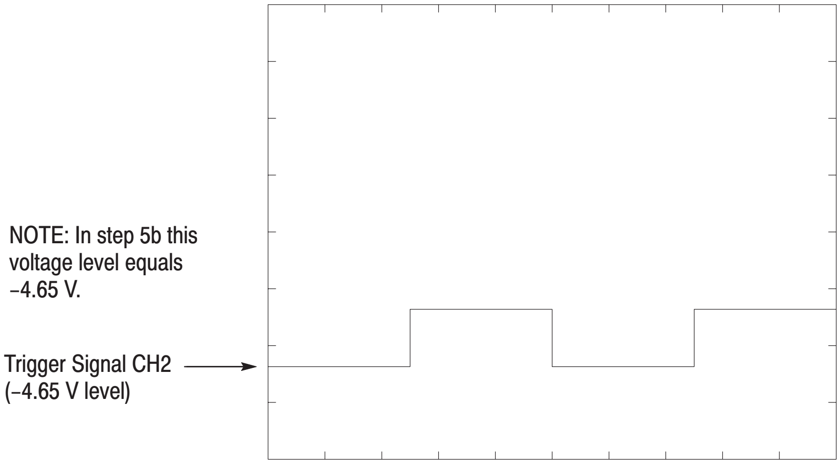


Figure B–27: Trigger Signal (–5V check1)

d. Push Cursor, ≪, ≫, ⩓, ⩔ keys as the low level of a pulse to be set to –5.35V.

e. Verify that a sine wave is displayed on the oscilloscope.

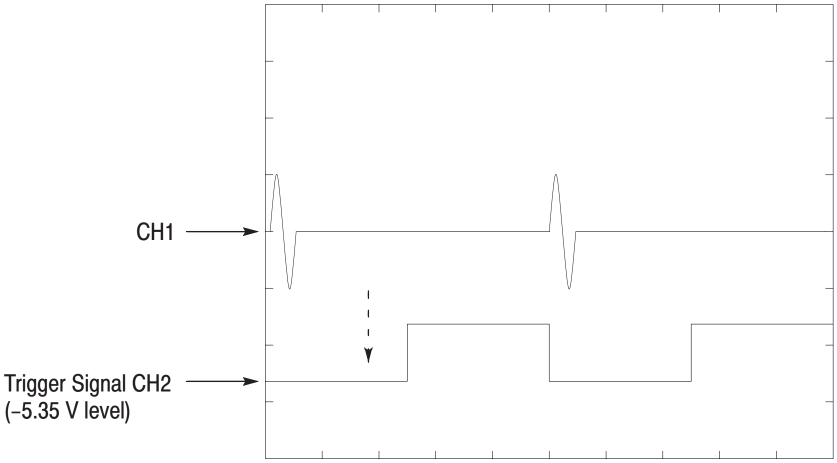


Figure B–28: Trigger Signal (–5V check2)

6. Push the **RUN** button to turn off the RUN LED.

7. Disconnect all the cable.

Event Input and Enhanced Mode Tests

These procedures verify the event input signals and enhanced mode operation.

***NOTE**. The event input verify with strobe off and the strobe input verify are structured as a continuous test. After* Check Event Input with Strobe Off, *the next test uses the connections and oscilloscope settings from the previous test.*

Check Event Input with Strobe Off

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and custom-made ground closure. See Figure B–3 for the connections.
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series **CH1** output connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–29).

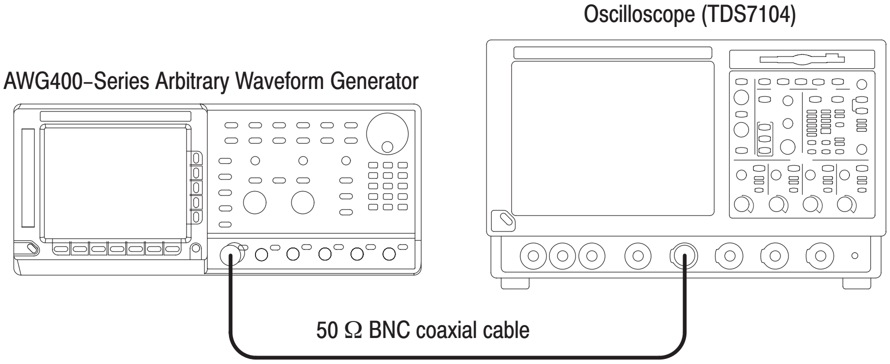


Figure B–29: Event input and enhanced mode initial test hookup

   b. Connect the ground closure to the EVENT IN connector on the AWG400-Series rear panel.

c. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	400 ns
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

2. Set all the switches of the ground closure to open.

3. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls and select the sequence file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→
System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Load the PT_EVENT.SEQ file**.**

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

c. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side) to set the enhanced mode.

4. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

- Verify that the CH1 OUTPUT is off.
  If the CH1 LED is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel) to turn the LED off.

5. Verify the EVENT IN connector pin 0 input by doing the following substeps:

a. Verify that the waveform being displayed on the oscilloscope is about the same amplitude as shown in Figure B–30.

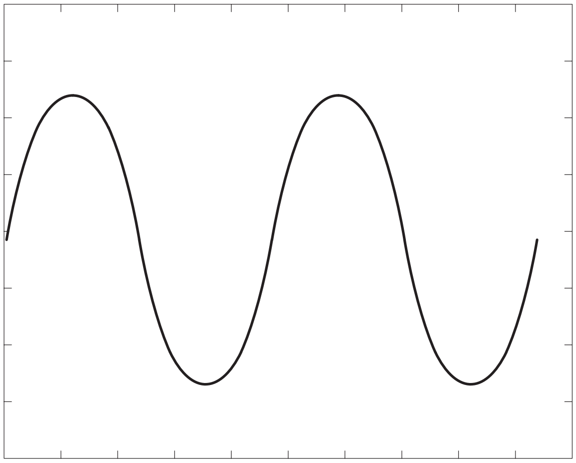


Figure B–30: Waveform while all ground disclosure switches are open

b. Close the SW1 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the EVENT IN connector pin 0.

c. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–31 and that the waveform is about half the amplitude as that shown in Figure B–30.

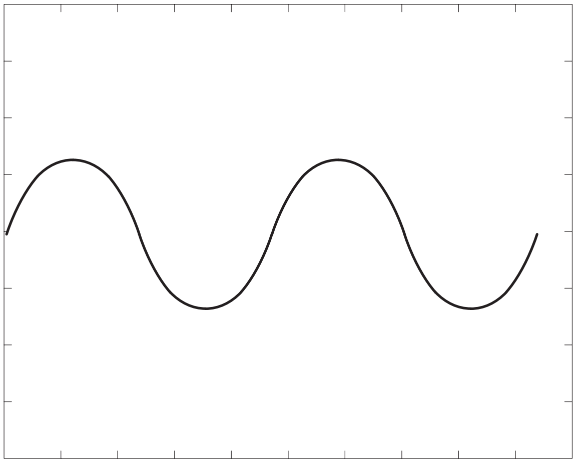


Figure B–31: Waveform output when the SW1 is closed

d. Open SW1 of the ground closure.

e. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform in Figure B–30.

6. Verify the EVENT IN connector pin 1 input by following the substeps below:

   a. Close SW2 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the EVENT IN connector pin 1.

   b. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–32.

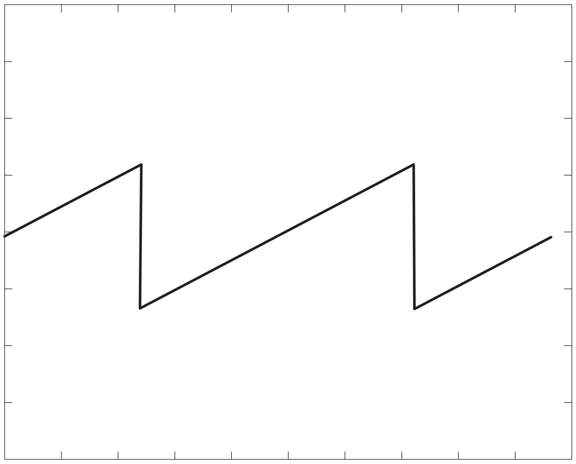


Figure B–32: Waveform output when SW2 is closed

   c. Open the SW2 of the ground closure.

   d. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform shown in Figure B–30.

7. Verify the EVENT IN connector pin 2 input by following the steps below:

   a. Close SW3 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the EVENT IN connector pin 2.

   b. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform shown in Figure B–33.

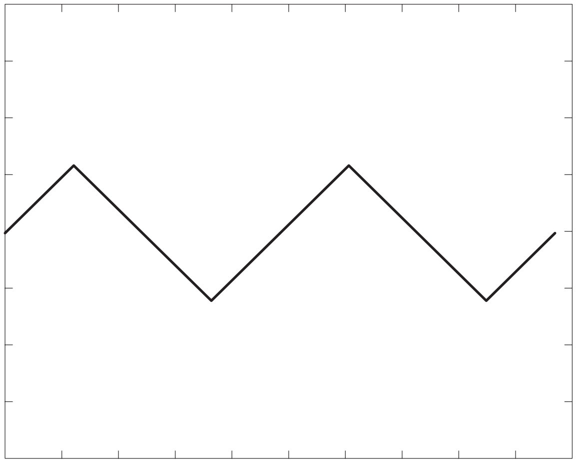


Figure B–33: Waveform output when the SW3 is closed

- **c.** Open SW3 of the ground closure.
- **d.** Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform in Figure B–30.

8. Verify the EVENT IN connector pin 3 input by doing the following substeps:

- **a.** Close the SW4 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the EVENT IN connector pin 3.
- **b.** Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform shown in Figure B–34.

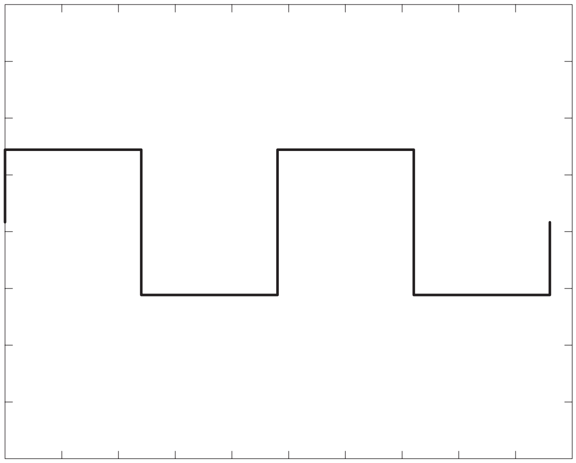


Figure B–34: Waveform output when SW4 is closed

- **c.** Open SW4 of the ground closure.
- **d.** Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform in Figure B–30.

9. Retain the test hookup and control settings.

Check Strobe Input

1. Use the test hookup and oscilloscope settings from previous verify.
2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls and select the sequence file:
   - **a.** Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).
   - **b.** Load the PT_STROB.SEQ file**.**

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   - **c.** Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Run Mode** (bottom)→**Enhanced** (side) to set the run mode to enhanced.
3. Push the **RUN** and **CH1 OUT** buttons.

   The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

   - Verify that the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT is off.
     If the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ LED is on, push **$\overline{\text{CH1}}$ OUTPUT** (front-panel) to turn the LED off.
4. Verify the EVENT IN connector strobe pin input by doing the following substeps:
   - **a.** Verify that the waveform being displayed on the oscilloscope is shown in Figure B–35.

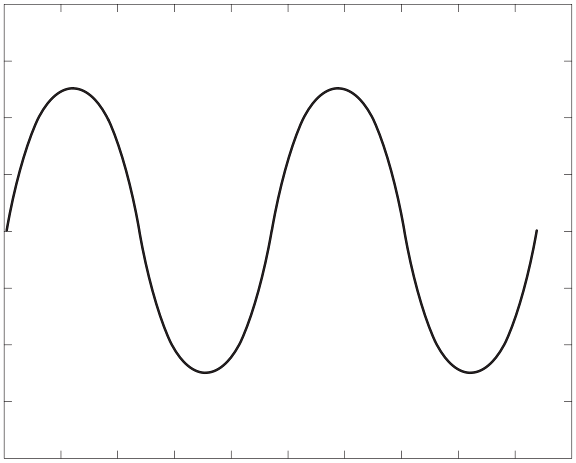


Figure B–35: Initial waveform output

   - **b.** Close SW5 of the ground closure to generate an event signal on the EVENT IN connector strobe pin.

c. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the DC waveform as shown in Figure B–36.

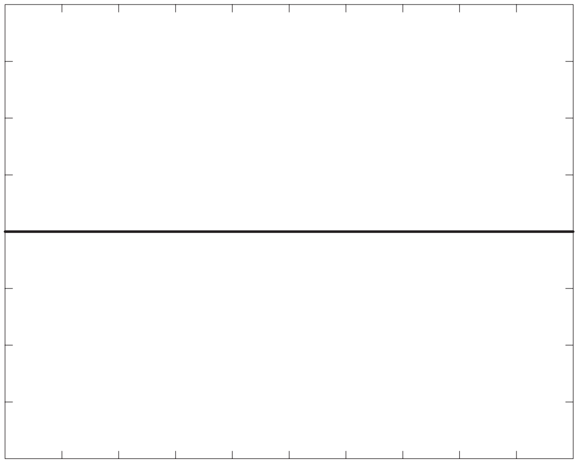


Figure B–36: DC waveform output when the SW5 is closed

d. Open SW5 of the ground closure.

e. Verify that the DC waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.

f. Close SW5 of the ground closure again.

g. Verify that the oscilloscope displays the waveform as shown in Figure B–35.

5. Push the **CH1 OUT** button to turn off the CH1 LED.

6. Disconnect the oscilloscope and ground closure.

10 MHz Reference Input Tests

These procedures verify the 10 MHz reference input function of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, a frequency counter, and a function generator (AFG310).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series MASTER CLOCK OUT connector to the input A connector on the frequency counter.

   b. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series 10 MHz REF IN connector to the function generator output connector (see Figure B–37).

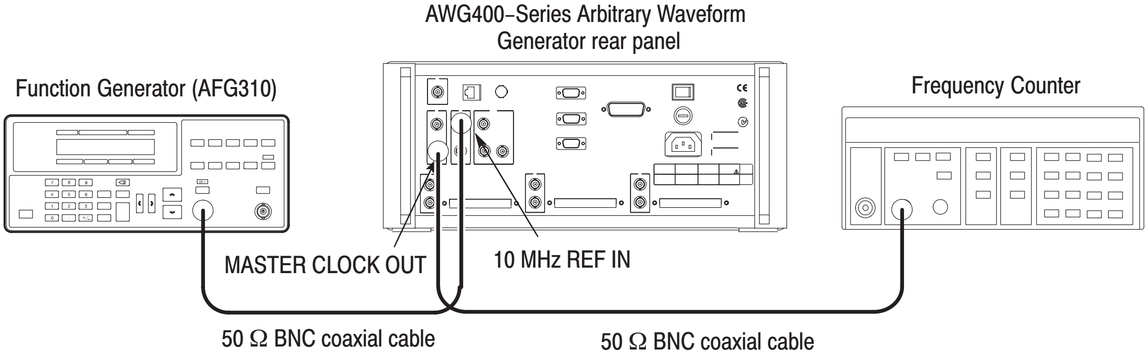


Figure B–37: 10 MHz reference input initial test hookup

   c. Set the frequency counter controls as follows:

   INPUT A
   - Coupling . . . . AC

   FUNCTION . . . . A FREQ
   Gate time . . . . 0.2 s
   Trigger Level . . . . 0 V

   d. Set the function generator (AFG3100) controls.

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	10 MHz (50 ppm accuracy)
Amplitude	2.0 V into 50 Ω (4.0 V into 1 MΩ)
Offset	0 V
Output	On

2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls and select the waveform file:

   a. Reset the instruction.
   Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Load the MODE.WFM file.

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   c. Set the reference clock to External.

   - Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock Ref** (side)→**External**.

   d. Set the clock frequency.

   - Push **Clock** (side), then push **1, 0**, **0** and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the internal clock to 100 ms/s.

3. Verify that the frequency counter reading is 100 MHz ± 5 kHz.

   (This accuracy is dependent on the performance of the function generator.)

4. Modify the function generator (AFG310) controls as follows:

Frequency	10.1 MHz

5. Verify that the frequency counter reading is 101.0 MHz ± 5.05 kHz.

6. Turn the function generator output off and disconnect the function generator and frequency counter.

Master Clock Input Tests

These procedures verify the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator clock output signal level and frequency.

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables, a Function Generator, and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 output to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–38).

   b. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series MASTER CLOCK IN connector to the function generator (AFG310) output connector (see Figure B–38).

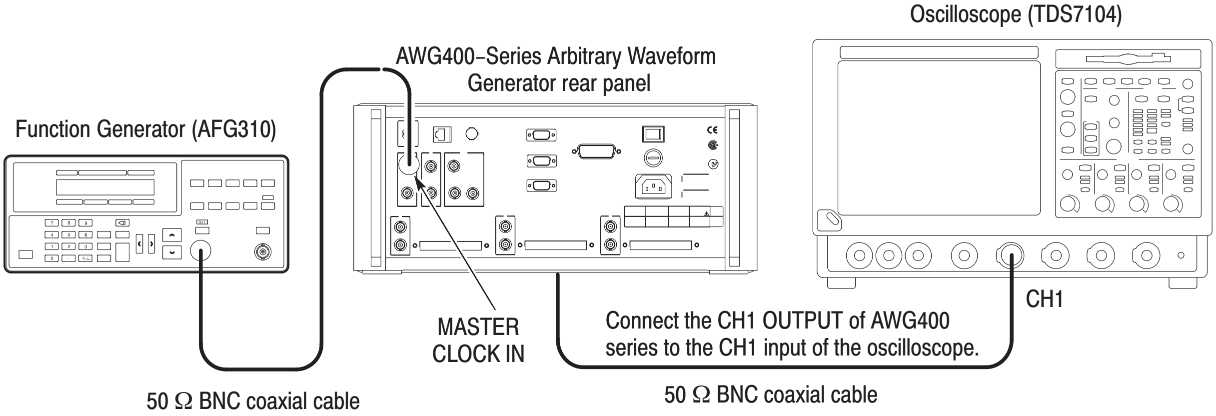


Figure B–38: Master Clock input initial test hookup

   c. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical CH1
  CH1 coupling . . . . DC
  CH1 scale . . . . 0.2 V/div
  CH1 input impedance . . . . 50 Ω

Horizontal
  Sweep . . . . 40 μs

Trigger
  Source CH1

Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	+100 mV
Mode	Auto

d. Set the function generator (AFG310) controls.

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Frequency	10 MHz
Amplitude	0.7 V_{p-p}
Offset	0.5 V
Output	On

2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls and select the waveform file:

a. Reset the instrument.
Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Load the MODE.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

c. Set the clock source to External.

- Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock Src** (side)→**External**.

3. Set CH1 output to enable.
Push the **RUN** (front-panel) and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel).

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 OUTPUT are on.

Verify that the AWG output is running.

4. Verify that the output signal period is 100 μs.

5. Push **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel) to turn off the CH1 LED.

6. Push **RUN** (front-panel) to turn off the RUN LED.

7. Turn the function generator output off and disconnect the function generator and oscilloscope.

ADD Input Tests

These procedures verify the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator ADD input function.

***NOTE**. Verify the CH1 output for the AWG410, CH1 and CH2 outputs for AWG420, CH1, CH2 and CH3 outputs for AWG430.*

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable, A BNC-to-banana adapter, a 50 Ω precision terminator, a function generator, and a digital multimeter (DMM).
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect to the rear panel of the AWG400-Series ADD IN CH1 input connector to the function generator (AFG310) output connector (see Figure B–39).

   b. Connect the BNC-to-banana adapter and a 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the digital multimeter input connector. Connect the loose end of the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector (see Figure B–39).

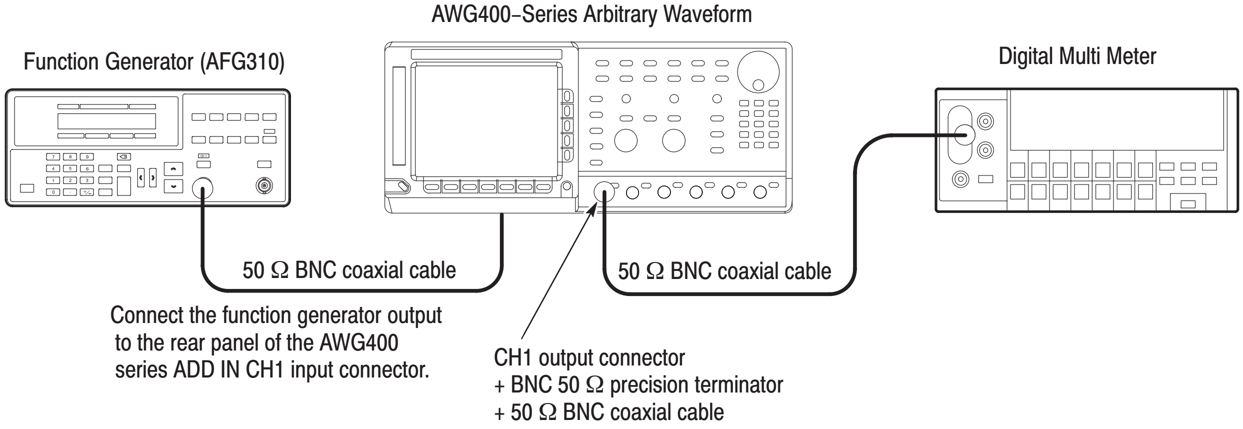


Figure B–39: ADD IN input initial test hookup

   c. Set the DMM controls as follows:

Mode	VDC
Range	Auto
Input	Front

d. Set the function generator (AFG310) controls.

Function	DC
Mode	Continuous
Parameters	
Offset	1.0 V
Output	Off

2. Set the AWG400-Series and load the waveform file.

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Select the channel.
Push the desired channel button **CHx** (left side of the front-panel) you want to verify.

c. Set the output amplitude.

- Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Vertical** (bottom)→**Amplitude** (side).
- Push **0, ., 0, 2** and **ENTER** keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the amplitude to 0.02 V.

d. Add signal to external.

- Push **Add...** (side)→**External** (side).

e. Load the DC0.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** (front-panel) and **CH1 OUTPUT** (front-panel) buttons.

The LEDs above the RUN button and CH1 output connector are on.

- Verify that CH1 output is off.
  If the CH1 output is on, push **CH1 OUTPUT** button to make it off.

4. Verify the output level relative to the input level.

a. Verify the level when the function generator output is off.

- Verify the DMM readout. Verify that the DMM reads out the level from –10 mV to +10 mV and note the value.

b. Turn on the function generator output.

   c. Verify the level when the function generator output is on.

   - Verify the DMM readout. Verify that the difference between the DMM readout and the value in step 4a is from 0.95 V to 1.05 V.

5. Modify the hookup for verifying CH2 and CH3.

   a. Push the **CH1 OUTPUT** front panel button. The CH1 LED is off.

   b. Disconnect the BNC cable at the AWG400-Series CH1 output connector.

   c. Turn off the function generator output.

6. Repeat the step 1 through 5 for CH2 and CH3.

7. Disconnect the hookup.

   a. Push the **CHx OUTPUT** (front panel) button. The CHx LED is off.

   b. Push the **RUN** (front panel) button. The RUN LED is off.

   c. Turn off the function generator output.

   d. Disconnect the cables from the function generator and DMM.

Marker Output Tests

These procedures verify the accuracy of the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator marker output level.

***NOTE**. You need to verify CH1 output for AWG410, CH1 and CH2 outputs for AWG420, CH1, CH2 and CH3 outputs for AWG430.*

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls.

   a. Use a BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 MARKER OUT 1 connector to the oscilloscope CH1 input connector (see Figure B–40).

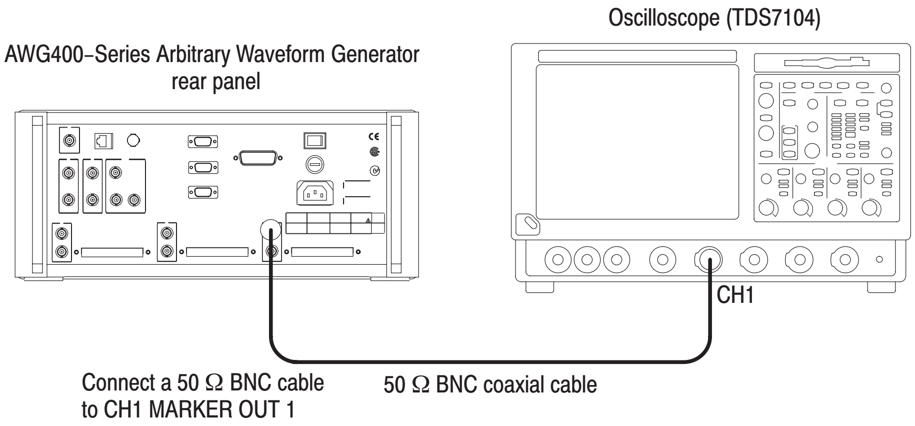


Figure B–40: Marker output initial test hookup

b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	1 V/div
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
CH1 offset	0 V
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls and select the waveform file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH1.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

c. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH2 (AWG420 and AWG430 need this setup).

- Push the **CH2** button (left side of front-panel).
- Load the MODE.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

d. Load the MODE.WFM file for CH3 (AWG430 need this setup).

- Push the **CH3** button (left side of front-panel).
- Load the MODE.WFM file.

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Push the **RUN** button.

The LED above the RUN button is on.

NOTE. *Always perform the marker level measurements after the level has stabilized. The marker level measurements do not include the overshoot or undershoot.*

---

4. Follow the substeps below to verify the marker output level:

   a. Verify the Marker 1 output level. Verify that the waveform is displayed as shown in Figure B–41.

      - Verify the low level of the Marker 1 output. Verify that the low level on the oscilloscope screen reads ≤ 0.1 V DC.
      - Verify the high level of the Marker 1 output. Verify that the high level on the oscilloscope screen reads ≥ 2.4 V DC.

   b. Modify the hookup for Marker 2.

      - Disconnect the cable from the CH1 MARKER OUT 1 connector.
      - Connect the cable to the CH1 MARKER OUT 2 connector.

   c. Verify the Marker 2 output level.

      - Verify the low level of the Marker 2 output. Verify that the low level on the oscilloscope screen reads from 0.0 V to 0.1 V.
      - Verify the high level of the Marker 2 output. Verify that the high level on the oscilloscope screen reads from 2.4 V to 2.5 V.

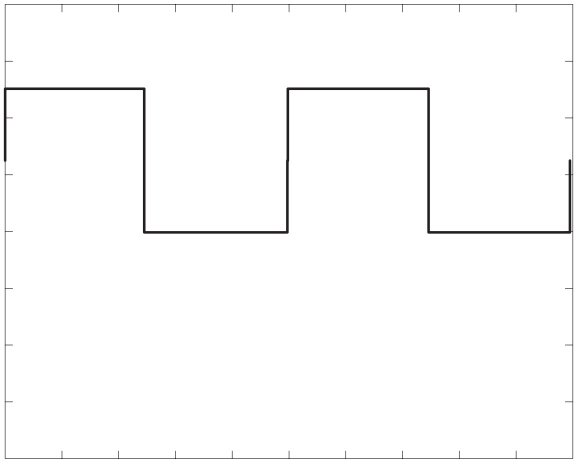


Figure B–41: Marker output waveform

5. Modify the hookup for CH2.

   a. Push the **RUN** button (front panel). The RUN LED is off.

   b. Disconnect the cable from the CH1 MARKER OUT 2 connector.

   c. Connect the cable to the CH2 MARKER OUT 1 connector.

6. Do steps 2 through 5 for the CH2 and CH3 markers.

7. Push the **RUN** button (front panel). The RUN LED is off. Disconnect the hookup.

Channel Skew Tests

These procedures verify the channel skew function of the AWG400-Series.

Equipment required	Two 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cables to connect the AWG400-Series CH1 and CH2 outputs to the oscilloscope CH1 and CH2 input connectors (see Figure B–42).

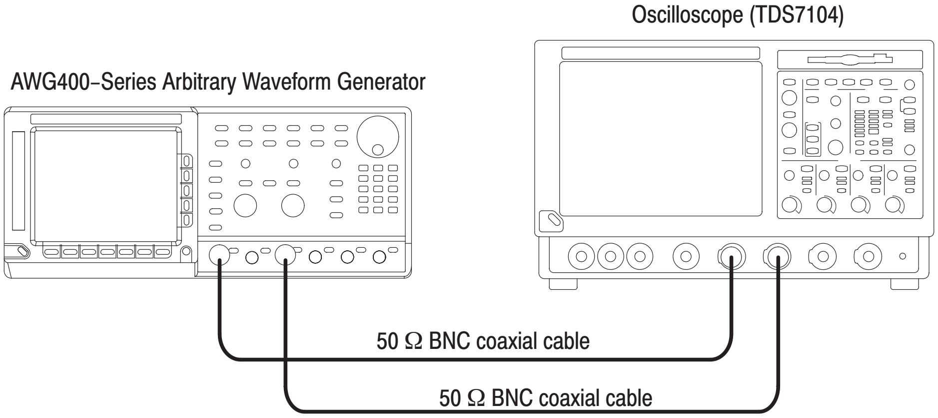


Figure B–42: Channel skew test hookup

b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
CH1 and CH2 coupling	DC
CH1 and CH2 scale	0.2 V/div
CH1 and CH2 input impedance	50 Ω
CH1 and CH2 offset	0 V
Horizontal	
Sweep	1 ns/div

Trigger

Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls and select the waveform file:

a. Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

b. Load the PULSE.WFM file for CH1, CH2, and CH3**.**

Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

3. Output the AWG400-Series CH1 and CH2.

- Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **CH2 OUTPUT** front panel buttons. The RUN, CH1, and CH2 LEDs are on.
- Verify that the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ and $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ outputs are off. Verify that the $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ and $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ LEDs are off.

  If $\overline{\text{CH1}}$ LED is on, push the $\overline{\textbf{CH1}}$ **OUTPUT** (front panel) button to turn it off.

  If $\overline{\text{CH2}}$ LED is on, push the $\overline{\textbf{CH2}}$ **OUTPUT** (front panel) button to turn it off.

4. Verify CH1 and CH2 skew.

a. Push **SETUP** (front panel) → **Horizontal** (bottom) → **Skew** (side) → **Reset** (side).

b. **For the AWG Only**. Use the ⬇ and ⬆ buttons, to select the channel that you want to verify.

c. Using the general purpose knob, change the CH2 skew from –2.52 ns to +2.52 ns continuously.

d. Verify that the CH2 output delay changes from about –2.52 ns to +2.52 ns relative to CH1 on the oscilloscope screen.

5. Modify the hookup for verifying the CH1 through CH3 skew.
   - a. Push the **RUN**, **CH1 OUTPUT**, and **CH2 OUTPUT** front panel buttons. The RUN, CH1, and CH2 LEDs are off.
   - b. Disconnect the BNC cable at the AWG400-Series CH2 output connector.
   - c. Connect the BNC cable to the CH3 connector.
6. Repeat the step 3 to 5 for CH1 through CH3.
7. Disconnect the hookup.
   - a. Push the **RUN** (front panel) button. The RUN LED is off.
   - b. Disconnect the BNC cables from the oscilloscope.

Master Clock Output Tests

These procedures verify the AWG400-Series clock output signal level and frequency.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The AWG400 Arbitrary Waveform Generator must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

   a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series MASTER CLOCK OUT output to the oscilloscope input connector (see Figure B–43).

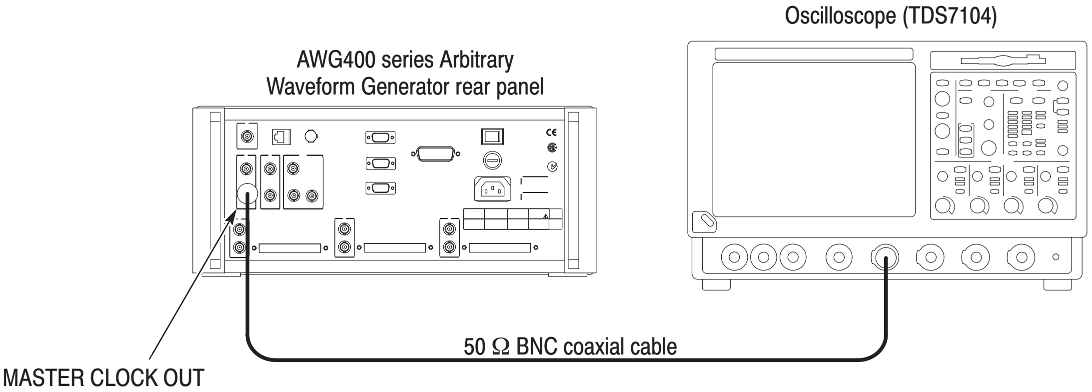


Figure B–43: Master Clock output initial test hookup

   b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH1 offset	0 V
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	5 ns/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series controls:

- **a.** Push **UTILITY** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).
- **b.** Load the MODE.WFM file.

  Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.
- **c.** Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side).
- **d.** Push **1, 0**, **0** and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the internal clock frequency to 100 MHz.

3. Verify that the clock signal amplitude is 1 V ± 0.3 V, and the clock signal period is about 10 ns (100 MHz ± 20 KHz).

4. Disconnect the cable from the MASTER CLOCK OUT connector.

10 MHz Reference Output Tests

These procedures verify the AWG400-Series 10 MHz Reference Output level and frequency.

Equipment required	A 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Do the following steps to install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls:

a. Use the 50 Ω BNC coaxial cable to connect the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator 10 MHz REF OUT output to the oscilloscope input connector (see Figure B–44).

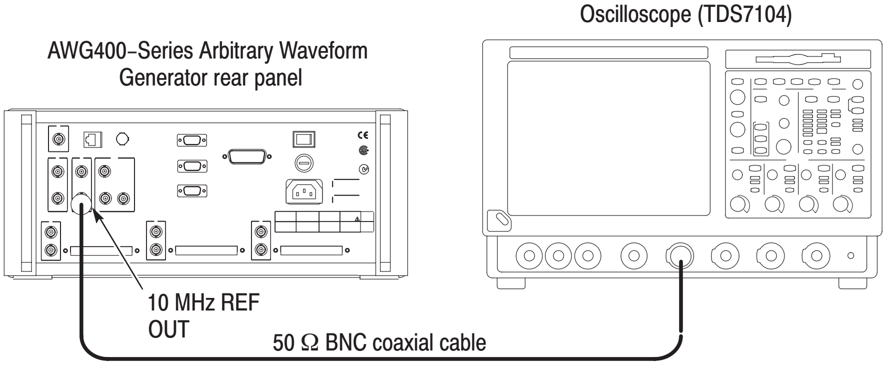


Figure B–44: 10MHz Reference output initial test hookup

b. Set the oscilloscope controls as follows:

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div
CH1 offset	0 V
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	25 ns/div
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. Follow the substeps below to set the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator controls:

   a. Push **SETUP** (front-panel)→**System** (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

   b. Load the MODE.WFM file**.**

   Refer to *Loading Files* on page B–9 for file loading procedures.

   c. Push **SETUP** (front panel)→**Horizontal** (bottom)→**Clock** (side).

   d. Push **1**, **0**, **0**, and **M** (SHIFT+7) keys in this order or used the general purpose knob to set the internal clock frequency to 100 MHz.

3. Verify that the 10 MHz REF OUT clock signal amplitude is equal to or larger than 1.0 V, and the clock signal period is about 100 ns.

4. Disconnect the BNC cable from the oscilloscope.

Digital Data Output Tests (Option 03 Only)

These procedures verify the AWG400-Series digital data output level accuracy and skew.

***NOTE**. Verify that the CH1 output for AWG410, CH1 and CH2 outputs for AWG420, CH1, CH2,and CH3 outputs for AWG430.*

Check Output Levels

Equipment required	A P4116 CMOS output pod, a pin–header SMB cable (012–1503), a SMB–BNC adapter (015–0671–00).
Prerequisites	The instrument must meet the prerequisites listed on page B–8.

1. Install the test hookup and set the test equipment controls.
   - **a.** Connect CH1 DIGITAL DATA OUT through the flat cable to P4116. See Figure B–45.
   - **b.** Connect CH1 DIGITAL DATA OUT. The CLOCK pin (Pin 1) goes through the pin-header SMB cable to the oscilloscope CH1.
   - **c.** Connect CH1 DIGITAL DATA OUT. The D0 pin (Pin 33) goes through the pin-header SMB cable to the oscilloscope CH2.

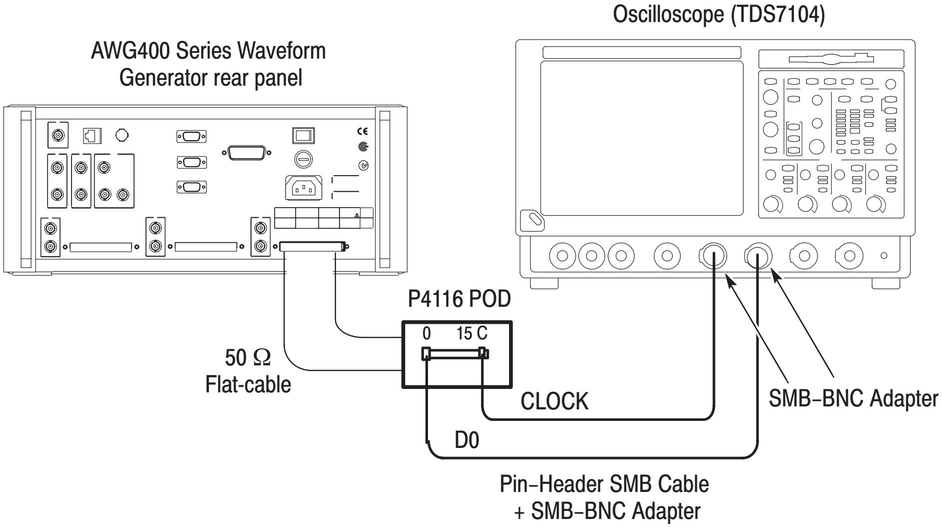


Figure B–45: Digital data output level initial test hookup

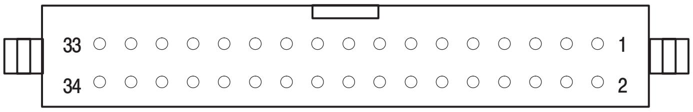


Figure B-46: P4116 Output Connector

Table B-4: P4116 Output Connector Pin Assignment

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal
1	CLOCK	2	GND
3	D15 (MSB)	4	GND
5	D14	6	GND
7	D13	8	GND
9	D12	10	GND
11	D11	12	GND
13	D10	14	GND
15	D9	16	GND
17	D8	18	GND
19	D7	20	GND
21	D6	22	GND
23	D5	24	GND
25	D4	26	GND
27	D3	28	GND
29	D2	30	GND
31	D1	32	GND
33	D0 (LSB)	34	GND

d. Set the oscilloscope controls.

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
Coupling	DC
Scale	1 V/div
Offset	0 V
Input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	10 μs/div
Trigger	
Source	CH2

Coupling	AC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. Set the AWG400-Series controls.

  a. Initialize the AWG400-Series controls.
  Push **UTILITY** (front–panel)→
  System (bottom)→**Factory Reset** (side)→**OK** (side).

  b. Select the channel.

  - Push one of the buttons (**CHx**) for the channel that you have selected.
  - Push the **DIGITAL** (front-panel) button.

  c. Load the waveform file.

  - Load DOUT.PAT referring to the procedures on page B–9.

  d. Set the clock frequency.

  - Push **SETUP** (front–panel)→
    Horizontal (bottom) → **Clock** (side).
  - Push **1**, **0**, and **M** (SHIFT+7) in this order or turn the general purpose knob to set the frequency to 10 MHz.

  e. Turn on the digital data out. Push the **Vertical** (bottom)→**Output** (side) button so that the Output is set to On.

3. Turn on the AWG400-Series output. Push the **RUN** button so that the LEDs above the RUN button lights.

***NOTE**. At the output level measurements from an oscilloscope, the high and low level voltages that contain the ringing by overshoot or undershoot. Always perform the measurements after the level has stabilized.*

---

4. Verify the digital data output level accuracy.
(See Figure B–47.)

  a. Verify the D0 output level.

  - Verify the low level. Verify that the reading for the low level on the oscilloscope screen is ≤ 0.1 V.
  - Verify the high level. Verify that the reading for the high level on the oscilloscope screen is ≥2.3 V.

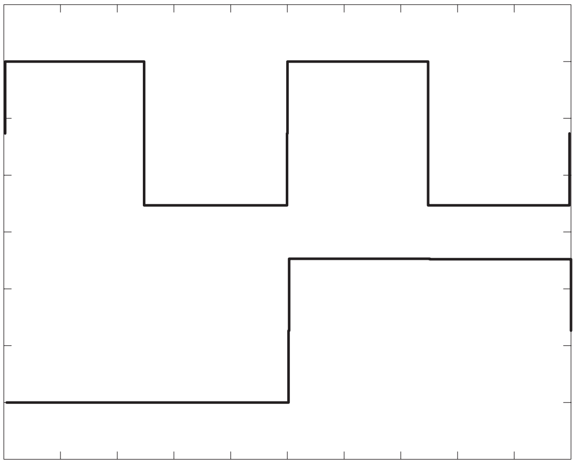


Figure B–47: Clock output and data output

5. Modify the hookup for verifying D1.

   a. Push the **RUN** button (front-panel). The RUN LED is off.

   b. Disconnect the pin-header SMB cable at DIGITAL DATA OUT: D0.

   c. Connect the pin-header SMB cable at DIGITAL DATA OUT: D2.

6. Verify D1 to D15 and CLOCK. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for verifying the level and waveform on D1 to D15 and CLOCK output.

7. Modify the hookup for verifying CH2.

   a. Push the **Output** (side) button and turn **off** the digital data output.

   b. Disconnect the flat cable at CH1 DIGITAL DATA OUT.

   c. Connect the flat cable to the other channel DIGITAL DATA OUT that you will verify.

   d. Disconnect the pin-header SMB cable at DIGITAL DATA OUT: CLOCK.

   e. Connect the pin-header SMB cable at DIGITAL DATA OUT: D0.

8. Repeat steps 2 through 7 to verify the level and waveform on CH2 and CH3 digital output.

9. Push the **Output** (side) button and turn off the digital data output.

10. Push the **CH OFF** to turn off all channels.

11. Push **RUN** (front) button. The RUN LED is off.

12. Remove the cables.

Appendix C: Inspection and Cleaning

Inspect and clean the instrument as often as operating conditions require. The collection of dirt can cause instrument overheating and breakdown. Dirt acts as an insulating blanket, preventing efficient heat dissipation. Dirt also provides an electrical conduction path that can cause an instrument failure, especially under high-humidity conditions.

CAUTION. *To prevent damage avoid the use of chemical cleaning agents that might damage the plastics used in this instrument. Use only deionized water when cleaning the menu buttons or front-panel buttons. Use a ethyl alcohol solution as a cleaner and rinse with deionized water. Before using any other type of cleaner, consult your Tektronix Service Center or representative.*

Avoid the use of high pressure compressed air when cleaning dust from the interior of this instrument. (High pressure air can cause ESD.) Instead, use low pressure compressed air (about 9 psi).

Inspection — Exterior

Using Table C–1 as a guide, inspect the outside of the instrument for damage, wear, and missing parts. You should thoroughly check instruments that appear to have been dropped or otherwise abused to verify correct operation and performance. Immediately repair defects that could cause personal injury or lead to further damage to the instrument.

Table C–1: External inspection check list

Item	Inspect for	Repair action
Cabinet, front panel, and cover	Cracks, scratches, deformations, damaged hardware or gaskets	Replace defective module
Front-panel knobs	Missing, damaged, or loose knobs	Repair or replace missing or defective knobs
Connectors	Broken shells, cracked insulation, and deformed contacts. Dirt in connectors	Replace defective modules; clear or wash out dirt
Carrying handle and cabinet feet	Correct operation	Replace defective module
Accessories	Missing items or parts of items, bent pins, broken or frayed cables, and damaged connectors	Replace damaged or missing items, frayed cables, and defective modules

Cleaning Procedure — Exterior

WARNING. *To avoid injury or death, unplug the power cord from line voltage before cleaning the instrument. To avoid getting moisture inside the instrument during external cleaning, use only enough liquid to dampen the cloth or applicator.*

1. Remove loose dust on the outside of the instrument with a lint-free cloth.
2. Remove remaining dirt with a lint free cloth dampened in a general purpose detergent-and-water solution. Do not use abrasive cleaners.
3. Clean the monitor screen with a lint-free cloth dampened with either ethyl alcohol or, preferably, a gentle, general purpose detergent-and-water solution.

Cleaning the Instrument Interior

Only qualified personnel should access the inside of the AWG400-Series for inspection and cleaning, refer to the *Maintenace* section in the AWG400-Series service manual.

Appendix D: Sample Waveforms

The files listed below are included in the route directory of the sample waveform library disk (062-A257-00) that comes with the instrument.

There are 19 waveform and equation files. If a waveform file (with the suffix **.WFM**) has the same name as an equation file (with the suffix **.EQU**), the waveform file was derived by compiling that equation file.

Table D–1: Waveform and equation files in the sample disk

No	Waveform name	File name	
1	Gaussian Pulse	GAUSS_P.EQU	GAUSS_P.WFM
2	Lorentz Pulse	LORENTZ.EQU	LORENTZ.WFM
3	Sampling Function SIN(X)/X Pulse	SINC.EQU	SINC.WFM
4	Squared Sine Pulse	SQU_SIN.EQU	SQU_SIN.WFM
5	Double Exponential Pulse	D_EXP.EQU	D_EXP.WFM
6	Nyquist Pulse	NYQUIST.EQU	NYQUIST.WFM
7	Linear Frequency Sweep	LIN_SWP.EQU	LIN_SWP.WFM
8	Log Frequency Sweep	LOG_SWP.EQU	LOG_SWP.WFM
9	Amplitude Modulation	AM.EQU	AM.WFM
10	Frequency Modulation	FM.EQU	FM.WFM
11	Pulse Width Modulation		PWM.WFM
12	Pseudo-random Pulse		PRBS9.WFM
13	Waveform for Magnetic Disk Signal		DSK.WFM
14	Isolated pulse for Disk application	PR4.EQU	
15	Isolated pulse for Disk application	EPR4.EQU	
16	Isolated pulse for Disk application	E2PR4.EQU	
17	Isolated pulse for Network application		E1.WFM
18	Isolated pulse for Network application		DS1.WFM
19	Isolated pulse for Network application		DS1A.WFM

These sample waveform and equation files can be copied, distributed, or modified according to your purposes.

Waveform File Descriptions

This subsection describes the 19 representative waveform files. Some of the waveform files were obtained by creating an equation file in the equation editor and then compiling it to create a waveform file. Others were created in the waveform editor or disk application. To output a waveform file, select the file in the SETUP menu.

Table D-2: Gaussian pulse

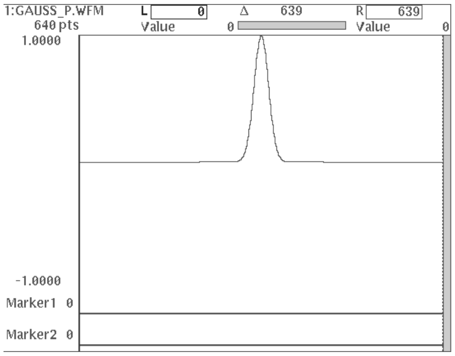
	**File name**	GAUSS_P.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	size = 640 clock = 1e8 k0 = 30e−8 ’pulse width k1 = 320e−8 ’peak location ”gauss_p.wfm” = exp(−log(2) * ((2* (time − k1) / k0) ^ 2))	
	Descriptions	The waveform that is generated when the pulse width is t_{w50} and the peak location is 0 can be expressed as: $V(t) = exp\left\{-In(2) \cdot \left(\frac{2t}{t_{w50}}\right)^2\right\}$ Substituting $\sigma = \frac{t_{w50}}{2\sqrt{2\ In(2)}}$ gives, $f(t) = exp\left(-\frac{t^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$ and taking the Fourier transform gives: $F(j\omega) = \sqrt{2\pi}\,\sigma \cdot exp\left(-\frac{\omega^2\sigma^2}{2}\right)$ This shows that this signal has a form in the frequency domain as well.	
	Example	When t_{w50} is 300 ns, the bandwidth will be 1.04 MHz.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 640, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 6.4 µs	

Table D-3: Lorentz pulse

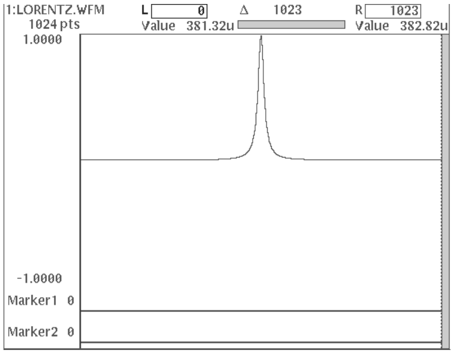
	**File name**	LORENTZ_P.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	size = 1024 clock = 1e8 k0 = 20e−8 ’pulse width k1 = 512e−8 ’peak location ”lorentz.wfm” = 1 / (1+(2*(time − k1) / k0) ^ 2)	
	Descriptions	When the pulse width is taken to be t_{w50}, the waveform can be expressed by the following formula: $V(t) = \frac{1}{1 + \left(2\frac{t}{t_{w50}}\right)2}$	
	Settings	Waveform points: 1024, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 10.24 μs	

Table D-4: Sampling function SIN(X)/X pulse

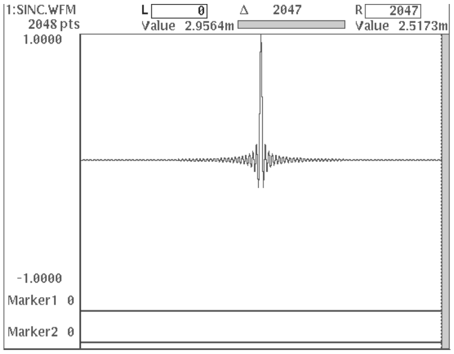
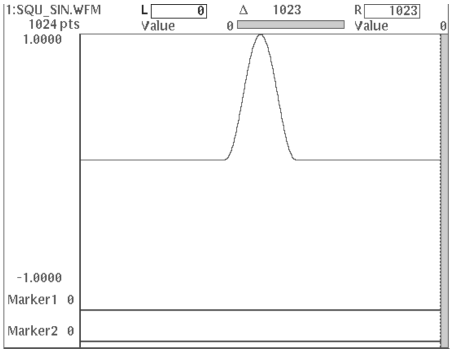
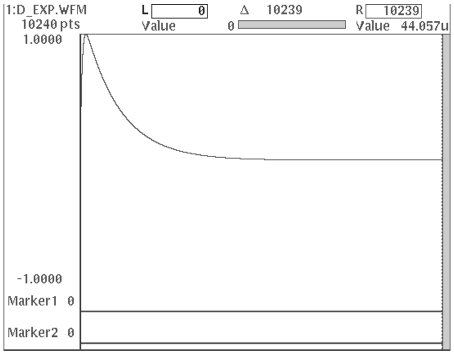
	**File name**	SINC.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	size = 2048 clock = 1e8 k0 = 50e5 ’sine frequency k1 = 1024e−8 ’peak location ”sinc.wfm” = sinc(2 * pi * k0 * (time − k1))	
	Descriptions	In general, this waveform is expressed by the following formula: $V(t) = \frac{\sin(2\pi ft)}{2\pi ft}$ This is the impulse response for the ideal low pass filter for the frequency bandwidth f. At least 42 periods are required to use a vertical resolution of 8 bits.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 2048, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 20.48 μs	

Table D-5: Squared sine pulse



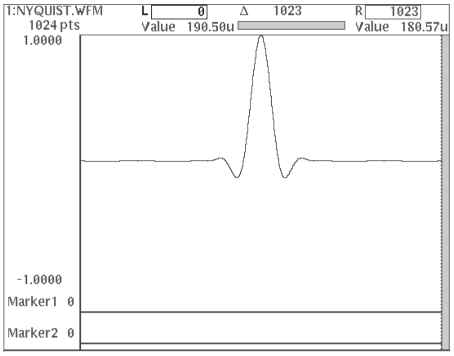
File name	SQU_SIN.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e8 size = 412 ”tmp1” = 0 size = 200 ”tmp2” = (cos (2 * pi * (scale – 0.5)) + 1) / 2 ”tmp3” = join (”tmp1”, ”tmp2”) ”squ_sin.wfm” = join (”tmp3”, ”tmp1”) delete (”tmp1”) delete (”tmp2”) delete (”tmp3”)	
Descriptions		
Settings	Waveform points: 1024, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 10.24 μs	

Table D-6: Double exponential pulse



File name	D_EXP.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e8 size = 10240 k1 = 50e–8 ’rise time constant k2 = 1000e–8 ’fall time constant ”tmp” = exp (–time / k2) – exp (–time / k1) ”d_exp.efm” = norm (“tmp”) delete (”tmp”)	
Descriptions	This is the waveform when a charged capacitor is discharged to the RC circuit. When the time constants for charging and discharging are taken to be τ_1 and τ_2, respectively, the waveform can be expressed by the following formula: $V(t) = exp\left(-\frac{t}{\tau_2}\right)-exp\left(-\frac{t}{\tau_1}\right)$	
Settings	Waveform points: 10240, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 102.4 μs	

Table D–7: Nyquist pulse



File name	NYQUIST.WFM	Made with equation editor
Equation	clock = 1e8 size = 1024 k0 = 50e–8 ’data period k1 = 512e–8 ’peak location a = 0.5 ’excess bandwidth factor 0 to 0.5 ”t” = (time – k1) / k0 ”nyquist.wfm” = cos(a * pi * ”t”) / (1 – (2 * a * ”t”) ^ 2) * sinc(pi * ”t”) delete (”t”)	
Descriptions	This is the impulse response of a wave shaping Nyquist filter. The shoulder characteristics of this filter are referred to as “cosine roll-off” characteristics, and the bandwidth used can be varied. This waveform can be expressed by the following formula. $V(t) = \frac{cos\left(\frac{\pi\alpha t}{T}\right)}{1-\left(\frac{2\alpha t}{T}\right)^2} \cdot \frac{sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right)}{\frac{\pi t}{T}}$ Here T is the data period and α is a value between 0 and 1. A wider band is required for values closer to 1, where ripple is reduced and implementation is easier.	
Settings	Waveform points: 1024, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 10.24 μs	

Table D–8: Linear frequency sweep

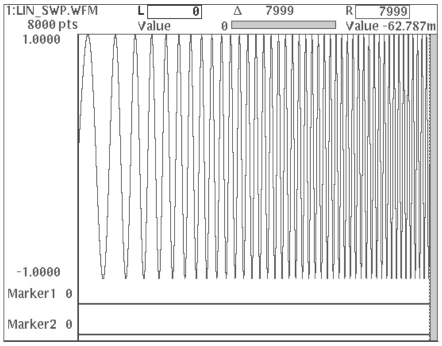
	**File name**	LIN_SWP.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	clock = 1e8 size = 8000 k0 = 8e–5 ’sweep period k1 = 1e5 ’start frequency k2 = 10e5 ’end frequency ”lin_swp.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * k1 * time + 2 * pi * (k2 – k1) * (time ^ 2)/2/k0)	
	Descriptions	This waveform can be expressed generally by the following formula. $V(t) = sin\left[2\pi f_1 t + 2\pi f_2 \int_0^t \frac{t}{T}dt + \phi_0\right]$ Here f_1 is the starting frequency, f_2 is the ending frequency, Φ_0 is the initial phase, and T is the sweep period. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the sweep period is set to be close to an integer multiple of the reciprocal of the average frequency $\frac{f_1 + f_2}{2}$.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 8000, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 80 μs	

Table D–9: Log frequency sweep

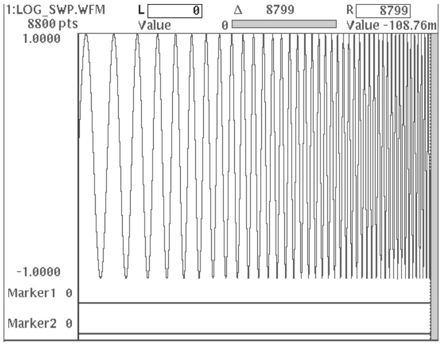
	**File name**	LOG_SWP.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	clock = 100e6 size = 8800 k0 = 11e–6 ’sweep period k1 = 1e6 ’start frequency k2 = 10e6 ’end frequency k3 = log (k2 / k1) ”log_swp.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * k1 * k0 / k3 * (exp (k3 * scale) –1))	
	Descriptions	This waveform can be expressed generally by the following formula. $V(t) = sin\left[2\pi f_1 \int_0^t exp\left(\frac{t}{T} \cdot In\frac{f_2}{f_1}\right)dt + \phi_0\right]$ Here f_1 is the starting frequency, f_2 is the ending frequency, Φ_0 is the initial phase, and T is the sweep period. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the sweep period is set to be close to an integer multiple of the reciprocal of the average frequency $\frac{f_2 – f_1}{In\frac{f_2}{f_1}}$.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 8800, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 88 μs	

Table D-10: Amplitude modulation

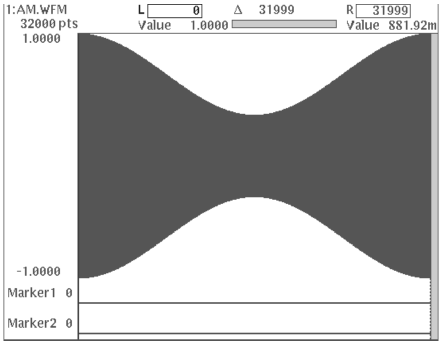
	**File name**	AM.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	clock = 1.28e6 size = 32000 k1 = 4000 ’modulation frequency k2 = 10e6 ’carrier frequency a = 0.5 ’modulation degree ”am.wfm” = norm((1 + a * cos(2 * pi * k1 * time)) * cos(2 * pi * k2 * time)) delete (”tmp”)	
	Descriptions	This example shows a double sideband (DSB) amplitude modulated waveform with a modulation factor of 0.5. The modulating signal is a cosine wave.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 32000, Clock frequency: 128 MHz, Output time: 0.25 ms	

Table D-11: Frequency modulation

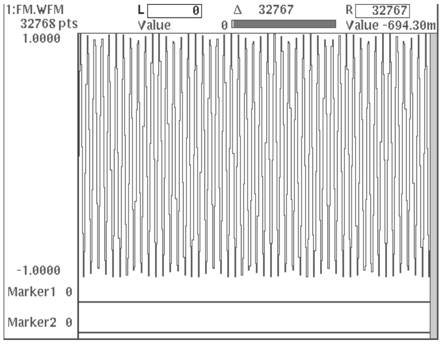
	**File name**	FM.WFM	Made with equation editor
	Equation	clock = 819.2e5 size = 32768 k0 = 25e2 ’modulation frequency k1 = 100e5 ’carrier frequency b = 60.12e2 ’frequency deviation ”fm.wfm” = sin(2 * pi * k1 * time + b / k0 * sin(2 * pi * k0 * time))	
	Descriptions	k0 is the frequency of the cosine wave that is used to modulate a sine wave of frequency k1. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the carrier frequency times the modulating signal period is set to be an integer. The modulation index is given by k2/k0.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 32768, Clock frequency: 81.92 MHz, Output time: 400 μs	

Table D–12: Pulse width modulation

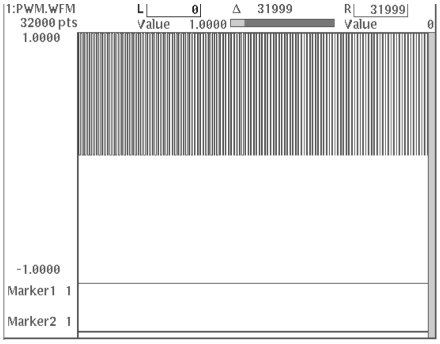
	**File name**	PWM.WFM	Made with waveform editor
	Descriptions	The waveform editor is used to create a ramp wave of 1000 periods and a sine wave of 1 period, and these two waveforms are compared to create the PWM.WFM waveform.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 32000, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 32 μs	

Table D–13: Pseudo-random pulse

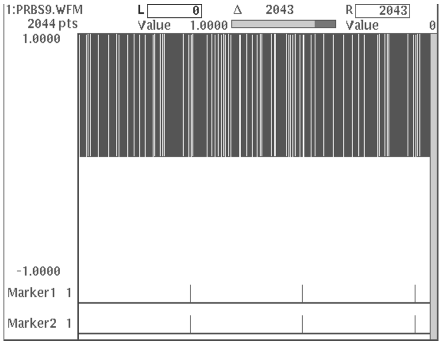
	**File name**	PRBS9.WFM	Made with waveform editor
	Descriptions	An M-series pseudo-random signal is created using the waveform editor's timing display shift register generator function. Register length = 15 The encoding is NRZ.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 2044 ((2^9–1) x 4), Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 20.44 μs	

Table D–14: Waveform for magnetic disk signal

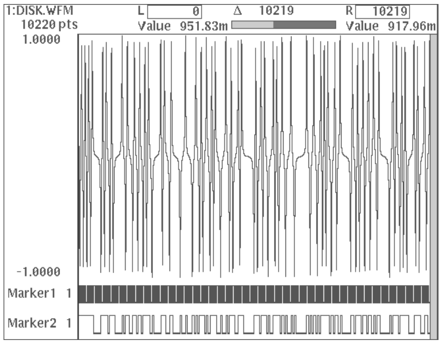
	**File name**	DSK.WFM	Made with disk application
	Descriptions	Creates a disk signal pattern with NRZ-I modulation using the disk application. This signal is created with default parameter settings. Samples/Cell 20 NLTS 0% Cell Period 200 ns NLTS+ 0% TAA+ 1.0 NLTS– 0% TAA– –1.0 Asymmetry 0% PW50+ 50 % PW50– 50% The encoding is NRZ-I. A signal with the same pattern is set for the marker 1 as well.	
	Settings	Waveform points: 10220, Clock frequency: 100 MHz, Output time: 102.2 μs	

Table D–15: Isolated pulse for disk application (PR4.EQU)

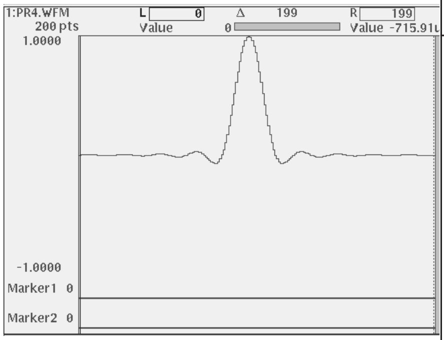
	**File name**	PR4.EQU	Made with equation editor
	Equation	’PR4 Pulse spcell = 10 ’Samples/Cell cperiod = 10e–8 ’Cell Period [sec] ncells = 20 ’Number of Cells clock = spcell/cperiod ’Samples/Cell / Cell Period [Hz] size = spcell*ncells ’Samples/Cell * Number of Cells k0 = ncells*pi ’Number of Cells * PI k1 = 0.5 a = pi/4 ”PR4.WFM” = a * (sinc(k0*(scale–k1)) + sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+pi))	
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the PR4. This sample equation makes the PR4.WFM waveform with 200 waveform points (Samples/Cell × Number of Cells).	
	Settings		

Table D–16: Isolated pulse for disk application (EPR4.EQU)

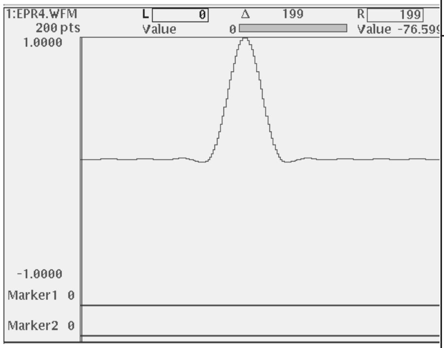
	**File name**	EPR4.EQU	Made with equation editor
	Equation	’EPR4 Pulse spcell = 10 ’Samples/Cell cperiod = 10e–8 ’Cell Period [sec] ncells = 20 ’Number of Cells clock = spcell/cperiod ’Samples/Cell / Cell Period [Hz] size = spcell*ncells ’Samples/Cell * Number of Cells k0 = ncells*pi ’Number of Cells * PI k1 = 0.5 a = 0.5 ”PR4.WFM” = a * (sinc(k0*(scale–k1)) + sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+pi))	
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the EPR4. This sample equation makes the EPR4.WFM waveform with 200 waveform points (Samples/Cell × Number of Cells).	
	Settings		

Table D–17: Isolated pulse for disk application (E2PR4.EQU)

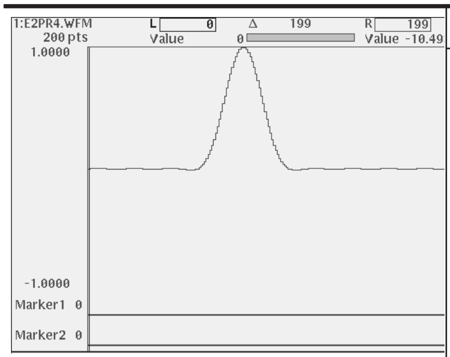
	**File name**	E2PR4.EQU	Made with equation editor
	Equation	’E2PR4 Pulse spcell = 10 ’Samples/Cell cperiod = 10e–8 ’Cell Period [sec] ncells = 20 ’Number of Cells clock = spcell/cperiod ’Samples/Cell / Cell Period [Hz] size = spcell*ncells ’Samples/Cell * Number of Cells k0 = ncells*pi ’Number of Cells * PI k1 = 0.5 a = pi*3/32 ”E2PR4.WFM” = a * (sinc(k0*(scale–k1)) + 3*sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+pi) + 3*sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+2*pi) + sinc(k0*(scale–k1)+3*pi))	
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the E2PR4. This sample equation makes the E2PR4.WFM waveform with 200 waveform points (Samples/Cell × Number of Cells).	
	Settings		

Table D–18: Isolated pulse for network application (E1.WFM)

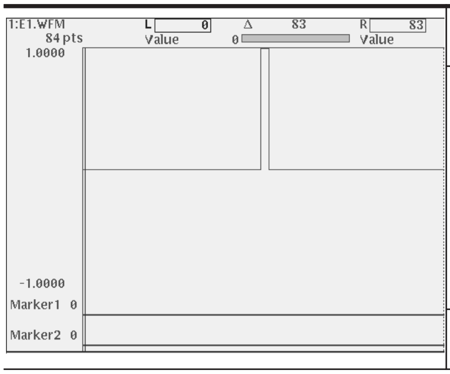
	**File name**	E1.WFM	Made with waveform editor
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the ITU–T E1. The number of waveform points is 84. This isolated pulse is applied to ITU–T E2, ITU–T E3, and T1.102 DS1C.	
	Settings		

Table D–19: Isolated pulse for network application (DS1.WFM)

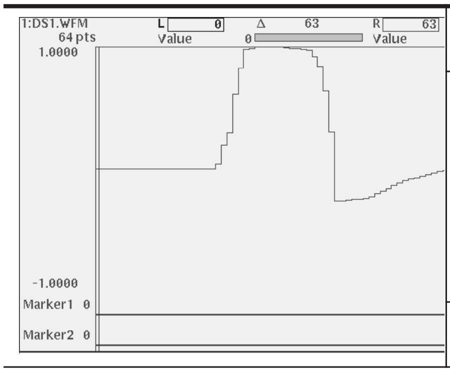
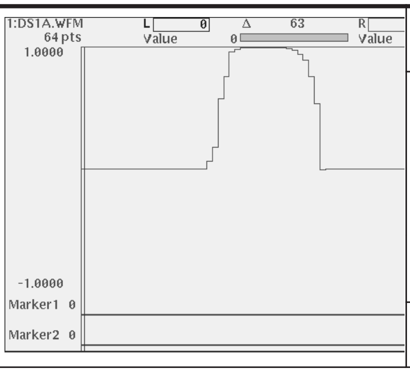
	**File name**	DS1.WFM	Made with waveform editor
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 DS1. The number of waveform points is 64.	
	Settings		

Table D–20: Isolated pulse for network application (DS1A.WFM)

	**File name**	DS1A.WFM	Made with waveform editor
	Descriptions	This is the isolated pulse for the T1.102 DS1A. The number of waveform points is 64.	
	Settings		

Appendix E: File Transfer Interface Outline

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator provides the following interfaces for file transfer:

- GPIB
- Floppy disk (FD)
- FTP
- NFS (Network File System)

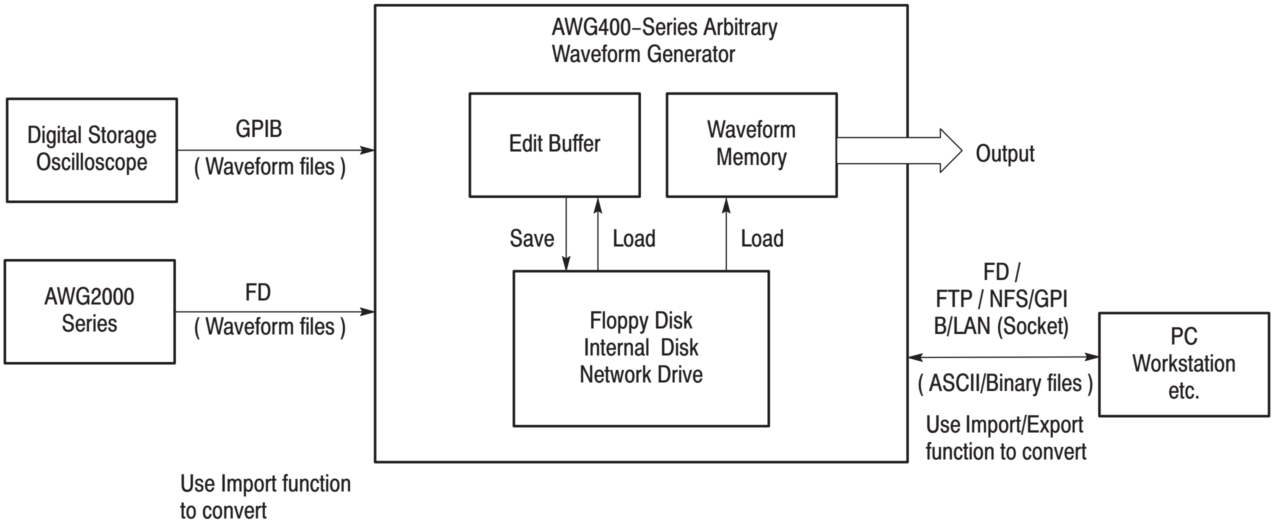


Figure E–1: File transfer interface outline

The AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator imports and/or exports files from/to external equipment such as PC, DSO, or AWG2000 Series.

Figure E–1 shows an outline for the interfaces and the file transfer direction.

Appendix F: Sequence File Text Format

The sequence file saved by the sequence editor is an ASCII text file having the format described below. You can create a sequence file on a PC or other computer with an ASCII text editor.

```
MAGIC 3003
LINES <number>
<line description>
<line description>
       ...
<line description>
TABLE_JUMP 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
LOGIC_JUMP -1,-1,-1,-1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Header

The header line MAGIC 3003 lets the instrument recognize a text file as the sequence. This number must be added to the first line.

Line Descriptions

The LINES provides the information that the sequence is composed of a number of lines. From the third line to the line specified by <number> +2 are the sequence lines you should edit in the in the sequence editor.

The <line description> is composed of 7 fields delimited by comma (,):

```
<F1>, <F2>, <F3>, <F4>, <F5>, <F6>, <F7>
```

CH1, CH2 and CH3. The <F1> is a waveform file name for the CH1 and <F2> for the CH2 and <F3> for the CH3. The waveform file name must be parenthesized with double-quotation.

```
<F1>::=

<F2>::=

<F3>::="<waveform file name>" | "<pattern file name>" |
             "<sequence file name>"
```

For example,

```
"SINE.WFM", "TRIANGLE.WFM", "SQUARE.WFM"...

"GAUSSN.WFM", "", "",...

"", "", "TRIALGLE.WFM", ...
```

When you do not define a file, NULL string (””) must be placed.

Repeat Count. The <F4> is Repeat Count field.

```
<F4>:=<Repeat Count>|<Infinity>

   <Repeat Count>::= 1 to 65536
   <Infinity>::= 0
```

Enhanced Controls. The <F5> to <F7> are Repeat Count, Wait Trigger, Goto One, and Logic Jump, respectively.

```
<F5>::=<Wait Trigger>

   <Wait Trigger>::= 1 (On) or 0 (Off)

<F6>::=<Goto One>

   <Goto One>::= 1 (On) or 0 (Off)

<F7>::=<Logic Jump>

   <Logic Jump>::= <Line Number> (range: 1 to 8000)
                    0 (No definition)
                   -1 (Jump to next line)
```

Note that the Logic Jump setting is effective depending on the jump settings described in next paragraph.

Jump Settings

After the line descriptions, you place the jump setting descriptions as follows: They can be omitted when you use the current settings.

```
TABLE_JUMP 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
LOGIC_JUMP -1,-1,-1,-1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Jump Table Definition. The 16 entries of the table definition follow the table jump header TABLE_JUMP and a space, and must be delimited by comma (,):

```
TABLE_JUMP <space> <LLLL>, <LLLH>, <LLHL>, <LLHH>, <LHLL>,
<LHLH>, <LHHL>, <LHHH>, <HLLL>, <HLLH>, <HLHL>, <HLHH>,
<HHLL>, <HHLH>, <HHHL>, <HHHH>
```

Each of these entries must be:

```
<Entry>::= <Line Number> (range: 1 to 8000)
           0 (No definition)
```

Logic Jump Definition. The 4 entries of the logic table definition follow the logic jump header LOGIC_JUMP and a space, and must be delimited by comma (,):

```
Logic Jump <space> <Pin-0 logic>, <Pin-1 logic>,
<Pin-2 logic>, <Pin-3 logic>

   <Pin-n logic>::= -1 (for X, don't care),
                     0 (for L, low state) or
                     1 (for H, high state)
```

Jump Mode Selection. The jump table or logic jump definition you define is effective depending on the jump mode setting as follows:

```
JUMP_MODE <space> <jump mode>

   <jump mode>::= TABLE, LOGIC or SOFTWARE
```

Jump Timing and Strobe Settings.

```
JUMP_TIMING <space> <timing>

   <timing>::= SYNC or ASYNC

STROBE <space> <strobe>

   <strobe>::= 0 (for Off) or
               1 (for On)
```

Examples

Two examples are shown here. They are the text versions of the sequence files that you can find in the *Operating Basics: Tutorial 6* section, beginning on page 2–78.

SUBSEQ.SEQ.

```
MAGIC 3003
LINES 4
"SQUARE.WFM", "", 40000, 0, 0, 0
"RAMP.WFM", "", "", 60000, 0, 0, 0
"TRIANGLE.WFM", "", "", 60000, 0, 0, 0
"SINE.WFM", "", "", 30000, 0, 0, 0
TABLE_JUMP 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,
LOGIC_JUMP -1, -1, -1, -1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Using the current instrument default settings, you can rewrite the above file as follows:

```
MAGIC 3003
LINES 4
"SQUARE.WFM", "", "", 40000
"RAMP.WFM", "", "", 60000
"TRIANGLE.WFM", "", "", 60000
"SINE.WFM", "", 30000
```

MAINSEQ.SEQ.

```
MAGIC 3003
LINES 4
"SUBSEQ.SEQ","", "",2,1,-1
"RAMP.WFM","", "",0,0,0,0
"TRIANGLE.WFM","","",40000,0,1,4
"SINE.WFM","",60000,0,0,-1
TABLE_JUMP 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
LOGIC_JUMP -1,-1,-1,-1
JUMP_MODE LOGIC
JUMP_TIMING ASYNC
STROBE 0
```

Appendix G: Miscellaneous

This appendix covers the following items.

- Sampling theorem
- Differentiation
- Integration
- Convolution
- Correlation
- Code Conversion

Sampling Theorem

When the signal is continuous and the highest frequency component of the signal is f_0, sampling with $T \leqq f_0/2$ loses none of the data contained in the signal. T is the sampling interval. This theorem is well known as the sampling theorem. If data is created to meet this theorem, the necessary signal can be obtained.

$$X(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(nt) \frac{sin\{(2\pi/T)(t{-}nT/2)\}}{(2\pi/T)(t{-}nT/2)}$$

A continuous analog signal x(t) can be reproduced from the digital data with the above equation. In the Waveform Generator, this is realized using a D/A converter.

Differentiation

The diff() function calculates the central deviation as the differential value. The equation below expresses the central deviation when the function f(x) is given at even intervals of Δx.

$$f'(x) = \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x - \Delta x)}{(2\ \Delta x)}$$

In actual practice, when function f(x)is expressed by n values, the differential value f'(x_i) at point x_i is given by the following equation:

$$f'(x_i) = n\frac{\{f(x_{i+1})-f(x_{i-1})\}}{2}$$

Here, "n" is the number of waveform points and "i" is an integer in the range, i=1, 2, ..., n.

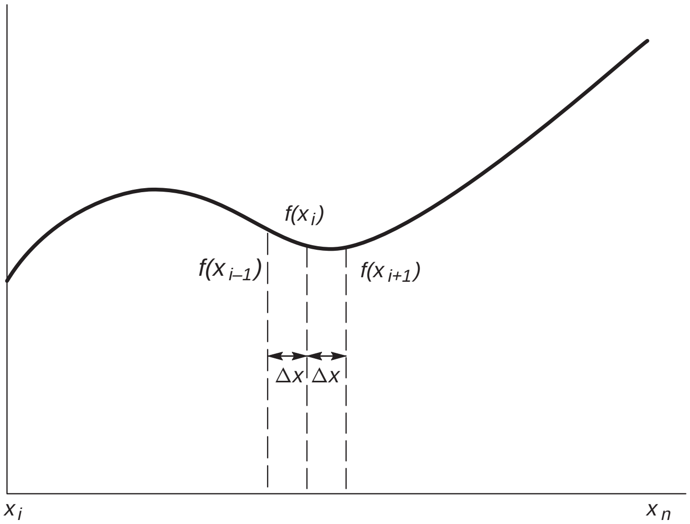


Figure G–1: Equation differentiation

The values at the first and last points are obtained from the following equations rather than from the center deviation:

First point

$$f'(x_1) = \frac{n\{-3f(x_1) + 4f(x_2)-f(x_3)\}}{2}$$

Last point

$$f'(x_n) = \frac{n\{f(x_{n-2})-4f(x_{n-1}) + 3f(x_n)\}}{2}$$

Integration

The integ() function integrates numerically based on a trapezoidal formula. The trapezoidal formula is expressed with the following equation:

$$\int f(x)dx = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{f(x_{i-1}) + f(x_i)}{2} \cdot \varDelta x$$

$$= \varDelta \frac{x}{2} \{f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \ldots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)\}$$

Here, n is the number of waveform points and i is an integer in the range i = 1, 2, ..., n.

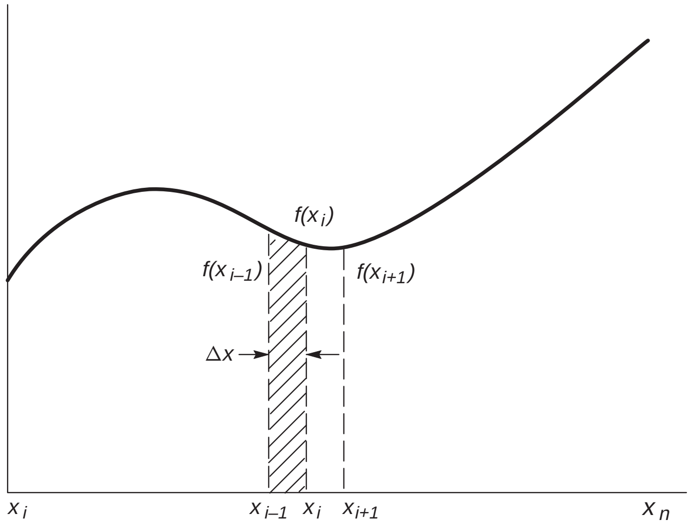


Figure G-2: Equation integration

The integration is actually calculated with the following formula:

$$\int f(x)dx = 1/2\{f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \ldots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)\}$$

However, the imaginary initial value $f(x_0)$ always takes a value of 0.

Convolution

The operation expressed by the following equation is called convolution. With respect to a discrete system, convolution y(n) of a certain waveform x(n) and a second one h(i) is expressed by the following equation. N is the number of items of data.

$$y\ (n)\ =\ \sum_{l=0}^{N-1} x(i)h(n-i)$$

Periodic. The Periodic enables you to specify whether the two-waveforms must be regarded as periodic during calculation. Below is an example showing differences between non-periodic and periodic waveforms.

Waveform A = a0, a1, a2, a3, a4 (5 points)
Waveform B = b0, b1, b2 (3 points)

For nonperiodic case:

A*B = a0b0,
a0b1+a1b0,
a0b2+a1b1+a2b0,
a1b2+a2b1+a3b0,
a2b2+a3b1+a4b0,
a3b2+a4b1,
a4b2,
0, (8 points)

The data length of the waveform created is the total of the number of points of the two-waveform files.

For periodic case:

A*B = a0b2+a1b1+a2b0,
a1b2+a2b1+a3b0,
a2b2+a3b1+a4b0,
a3b2+a4b1+a0b0,
a4b2+a0b1+a1b0,
(5 points)

Waveforms A and B are regarded as periodic during calculation. The count of the operation of sum of products is equivalent to the length of the shorter waveform. The resulting waveform's cycle equals the same as the longer waveform. The actually output segment of the waveform corresponds to one cycle. The starting point value of the waveform equals the sum of products that is obtained with the starting point values of waveforms A and B added.

Correlation

The operation expressed by the following equation is called correlation. With respect to a discrete system, correlation y(n) of a certain waveform x(n) and a second one h(i) is expressed by the following equation. N is the number of items of data.

$$y\ (n)\ =\ \sum_{l=0}^{N-1} x(i)h(n\ +\ i)$$

Periodic. Periodic enables you to specify whether the two-waveforms must be regarded as periodic during calculation. Below is an example showing differences between nonperiodic and periodic waveforms.

Waveform A = a0, a1, a2, a3, a4 (5 points)
Waveform B = b0, b1, b2 (3 points)

For nonperiodic case:

<A,B> = a0b2,
a0b1+a1b2,
a0b0+a1b1+a2b2,
a1b0+a2b1+a3b2,
a2b0+a3b1+a4b2,
a3b0+a4b1,
a4b0,
0, (8 points)

The data length of the waveform created is the total of the number of points of the two-waveform files.

For periodic case:

<A,B> = a0b0+a1b1+a2b2,
a1b0+a2b1+a3b2,
a2b0+a3b1+a4b2,
a3b0+a4b1+a0b2,
a4b0+a0b1+a1b2,
(5 points)

Waveforms A and B are regarded as periodic during calculation. The count of the operation of the sum of the products is equivalent to the length of the shorter waveform. The resulting waveform's cycle equals the same as the longer waveform. The actually output segment of the waveform corresponds to one cycle. The starting point value of the waveform equals the sum of products that is obtained with the starting point values of waveforms A and B added.

Unlike convolution, the result of A×B and B×A are different in correlation. B×A is calculated as follows (B and A are those from the example on page G–5):

For nonperiodic case:

A×B = b0a4,
b0a3+b1a4,
b0a2+b1a3+b2a4,
b0a1+b1a2+b2a3,
b0a0+b1a1+b2a2,
b1a0+b2a1,
b2a0,
0, (8 points)

For periodic case:

A×B = b0a0+b1a1+b2a2,
b0a4+b1a0+b2a1,
b0a3+b1a4+b2a0,
b0a2+b1a3+b2a4,
b0a1+b1a2+b2a3,
(5 points)

Waveforms A and B are regarded as periodic during calculation. The count of the operation of sum of products is equivalent to the length of the shorter waveform. The resulting waveform’s cycle equals the same as the longer waveform. The actual output segment of the waveform corresponds to one cycle. The starting point value of the waveform equals the sum of the products that is obtained with the starting point values of waveforms A and B added.

Code Conversion

On the AWG400-Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator, it is possible to select the coding system used when pattern strings are output. If the code will be affected by the immediately preceding data, the data item just before the first item of data will be calculated as 0. The following tables show the coding systems.

Using the code conversion table, bit pattern can be converted to another code. Figure G–3 shows an image of how the code conversion table is used.

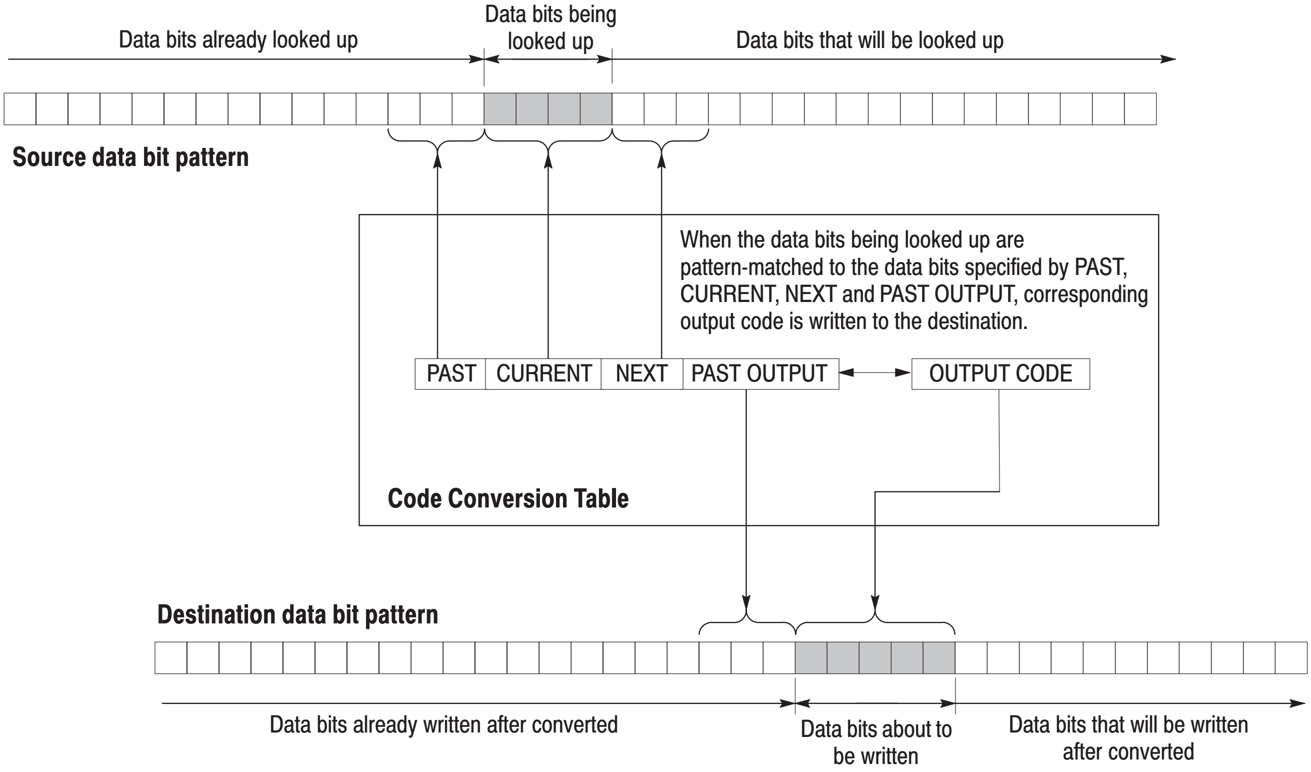


Figure G–3: Conversion image example

Examples

The following examples show data bits to be written. Input and output data bit pattern example follows each table.

- Inverting bit of the **NRZ** data.

Past	Current	Next	P.OUT	Output code
	0			1
	1			0

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1

- Converting NRZ data to **NRZI**.

Past	Current	Next	P.OUT	Output code
	1		0	1
	1		1	0
	0		0	0
	0		1	1

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1

- Converting NRZ data to **NRZI**. Two bits are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	1		0	01
	1		1	10
	0		0	00
	0		1	11

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	00	01	11	11	10	01	11	11	11

- Converting NRZ data to **FM**. Two bits are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0		0	11
	0		1	00
	1		0	10
	1		1	01

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	11	01	00	11	01	01	00	11	00

- Converting NRZ data to **BI-PHASE**. Two bits are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0			01
	1			10

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	01	10	01	01	10	10	01	01	01

- Converting NRZ data to **RZ**. Two bits are generated for each input bit.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0			00
	1			10

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	00	10	00	00	10	10	00	00	00

- The output bit is always set to 1 when input bit changes from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1.

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
0	1			1
1	0			1
	1			0
	0			0

Example									
Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
Output	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0

- Converting NRZ data to **1-7 RLL** (Run-length Limited Codes).

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0000		1	100000
	0000		0	011111
	0001		00	111111

Past	Current	Next	P. OUT	Output code
	0001		01	111111
	0001		10	000000
	0001		11	000000
	0010		01	111110
	0010		10	000001
	0010		00	111110
	0010		11	000001
	0011		1	100001
	0011		0	011110
	01		1	100
	01		0	011
	10		01	111
	10		10	000
	10		00	111
	10		11	000
	11		01	110
	11		10	001
	11		00	110
	11		11	001
	0			0
	1			1

Example											
Input	01	10	11	0010	10	0011	11	0001	0011	10	0000
Output	011	000	110	000001	111	100001	110	000000	011110	000	011111

Code Conversion Table Text Files

The code conversion table is only a text file. You can easily create the code conversion tables using a text editor on your PC or other computer. Refer to pages 3–88 and 3–132 for more information.

nrz.txt	**nrzi.txt**	**nrzi-2.txt**
,0,,,1 ,1,,,0	,1,,0,1 ,1,,1,0 ,0,,0,0 ,0,,1,1	,1,,0,01 ,1,,1,10 ,0,,0,00 ,0,,1,11
fm.txt	**bi-phase.txt**	**rz.txt**
,0,,0,11 ,0,,1,00 ,1,,0,10 ,1,,1,01	,0,,,01 ,1,,,10	,0,,,00 ,1,,,10
special.txt	**1-7rill.txt**	
0,1,,,1 1,0,,,1 ,1,,,0 ,0,,,0	,0000,,1,100000 ,0000,,0,011111 ,0001,,00,111111 ,0001,,01,111111 ,0001,,10,000000 ,0001,,11,000000 ,0010,,01,111110 ,0010,,10,000001 ,0010,,00,111110 ,0010,,11,000001 ,0011,,1,100001 ,0011,,0,011110 ,01,,1,100 ,01,,0,011 ,10,,01,111 ,10,,10,000 ,10,,00,111 ,10,,11,000 ,11,,01,110 ,11,,10,001 ,11,,00,110 ,11,,11,001 ,0,,,0 ,1,,,1	

Index